

THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO

PHYSICS DEPARTMENT

PHYSICS 435

RECEIVED AT THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO  
LIBRARY ON FEBRUARY 10, 1968

The MARTIN ROWAN CHAFFIN  
Collection of Public School  
Text-Books

PRESENTED TO

Duke University Library



By his grandchildren in honor of M. R. Chaffin, who taught public school in Davie and Yadkin counties for a number of years beginning in 1850, and in honor of his father, William Owen Chaffin, who first taught a North Carolina public school in 1843, in Yadkin county.

For the especial use of the Department of Education  
and of the Durham county and city teachers.


DATE

1935









Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2017 with funding from  
Duke University Libraries

EIGHT BOOKS

OF

CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR

*Caesar, C. Julius*

BY

WILLIAM RAINEY HARPER, PH.D.

AND

HERBERT CUSHING TOLMAN, PH.D.

YALE UNIVERSITY, NEW HAVEN, CONN.

NEW YORK . . . CINCINNATI . . . CHICAGO  
AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

*Copyright, 1891, by*  
AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY



C. C.,  
878.1  
C128Gh

## P R E F A C E.

---

THE Latin language is exhibited by Caesar in a richness and purity which no Roman writer has excelled. In this volume the student is permitted to compare the Latinity of the eighth book, which was written by Hirtius, with that of the seven which precede. No Latin author repays the careful study of advanced Latin scholarship more satisfactorily than Caesar, and for this reason it is a misfortune, perhaps, that the Commentaries are relegated to the preparatory school. On the other hand, in no writer are the great principles of the language so constantly reviewed, thus forming a sure foundation for classical scholarship.

This new edition of the text is the result of an endeavor to present the facts of the language and explain and illustrate the subject-matter in a manner different from the traditional method, which has been, we think, too closely adhered to in the past. The justification for a new text-book of Caesar will be found, it is hoped, in the features of this work which distinguish it from previous editions. These are the following:—

1. The indication in the text of every new word by full-faced type, thus furnishing the student a clear idea of the vocabulary which he is expected to have made his own.

2. The insertion of "Topics for Study," based upon the portion read, which are added after every chapter of the first four

books. By means of these topics the grammatical principles will be constantly reviewed.

3. Examples of inductive studies and lists of topics for investigation, which the teacher is expected to assign from time to time to the pupils to be worked out in a measure independently.

4. Word-lists containing in convenient order those words of which a knowledge is necessary for any satisfactory reading of the text.

5. An indication in the vocabulary of the number of times each word occurs, in order that the student may estimate for himself the vocabulary-value of each word.

6. A special vocabulary to Book VIII., added in order that the occurrence of words in "Caesar" may not be confused with their occurrence in "Hirtius."

7. Notes, intended not only to furnish information in reference to what is obscure, but also to compare idioms, phrases, and petrified expressions as they occur in "Caesar." Occasional references are given to other Latin authors, in order that the student may extend his horizon and obtain a broader conception of the genius of the language.

8. Grammatical references placed beneath the text, rather than in the notes; for it is believed that in practical work such a position will render them more helpful. In the first book these references have been made very full, and are designed to reflect the phenomena of the language as they are met with in the text.

9. Prose composition based on special chapters of "Caesar." This has been added as the surest method of enabling the student to apply the principles which he has learned. The requirements in Latin composition adopted by most colleges for

admission — the translation into Latin of connected passages of English prose — demand such preparatory training.

10. An introduction, including the life of Caesar, history of Gaul, Germany, and Britain, and a sketch of the method of Roman warfare, so arranged that the facts present themselves in a continuous narrative and can be referred to by references from the text. The student is thus enabled to see the relation of any one fact to those which precede and follow it.

11. Indexes of geographical and proper names.

12. Numerous illustrations inserted in the body of the text.

The Latin text is based upon Kraner's edition, with various modifications. The corrected spelling of Latin words has been introduced, consistent with their etymology: thus, *contio* (con and ventio) for *concio*; *condicio* (con and dico) for *conditio*. The authors, however, recognize a Latin word *conditio* (con and do = Skt.  $\sqrt{\text{DHĀ}}$ , *put*), but believe that this differs from the above both in meaning and etymology. Nothing is more common in the manuscripts than the confusion of *tio* and *cio*, and in all cases we have followed the true orthography as shown in the best Latin inscriptions. It must be remembered that one good Latin inscription is more valuable in determining the correct spelling of a word than a host of manuscripts.

The entire eight books of the Gallic war have been given. The last four are intended for exercises in sight translation; here also the indication of every new word will be found very helpful.

The bases of grammatical reference are the grammars of Allen and Greenough, Gildersleeve, and Harkness.

In the preparation of this book much help has been derived from the German editions of Kraner and Holder, from Duruy's

“History of Rome,” from Rüstow’s “Heerwesen und Kriegführung Caesars,” from which the “Roman Art of War” has been chiefly taken, and from various sources, which it would be vain to attempt to acknowledge. Credit is due to Profs. F. J. Miller and Lewis Stuart, Dr. George Scott, Dr. Hanns Oertel, and Mr. F. L. Palmer, for many favors. The authors would express thanks to Prof. Isaac B. Burgess, who has read the advance sheets and given many valuable suggestions.

That our work has many faults we are as fully aware as the severest critic can be, and we will receive gratefully all suggestions and corrections which may make it more efficient in imparting interest and help in the study of Caesar.

WILLIAM RAINEY HARPER.  
HERBERT CUSHING TOLMAN.

NEW HAVEN, Feb. 1, 1891.

## TABLE OF CONTENTS.

---

GENERAL INTRODUCTION :	PAGES
Life of Caesar. — Caesar as a writer. — Description of Gaul. — Topography of Gaul. — Description of Germany. — Britain. — Druidism. — Roman Art of War . . . . .	1-49
INDUCTIVE STUDIES . . . . .	51-64
EIGHT BOOKS OF THE GALLIC WAR . . . . .	65-319
BIBLIOGRAPHY . . . . .	320
IDIOMS . . . . .	321-323
NOTES . . . . .	325-377
EXERCISES IN LATIN COMPOSITION . . . . .	379-391
WORD LISTS . . . . .	393-401
CLASSIFICATION OF WORDS . . . . .	401-412
GENERAL VOCABULARY . . . . .	413-433
SPECIAL VOCABULARY TO BOOK EIGHT . . . . .	434-437
GEOGRAPHICAL INDEX . . . . .	439-498
INDEX OF PROPER NAMES . . . . .	499-502

## LIST OF MAPS.

	FACING PAGE
GAUL (double page) . . . . .	65
HELVETIORUM CLADES . . . . .	87
ARIOVISTI CLADES . . . . .	109
AD AXONAM PUGNA . . . . .	119
NERVIORUM CLADES . . . . .	133
ADUATUCORUM OPPIDUM . . . . .	135
IN BRITANNIAM TRANSGRESSUS . . . . .	175
GERGOVIA . . . . .	263
ALESIA . . . . .	277

## LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS.

	PAGE
Bust of Caesar in Vatican . . . . .	3
Bust of Caesar in National Museum at Naples . . . . .	7
Bust of Caesar in British Museum . . . . .	9
Bust of Caesar in Campo Santo at Pisa . . . . .	11
Bust of Caesar, Pontifex Maximus, in Vatican . . . . .	14
Gallic Axes and Arms . . . . .	18
Gallic Trumpet . . . . .	19
Gallic Coins . . . . .	19-20
Roman Soldier in Armor . . . . .	30
Pilum, Gladius, Sarcinae, Scutum . . . . .	32
Aquilifer, Vexillum, Signum . . . . .	33
Buccina, Tuba . . . . .	34
Ballista, Catapulta . . . . .	47
Testudo, Aries . . . . .	48
Gallic Helmets . . . . .	85
Tabernaculum . . . . .	99
Miles Levis Armaturae . . . . .	103
Agger (Perspective View) . . . . .	122
Agger (Ground Plan) . . . . .	123
Pons in Rheno factus . . . . .	169
Manipulus . . . . .	233
Murus Gallicus Intercisus . . . . .	250
Muri Gallici imus Ordo . . . . .	251
Muri Gallici Adspectus . . . . .	251
Munimentorum Forma . . . . .	252
Munimenta Intercisa oblique conspecta . . . . .	254
Gergovia a Castris Minoribus conspecta . . . . .	259
Alesia a Castris a Vercassivellauno oppressis conspecta . . . . .	276
Cervus . . . . .	278
Cippi superne Visi . . . . .	279
Stimulus . . . . .	279
Lilium . . . . .	280
Munimenta Romanorum in Planitie facta a Latere conspecta . . . . .	280
Vallum, Loricula, Fossa, Turres, Pontes, Porta . . . . .	296
Uxellodunum, ad Occidentem Spectans . . . . .	307
Fons cum Romanorum Operibus maiorib. Modulis Descript. . . . .	311
Fons cum Operibus Romanorum a Latere conspectus . . . . .	311

# GENERAL INTRODUCTION.

---

## LIFE OF CAIUS JULIUS CAESAR.

The foremost man of all this world.

SHAKESPEARE.<sup>1</sup>

Great Julius, whom now all the world admires.

MILTON.<sup>2</sup>

**1. Introduction.** — In the study of history, events naturally group themselves around some centre, — an important war or a decisive battle, a great empire or a powerful city, a distinguished family or an illustrious man. Caius Julius Caesar was such a centre, —

“velut inter ignes  
Luna minores.”<sup>3</sup>

Marius, Sylla, Pompey, and Cicero were great in particular parts; Caesar was full orb'd. He was orator and general, Rome's peerless master of prose and her greatest statesman. From the study of his character and achievements is to be obtained the clew to guide the student through the labyrinth of Rome's civil war (B. c. 133–131), and the best preparation for the study of the regal, republican, and imperial history of the “greatest of the nations.”

**2. Events preceding Caesar's Birth. The Gracchi. Marius.** — The first part of the second century before Christ was conspicuous for the wars of conquest. Hispania (Spain), Macedonia, Achaia, Asia, and Africa were conquered between B. c. 200 and B. c. 133. While the State had been greatly enriched, the plebeians were kept poor. The pat-

<sup>1</sup> Jul. Caesar, iv. 3.

<sup>2</sup> Par. Reg. iii. 39.

<sup>3</sup> Hor. Od. I. xii. “As the moon among lesser stars.”

ricians had all the property as well as all the power. The plebeians did the hard work and the greater part of the fighting; the patricians held the offices and enjoyed the fruits of victory. Then came the civil wars. The Gracchi brought forward wise laws intended to alleviate the gross injustice of the times, but a violent death was the "guerdon of their toil." For Rome, corrupt and misgoverned, the crisis came in the war with Jugurtha. The success of Caius Marius in this war (B. C. 106) was a triumph for the party of the people. The same general's success in driving back the Cimbri and Teutones (B. C. 102, 101) added to his influence and to that of the party which he represented. Marius, however, was more successful as soldier than as statesman. Caesar's boyhood and youth were passed while the great struggle was going on between the popular and patrician parties, headed respectively by Marius and Sylla.

**3. Ancestry.** — The Caesars were an ancient and aristocratic family, which for eight generations had been prominent in the commonwealth. They were a branch of the Julian Gens (*Gens Julia*), claiming descent from *Iulus*, son of Aeneas.<sup>1</sup>

**4. Birth.** — Caius Julius Caesar (GAIUS IULIUS CAESAR) was born July 12, B. C. 100,<sup>2</sup> six years after his illustrious contemporaries Pompey and Cicero.

**5. Education.** — Caesar received the usual education of the patrician youth and was especially apt in Greek and grammar.

**6. Home Life.** — The early home life was quiet and pleasant. His mother Aurelia was a fine example of the Roman matron and exerted a strong influence over her son. His love and reverence for her are honorable to both.

**7. Personal Appearance.** — Caesar's personal appearance in youth is thus described by Suetonius: "A tall, slight, handsome youth, with

<sup>1</sup> Vergil elaborated this tradition in the *Aeneid*.

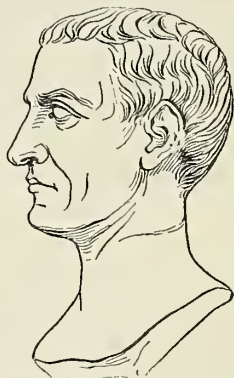
<sup>2</sup> Mommsen argues for B. C. 102.



dark piercing eyes, a sallow complexion, large nose, lips full, features refined and intellectual, neck sinewy and thick. . . . He was particular about his appearance, used the bath frequently, and attended carefully to his hair. His dress was arranged with studied negligence."<sup>1</sup>

**8. Caesar's First Office.** (B. C. 87.) — At the age of thirteen, Caesar was appointed priest of Jupiter (*flamen dialis*) through the influence of Marius.

**9. Marriage with Cornelia.** (B. C. 83). — In B. C. 84 Caesar's father died. In the following year Caesar married Cornelia, daughter of Cinna, at that time the leader of the Marian party. This alliance bound him more closely to the party of the people. On the other hand it aroused against him the hatred of Sylla, who, returning victorious from the war with Mithridates, made himself master of Rome. Sylla ordered him to divorce Cornelia, which Caesar refused to do. This necessitated an exile among the Sabines until friends secured his pardon. Suetonius tells us that Sylla exclaimed to the patricians interceding for him, "The youth for whom you plead will one day overthrow the aristocracy, . . . for in this young Caesar there are many Mariuses."<sup>2</sup>



FROM BUST IN VATICAN.  
AGE, 35 YEARS.

**10. Caesar, a Soldier.** — Though free to appear in Rome, Caesar considered it advisable to go to Asia. Here he laid the foundation of his military knowledge, serving with distinction under Marcus Minucius Thermus. In the siege of Mytilene he was honored with a "civic crown"<sup>3</sup> for saving the life of a fellow soldier.

<sup>1</sup> Quoted by Froude, Caesar, Chap. 8.

<sup>2</sup> Sulla proclamavit: "eum, quem incolumem tanto opere cuperent, quandoque optimatium partibus, quas secum defendissent, exitis futurum; nam Caesari multos Marios inesse." — Suetonius, Div. Julius, i. 1.

<sup>3</sup> The civic crown (*corona civica*) was a chaplet of oak leaves. To obtain one was

**11. Caesar, an Orator.** — Caesar returned to Rome on hearing of Sylla's death (B. C. 78). The next year he conducted the prosecution against Dolabella under charges of extortion while Proconsul of Macedonia. So skilfully was the evidence massed and so eloquent the plea of the young orator that Dolabella, though defended by Hortensius, the greatest advocate of the day, would have failed of acquittal but for the influence of the senatorial party and the partisanship of senatorial judges. This case gained for Caesar a wide reputation for eloquence and forensic power, which led soon after to an invitation from the Archaicans to conduct a similar case against Caius Antonius. Discerning his abilities in this direction, Caesar went to Rhodes and studied under Apollonius Molon, the skilful orator and still more skilful teacher of oratory.

**12. The Pirate Episode.** — When Caesar was on his way to Rhodes (B. C. 76), he was captured by pirates, who demanded twenty talents for his release. At this Caesar laughed, and saying he would give fifty (*i. e.* about fifty thousand dollars), added that when at liberty he would return and crucify every man of them. He kept his word.

**13. Caesar, Military Tribune** (B. C. 74). — After a short stay at Rhodes, Caesar went to Asia, where, having raised a small body of troops, he displayed ability as commander in some successful encounters in Caria with the troops of Mithridates. Being elected Pontiff the same year (B. C. 74) he returned to Rome, where, shortly after, the people elected him Military Tribune. This was his first election to office by the votes of the people.

**14. Caesar, Quaestor** (B. C. 68). — The six years following (B. C. 74–68) were important. Pompey, hitherto a strong supporter of the senatorial party, had been estranged, and was now engaged in strengthening the party of the people. The power of the tribunes was restored, judges were no longer selected only from the senate, and the Syllan constitution was repealed (B. C. 70). To the success of all these measures Caesar con-

a very great and a very rare honor. See Article *Corona Civica* in Smith's Dict. Class. Antiq.

tributed largely by his eloquence. He served as Quaestor during the year B. C. 68, in which year, his aunt Julia, the widow of Marius, and his wife Cornelia, daughter of Cinna, died. He pronounced funeral orations for both, and took occasion to extol the former chiefs of the popular party; busts of Marius were carried in the funeral procession of Julia, and the people loudly applauded alike the eulogies and the courage of Caesar. These religious duties performed, he went to Further Spain on his official duty as Quaestor.

**15. Caesar's Marriage with Pompeia.**—The year following (B. C. 67), Caesar married Pompeia, and was thus brought into more intimate relations with Pompey, her cousin. During the next two years he cordially supported Pompey's measures and the Gabinian and Manilian laws, by which almost absolute power was given to that great leader.

**16. Caesar, Curule Aedile.**—In B. C. 65, Caesar was Curule Aedile. To amuse the people with public shows, to adorn the city with new public buildings, monuments, and the like, were the chief duties and opportunities of this office. The lavish magnificence of Caesar dazzled the people, and his consequent popularity was unbounded.

**17. Caesar, Pontifex Maximus.**—Two years later (B. C. 63) he was elected Pontifex Maximus, which office placed him at the head of the State religion. Doubtless his election was due in great measure to his popularity; still he did not hesitate to use large sums of money in bribery. On the morning of this election, he told his mother Aurelia, as she affectionately wished him success, that he would come back Pontifex Maximus or be brought back a corpse.

**18. Conspiracy of Catiline.**—In December of this year, Caesar opposed as unconstitutional the execution of those convicted of participation in the conspiracy of Catiline, advocating however their perpetual imprisonment. This has been taken to imply Caesar's complicity in the conspiracy; but inherent probability, the public testimony of Cicero, and the utter failure of efforts to convict are all in his favor, and the prin-

eiple that a man is innocent until he is proved guilty should hold in history as in law.

**19. Caesar, Praetor.** — During the year of his Praetorship (B. C. 62), Caesar had many opportunities of exhibiting the qualities of coolness, courage, and self-reliance. It was in this year that a serious charge brought against the reputation of his wife Pompeia led to the now famous saying, "Caesar's wife must be above suspieion."

**20. Caesar, Proprætor** (B. C. 61). — On the expiration of his term as Praetor, Caesar was in debt to the extent of two hundred and fifty million sesterces (about ten million dollars). Before he was allowed to leave Rome for Further Spain, he was compelled to pay a considerable part of this debt. This he did with money obtained from Crassus, who had confidence in the political promise of his creditor. In Spain, Caesar found himself for the first time in command of a Roman army, and soon gave evidence of his ability to handle troops and manage provincials. His successes were voted a triumph by the senate, and his soldiers proclaimed him Imperator. If he sent large sums of money to Rome, he did not forget to keep a considerable amount for his own use.

**21. Caesar, Consul** (B. C. 59.) — A poet interprets the spirit of Caesar's ambition thus, —

"Better be first, he said, in a little Iberian village  
Than be second in Rome;"<sup>1</sup>

but manifestly he thought it best to be first in Rome. After an absence of about a year in Spain, Caesar returned and offered himself as candidate for the consulship. He was elected, and entered upon the duties of his office in B. C. 59. His colleague was Marcus Bibulus, who had been associated with him in the Aedileship and Praetorship.

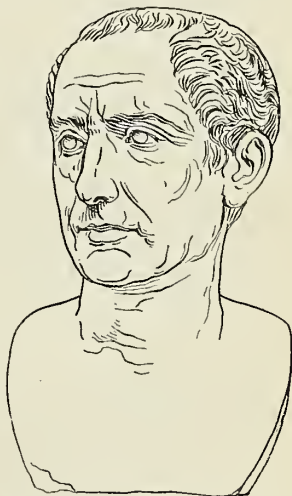
**22. The First Triumvirate.** — After his election Caesar, Crassus, and Pompey entered into an alliance for personal, political, and in their

<sup>1</sup> Longfellow's Courtship of Miles Standish.

thought patriotic purposes, which is commonly known as the "First Triumvirate." Crassus and Pompey were friends to Caesar but not to each other; Caesar brought them together. Pompey married Caesar's daughter Julia, which served to strengthen the bond of their common interest. Caesar married Calpurnia, daughter of Calpurnius Piso, his successor in the consulship. During Caesar's consulship all classes of the people were benefited, abuses at home and abroad were corrected, and his administration was both successful and popular. Caesar was practically sole consul, for Bibulus' service consisted chiefly in lending his colleague the "helpful aid of his opposition."

**23. Caesar, Proconsul (B. C. 58).** — The senate, in order to limit Caesar's already too great influence, had assigned the forests and public lands in Italy for proconsular provinces. The people, however, passed the Vatinian law, which gave to Caesar the government of Gallia Cisalpina and Illyricum for five years, with three legions. The senate, in hope of thus getting rid of him, of its own accord added Gallia Transalpina and another legion.

**24. Campaigns in Gaul (B. C. 58-51).** — Early in the spring of B. C. 58, Caesar set out from Rome and entered upon that career of conquest vividly described in his "Commentaries on the Gallic war," the study of which we are about to take up. The task before him was not an easy one. Rome had good cause to remember the men of Gaul. Many times since the battle of Allia and the sack of Rome had they struck terror to Roman hearts. Caesar's arrival in Gaul happened at a critical time in the history of the Gallic tribes, much disturbed among themselves and threatened by the Germans. Caesar by his clearsighted-



FROM BUST IN NATIONAL MUSEUM  
AT NAPLES. AGE, ABOUT 40.

ness, unfaltering confidence in himself, decision of character, and marvellous readiness for every emergency, together with the discipline of his armies, made of apparently insuperable difficulties aids to the most brilliant success. In his first campaign the Helvetians and the Germans under Ariovistus were conquered, and central Gaul brought into subjection. The military and executive ability seen in the governor of Spain were more conspicuous in the governor of Gaul. One of his most remarkable traits — that which most amazed the Gauls and in later times most excited the admiration of his distinguished admirer and imitator, Napoleon — was the rapidity with which he resolved and the almost greater rapidity with which he executed his resolves. A good illustration of the character of Caesar in which all the qualities just mentioned are exhibited is thus related by the good Captain in Longfellow's "Courtship of Miles Standish."

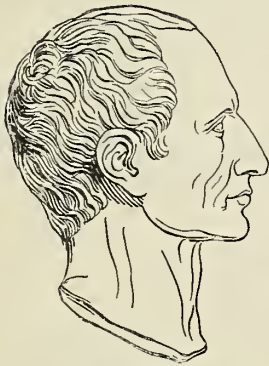
"Now do you know what he did on a certain occasion in Flanders,  
 When the rear-guard of his army retreated, the front giving way too,  
 And the immortal Twelfth Legion was crowded so closely together  
 There was no room for their swords? Why, he seized a shield from a soldier,  
 Put himself straight at the head of his troops, and commanded the captains,  
 Calling on each by his name, to order forward the ensigns;  
 Then to widen the ranks, and give more room for their weapons;  
 So he won the day, the battle of something — or other.  
 That's what I always say; if you wish a thing to be well done,  
 You must do it yourself, you must not leave it to others."<sup>1</sup>

25. **At Lucca** (B. c. 56.) — In B. c. 56, Caesar invited Pompey and Crassus to meet him in Lucca. The leading men of Rome were present. Among these were two hundred senators and so large a crowd of distinguished officials that one hundred and fifty lieutenants are said to have been seen in the streets of the town. The programme here arranged included the following: Pompey and Crassus to be consuls the following year; Pompey to be governor of Spain for five years; Crassus to have Syria for his proconsular province; Caesar to have his term of office in Gaul extended to ten years, and thereafter to be consul.

<sup>1</sup> For incident here recorded, see De Bel. Gal. ii. 25.

**26. Organizing Gaul (B. C. 50).** For eight years Caesar was busy in Gaul. He found it easier to conquer the Gallic tribes than to keep them in subjection. Finally he succeeded in convincing them that further resistance would be useless, and represented to the chiefs the great advantages of becoming a part of the Roman republic. Admiration of Caesar, together with the strength of his personality influenced the chiefs to determine upon peace and friendly terms with Rome. Caesar now busied himself in organizing the new territory, fully expecting on his return to Rome at the expiration of his command to enter upon a second consulship according to the terms of the Lucca agreement.

**27. Caesar and Pompey.** — Crassus perished in a battle against the Parthians (B. C. 53), leaving Caesar and Pompey joint administrators of the Lucca programme. Caesar's success in Gaul, however, excited the jealousy of Pompey.



FROM BUST IN BRITISH MUSEUM. AGE, ABOUT 45.

The senatorial party, too, had gratified Pompey's vanity by their attitude toward his appointment as sole consul in B. C. 52. In B. C. 50 matters had gone so far that the consul Marcellus, doubtless at Pompey's instigation, proposed in the senate that Caesar give up his command in November of that year. This the tribune Curio vetoed. Caesar, hearing of the movement against him, was not dismayed. January 1, B. C. 49, a letter written by him was read in the senate, in which he expressed readiness to lay aside his military

power if Pompey would do the same. After a stormy session, a resolution was passed to the effect that unless Caesar disbanded his army he would be declared an enemy of the republic. The tribunes vetoed this resolution, but their veto was disregarded.

On January 7 the senate resolved that the consuls provide for the safety of the republic. This was a proclamation of martial law. The crisis had come. Marcus Antonius and Quintus Cassius, the tribunes

who advocated Caesar's interests, were driven from the senate and fled in disguise. Pompey proceeded to hold levies for raising an army, thinking that Caesar's soldiers were disaffected and that Caesar would not dare to offer resistance. Caesar, however, on learning the decree of the senate, addressed his soldiers frankly, protesting that he and his armies had served the State loyally for nine years, and had done much for the safety of the State and nothing to imperil it. The soldiers showed their unbounded affection and enthusiasm for their leader by volunteering to serve without pay.

**28. Beginning of the Civil War.**—Caesar forthwith crossed the Rubicon, the boundary of his province, to claim by force of arms the rights of which the senate sought to deprive him. At Rimini he met the expelled tribunes, and also envoys from Pompey who desired to gain time by a proposed conference. Caesar promptly dismissed these latter, throwing the blame of the civil war now begun on Pompey and the senate. As Caesar advanced, city after city yielded, and in three months he was master of Italy.

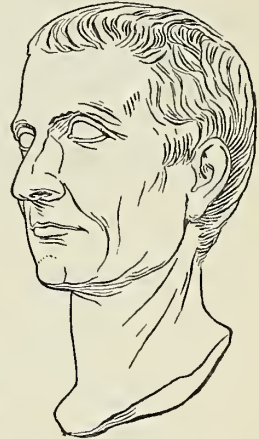
**29. The Feeling at Rome** (B. C. 48).—The events of the following year cannot be declared here. A letter from Cicero to Atticus (viii. 13), however, shows the popular feeling of the time:—

“Observe the man into whose hands we have fallen. How keen he is, how alert, how well prepared! By Jove, if he does not kill any one and spares the property of those who are so terrified, he will be in high favor. I talk with the tradesmen and farmers. They care for nothing but their lands and houses and money. They have gone right round. They fear the man they trusted and love the man they feared; and all this through our own blunders. I am sick to think of it.”

**30. Battle of Pharsalus.**—After various contests, not always in Caesar's favor, a decisive battle was fought at Pharsalus in Thessaly, August 9, B. C. 48. Pompey's forces far outnumbered Caesar's; but effeminate nobles, the flower of Pompey's army, were no match for Caesar's veterans. By this victory Caesar became practically master of Rome.



**31. Death of Pompey.** — Pompey was soon after murdered in Egypt, whither he had fled after the battle. In the death of his great rival Caesar had no part and took no pleasure. When the head of the murdered man was brought to him by those who hoped thus to win his favor, he turned away in horror. Not unlikely he then recalled Pompey only as Rome's idol and Caesar's friend. It may be said here that Caesar seems to have accepted civil war not because he delighted in it, but because it was inevitable. Humanity and self-defence compelled him to the issue. He became master of Rome not by invading the capital and slaughtering his personal enemies, but by meeting hostile forces on the field of battle at a distance from the city.



FROM BUST IN CAMPO SANTO  
AT PISA. AGE, ABOUT 45.

**32. Caesar in Egypt and Pontus.** — Caesar, following Pompey to Egypt, was detained by certain disputes concerning the succession to the throne of that country. He then proceeded into Pontus against Pharnaces, son of Mithridates. August 2, B. C. 47, a battle was fought near Zela, where Caesar gained an easy victory. His dispatch to the senate after this battle was the famous "Veni, Vidi, Vici."<sup>1</sup>

**33. Return to Rome.** — Returning to Rome, Caesar found great tasks awaiting him. Dictator now and absolute, he did not use office or power for unworthy purposes or for personal ends. His aim was to restore public confidence and credit.

**34. Battle of Thapsus.** — While Caesar was thus engaged, his enemies Cato and Scipio collected a large army in Africa, which was defeated in the decisive battle of Thapsus. This battle was fought April 6, B. C. 46, and at once ended the war and the hopes of the senatorial party.

<sup>1</sup> I came, I saw, I conquered.

**35. Caesar's Triumphs.** — Returning from Africa, Caesar celebrated with characteristic lavishness and splendor four triumphs, — one for his victories in Gaul, another for those in Egypt, the third for Zela, and the fourth for the Juba victories in Africa. No triumph of course was given for victories in civil war. To celebrate these triumphs there were splendid banquets, still more splendid entertainments in the circus and amphitheatre, and a generous distribution of corn and money. Caesar furnished “bread and circuses” (*panem et circos*) without stint. The forty days of thanksgiving decreed by the senate were made such to the holiday-loving Romans by the seemingly careless but really purposed extravagance of the man who had just been made dictator for ten years.

**36. Caesar's Reforms.** — Caesar now gave himself to the work of reform with zeal, energy, and wisdom. The laws which had been passed in his first consulship (*Leges Juliae*) were now enforced. The calendar, heretofore in the hands of the pontifices and now three months in advance of the real time, was corrected.<sup>1</sup> This reform was a benefit not only to his country but to the whole civilized world, and the Julian calendar was in use for nearly sixteen hundred years. He improved the personnel of the senate by removing all persons convicted of bribery or fraud, and by supplying their places with men of merit. The membership of this body was also greatly increased. This increase may have been partly due to a desire on Caesar's part to reward those who had proved themselves faithful to his interests, but probably more to a wise and really conservative view of “the needs of the times.” All questions of importance were to be submitted to the senate. This careful consideration bestowed upon the calendar and senate he gave to every thing affecting the public welfare.

**37. Battle of Munda** (March 17, B. C. 45). — While engaged in these plans and measures, Caesar was called to Spain to quell a formidable insurrection instigated by the two sons of Pompey, Cneius and Sex-

<sup>1</sup> For example August 9, the date of the battle of Pharsalus in the corrected calendar is June 6.

tus. It was the end of the year B. C. 46 when Caesar set out, but not until March 17 of the following year was the decisive battle at Munda fought. Caesar's troops in this battle were at first driven back; defeat seemed inevitable, but the day was retrieved when the great Dictator in person rallied the broken lines and led them back to victory.

The Pompeian party was now utterly and forever crushed, and Caesar's military career ended. After settling affairs in Spain, Caesar returned to Italy in October. Many honors were now conferred upon him. He was made Imperator for life, and nominated Pater Patriae; the month Quinctilis received the new name Iulius (July); his head appeared on the new coinage; he was proclaimed a god.

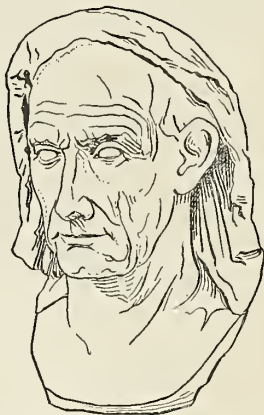
**38. Caesar's Ambitions.**—Caesar was ambitious, but nobly so. Thus far he had used his position for the advantage of his country. His great offices were used for large service to the State. His plans for promoting the welfare of the citizens, correcting abuses in legislation and administration at home and in the provinces, for beautifying the city and extending the Empire were not to be completed in the life-time of any single man, and it did not require the prophet's vision to see that Caesar's new order of things would be followed by anarchy if no provision were made for its continuance and completion during his life-time. It was the hereditary element in kingship which was attractive to the statesman of large and enlightened views and purposes. The anarchy following his death and the power seized by a rude and rapacious soldiery under the elective system are proofs alike of the great Dictator's patriotism and foresight in seeking the kingly office. On the feast of the Lupercalia (Feb. 15, B. C. 44), his colleague Antony publicly offered him a royal diadem. The disposition of the people, however, was such that Caesar declined it, and saying that the Romans had no King but Jove, ordered it to be placed on the head of the statue of Jupiter Capitolinus.

**39. Conspiracy.**—Many great and important changes were wrought by Caesar and in a marvellously short space of time. While busy with these a conspiracy was formed against his life. The leading spirits in this plot were Cassius and Brutus; their associates probably did not number

a hundred in all. "The conspiracy began in spite," says Mr. Browning, "and continued in folly."

**40. Caesar's Death** (March 15, B. C. 44). — The story of his murder is graphically told by Shakspeare, and is familiar. Caesar fell in the senate-house at the feet of the statue of Pompey on the Ides (15th) of March, B. C. 44. His murderers were men on whom he had conferred many and great favors. Men who could receive offices and gifts from the great and generous Cæsar and treacherously conspire to murder their benefactor might pretend to, but could never have been animated by, a noble patriotism. So perished the greatest of Romans, — one of the greatest men, if not the very greatest man, of all antiquity: Caesar was great in planning and accomplishment; great as statesman, orator, soldier, historian; great by natural power and acquisition; great in thought and action; princeliest among his fellows, the admiration of all succeeding times.

"Truly a wonderful man was Caius Julius Caesar."



FROM BUST IN VATICAN. CAESAR  
REPRESENTED AS PONTIFEX MAXIMUS.  
AGE, ABOUT 55.

## 41. Principal Events in the Life of Caesar.

B. C.

100. Caesar's birth (July 12).<sup>1</sup>  
 87. Flamen Dialis.  
 84. Death of Caesar's father.  
 83. Marries Cornelia.  
 80-78. Serves with the army in Asia.  
 77. Prosecutes Dolabella unsuccessfully.  
 76-75. Studies oratory at Rhodes.  
 74. Military tribune.  
 68. Quaestor.  
 67. Marries Pompeia.  
 65. Curule Aedile.  
 63. Pontifex Maximus (Catiline's Conspiracy).  
 62. Praetor.  
 61. Propraetor in Spain.  
 60. First Triumvirate formed.  
 59. Consul. Marries Calpurnia.  
 58. Proconsul in Gaul: *First Campaign*: He conquers the Helvetii and Ariovistus.  
 57. *Second Campaign*: He conquers the Belgae, including the Nervii.  
 56. The Triumvirate meet at Lucca. *Third Campaign*: He conquers the Veneti and Aquitani.  
 55. *Fourth Campaign*: He conquers

B. C.

- the Usipetes, Germans, etc., and crosses into Britain.  
 54. *Fifth Campaign*: Second Invasion of Britain.  
 53. *Sixth Campaign*: He subdues the rebellious states of Gaul.  
 52. *Seventh Campaign*: He checks a second insurrection of the Gauls under Vercingetorix.  
 51. *Eighth Campaign*: The whole region is subdued and made subject to Rome.  
 50. Ninth year of command. He organizes the newly acquired territory. Breaks openly with Pompey.  
 49. Crosses the Rubicon. Civil war begun.  
 48. Conquers Pompey at Pharsalus.  
 47. Puts down rebellion in Egypt. Subdues Pharnaces.  
 46. Defeats the senatorial party at Thapsus. Appointed Dictator for ten years. Reforms the calendar.  
 45. Defeats the sons of Pompey at Munda. Imperator for life.  
 44. The conspiracy. Assassinated in the senate-house (March 15).

“Julius Caesar, whose remembrance yet  
 Lives in men's eyes, and will to ears and tongues  
 Be theme and hearing ever.”

SHAKESPEARE, *Cymbeline*, Act iii. Sc. i. lines 2-4.

<sup>1</sup> Mommsen, 102.

## CAESAR AS A WRITER.

42. The style of Caesar is compared by Cicero to the unadorned simplicity of an ancient Greek statue. This opinion of one who was not in sympathy with Caesar may be regarded as exceeding praise. Cicero also remarks that this exquisite purity was obtained by constant study and a thorough knowledge of the Latin language. Caesar inserts no word but what has an important mission, without any regard to embellishment. A perfect equality of expression pervades his writings. The narrative is clear and easy.

43. The commentaries were doubtless hastily written on the spot where the battles were fought, and were mere outlines which he perhaps hoped some day to fill out. Therefore we admire all the more the purity and neatness of Caesar's style, which have not been surpassed by any Roman writer, and easily pardon a deficiency of vigor.

44. The writings of Caesar which remain are seven books of the Gallic and three of the Civil war. The eighth book of the Gallic war was written by Aulus Hirtius, who was personally present with Caesar. Besides the works that have come down to us Caesar wrote other books, of which only fragments remain.

45. As an orator Cicero places him among the first, and Quintilian says that he spoke with the same spirit with which he fought, adding that if he had given his attention to the arts of peace, he would have rivalled Cicero in eloquence.

## GAUL.

46. The comparative study of language throws a light upon the origin of the early inhabitants of Gaul. From the great family to which Hindu, Persian, Roman, Greek, and Teuton belonged, the Celts have separated. As the Vedas of India reflect the primitive creed of the

Aryans, so the system of the Druids undoubtedly must contain an impress, however small, of the religious thought of that ancient people.

**47. The language** of the Celts is not lost, for it lives in literature and is still spoken in the heart of Brittany, Wales, and in the north of Scotland and in Ireland. Some standing ruins give evidence of monuments that have passed away.

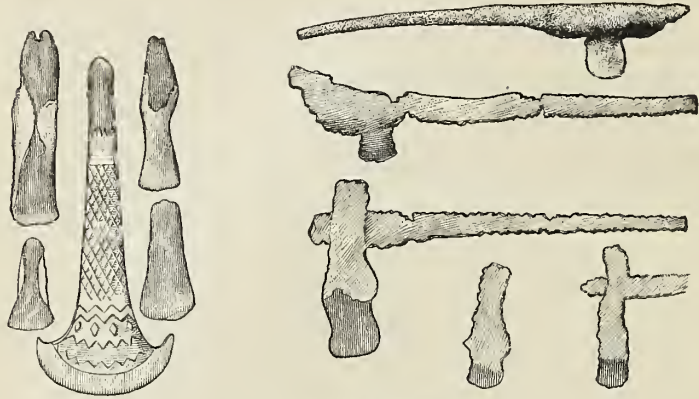
**48. The Celtic race** had diffused itself over the valleys and hills of France, including the western districts of Germany and Switzerland, and from thence occupied the southern part of England. In spite of the difference in language and manners (B. G. i. 1), there seems to have been a bond of union which joined the tribes in mutual interest.

**49. All ancient writers** agree that Gaul was well peopled. Agriculture undoubtedly was practised. "Gallic oxen especially were of good repute in Italy," so Varro tells us. Plautus mentions the "Gallic ponies." Varro again says: "It is not every race that is suited for the business of herdsmen; neither the Bastulians nor the Turdulians are fit for it. The Celts are the best, especially as respects beasts for riding and burden."

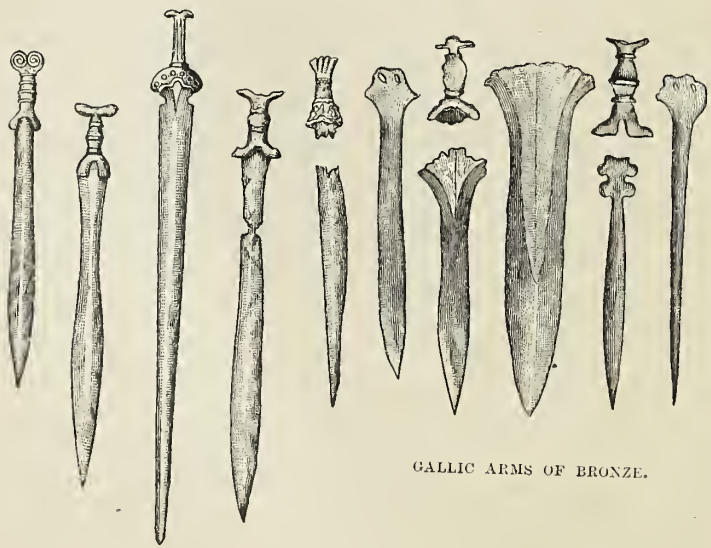
**50. The art of building** vessels had attained great progress among the Celts. They seem to be the first nation that regularly navigated the Atlantic ocean. Although in Caesar's time they used in the Channel a sort of portable leathern skiff, yet the peoples on the west coast, and especially the Veneti, sailed in large clumsy ships, propelled by leathern sails, and not by oars.

**51. Marine fishing** and the collection of the eggs of sea-birds were prosecuted on such an extensive scale that it probably gave rise to the statement in Caesar's time that "certain tribes at the mouth of the Rhine subsisted on fish and birds' eggs." The tolls of the river and seaports were important factors of commerce in certain cantons, as those of the Haedui and Veneti. The peculiar skill of the Celts in imitating any model and executing any instructions is observed by Caesar.

52. The implements of the Gauls for a long time were only stone axes bound to wooden handles by leathern bands, flint arrow-heads and



GALLIC STONE AXES.



GALLIC ARMS OF BRONZE.



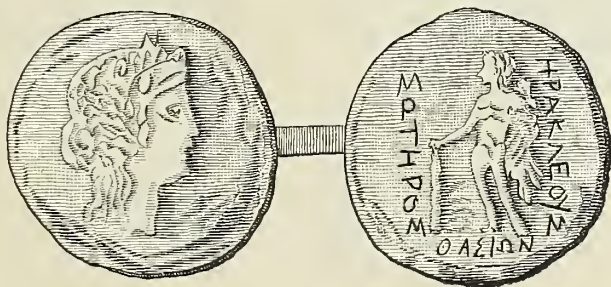
knives. Arms of bronze and iron are of a later period, and belonged to those tribes which were the nearest to Italy. Specimens of these earliest weapons are given.

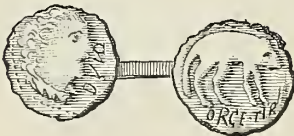
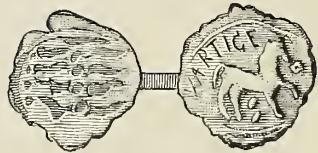
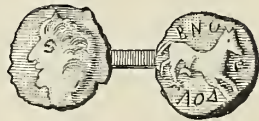
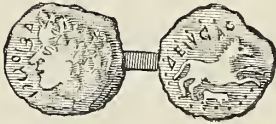
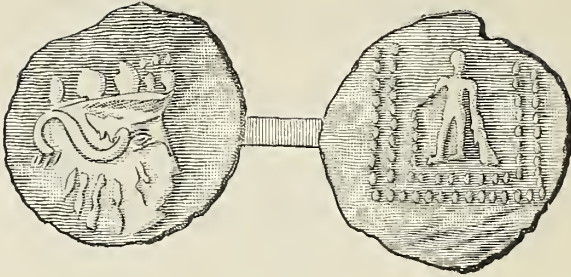


GALLIC TRUMPET.

53. The art of procuring metals had been developed to such an extent that miners played an important part in the sieges. The character of the country refutes the opinion prevalent among the Romans, that Gaul was one of the richest gold regions in the world.

54. The arts exhibit a remarkably low state when compared with the mechanical skill in the use of metals. The party-colored and brilliant ornaments show a lack of proper taste which the Gallic coins confirm with their simple, curious, and rude representations. On a great number is seen a wild boar or a horse without bridle, the symbol of liberty and war. The magnificent staters of Philip II. of Thasos were imitated, but in unskilled hands they lost all beauty of design. These coins of Macedon, however, gave an impulse toward producing varied pieces of curious types on which the likenesses of ambitious chiefs were stamped. Specimens of Gallic coins are given. See Illustrations.





**55. The art of poetry** on the other hand was highly valued by the Celts, and was intermingled with the religious and political institutions. Science and philosophy, although hampered by the theology of the country, received appreciation among them. The knowledge of writing was confined to the priests. In Caesar's time the Greek writing was made use of, but in the southern districts the Latin was predominant. (B. G. i. 29. "In castris Helvetiorum tabulae repertae sunt litteris Graecis confectae." The documents written were not in the Greek *language* but in the Greek *characters*). The coins also show Greek writing.

**56. The clan-canton** was the basis of the constitution of the State, with its prince, its council of elders, and its freemen capable of bearing arms. In the time of Caesar this cantonal constitution still existed unaltered among the insular Celts, and in the northern cantons of the mainland. We cannot say that this Gallic clanship contained only those descended from a common ancestor, for Caesar (B. G. i. 18) tells us that Dumnorix, by his liberality, gained clients every day, hence introducing a foreign element into the clan. The general assembly held the supreme authority; the prince was bound to conform to its decrees; the common council, which numbered in certain clans six hundred members, appears to have the same importance as the Senate of Rome under the kings. A revolution had occurred, before the time of Caesar, among the Arverni, Haedui, Sequani, and Helvetii, which set aside the royal authority and gave the power into the hands of the nobility.

**57. Some words** which Caesar uses in his Commentaries would lead us to suppose that in some cases a great council of entire Gaul assembled. However, we cannot take this to mean anything more than a confederate alliance, which Caesar, perhaps, interpreted as national unity.

**58. The assemblies** take precautions against hasty movements. "In the cantons," says Caesar, "which are considered the best regulated, it is a sacred law that he who learns anything of interest to the city should inform the magistrate of it, without telling it to any other person, since experience has shown that imprudent and uneducated men are often

alarmed by what is false, take extreme measures, and even go into crime. The magistrates conceal what is proper, and reveal to the multitude what they think is good for them to know. It is only in this assembly that public affairs are discussed.”

**59.** There were two classes, the nobles and the freemen. The nobles compelled the freemen, who were oppressed by debt, to borrow from them, and to give up their freedom, *de facto*, as debtors. It was the privilege of the nobility to surround themselves with a number of mounted servants called *ambacti*, and thus to form a state within a state. Resting upon the support of these troops the nobles could overthrow the legal power, and break down the commonwealth. If in a clan which contained eighty thousand men a single chief could muster ten thousand retainers, not counting the bondmen and the debtors, he easily became more powerful than the rest of the nobles. Thus the state could no longer preserve the old cantonal constitution, and the other nobles accordingly gave themselves over as clients to this more powerful one among his fellows.

**60.** The cavalry was the principal force in the military system of the Celtic people. Among the Belgae, and still more in Britain, the war-chariot appears with great efficiency. These warriors, on horseback and on foot, were formed from the nobility and its vassals. It is characteristic of their mode of fighting that at the moment of beginning a conflict with an enemy of which they made little account, they swore individually that they would keep aloof from house and home if their army should not charge at least twice through the enemy's line.

**61.** Caesar calls them *equites*, and this cavalry was much esteemed among the Roman legions. “When any war is declared all the nobles take arms and surround themselves with a number of servants and clients in proportion to their birth and their wealth.” Some of these clients dedicated their lives to their chief. They were called *soldurii* among the Aquitani. “The *soldurii* enjoy all the good things of life with those to whom they have consecrated themselves in friendship. If their chief dies, they

are unwilling to survive him, and slay themselves. It never has happened within the memory of man that one of those who had dedicated themselves to a chief by such an agreement refused to die with him." (B. G. iii. 22).

**62. The infantry** was far inferior to the cavalry. The large shield was the principal defensive and the long lance was the chief offensive weapon, preferred to the sword. A long line of wagons carried the baggage of the army, and a barricade of these wagons was made at night which poorly corresponded to the entrenched camp of the Romans. Certain cantons, as the Nervii, had infantry of exceptional efficiency, but these had no cavalry and perhaps were an immigrant German tribe, and not Celtic. "The Celt," says Caesar, "dares not face the German in battle." So unwarlike did Caesar consider the Celtic infantry that after having become acquainted with them in his first campaign, he never employed them again in connection with the Roman infantry.

**63. A Spirit of National unity** was manifesting itself in various ways and gaining strength with the decline of the individual cantons. Amid the feudal strife there were those who were willing to gain the independence of the nation at the cost of the independence of the several cantons.

**64. A league** of the Belgae we find in northeastern Gaul in Caesar's time. In central Gaul two parties were ambitious for the hegemony, the one led by the Haedui, the other by the Sequani. These confederacies subsisted side by side. The impulse of the nation toward unity found undoubtedly a sort of gratification in such unions as these.

**65. The character** of this union was of the loosest kind. The Belgian confederacy alone seems to have been bound firmly together. The contests for the leadership made disruptions in every other league.

**66. The condition** of women in Gaul indicates an advance in civilization. They were free in their choice of a husband, and brought a dowry with them. The man advanced an equal amount. The whole, with

whatever increase there might be, went to the survivor. (B. G. vi. 19). The husband however had the power of life and death over both wife and children. No son could address his father in public until he was of an age to bear arms.

67. "The funerals," says Caesar, "considering the civilization of the Gauls, are magnificent and costly; and they cast into the fire all things which they think are dear in this life; and a little while before this time, slaves and clients, who surely had been loved by the dead, were burned together with them." (B. G. vi. 19).

68. The estimate of human life was even lower among the Gauls than among the Romans. The stories of the old Gallic customs show the great indifference which the people felt toward their own life and that of others. Tilting by way of sport, fighting for life at feasts, selling themselves to death for a fixed sum of money or a number of casks of wine, accepting the fatal blow with willingness on a shield before the eyes of the Gallic people (a practice which outdid even the Roman gladiatorial shows) were frequent among them.

69. In regard to their dress and customs, Diodorus says: "Some of them wear coats of iron-mail, others fight naked. Instead of swords they wear great sabres suspended on the right side by chains of iron or brass. Some have gold or silver girdles. They also use pikes, the heads of which are a cubit long and about two palms broad. Their swords are scarcely less in size than the javelin of other nations, and the *sauniae* (heavy javelins) which they hurl have blades longer than their swords. Of these some are straight, others curved in order to tear the flesh and enlarge the wound when drawn out."

70. The dress of the Gauls differed from that of the Romans. They wore breeches tightly fitting on the legs, called *braccae*. A tunic covered the upper portion of their bodies, over which was thrown a *sagum*, a band of cloth light in summer, and thick in winter. On their feet they wore wooden-soled shoes (*gallicae*).

**71. The personal appearance** of the Gauls Diodorus again describes: "They are tall, possessing fair skin and light hair. Some of them shave their beard, while others allow it to grow long. They take their meals sitting on the skins of wolves and dogs. By their side are smoking caldrons and spits, on which are quarters of meat. The brave are honored by being offered the best morsels. Every stranger who comes to them is invited to the feast, and not until after the meal do they ask him who he is and what he wants. Then come long stories, for the Gauls desire to hear as well as see. These feasts, however, are often stained with blood; words beget quarrels; and as human life is despised, they challenge one another to single combat.

Their aspect is terrifying; they have loud rough voices, say little, and express themselves in riddles.

"A violent race," say the ancients, "who make war on mankind, Nature, and the gods. They shoot their arrows against heaven when it thunders; they take arms against the tempest; they march sword in hand upon overflowing rivers, or the ocean in its wrath."

#### RELIGION. (SEE DRUIDISM.)

#### TOPOGRAPHY OF GAUL.

**72. Free Gaul** (*Libera Gallia*), which Caesar refers to (B. G. i. 1), was that part not yet subdued by the Romans. The southern country had become a Roman province as early as 120 B. C., and to this conquered region Caesar gives the appellation *provincia*, or *provincia nostra*.

Ancient Gaul was bounded on the west by the Atlantic, on the north by the Rhine, on the east by the Rhine and the Alps, and on the south by the Pyrenees. The greatest breadth was 600 English miles, but much diminished toward each extremity, and its length was from 480 to 620 miles. It corresponds in some degree with the kingdom of France under Napoleon, which was 650 miles long from east to west and 560 broad from north to south. Three great nations comprised the Gauls, known as the Belgae, the Celtae, and the Aquitani. The Romans applied to the inhabitants of the country the general name Galli.

The Gauls proper, or Celtae, as they called themselves, occupied the central parts, extending from the Sequana (Seine) on the north to the Garumna (Garonne) on the south. The Belgae were in the north, between the Sequana and Lower Rhine. The Aquitani dwelt in the south, in the territory between the Garumna and Pyrenees, and intermingled with the Spaniards. Of these nations the Belgae were the bravest, but the Celtae the more numerous and indigenous. The Aquitani were of a race cognate to the Spanish tribes, while the Belgae were largely intermixed with the Germans.

The entire population of the country may have been about seven million.

**73. The Aquitani** probably spoke a language of Iberian origin. The Belgae and the Celtae used merely different dialects of the same language, the former Celtic mixed with German, the latter pure Celtic (B. G. i. 1).

## GERMANY.

**74. The science** of language establishes the German races in the great family to which belong the Hindu, Roman, and Celt. The Teutonic language lives in its representatives, although the original speech has passed away without a literature. It is with peculiar interest that we study the early history of the Germans, who were our progenitors; and it is a matter of regret that no more writings of Latin authors concerning them have come down to us.

**75. The Romans** first met the Germans in 113 B. C., when they came upon the Roman confines and made invasions in Gaul and northeru Italy, until checked by Marius. At that time they were under the appellation of Teutones and Cimbri.

**76. Upon the Celts** the Germans had exerted a pressure more violent even than that of the Romans on the south. All the land to the east of the Rhine was lost to the Celts. The Boii were wandering in search of a resting-place, and the land formerly possessed by the Helvetii was claimed by the Germans.



77. They were designated Germans when Caesar began his conquest of Gaul. It is not strange that the Celts being threatened with danger from two national foes should seek the one as a protection against the other.

78. Ariovistus attempted to establish the power of the nation which dwelt across the Danube in Gaul, but was defeated by Caesar and compelled to cross the Rhine (B. G. i. 53).

79. Caesar crossed the Rhine twice, not with the intention of conquest, but to prevent the frequent invasions of the Germans into Gaul.

80. Of the German tribes dwelling nearest the Rhine Caesar had an accurate knowledge, but the Suebi, he was told, inhabited the rest of Germany, and were divided into a hundred districts, which sent annually a thousand men each to seek booty. They lived by hunting and fishing, and devastated their borders to prevent foreign invasion. This stratagem was employed by the Germans on an extensive scale, and the neighborhood for miles was laid waste to guard against hostile attacks.

81. The appearance of the Germans, Roman writers declare, was as follows: A people with fierce blue eyes, yellow hair, strong frame, and gigantic height, who are inured to cold and hunger, but not heat and thirst; friendly, faithful, warlike, and ready to sacrifice life for liberty, dwell beyond the Rhine.

82. With the arts of civilization the Germans are represented to have been unacquainted; and they were ignorant of agriculture and the use of letters, living in the forests and supporting themselves by the chase.

83. The government was by the people in the majority of tribes, but some obeyed the limited authority of kings without giving up individual rights.

84. In battle it was the duty of a commander to be as valiant as possible, and the duty of his soldiers not to be inferior to him. It was considered a disgrace to survive the fall of the commander, but to protect him was the motive of every soldier.

85. The estimate of women was high among the German tribes, and polygamy was permitted only to princes in order to extend their influence in neighboring tribes.

86. They worshipped the sun, moon, earth, fire, and imaginary beings controlling the events of life, whose will the priests divined by mysteries. Their temples were caves of the earth.

### BRITAIN.

87. In regard to Britain little was known before the time of Caesar, who endeavored to reduce it, but his attempts were ineffectual. Ostorius in the reign of Claudius subjugated the southern part; and Agricola in the reign of Domitian increased the Roman sway there. Britain remained a Roman province until A. D. 426, when the assistance of the troops was demanded by Valentine III. against the Huns. The Britons under the Roman power became so effeminate that they were unable to drive away the inhabitants of the north; and the Saxons, who were invoked to aid them, subdued the country.

Britain abounded in Roman walls, traces of which remain to-day. The race to which the Britons belonged was the Celtic.

### DRUIDISM.

88. Druidism was an impress of the Indo-European faith. As the sky became the first deification of the Aryans (cf. Jupiter = *Dyaus pita*, *divus* = heavenly, hence divine, the old idea lingering on in "sub divo" out of doors), so the Druids first worshipped the stars, the sun, and the forces of nature, and these phenomena became personified. Bel became the sun-god; Kirk, the wind from the valley of the Rhone; Tarann, the thunder.

**89. The deities** of the Sanskrit pantheon lingered on in the system of the Druids. Much importance was attached to kine in both religions. In the Veda one of the most fertile sources of metaphors is the cow-stall; and likewise the forms of bulls and oxen obtained a great vogue in Druid worship. Many ceremonies, as religious bathing, etc., exhibit a striking correspondence.

**90. The Druids** formed a distinct caste by themselves, possessing great authority. They were regarded as the interpreters of the will of heaven and the diviners of the secrets of the earth.

**91. The power** of the Druids was supreme in the government of the state. According to Caesar they appointed the chief magistrates, and these acted as was agreeable to the will of the priests. Justice was administered by them, and whoever opposed their decisions was excommunicated.

**92. The Druids gave oral instruction** to pupils, who learned from them verses of hidden meaning amounting to many thousand; but they wrote nothing, and the songs of the early bards have passed away.

**93. A belief in a life beyond** the grave was taught by them. This was more clear and definite to them than the Latin faith in the vague existence of the Manes. The mistletoe was a sacred plant, the rarity of which caused it to become the holiest object in Nature. The oak was also venerated. Human sacrifices were frequently offered to the gods.

**94. Such is a brief description** of the religious system among the Gauls and Britons.

**95. Caesar refers to the Druids** in the following passages. Druides, vi. 14; Druidum, vi. 13 (twice); Druidibus, vi. 13; Druides, vi. 21; Druidibus, vi. 16, 18.



## THE ROMAN ART OF WAR.

**96. The Organization of the army.** — The Roman army of the late republic consisted of (*a*) legions; (*b*) auxiliary infantry; (*c*) cavalry; (*d*) artillery; (*e*) staff and staff troops.

**97. The Legions.** — It was both the duty and the right of every Roman citizen to serve in the army. But after the social war the number of Roman citizens had increased to such an extent that only a part was needed. We find therefore at the end of the republic the armies changing into an organization of professional soldiers who were mostly led by the hope of gain. The higher classes remained at home, unless, indeed, some one was driven by natural inclination or anticipations of ascending to a high rank. The levy (*dilectus*) was held in Italy in the name of the consuls, in the provinces in the name of the proconsuls.

**98. Number of soldiers.** — The number of soldiers in a legion, at Caesar's time, may be estimated as amounting to 3,000 or 3,600. It was the custom to form a new legion (*legio tironum*) rather than to fill out vacancies in the old ones (*legiones veteranae*), unless their number was diminished to an extraordinary degree. (Cf. B. G. vii. 1, 7.)

**99. Divisions of the Legions.** — Each legion was divided into ten cohorts (300 to 360 men); each cohort into three maniples (100 to 120 men); each maniple into two platoons (50 to 60 men) [*ordinēs* = platoons].

**100. Officers.** — The officers of the legion were the six military tribunes (*tribuni militum*). Each maniple was under the command of

two centurions (*centurio prior* in charge of the first platoon and *centurio posterior* in charge of the second platoon).

The *centuriones* of the first maniple of a cohort were called *pili*, those of the second *principes*, those of the third *hastati*, — names which are an apparent survival of the older organization. The *centurio prior* (*pilus prior*, *principilus*) of the first maniple of the first cohort of the first legion had the highest rank. The centurions of the first maniple of a legion occupied an exceptional position, and took part in the council of war (B. G. v. 28).

**101. The tribuni militum.** — The *tribuni militum* were men of higher social position who, after having served a short time in the *cohors praetoria*, were appointed military tribunes.

The difference between the centurions and the *tribuni* was the same as that between non-commissioned officers and commissioned officers, — centurions being very rarely promoted to the rank of *tribuni militum*.

**102. Clothing.** — Clothing, armor, and equipment were the same for all legionaries. They wore the military cloak (*sagum*) and the cuirass (*lorica*) of leather, the helmet of either brass (*cassis*) or



PILUM.



GLADIUS.



SARCINAE.



SCUTUM.

leather (*galea*), greaves (*ocreae*), the wooden, iron-plated shield (*scutum*), and the sword (*gladius*). Their characteristic weapon was the spear

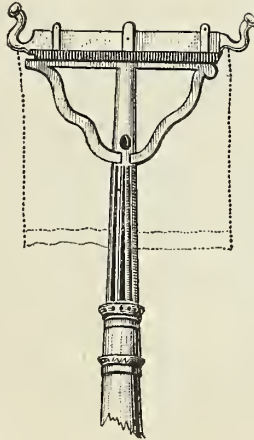
(*pilum*), the iron of which bent when the missile struck, since only the end was hardened: this made it useless to the enemy and prevented an easy removal. (B. G. i. 25).

Besides these each soldier carried entrenching tools (saws, spades, axes, etc.), cooking vessels, and spare clothing, and his ration of food ( $1\frac{2}{3}$  pounds for a day).

For convenient carrying, the baggage — about 30 to 45 pounds — was packed in bundles (*sarcinae*) and fastened to a small board which rested on the top of a forked pole (*furca*).



AQUILIFER.



VEXILLUM.



SIGNUM.

**103. Standards.** — Each legion had as a standard an eagle (*aquila*), entrusted to the *principilus*, first centurion of the first cohort (*aquilifer*). Each cohort had a *signum* (usually an animal).

(*Aquila* therefore sometimes = *legio*, and *signum* = *cohors*.)

104. **Music.** — Two kinds of instruments were used for giving signals to the legionaries: *buccina* (*buccinatores*) = bugle, and *tuba* (*tubicines*) = trumpet, — the latter being more numerous than the former.



BUCCINA.



TUBA.

105. **Baggage train** — The heavy baggage of the legions was carried by pack-animals, horses, or mules (*jumenta sarcinaria*, B. G. vii. 45).

The first thing they carried were the leather tents (*tentoria, tabernacula*). Ten men formed a *contubernium*, but as two were always on guard-duty it was actually occupied by only eight. Each centurion had a tent for his own use. Making an allowance of two tents for servants, each maniple (one hundred and twenty men) needed sixteen tents, a cohort forty-eight, a legion four hundred and eighty (twelve tents for the *tribuni militum* and their servants excluded). Besides this, a great amount of stakes, tools, etc., was required for pitching camp, which justifies us in assuming one more pack-animal for each cohort ( $48 + 1 = 49$ ).

The weight of a tent was about forty pounds, and as a pack-animal's load can be rated at about two hundred pounds, and as very probably each *contubernium* (ten men) had one mule or horse, it could convey besides the tent sixteen pounds of each soldier's baggage (food, mills, etc.). To this must be added about five servants and three pack-animals for each tribune, their several horses, etc., so that the sum total of animals hardly fell short of five hundred and twenty, — a real *impedimentum* for an army.

106. **The antesignani** — The *antesignani* were a detachment from the cohorts (three hundred men for each legion) always ready for battle (*expediti*), and serving as vanguard and as light infantry in a hand-to-hand battle.



**107. The Auxiliary Infantry.** — *Auxilia* were raised by (a) enlistment from allied nations, — slingers from the Balearic Islands, archers from Numidia, and light-armed German troops (B. G. viii. 13); (b) by conscription from barbarian nations of the provinces, — troops which were seldom to be relied upon, and principally used for a show of strength, or for the construction of fortifications (B. G. i. 51; vii. 34); (c) by treaty with allied nations. The number of auxiliary troops is extremely varying. The name for all auxiliary infantry is *alarii*.

**108. The Cavalry** — The cavalry in Caesar's army was raised in the manner described above. The soldiers came from Germany, Gaul, and Spain (B. G. v. 26, 46; vii. 13, 55).

As an average its strength was about one-fourth of that of the legions. They doubtless preserved to a certain extent their national organization. Bodies of from two hundred to four hundred were commanded by a *praefectus equitum* (either a native or a Roman, B. G. i. 18; iii. 26; iv. 11; viii. 12, 48). The whole was always under a Roman commander (B. G. i. 52; viii. 48). About four hundred horses made up an *ala* (regiment); the tactical unit of the *ala* was the *turma* (squadron) (32 men + the *decurio* = 33) (B. G. vi. 8; viii. 16, 18).

**109. The Artillery.** — Artillery was used by the Romans only in defending and attacking fortified places. Its organization is unknown to us. Very likely a number of *fabri* were entrusted with the transportation, construction, and use of the engines.

**110. The Staff.** — The general staff consists of: —

(a) The general (*imperator*).

(b) Legates (*legati*) were men of senatorial rank assigned to the pro-consuls by the senate. They were the lieutenants of the general, placed at the head of detachments of one or more legions. It was Caesar who first placed a legate at the head of each legion (B. G. i. 52).

(c) The *quaestor*, assigned by lot to the pro-consul as superintendent of the finances of the province. He with a numerous body of assistants

had to provide the army with food, pay, clothing, arms, equipments, and shelter.

(d) Aide-de-camps, and the staff of the quartermaster-general. A number of young noblemen followed the general as volunteers (*contubernales, comites praetorii, voluntarii*). They formed the nobler part of the general's suite (*cohors praetoria*), and served as aides-de-camps, orderly-officers, and were used as aids in the administrative department. If very numerous, they formed platoons by themselves, or joined the body-guard, taking part in the battle. The other part of the *cohors praetoria* was composed of *lictors*, scribes, servants, *apparitores* (orderlies), and *speculatores* (scouts, spies).

(e) Body-guard. This was not a choice troop, but troops which stood in a nearer personal relation to the general. (a) Small bodies of German cavalry (B. G. vii. 13) used as personal escort (*escadrons de service*); (β) *evocati* were those veteran soldiers who having completed their term of service either remained with the army or returned to it at the solicitation of the general. Those men who exercised more influence over the common soldier, with whom they were in every respect on the same plane, than officers and centurions, were of priceless value to a general.

They formed in Caesar's army an organized troop divided into *centuriae*, and were honored by a number of privileges. They had pack-animals and riding-horses, which they used on the march, and could therefore be used as orderlies for important communications or as scouts. In battle they fought near the general, protecting his person and the *vexillum* (standard). They were joined by the *voluntarii*.

(f) Engineers (*fabri*) stood under the command of the *praefectus fabrorum*. They were employed in building bridges, in constructing the winter-quarters, and in repairing the weapons. Thus the *pila*, which once hurled became useless, had to be collected after battle, and were repaired by the *fabri ferrarii*.

111. Pay. — Caesar had fixed the pay of the legionaries at 225 *denarii* (\$45), paid by three instalments (*stipendia*). For food and equipment a reduction was made, which in the provinces however was very low. Bè-

sides, booty and gifts of the general increased the income of the soldier considerably.

(The pay of a day-laborer in Rome at that time was about three-fourths of a *denarius* daily.)

The auxiliary infantry very likely received the same pay; the cavalry three times as much, if they brought their horses with them.

**112. Discipline.** — Better than by fear of punishment order was maintained by constant employment; such were the daily fortification of the camp, the severe guard-duty, and constant practice in the use of weapons. Courage was rewarded by substantial gifts of money. Military crimes (mutiny, desertion, cowardice, abuse of authority) were always severely punished. Violence to the conquered, robbery and plunder, however, were allowed by generals desirous to attach the soldiers to their person.

**113. Tactics.** — Tactics of a troop comprise: its order of arrangement for battle, — with reference to which every movement and formation are made, — its movements during battle, the order of march, the disposition in the camp, and all evolutions in passing from one to the other.

Because the order-of-battle of a body of soldiers is that of the tactical unit of this body, we have to consider first the order-of-battle of the cohort, as being the tactical unit of the legion.

**114. The Order of Battle.** — The three maniples arrayed side by side formed the order-of-battle of a cohort. The front of each maniple was 40, that of the cohort 120 feet: each maniple had twelve files. Each man in the front rank (*ordo*, B. G. vii. 62) of the maniple occupied three feet, which were sufficient to throw the *pilum*. For the use of the sword four to six feet were needed, which were gained by the stepping forward of the odd numbers (*taxare ordines*, B. G. ii. 25). Each file consisted of ten men; the maniple had therefore ten ranks; the distance from breast to breast in the file was four feet. The maniple forms then a square, each side forty feet; the cohort a rectangle, 120 feet front by forty feet deep.

**115. Offensive order-of-battle of the legion.** — The legions formed either two (*acies duplex*) or three lines (*acies triplex*); if they were arrayed

in two lines each line consisted of five cohorts ; if in three, the first line of four, each of the two others of three. Between the cohorts of the first line intervals equal to or a little larger than the front of a cohort were left.

The front of a legion in order of battle is 840 feet, its depth 600 feet.

**116. Attack.** — The Roman legions never failed to take the advantage of a higher place (*superioris loci*, B. G. i. 22, 24, 25 ; ii. 8 ; iii. 4 ; v. 9 ; vi. 40 ; vii. 51), perhaps the slope of a hill, having thus the enemy below them. Under those circumstances more than one rank could hurl the spears (B. G. i. 25). If the distance was greater than about 250 paces to an enemy setting out for attack or greater than 120 paces to an enemy awaiting the onset, the legions first moved forward at an equal pace (*certo gradu*, B. G. viii. 9). At the proper distance they set out at a run (*concursum*) ; the first rank raised the spears (*infestis pilis*), which they hurled at a distance of ten to twenty paces (*emissio pilorum*, B. G. vi. 45), throwing thus the enemy into confusion. If the right moment had passed, and a rapidly advancing enemy had gotten too near, the soldiers had to drop the spears and use their swords (B. G. i. 52).

After they had hurled their spears the soldiers of the first rank drew their swords and rushed forward, taking advantage of the confusion of the enemy (*impetus gladiatorum*, B. G. i. 25, 52 ; vi. 8). The first ranks were now engaged in single combats, while the other ranks hurled their spears over their comrades' heads into the enemy and served as a reserve. They also prevented the enemy from pouring into the intervals and attacking the cohorts in flank, especially at the unprotected right side (*latera aperta*, B. G. i. 25 ; ii. 23 ; iv. 25, 26 ; v. 35). So that the second line, which followed at a distance of about 200 feet and halted when the first had become engaged, could be used as a reserve behind which the exhausted first line after about fifteen minutes could retire.

**117. Defensive order-of-battle.** — (1) In one line (*acies simplex*).  
(2) The circle (*orbis*).

(1) The *acies simplex* was used for defending the walls of a camp. Where a second line and great depth were superfluous, five banks were

enough. In this arrangement a legion would cover 4800 feet without intervals. If this arrangement without intervals was used in the open field, which was done in order to prevent an outflanking or incursions of cavalry, etc., the cohorts retained their normal front and depth, and a legion covered then 1200 feet.

(2) The circle was formed in case an attack on all sides was feared. Small divisions (maniples) formed a solid circle, greater ones (cohorts), a solid square, still greater detachments hollow squares. A legion could form such a hollow square by placing the first, second, and third cohort in front, the eighth, ninth, and tenth in the rear, the fifth and sixth on the left, the fourth and seventh on the right side. The front would be 360 feet, the sides 320 feet, the inner square covering 67,200 square feet.

**118. The march of the cohorts.** — Order of march (*agmen*) of the cohorts is twofold. (1) Column of maniples (*manipulatum*). (2) Column of centuries (*ordinatum centuriatum*).

(1) Column of maniples was formed from the order-of-battle by facing to the right or left; the width of the column was forty feet.

(2) Column of centuries. The first maniple (*pilani*) marched forward and the rest followed successively. Its width was also forty feet. In this order Caesar crossed the Rhine. The width could, if necessary, be diminished to twenty feet by doubling the depth. The length of a column of centuries was 120 feet; of a maniple, 144 feet.

The order of battle was formed —

From the column of maniples by the commands, Halt! Front! From the column of centuries by aligning on the right or left after the leading maniples had halted.

**119. The march of the legions.** — The legions marched in three forms. (1) In simple form (*agmen pilatum*); (2) in order-of-battle (*acies instructa*); (3) in square (*agmen quadratum*).

In simple column the legions followed each other according to their number, each cohort in column of centuries. The length of a legion was then 1,400 feet; with double ranks, 2,600 feet. With baggage-train its length was 2,050 feet, or if the road was small 3,900 feet.

The march in order-of-battle was either by lines or by wings. A legion that marches in order-of-battle by lines formed as many columns as the order-of-battle has lines, — in Caesar's army generally three. The cohorts marched in columns of maniples and were able to form the order-of-battle by simply facing to the right or left.

A legion that marched in order-of-battle by wings formed three columns. The cohorts of the right wing (Nos. 1, 5, 8) formed the first, the cohorts of the centre (Nos. 2, 6, 9) the second, the cohorts of the left wing (Nos. 4, 3, 7) the third columns. Each cohort marched in columns of centuries.

Order of march in square (corresponding to the *orbis*): a division of troops in order-of-battle by wings led, followed by the baggage; a similar division marched at the rear; on either side marched a division in cohorts in columns of maniples.

**120. Tactics of the cavalry.** — The tactical unit of the Roman cavalry was the *turma* (32 horses), arranged in four ranks of eight horses. Front and depth were 40 feet.

Twelve *turmae* formed a regiment (*ala*). The order-of-battle very likely resembled that of the infantry, and consisted of two or three lines with intervals, the front of a line being 440 feet (B. G. iv. 33; viii. 17-19).

A detachment of cavalry served as reserve (B. G. vii. 13).

Caesar not unfrequently strengthened his cavalry by placing German infantry or maniples of *antesignani* in the intervals between two *turmae* (B. G. viii. 13).

The order-of-march of the regiment was in column of *turmae*, each *turma* keeping the order-of-battle. The length of a regiment was then 480 feet, to which the train added about 240 feet.

**121. The camps (*castra*).** — We have to distinguish two kinds of camps. (1) Summer camps (*castra aestiva*), which were regularly pitched at the evening of each day's march, however long and fatiguing it might have been, and frequently were left the next day. (2) Winter-quarters (*castra hiberna*), where the legions stayed over winter, kept apart from any contact with the inhabitants (B. G. iii. 4), and under a constant

training. As regards the form of the latter, they were hardly different from the summer camps, but they were naturally furnished with more accommodations. The tents (*tabernacula, pelles*) of the summer camp, for instance, were replaced by huts (*casae stramenticiæ*). (B. G. v. 43.)

The place for the camp — the slope of a hill where there was an easy supply of water and wood was considered the best situation — was selected by a number of tribunes and centurions sent in advance (B. G. ii. 17).

The form of the Roman camp at Caesar's time was a square or a rectangle, the sides of which were as 2 : 3. Its front faced the enemy.

Two streets, running parallel to the front, divided the camp into three parts : the *praetentura*, divided from the *latera praetorii* by the *via principalis* ; and the *retentura*, divided from the *latera praetorii* by the *via quintana*.

Either extremity of the *via principalis* was faced by a gate (*porta principalis, dextra, and sinistra*) ; and when two gates are mentioned from which a sally is made (B. G. iii. 19 ; v. 58 ; vii. 41), these two gates are to be understood. Besides there were two other gates : one facing the enemy in front, *porta praetoria* ; the other at the opposite side, *porta decumana*. From the *porta praetoria* a street (*via praetoria*) led to the *via principalis*.

**Distribution of the troops :** In the *praetentura*, one fourth or one fifth of all the cohorts, one half of the cavalry, and all the *milites levis armaturæ* (slingers, archers, dartmen).

The middle part of the middle camp is occupied by the *praetorium* (general's quarter), with the tents for the commander and his staff, altars, tribunal (B. G. vi. 3, *suggestus*), etc.

The same place which is occupied by the *praetorium* in the middle camp is taken by the *quaestorium*, with the tents for the quaestor and his staff in the *retentura*. Provisions and booty, foreign ambassadors and hostages, are kept here, along with the rest of the cohorts.

a. The camp was surrounded by wall and ditch. Between the wall and the encampment there was a street about 120 feet broad. The depth of the ditch was generally about seven feet, its breadth nine feet.

It is to be remarked that Caesar expressly states depth and breadth only when they deviate from the common measures.

NOTE.—There are three forms of ditches. (1), scarp (*latus interius*) and counterscarp (*latus exterius*) are inclined (*fossa fastigata*). (2), scarp is inclined; counterscarp, vertical (*fossa punicæ*). (3), both scarp and counterscarp vertical (*directis lateribus*). Of these the first is decidedly the most common. For the third see B. G. vii. 72; viii. 9.

*b.* The ditch yielded the material for the construction of the wall (*vallum*). Its height was dependent on the depth of the ditch. In the whole the height can be assumed to be two thirds of the upper breadth of the ditch (cf. B. G. ii. 5; B. C. iii. 63, *erat eo loco fossa pedum XV et vallum contra hostem in altitudinem pedum X*). Its outside was generally turfed (B. G. viii. 9). To make it still more firm and strong, fences of hurdle-work running parallel to the length of the wall were used. Inside steps led up to the top. The ordinary upper breadth of the wall in general was six feet. Broader walls had a rampart (*lorica, loricula*) of palisades (*valli*) (cf. B. G. v. 40; vii. 72; viii. 9), either all of the same height, or with *pinnae* (as B. G. v. 40; vii. 72), between which intervals were left. Where wall and ditch were of unusual size, or where there were even two ditches, we find the wall crowned with towers (B. G. v. 40; vii. 72; viii. 9).

*c.* The digging out of an ordinary ditch and the construction of an ordinary wall took from three to four hours.

*d.* A number of troops — generally one or two cohorts before each gate, and one *turma equitum*, but if required stronger forces, as before Avaricum, two legions (B. G. vii. 24) — kept guard (*excubari, in statione esse*) before the gates of the wall, others on the rampart. The word *excubiæ* denotes guards either by night or by day, while *vigiliæ* those by night only. The night (from 6 o'clock P.M. to 6 o'clock A.M.) was divided into four watches of three hours each. The signal for changing the watches was given by the *buccinator*.

*e.* Every evening a watchword (*tessera*) was given by the general, which was made known to the soldiers by the *tesserarii*.



**122. Marches.** — Every greater distance was divided into day's marches (*itineræ*); two or three days of march were generally followed by a day of rest, the contrary being expressly stated (B. G. i. 41). Every day's march led from a camp to a camp, so that the days of march are not unfrequently counted by camps (B. G. vii. 63).

The armies marched about seven hours (= five Roman hours in summer), from 4 or 5 A.M. to 11 A.M. or 12 M. (*justum iter*, B. C. iii. 76, "normal march"), at a rate of something less than a hundred paces a minute. But marches at a much more quickened pace were not rare (B. G. vii. 40; v. 46, 47; ii. 12).

There are to be distinguished two kinds of marches. (1) Perpendicular marches, where the line of march stands perpendicular to the assumed line of the hostile army, divided into two subdivisions, — (a) advance, (b) retreat. (2) Parallel marches, where the line of march runs parallel to the line of the hostile army or to the line of its march.

**123. I. The Advance.** When the column is marching forward we have to distinguish, — (1), the van (*primum agmen*); (2), the main body (*exercitus, omnes copiæ, agmen legionum*); (3), the rear-guard (*agmen novissimum, agmen extremum*).

(1) The van consisted of light infantry and the greater part of the cavalry. Its object was (a) to delay the march of the hostile army (*novissimum agmen capere, demorari*), giving the main body time to deploy. (b) To reconnoitre the country (*loci naturam perspicere, iter cognoscere*, B. G. i. 15, etc.), and to give news of the enemy. This was done by detachments of cavalry (*exploratores*) sent out in different directions. (c) To select a proper situation for a camp.

(2) In some distance after the van the main body followed, marching in one of the following three forms: —

(a) In column, each legion followed with its baggage, which divided it from the legion next following. A column of five legions, with a breadth of forty feet, requires 10,250 feet length; and a sixth legion would need not less than forty minutes to reach the head and join with the other legions in battle. Legions marching in this form were therefore not ready for battle (*impeditæ*, B. G. iii. 24), and the form was only adopted in a

friendly country. When near the enemy a second form was therefore adopted.

(b) In column, but with the baggage of the whole army assembled. Three fourths of the entire number of legions composed the head, followed by the collected baggage; the rest of the legions (one fourth) formed the rear-guard (*claudunt agmen*) as guard for the baggage (*praesidio impeditis*). As the legions could in this form more easily deploy, they were called *expeditae*. Nevertheless the individual soldier was even here not ready for battle, being of course unable to fight *sub sarcinis*, — i. e., laden with all his personal baggage (*sarcinae*), etc. If therefore an army marching in this form was attacked, the legionaries had to pile their baggage (*sarcinas in acervum comportare, sarcinas conferre*, B. G. i. 24; vii. 18), to draw the shields from their coverings (*tegumenta scutis detrahere*, B. G. ii. 21), to put on their field-badges (*insignia accommodare*, B. G. ii. 21), to put on their helmets (*galeas induere*, B. G. ii. 21), and to get their weapons ready (*arma expedire, legio armatur*, B. G. vii. 18). Time for this was won by the van.

(c) The advance in order-of-battle (*acie instructa*) could be adopted only for comparatively short distances (about three hours' way), provided the ground was suitable and the enemy near (B. G. iv. 14). The baggage was left in the camp.

## II. The Retreat.

(a) The retreat in column, with baggage massed. For this form of the retreat the baggage was sent out of the camp as early as possible, accompanied by a legion which formed the van-guard, and selected the place for a new camp. Then followed the main body, the cohorts in columns of centuries, as in the advance. The rear-guard left the camp last, following at a suitable distance; it was composed of the greatest part of cavalry and of the *milites levis armaturae* (archers, slingers), often supported by the *antesignani*, or even an entire legion.

(b) When the enemy had numerous cavalry and were on a march through a rebellious country, the retreat in square (*agmen quadratum*) was chosen. As a rule, all the legions formed the square, with the united baggage in the centre. The cavalry, remaining outside the square, skir-

mished around it ; if it was unable to resist the enemy, the legions formed the *orbis*.

III. Flank marches. They were made in order-of-battle, and therefore for short distances only, the legions marching in a column of lines (two, *acie duplici*, or three, *acie triplici*). The baggage-train marched either on the side opposite the enemy, or followed each legion (B. G. vii. 34), especially when a considerable obstacle was between the enemy and the Roman army.

**124. Crossing a stream.** — (1) By fords. This method was preferred by Caesar, as it required no long preparation. When the current was very strong two lines of cavalry were stationed, — one up-stream for breaking its force, one down-stream in order to save men carried from their footing (B. G. vii. 56).

(2) By bridges of every kind. Especially noteworthy is the elaborate bridge with which Caesar twice spanned the Rhine (described B. G. iv. 16–18 ; cf. also vi. 9). Bridges of boats were used (B. G. vi. 6) ; they were protected by strong fortifications and forces (*praesidia*).

**125. The battle.** — I. The offensive. (a) The legions. The normal order for the offensive was the triple line (*acies triplex*), the third line being designed as a reserve. The first line had to attack the enemy and to overthrow them if possible. If it did not succeed, the second line took up the attack, the third line being designed to prevent a flank movement of the enemy (cf. B. G. i. 25), and to be hurled against the hostile army at the crisis of battle (B. G. i. 25). In B. G. i. 49 we see it also employed in pitching a camp.

Where there was no need of a reserve, as in a *coup-de-main*, a double line (*acies duplex*) was sufficient (B. G. iii. 24–26). Where on the other hand both flank movements of the foe were to be feared and a necessity for a reserve was felt, we find a quadruple line (*acies quadruplex*).

(b) The cavalry, which was commonly placed at both the flanks of the legions, had to guard against a flank movement of the enemy, to take

if circumstances permitted the enemy in flank, and to distress the fleeing foe (B. G. i. 53; iv. 14; viii. 29). Chiefly if the cavalry consisted of troops which could not be relied upon (B. G. i. 24, 25), and also from other reasons (B. G. i. 52), it was placed behind the first cohorts of the legions.

(c) The light troops were mostly placed at the wings of the legions.

(d) The front of the line-of-battle was divided into the centre (*acies media*) and right and left wing (*cornu dextrum* and *sinistrum*). The most experienced and reliable troops were placed at the wings, and the best of all (the tenth legion in Caesar's army) was stationed on the wing which was to begin the attack.

(e) Before the battle commenced the general personally encouraged each legion (B. G. ii. 20), going through the whole line-of-battle (*acies instructa*).

2. The defensive. The fundamental idea of every defensive method is to delay the enemy's approach by making use of the natural obstacles which the ground affords, to weaken him meanwhile by missiles, and finally to attack him at the weakest point. Now the Roman legions were fit only for a hand-to-hand fight, and their missiles being neither very far-reaching nor very numerous, the principal thing was to select a ground which was most disadvantageous to the approaching battle-line of the enemy, and to increase the natural obstacles by art (as B. G. vii. 56, 62, 63, 64, where we have ditches, pitfalls, etc.). An excellent illustration of a Roman defensive method is given in B. G. ii. 5.

**126. The Siege.** — Fortified places were assailed —

(a) By blockade (*obsidio*).

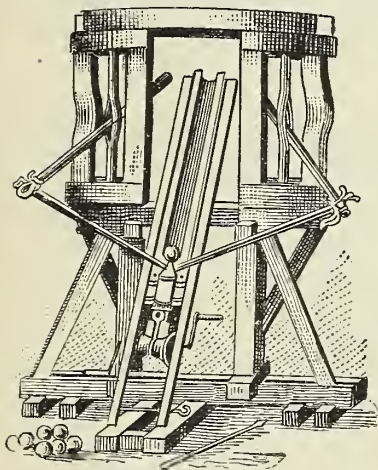
(b) By violent assault (*oppugnatio repentina*).

(c) By formal siege (*oppugnatio*).

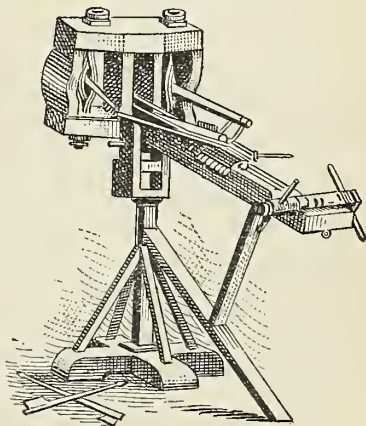
(a) Blockade (*obsidio*) was used against places of great strength which seemed to be poorly provided with provisions, provided their location allowed a complete environment. The most famous blockade is that of Alesia (B. G. vii. 69).

The besieged town was surrounded by fortifications (*circumvallatio*), consisting of redoubts (*castella*) at convenient places, connected by walls (*brachia, munitiones*). Behind these fortifications the camps of the besieging army were pitched. The stronger the place and the weaker the blockading army the stronger the circumvallation was to be. (Cp. the circumvallation of Alesia with threefold ditches, a wall twelve feet high, etc.) If succor was to be feared, a second line of circumvallation facing outwards was to be built. The army camped then between the two lines (B. G. vii. 74). Small garrisons (*praesidia*) held the redoubts (*castella*), strengthened in day-time by sentries (*stationes*), in night-time by strong pickets (*excubitores*). (B. G. vii. 69.)

(b) Violent assault (*oppugnatio repentina*) was used against places with weak fortifications well supplied with provisions; and against strongly



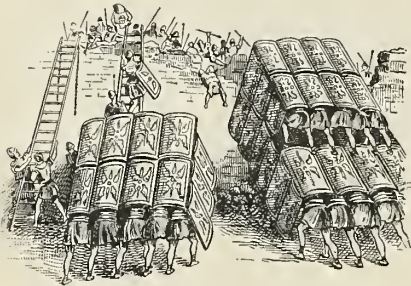
BALLISTA.



CATAPULTA.

fortified places if time pressed. The principal means for a violent assault were scaling-ladders and breaching-huts (*musculi*). Behind hurdles (*crates*) slingers and archers were as near the wall as possible in order to drive the soldiers from the ramparts. After this had been done the legionaries,

formed in several columns, rushed forward, in order to distract the enemy's attention by an attack on several points. At their head were laborers who carried the ladders and material for filling out the ditch. While a number of soldiers tried to climb up the wall, others tried to make a breach in the wall through which the place might be entered.



TESTUDO.



ARIES.

(c) The formal siege (*oppugnatio*) was used against strongly fortified and well-supplied places. It was often combined with (a) blockade (B. G. vii. 11).

**127. The Agger.** — The principal work for a formal siege was the mound (*agger*). It was begun at a distance of not less than about four hundred feet, the distance being dependent on the power of the hostile missiles. Its height was equal to the wall of the stronghold, or even a little higher. (Before Avaricum it was, for instance, eighty feet.) Its breadth must have been enough for a storming column, — at least fifty feet.

NOTE. — The breadth of the mound before Avaricum ("*pedes CCCXXX*") is incredible. The figures seem to be corrupt.

For the construction of the *agger* the ground had to be levelled by workmen protected by *musculi* (χελώνη χωστρίς), a sort of very strong *vineae* (movable sheds). Those who built the *agger* were guarded by *plutei* (standing shield) against missiles, while others brought the

material in covered galleries composed of a number of *vineae*. Archers and slingers posted behind *plutei* and the artillery in moving towers tried to keep the rampart free from soldiers. In a few cases *turres ambulatoriae* were placed on the mound (*agger*), (B. G. ii. 30, 31 ; viii. 41). The *agger* then was intended to give a firm, smooth roadway for the tower. As a rule, one or two (B. G. vii. 17) moving towers accompanied the *agger*. The *agger* contained much wood-work. (It was frequently set on fire, B. G. vii. 22, 24.) This wood-work was mainly logs (*arbores, materia*). It was not solid, but had holes which admitted draught (cf. B. G. vii. 24, where the mound is set on fire from below). It gradually approached the wall (B. G. vii. 24, *cum murum hostium paene contingeret*). It was erected story after story. The place near to the enemy's wall was filled out by pouring out great masses of rubbish, stones, wood, etc., brought through the galleries left in the middle of each story, after the *agger* had reached the required height.





## INDUCTIVE STUDIES.

---

THE studies will contain (1) examples showing the method of Inductive Study, and (2) a list of topics for investigation. The topics may be regarded as review work. The purpose of this work is to give the student an impulse to original research.

### I. The CONJUNCTION *cum* in First Book of the Gallic War.

A. OCCURRENCE. Chaps. 1, 2, 4, 7, 9, 11, 12, 13 (twice), 14, 16 (twice), 19, 20 (three times), 22, 23, 25, 26 (four times), 27, 31, 32, 33 (twice), 35, 36, 38, 39, 40 (four times), 41, 42 (three times), 43, 47, 50, 52 (twice), 53. In all, forty-six times.

#### B. CLASSIFICATION.

a. "cum - prohibent - gerunt," 1. "cum - videbatur," 40.

From *a* we observe the following: namely, the conjunction *cum* (1) denotes absolute time; (2) it takes the indicative mood.

- |                                     |   |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| b. "cum - conaretur - cogerent," 4. | "cum - contenderent," 31.                   |
| "cum - nuntiatum esset," 7.         | "cum - quaereret - posset," 32.             |
| "cum - exisset," 12.                | "cum - occupavissent," 33.                  |
| "cum - intellegerent," 13.          | "cum - vellet" (in <i>oratio obliqua</i> ), |
| "cum - possent," 13.                | 36.   |
| "cum - posset," 16.                 | "cum - processisset," 38                    |
| "cum - peteret," 20.                | "cum - iussisset" (in <i>oratio obli-</i>   |
| "cum - posset," 20.                 | <i>qua</i> ), 39.                           |
| "cum - teneretur - abesset -        | "cum - tenuisset - fecisset," 40.           |
| cognitus esset," 22.                | "cum - animadvertisset," 40.                |
| "biduum supererat, cum - oport-     | "cum - mitterentur," 42.                    |
| teret" = in quo tempore, 23.        | "cum - fieret," 42.                         |
| "cum - inflexisset," 25.            | "cum - conspexisset," 47.                   |
| "cum - esset pugnatum," 26.         | "cum - quaeretur," 50.                      |
| "cum - possent," 26.                | "cum - animadvertisset," 52.                |
| "cum - convenissent - proiecis-     | "cum - conversa esset," 52.                 |
| sent - petissent - iussisset,"      | "cum - traheretur," 53.                     |
| 27.                                 |   |

From *b* we observe that the subjunctive mood is used without exception. The conjunction **cum** (1) takes the subjunctive mood, and (2) denotes relative time,—i. e., time present, past, or future, in connection with the time of the action of the principal verb. Or, since in numerous instances the notion of time and cause is mingled, we may say that **cum** (1) expresses the temporal idea with conjoint notion of cause, and (2) takes the subjunctive. We observe furthermore (3) that the tenses employed are the imperfect and pluperfect.

<i>c.</i> “cum — praestarent,” 2.		“cum — potuissent,” 26.
“cum — possent,” 9.		“cum — appellatus esset,” 35.
“cum — possent,” 11.		“cum — viderentur,” 40.
“cum — accederent,” 19.		“cum — intermitteret,” 41.
“cum — teneretur,” 20.		“cum — polliceretur,” 42.

*With praesertim.*

“praesertim cum — divideret,” 33. |

*Perfect subjunctive with praesertim.*

“praesertim cum — suscepit,” 16.

From *c* we observe that the conjunction **cum** (1) denotes cause, and (2) takes the subjunctive mood when so used. Also it is seen (3) that the causal idea is sometimes emphasized by the adverb **praesertim**.

*d.* “cum — haberet,” 43.

*Perfect subjunctive.*

“cum — pugnatum sit,” 26. |

*Present subjunctive.*

“cum — sint,” 14.

From *d* we observe that the conjunction **cum** (1) denotes concession,—i. e., actions notwithstanding which other events occur; and (2) takes the subjunctive mood when so used.

## II. INDIRECT DISCOURSE, illustrated by chapter 20 of the First Book.

The exact words of the speaker are as follows:—

A.

“Do not pass any very severe sentence upon my brother. I know that these facts are true, and no one receives more pain on that account than I do. Because, when I could do a great deal by my influence at home and in the rest of Gaul, and my brother Dumnorix very little on account of his youth, by my help he rose to authority and is now using the power and strength thus gained not only to lessen my influence, but almost for my own ruin. Yet I am moved by affection for my brother and by public opinion. If any very severe punishment is inflicted upon him by you, no one will think that it was done without my own desire, since I hold such a place in your friendship. And for that reason it will happen that the affections of the whole of Gaul will be turned from me.”

*In Latin.*

B. "Ne quid gravius in fratrem statue. Ego scio haec esse vera, nec quisquam ex hoc plus quam ego doloris capio, propterea quod, cum ipse gratia plurimum domi atque in reliqua Gallia, ille minimum propter adolescentiam posset, per me crevit; quibus opibus ac nervis non solum ad minuendam gratiam, sed paene ad perniciem meam utitur. Ego tamen et amore fraterno et existimatione vulgi commoveor. Quod si quid ei a te gravius acciderit, cum ipse hunc locum amicitiae apud te teneam, nemo existimabit non mea voluntate factum. Qua ex re fiet, uti totius Galliae animi a me avertantur."

The words of the speaker when indirectly quoted are as follows:—

C. Divitiacus began to implore Caesar not to pass any very severe sentence upon his brother, (saying) that he knew that those facts were true, and no one received more pain on that account than he did. Because when he could do a great deal by his influence at home and in the rest of Gaul, and his brother very little on account of his youth, by his help he had risen to authority, which power and strength he was using not only to lessen his influence, but almost for his ruin. Yet he was moved by affection for his brother and by public opinion. But if any very severe punishment should be inflicted upon him by Caesar, no one would think that it was done without his own desire, since he held such a place in Caesar's friendship. And for that reason it would happen that the affections of the whole of Gaul would be turned from him.

*In Latin.*

D. Divitiacus obsecrare coepit, ne quid gravius in fratrem statueret. Scire se illa esse vera, nec quemquam ex eo plus quam se doloris capere, propterea quod, cum ipse gratia plurimum domi atque in reliqua Gallia, ille minimum propter adolescentiam posset, per se crevisset; quibus opibus ac nervis non solum ad minuendam gratiam, sed paene ad perniciem suam uteretur. Sese tamen et amore fraterno et existimatione vulgi commoveri. Quod si quid ei a Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amicitiae apud eum teneret, neminem existimaturum non sua voluntate factum. Qua ex re futurum, uti totius Galliae animi a se averterentur.

From a study of the above we observe the following:—

1. Principal declarative clauses in indirect discourse have their verbs in the infinitive with subjects in the accusative: scire se illa esse vera for ego scio;

quemquam — se — capere for quisquam — ego — capio; sese commoveri for commoveor; neminem existimaturum for nemo existimabit; futurum (esse) for futurum est, erit, or fiet.

2. Unlike the English idiom, which changes the tense of principal verbs in indirect discourse from present to past after a verb of saying containing a past notion, the Latin language employs the present infinitive, the time of which is relative to that of the verb on which the *oratio obliqua* depends. E. g., He said that he knew that those things were true = *Dixit scire* (not *scivisse*) *se illa esse* (not *fuisse*) *vera*.

3. The verb in all subordinate clauses is in the subjunctive: *posset, crevisset, uteretur, accidisset, teneret, averterentur*. From B we see which of these verbs would be in the indicative in the direct narrative.

4. The tense of *coepit* throws the verbs of the subordinate clauses into the secondary tenses, i. e., imperfect and pluperfect.

5. The imperative becomes the subjunctive: *statueret* for *statue*.

6. The first person is changed to the third: *ego* to *se* (*scire se, se capere, se commoveri, a se averterentur*); *meus* to *suus* (*ad suam perniciem, sua voluntate*); *ego ipse* to *ipse ipse* (*ipse posset, ipse teneret*); *haec* to *illa* (*illa esse vera*); *hoc* to *eo* (*ex eo plus*); *hunc* to *eum* (*eum locum amicitiae*).

7. The second person is changed to the third: *statue* to *statueret* (*quid statueret*); *te* to *Caesare* (*a Caesare accidisset*); *te* to *eum* (*apud eum teneret*).

8. In B we observe that *accidisset* would be the future perfect in the direct discourse, denoting the action as completed at the future time denoted by *existimabit*, — a nicety of expression which the English language does not exhibit. Notice the tense used in the *oratio obliqua*.

### III. The GERUND and GERUNDIVE in Second Book of the Gallic War.

A. OCCURRENCE of the GERUND. Chaps. 1, 6 (twice), 7, 9, 10, 12, 17, 21 (three times), 24. In all, twelve times.

B. OCCURRENCE of the GERUNDIVE. Chaps. 1, 2 (impersonal construction), 5 (impersonal construction), 7, 8, 9, 10 (three times), 17, 19, 20 (nine times), 21 (five times), 28. In all, twenty-six times.

#### C. CLASSIFICATION.

##### a. Genitive of the gerund.

- "conjurandi causas," 1.
- "consistendi potestas," 6.
- "finem oppugnandi," 6.
- "studium propugnandi," 7.
- "transeundi initium," 9.

- "pugnandi causā," 10.
- "praedandi causā," 17.
- "cohortandi causā," 21.
- "pugnandi tempus," 21.
- "praedandi causā," 24.

*b.* Accusative of the gerund.

"ad oppugnandum," 12.

"ad dimicandum," 21.

*c.* Nominative of the gerundive.

"Caesari omnia erant agenda," 20.

"vexillum proponendum," 20.

"signum tuba dandum," 20.

"revocandi milites," 20.

"milites arcessendi," 20.

"acies instruenda," 20.

"milites cohortandi," 20.

"signum dandum," 20.

*d.* Genitive of the gerundive.

"potiundi oppidi," 7.

"committendi procelli," 19.

"aggeris petendi," 20.

"committendi procelli signum," 21.

*e.* Accusative of the gerundive."non omittendum sibi concilium  
Nervii existimaverunt," 17.

"ad homines conducendos," 1.

"ad aciem instruendam," 8.

"ad bellum gerendum," 9.

"ad defendendos eos," 10.

"ad insignia adcommodanda," 21.

"ad galeas induendas," 21.

"ad tegimenta detrudenda," 21.

*f.* Ablative of the gerundive.

"de expugnando oppido," 10.

"de flumine transeundo," 10.

"in quaerendis suis," 21.

"in commemoranda calamitate," 28.

*g.* Impersonal construction.

"dubitandum non existimavit," 3.

"confidendum sit," 3.

## D. CONCLUSION.

From *a* and *d* we learn that the genitive of the gerund and gerundive depends on a noun, like any other genitive on its noun.

The examples in *b* and *e* exhibit a fondness to employ the preposition *ad* with the accusative to express purpose, readiness, and ability.

In the examples in *c* and *g*, and first example in *e*, we see the notion of necessity, duty, or obligation thrust into the gerundive.

From first example in *c*, *Caesari omnia erant agenda*, and first example in *e*, *omittendum sibi*, we observe that the *nomen agentis*, or the principal actor, is put in the dative case.

From *f* it is seen that the ablative with the prepositions *de* and *in* is of frequent occurrence.

The examples in *d*, *e*, and *f* show that when the gerund would have a direct object, the gerundive formation is preferred, when the gerundive is used, the noun,

which would have been the direct object of the gerund, takes the construction which the gerund would have had.

From the first example in *d* and second example in *f* we notice that even dependent verbs and intransitive verbs allow the gerundive formation.

In studying the three following topics the student is expected to deduce as many principles as the classifications admit of.

#### IV. The ABLATIVE CASE in the Third Book of the Gallic War. Chaps. 16-20.

A. OCCURRENCE. Chaps. 16 (six times), 17 (nineteen times), 18 (seventeen times), 19 (nine times), 20 (sixteen times). In all, sixty-seven times.

##### B. CLASSIFICATION.

a. "quo proelio," 16.		"quibus angustiis prematur," 18.
"militum vocibus," 17.		"quibus fossas compleant," 18.
"magnis praemiis pollicitationibus," 18.		"quo plurimum valebant," 20.

Ablative of means.

b. "a barbaris ius conservaretur," 16.		"ab iis erat provisum," 18.
		"ab his sit concessum," 18.

Ablative of Agency. *nomen agentis* always takes the preposition *ab*.

c. "cum his copiis," 17.		"cum tanta multitudine" (hostile sense), 17.
"cum Viridovice" (friendly sense), 17.		

Ablative of accompaniment; always with the preposition *cum*. The classical distinction between the ablative of manner and the ablative with *cum* is, that *cum* thrusts into the ablative the notion of addition or unexpectedness; e. g., *cum celeritate* would denote an additional quality or one which would not be expected.

*d*. Ablative with preposition *ab*.

1. See *b*.

2. "ab agricultura et cotidiano labore," 17.

Ablative of separation.

3 "a Caesare acciperat," 17.		"ab imo adclivis," 19.

Ablative of source.

e. Ablative with preposition *ex*.

- |   |  |  |
|---|--|--|
| 1. "ex quibus exercitum coegerat,"<br>17. |  | "ex iis quos habebat," 18.<br>"ex tertia parte Galliae," 20. |
|---|--|--|

Ablative of separation; often equivalent to a partitive genitive. This substitution of a preposition for the ending of the genitive case (cf. *ex his unus* for *horum unus*) is an anticipation of the breaking down of the inflectional system. The substitution of the preposition *de* in this sense is perpetuated in the Romance languages; cf. French *de*.

- |  |  |                                       |
|--|--|---------------------------------------|
| 2. "ex Gallia," 17.<br>"ex castris," 18. |  | "duces ex concilio dimittunt,"<br>18. |
|--|--|---------------------------------------|

Ablative of place from which. Notice that *ex* denotes "from the interior of."

3. "ex fuga evaserant," 19.

Ablative of means; originally an ablative of source, but the source was looked upon as the means. A similar confusion of source and means is found in some Greek writers in their use of  $\epsilon\xi$  for  $\iota\pi\delta$ .

f. Tolosa et Narbone," 20.

Ablative of place from which, without a preposition; mostly confined to names of towns.

g. Ablative with preposition *de*.

1. "ea de causa," 17.

Ablative of source; metaphorically.

2. "de navali pugna, de victoria," 19.

*de*, "concerning."

h. "in Venitis," 17.

"in iis locis," 20.

"in itinere agmen adorti," 20.

"in convalle in insidiis," 20.

Ablative with preposition *in*; place in which.

i. "spatio duum milium," 17.

"idoneo loco," 17 (like *loco are locis, terra marique, dextra, laeva, etc.*).

"castris sese tenebat," 17.

"duabus portis," 19.

Ablative of place in which, without a preposition; chiefly when the place is regarded also as the means.

j. "auxilii causa," 18.

"auxilii ferendi causa," 18.

"his rebus adducti," 18.

"opportunitate, inscientia, defetigatone, virtute, exercitatione," 19.

"latitudine, et multitudine," 19.

Ablative of cause.

- k. "his paucis diebus," 17.  
 "proxima nocte," 18.

- "uno tempore," 19.  
 "eodem tempore," 20.

Ablative of time when.

- l. "magno cursu contenderunt," 19.

Ablative of manner.

- m. "integris viribus milites," 19.

Ablative of characteristic or quality. The main distinction which can be observed between the ablative of quality and the genitive of quality is, that the genitive denotes the permanent condition, but the ablative the assumption of a new quality or a temporary state.

Notice *viribus* is a temporary condition, while "*omnes gravioris aetatis*" (chap. 16) shows a permanent state.

- n. "pro perfuga," 18 (equivalent to a noun in apposition).

Ablative with preposition *pro*.

- o. "eo gravius Caesar vindicandum  
 statuit," 16.  
 "quo diligentius ius conservare-  
 tur," 16 for *ut* with compar-

- tive degree to explain the com-  
 parison = *ut eo*.  
 "paucis ante annis," 20.

Ablative denoting degree of comparison.

- p. "quibus amissis," 16.  
 "omni senatu necato," 16.  
 "senatu suo interfecto," 17.  
 "productis copiis," 17.  
 "praesertim eo absente" (the idea  
 of cause, emphasized by *prae-*  
*sertim*), 17.  
 "aequo loco" (with an adjecti-  
 ve for a participle; condition  
 strengthened by *nisi*), 17.  
 "opportunitate aliqua data," 17.  
 "hac confirmata opinione," 18.  
 "qua re concessa," 18.  
 "ut explorata victoria" (ut as-

- sisting a condition = contrary to  
 fact), 18.  
 "sarmentis virgultisque collectis,"  
 18.  
 "impeditis hostibus," 19.  
 "exercitu pulso," 19.  
 "impedimentis amissis," 19.  
 "re frumentaria provisa, auxiliis  
 equitatuque comparato, multis  
 viris evocatis," 20.  
 "cuius adventu cognito," 20.  
 "magnis copiis coactis equitatu," 20.  
 "equitatu suo pulso," 20  
 "insequentibus nostris," 20.

Ablative absolute. Especially common, for the Latin language was handicapped in having no perfect active participle. The present active participle was used with much more exactness than in English, being never employed in the best writers unless the time of the action expressed by it is the same as that of the verb. Hence



to express the past notion conveyed by the present or perfect active participle in English the Latin language must use (1) a clause introduced by *cum*, *postquam*, etc.; or (2) the perfect participle of a deponent verb; or (3) the ablative absolute.

C. Let the student establish as many rules as possible from the above classification.

## V. The SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD in the Fourth Book of the Gallic War.

### Chaps. 22-31.

A. OCCURRENCE. Chaps. 22 (five times), 23 (seven times), 24 (once), 25 (four times), 26 (once), 27 (five times), 28 (four times), 29 (three times), 30 (once), 31 (twice). In all, thirty-three times.

#### B. CLASSIFICATION

a. "legati qui se excusarent" (qui = ut ii), 22.		"ut ea res eveniret," 25.
"qui pollicerentur," 22.		"ne tantum dedecus admittentur," 25.
"ut administrarentur," 23.		"ut ignosceretur petiverunt," 27.

Subjunctive of purpose.

b. "quo minus venire possent" (after verb of hindering), 22.		"ad partem insulae deicerentur," 28.
"uti telum adigi posset," 23.		"accidit ut esset luna plena," 29.
"ut nulla cursum tenere posset," 28.		"ut navigari commode posset effect," 31.
"sed aliae eodem referrentur," 28.		

Subjunctive of result.

c. "naves quibus reportari possent," 29.

Subjunctive in relative clause of characteristic. This is a true subjunctive of result, the action of the verb being the result of other actions or qualities belonging to the antecedent of the relative; e.g., *nemo est qui noceat* = *there is no one who so conducts himself, or is of such a character, that he harms.*

d. "quod bellum fecissent," 22. | "questus quod bellum intulissent," 27.

Subjunctive with *quod*, denoting cause on the authority of another than the writer, or an assumed reason.

e. "ut quae motum haberent" (emphasized by *ut*), 23.

Subjunctive in relative clause expressing cause.

*f.* "ut ratio, maritimae res postularent," 23.

Subjunctive by the attraction of another subjunctive clause.

*g.* "quae cognosset et quae fieri vellet ostendit," 23.

Subjunctive in indirect question.

*h.* "quae imperasset, facturos," 22. | "quaeque imperasset, facturos," 27.

Subjunctive in subordinate clause in indirect discourse. In the direct narrative *imperasset* would have been in the future perfect, to show that the command will be given before the obedience begins.

*i.* "dum reliquae naves convenirent, exspectavit," 23.

Subjunctive with *dum*, denoting futurity and purpose.

*j.* "cum esset administratum," 23.

"cum tela conicerent, incitarent,"  
24.

"reliquae cum essent inutiles,"  
29.

"cum administraretur," 31.

Subjunctive with *cum*, denoting cause.

*k.* "cum voce magna dixisset," 25.

"hos cum conspexissent," 25.  
"quod cum animadvertisset,"  
26.

"quae cum adpropinquarent et vid  
erentur," 28.

"cum equites intellegerent, cogno-  
scerent," 30.

Subjunctive with *cum*, denoting relative time.

*l.* "cum mandata deferret," 27.

| "cum pacem petissent," 27.

Subjunctive with *cum*, denoting concession.

C. Let the student establish as many rules for the subjunctive mood as he can, based upon the above classification.

## VI. WHAT WE KNOW OF THE GERMANS FROM THE TEXT OF CAESAR.

A. For places where the words "Germania" and "Germani" occur, the student should consult the Geographical Index.

B. Principal facts about this people.

*a.* The training for war. i. 36.

*b.* The personal appearance and prowess. i. 39.

*c.* The method of engagement in cavalry battles. i. 48.

*d.* The superstition in vogue in regard to the expediency of entering battle.

i. 50.

*e.* The manner of fighting in battle. i. 52.

*f.* The method of life; means of protecting their own boundaries; proceedings in time of war; government in time of peace; morality; strength of the nation. vi. 23, 24.

C. Let the student construct an historical account of the Germans by filling out the references given above, and also by further investigation. (See A.)

## VII. ADDITIONAL EXERCISES.

In the following topics the places of occurrence in first four books are given to assist the student. The portion of text to be assigned is left to the discretion of the instructor.

### 1. *debeo. oportet.*

*a. debeo.* — *debeant*, i. 17. *debere*, i. 44, 45. *deberet*, ii. 27. *debuit*, ii. 33. *debuerint*, i. 11.

*b. oportet.* — *oportere*, i. 34, 36, 44; iii. 18, 24; iv. 29. *oportebat*, i. 4. *oporteret*, i. 16, 23, 44, 45 (twice); ii. 20.

### 2. *licet.*

*licet*, iv. 1. *liceat*, i. 7. *licere*, i. 42; iii. 10; iv. 8. *liceret*, i. 30, 31, 35, 39.

### 3. *coepit.*

*coepit*, i. 20, 26; ii. 10, 12, 23; iii. 3, 21; iv. 7, 14, 25. *coeperunt*, i. 15, 23, 25 (twice), 32, 54; ii. 6, 13, 19, 26; iii. 23, 26, 28; iv. 27, 30. *coeperint*, ii. 5. *coeperant*, i. 26; iii. 12. *coepisset*, iii. 13. *coepissent*, iii. 5, 24. *coeptus est*, iv. 18. *coepti sunt*, ii. 6. *coepita erat*, iv. 18. *coepita essent*, i. 47; ii. 2. Judging from the examples just cited when is *coepisse* used in passive? Note the voice of the complementary infinitive used in last four cases.

### 4. *proprior* and *proximus.*

*propius*, i. 42, 46; iv. 9, 11, 28. *proximus*, iii. 7. *proximum*, i. 22, 24. *proximo*, i. 50. *proxima*, i. 40; ii. 12, 35; iii. 18. *proximo*, i. 44. *proximi*, i. 1, 54; ii. 3, 12, 27; iii. 11. *proximas*, i. 12. *proxima* (acc.), iii. 12. *proximis*, i. 3; ii. 33; iv. 25. *proxime*, i. 24; ii. 8, 19; iii. 29.

### 5. *aut. sive. vel.*

*a. aut.* i. 1 (twice), 13 (four times), 15, 19 (twice), 22, 27, 31 (twice), 34 (twice), 39 (three times), 40 (eight times), 43, 47 (twice), 48, 53; ii. 25, 30, 33 (twice);

iii. 6, 14, 16, 17, 22 (twice), 26; iv. 1, 2, 5, 16, 17, 20 (twice), 24 (twice), 29 (twice), 30.

b. *sive*, i. 12 (twice), 23, 27 (twice); iii. 13, 17.

c. *vel*, i. 6 (twice), 19 (twice), 31 (three times); iii. 14; iv. 7 (twice), 16.

#### 6. *postquam. cum.*

a. *postquam*, i. 24, 27; ii. 5; iii. 15.

b. *cum*, i. 1, 2, 4, 7, 9, 11, 12, 13 (twice), 14, 16, 19, 20 (three times), 22, 23, 25, 26 (four times), 27, 31, 32, 33 (twice), 35, 36, 38, 39, 40 (four times), 41, 42 (three times), 43, 47, 50, 52 (twice), 53; ii. 1, 2, 3, 4 (twice), 6 (twice), 8, 11 (twice), 13 (twice), 15, 16, 17 (four times), 19, 20, 22, 24 (three times), 25, 26 (three times), 27, 28, 29 (three times), 33 (twice); iii. 1 (twice), 2 (twice), 3 (twice), 5, 7, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14 (twice), 15 (three times), 16, 17, 20 (twice), 21, 22, 24, 25 (twice), 28, 29; iv. 2, 3, 4 (twice), 5, 6, 7, 11 (twice), 12 (three times), 14, 15 (three times), 16 (three times), 23, 24, 25 (twice), 26, 27 (twice), 28, 29, 30, 31, 32 (twice), 33, 37 (twice), 38.

#### 7. *dum.*

i. 7, 11, 27, 39, 46; iii. 17; iv. 13, 22, 23, 32, 34.

#### 8. *ut. ne.*

a. *ut*, i. 2 (twice), 3 (three times), 4 (twice), 5 (twice), 6 (twice), 7 (twice), 9 (three times), 10, 11, 12, 13 (four times), 16, 19, 20 (twice), 22 (three times), 25 (four times), 26, 28 (twice), 29, 31 (three times), 33 (twice), 34, 35 (twice), 36, 38 (three times), 39 (four times), 40, 41 (twice), 42, 43 (five times), 44 (twice), 46 (twice), 47, 48 (twice), 49, 50, 51, 52; ii. 1, 3, 5, 7, 8, 9 (twice), 10 (twice), 11 (twice), 14, 17 (three times), 18 (three times), 21, 22 (three times), 23, 25, 26, 27 (five times), 28 (twice), 32 (twice), 33 (four times); iii. 2, 3, 4 (twice), 8 (twice), 9, 12, 13 (twice), 14 (three times), 15 (three times), 17 (twice), 18, 19 (three times), 20, 21, 22, 26 (twice); iv. 1, 2 (twice), 3, 11 (four times), 12, 13 (twice), 16 (twice), 17 (three times), 19 (three times), 21 (three times), 23 (three times), 25, 27, 28, 29, 31, 33, 35.

b. *ne*, i. 4, 9, 13 (twice), 17, 19, 20, 22, 23, 26, 27, 28, 30, 31 (twice), 35, 37, 38, 42 (twice), 43, 46, 49, 51 (twice); ii. 1, 5, 8, 21, 26, 31, 32, 33; iii. 10, 11, 26, 29; iv. 6, 9, 11 (twice), 13, 25.

#### 9. *ante.*

i. 3, 6, 16, 18, 21, 31 (three times), 33, 44, 49, 50; ii. 12, 22, 32, 33 (twice), 35; iii. 20 (twice); iv. 9, 12, 35, 36.

#### 10. *apud.*

i. 2, 9, 17, 18 (twice), 16, 20 (twice), 31, 33, 40, 47, 50; ii. 2, 4, 7, 14; iii. 9, 21; iv. 1, 2, 8, 13, 15, 18.

In the remaining topics no help is given, as the work should be pursued independently. The student should collect examples from the text, classify them, and establish as many principles or truths as he is able from the material which he has gathered.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>11. Conjunctions.</li> <li>12. { <i>et</i>.</li> <li style="margin-left: 1.5em;">{ <i>atque</i>.</li> <li style="margin-left: 1.5em;">{ <i>que</i>.</li> <li>13. The conjunction <i>cum</i>.</li> <li>14. <i>antequam</i>.</li> <li>15. Particles.</li> <li>16. Adjectives</li> <li>17. Adverbs.</li> <li>18. Appositives</li> <li>19. The nominative</li> <li>20. The genitive.</li> <li>21. The dative.</li> <li>22. Dative of agent so called.</li> <li>23. Two datives.</li> <li>24. The dative after verbs of persuading.</li> <li>25. The accusative.</li> <li>26. The accusative of extent of space and duration of time.</li> <li>27. The accusative of limit of motion.</li> <li>28. The ablative.</li> <li>29. The ablative absolute.</li> <li>30. The ablative of place.</li> <li>31. Prepositions.</li> <li>32. { <i>ab</i>.</li> <li style="margin-left: 1.5em;">{ <i>de</i>.</li> <li style="margin-left: 1.5em;">{ <i>ex</i>.</li> <li>33. { <i>ad</i>.</li> <li style="margin-left: 1.5em;">{ <i>in</i>.</li> <li>34. The objective genitive.</li> <li>35. The locative case.</li> <li>36. The comparative degree.</li> <li>37. Comparatives and superlatives.</li> <li>38. Noun formation.</li> <li>39. Irregular nouns.</li> <li>40. Collective nouns.</li> <li>41. Abstract nouns.</li> <li>42. Compounds.</li> <li>43. Derivatives.</li> <li>44. Numerals.</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>45. Negatives.</li> <li>46. Classification of verbs.</li> <li>47. Conjugation.</li> <li>48. Irregular verbs</li> <li>49. The infinitive.</li> <li>50. The supine.</li> <li>51. The participle.</li> <li>52. Gerund and gerundive.</li> <li>53. The subjunctive mood.</li> <li>54. Subjunctive of result.</li> <li>55. Subjunctive of purpose.</li> <li>56. Conditional sentences.</li> <li>57. Commands and desires.</li> <li>58. Mixed purpose or result.</li> <li>59. The imperfect tense.</li> <li>60. The perfect tense.</li> <li>61. The present tense.</li> <li>62. The sequence of tenses.</li> <li>63. The active voice.</li> <li>64. The passive voice.</li> <li>65. Deponent verbs.</li> <li>66. Impersonal verbs.</li> <li>67. The periphrastic conjugation.</li> <li>68. Methods of expressing futurity.</li> <li>69. Methods of expressing necessity.</li> <li>70. Methods of expressing cause.</li> <li>71. Methods of expressing concession.</li> <li>72. Indirect question.</li> <li>73. Indirect discourse.</li> <li>74. Construction after verbs of commanding.</li> <li>75. Construction after verbs of fearing.</li> <li>76. Verbs of remembering, etc.</li> <li>77. Relative clauses.</li> <li>78. Relative adverbs.</li> <li>79. Conditional relative sentences.</li> <li>80. Expressions of time.</li> <li>81. Methods of denoting possession.</li> <li>82. The <i>Belgae</i>.</li> <li>83. The <i>Boii</i>.</li> </ul> |
|--|---|

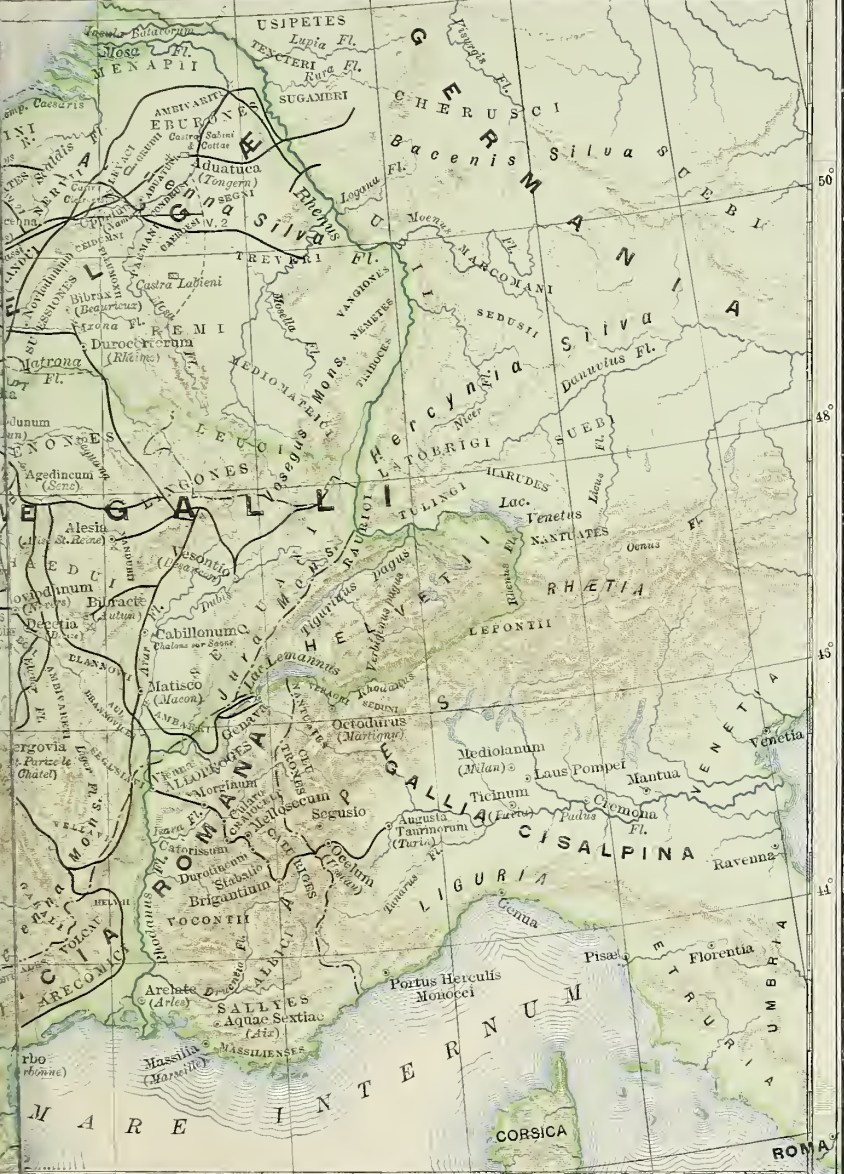
- |                     |                                |
|---------------------|--------------------------------|
| 84. Gaul.           | 92. Classification of clauses. |
| 85. The Helvetii.   | 93. The Roman Calendar.        |
| 86. Ariovistus.     | 94. The predicate.             |
| 87. Dumnorix.       | 95. The style of Caesar.       |
| 88. The Allobroges. | 96. Figures of speech.         |
| 89. Britain.        | 97. Asyndeton.                 |
| 90. Helvetia.       | 98. Ellipsis.                  |
| 91. Correlatives.   | 99. Periphrasis.               |







East 4° 20' from 6° 20' Greenwich 8° 20' 10° 20' 12° 20' 14° 20'



Longitude 2° East from 4° Paris 6° 8°

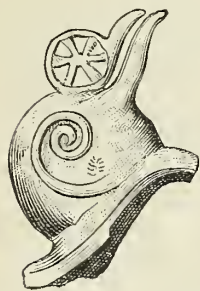


C. IULII CAESARIS  
DE BELLO GALLICO  
COMMENTARIUS PRIMUS.

1. A word which the student meets for the first time is printed in the full-faced type. (The first occurrence of different stems is also treated in the same way, e. g. *est* and *fuit*.)

2. After its first occurrence every word is put into ordinary type. The student can therefore, by a glance at a page, realize what words he has met already in his reading.

1. DESCRIPTION OF GAUL.



1. <sup>1</sup>Gallia est omnis <sup>2</sup>divisa in partes tres, <sup>3</sup>quarum unam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitani, tertiam, qui ipsorum <sup>4</sup>lingua <sup>5</sup>Celtae, nostra Galli appellantur. hi omnes <sup>6</sup>lingua, institutis, legibus inter se differunt. <sup>5</sup>Gallos ab Aquitanis Garumna flumen, a Belgis Matrona et Sequana <sup>7</sup>dividit. horum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgae, propterea quod a cultu atque humanitate provinciae longissime absunt, minimeque ad eos 10 mercatores saepe commeant atque ea, quae ad <sup>8</sup>effeminandos animos pertinent, important, proximique sunt <sup>9</sup>Germanis, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt.

1. <sup>1</sup> *Gallia*, Introd. No. 72, and Geo. Index. <sup>2</sup> *divisa*, A. & G. 291 *b*; G. 439; H. 550, n. 2. <sup>3</sup> *quarum*, A. & G. 216; G. 366; H. 397. <sup>4</sup> A. & G. 248, *c*; G. 403; H. 418. <sup>5</sup> *Celtae*, Introd. No. 48. <sup>6</sup> *lingua*, A. & G. 253; G. 398; H. 424; Introd. No. 73. <sup>7</sup> *dividit*, A. & G. 205 *f*; G. 202 r. 1; H. 463, II, 3. <sup>8</sup> *effeminandos*, A. & G. 300; G. 428; H. 544. <sup>9</sup> *Germanis*, A. & G. 234 *a*; G. 356; H. 391, I. Introd. No. 74 and Geo. Index.

qua de causa Helvetii quoque <sup>10</sup> reliquos Gallos virtute praecedunt, quod fere cotidianis proeliis cum Germanis contendunt, cum aut <sup>11</sup> suis <sup>12</sup> finibus eos prohibent, aut ipsi in eorum finibus bellum gerunt. eorum una pars, quam <sup>13</sup> Gallos <sup>5</sup> obtinere <sup>14</sup> dictum est, initium capit a flumine Rhodano; continetur Garumna flumine, Oceano, finibus Belgarum; attingit etiam ab Sequanis et Helvetiis flumen Rhenum; vergit ad septentriones. Belgae ab extremis Galliae finibus oriuntur; pertinent ad inferiorem partem fluminis Rheni; spectant in <sup>10</sup> septentrionem et orientem solem. Aquitania <sup>15</sup> a Garumna <sup>16</sup> flumine ad Pyrenaeos montes et ad eam partem Oceani, quae est ad Hispaniam, pertinet; spectat inter occasum solis et septentriones.

#### Topics for Study.

(1.) The geography of Gaul. (2.) The partitive genitive. (3.) The ablative of specification. (4.) The dative after adjectives. (5.) The preposition regularly used with the ablative of accompaniment. (6.) The reflexive pronoun. (7.) The idiom *reliquos Gallos*. (8.) The impersonal construction. (9.) The different uses of the preposition *ad* in the chapter.

### 2-29. THE HELVETIAN WAR.

#### *The ambitious designs of the Helvetii under Orgetorix.*

2. Apud Helvetios longe nobilissimus et ditissimus fuit <sup>15</sup> Orgetorix. is M. Messala et M. Pisone <sup>1</sup> consulibus <sup>2</sup> regni cupiditate inductus coniurationem nobilitatis fecit et <sup>3</sup> civitati persuasit, <sup>4</sup> ut de finibus suis cum omnibus copiis <sup>5</sup> exi-

1. <sup>10</sup> *reliquos*, A. & G. 193; G. 287, R.; H. 440, 2, N. 1, 2. <sup>11</sup> *suis*, A. & G. 196; G. 295; H. 449, 1. <sup>12</sup> *finibus*, A. & G. 243; G. 388; H. 414. <sup>13</sup> *Gallos obtinere*, A. & G. 272; G. 528, sec. 2; H. 535. <sup>14</sup> *dictum est*, A. & G. 270; G. 535; H. 538. <sup>15</sup> *a Garumna*, A. & G. 244; G. 388; H. 415. <sup>16</sup> *flumine*, A. & G. 183; G. 319; H. 363.

2. <sup>1</sup> *consulibus*, A. & G. 255 a; G. 408; H. 431, 4. <sup>2</sup> *regni*, A. & G. 217; G. 361, 2; H. 396, III. <sup>3</sup> *civitati*, A. & G. 227; G. 345, 2; H. 385, II. 4. <sup>4</sup> *ut* — *exirent*, A. & G. 331; G. 546; H. 498. <sup>5</sup> *exirent*, A. & G. 286; 205, c, 1; G. 510; H. 495, II; 461.

rent: perfacile <sup>6</sup> esse, cum virtute <sup>7</sup> omnibus <sup>8</sup> praestarent, totius Galliae <sup>9</sup> imperio potiri. id hoc facilius eis persuasit, quod undique loci natura Helvetii continentur: una ex parte flumine Rheno, latissimo atque altissimo, qui agrum Helvetium a Germanis dividit; altera ex parte monte Iura altissimo, qui <sup>5</sup> est inter Sequanos et Helvetios; tertia lacu Lemanno et flumine Rhodano, qui provinciam nostram ab Helvetiis dividit. his rebus <sup>10</sup> fiebat, ut et minus late <sup>11</sup> vagarentur, et minus facile finitimis bellum inferre possent; qua ex parte homines <sup>12</sup> bellandi cupidi magno dolore afficiebantur. pro multitudine <sup>10</sup> autem hominum et pro gloria belli atque fortitudinis angustos <sup>13</sup> se finis habere arbitrabantur, qui in longitudinem <sup>14</sup> milia <sup>15</sup> passuum CCXL, in latitudinem CLXXX patebant.

#### Topics for Study.

(1.) The superlative degree. (2.) The ablative absolute. (3.) The objective genitive. (4.) The construction after *persuasit*. (5.) The omission of the verb which governs the indirect discourse. (6.) The dative after compounds. (7.) The case employed after *potior*. (8.) The accusative of extent of space.

*The Helvetii make preparations. Orgetorix is chosen to carry out their plans.*

3. His rebus adducti et auctoritate Orgetorigis permoti constituerunt ea, quae ad proficiscendum <sup>1</sup> pertinerent, com- <sup>15</sup> parare, iumentorum et carrorum <sup>2</sup> quam maximum numerum coëmere, sementes quam maximas facere, ut in itinere copia

2. <sup>6</sup> esse, A. & G. 330, e; G. 653; H. 523. <sup>7</sup> omnibus, A. & G. 228; G. 346; H. 386. <sup>8</sup> praestarent, A. & G. 326; G. 587; H. 517. <sup>9</sup> imperio, A. & G. 249; G. 405; H. 421. <sup>10</sup> fiebat, A. & G. 277; G. 222; H. 468. <sup>11</sup> vagarentur, A. & G. 332, a; G. 558, 3; H. 501, I. <sup>12</sup> bellandi, A. & G. 218, a; 298; G. 429; H. 399, I; 542, I. <sup>13</sup> se, A. & G. 196; G. 294; H. 449. <sup>14</sup> milia, A. & G. 94, e; 257; G. 335; H. 178; 397. <sup>15</sup> passuum, A. & G. 216; G. 366; H. 396, IV.

3. <sup>1</sup> pertinerent, A. & G. 341, d; G. 630; H. 524. <sup>2</sup> quam maximum, A. & G. 93, b; G. 317; H. 170, 2.

frumenti <sup>3</sup>suppeteret, cum proximis civitatibus pacem et amicitiam confirmare. ad eas res <sup>4</sup>conficiendas biennium sibi satis esse duxerunt: in tertium annum profectionem <sup>5</sup>lege confirmant. ad eas res conficiendas Orgetorix deligitur. is <sup>5</sup>sibi legationem ad civitates suscepit. in eo itinere persuadet <sup>6</sup>Castico, Catamantaloedis filio, Sequano, cuius pater regnum in Sequanis multos <sup>7</sup>annos obtinuerat et a senatu populi Romani amicus appellatus erat, ut regnum in civitate sua <sup>8</sup>occuparet, quod pater ante habuerat; itemque Dumnorigi Haeduo, <sup>10</sup>fratri Divitiaci, qui eo <sup>9</sup>tempore principatum in civitate <sup>10</sup>obtinebat ac maxime plebi acceptus erat, ut idem conaretur, persuadet eique filiam suam in matrimonium dat. perfacile <sup>11</sup>factu <sup>12</sup>esse illis probat conata perficere, propterea quod ipse suae civitatis imperium <sup>13</sup>obtenturus esset: non esse dubium, <sup>15</sup>quin totius <sup>14</sup>Galliae plurimum Helvetii <sup>15</sup>possent; se suis copiis suoque exercitu illis regna conciliaturum confirmat. hac oratione adducti inter se fidem et iusiurandum dant et <sup>16</sup>regno occupato per tres potentissimos ac firmissimos populos totius <sup>17</sup>Galliae sese potiri posse sperant.

### Topics for Study.

(1.) The superlative with *quam*. (2.) The subjunctive of purpose. (3.) The gerundive construction. (4.) The accusative of duration of time. (5.) The historical present. (6.) The ablative of time. (7.) The datives in this chapter. (8.) The formation *factu*. (9.) The genitive after *potior*.

3. <sup>3</sup> *suppeteret*, A. & G. 317; G. 545, 1; II. 497, II. <sup>4</sup> *conficiendas*, A. & G. 300; G. 428; H. 544. <sup>5</sup> *lege*, A. & G. 248, c. 1; G. 403; H. 418. <sup>6</sup> *Castico*, A. & G. 227; G. 345, 2; II. 385, II, 4. <sup>7</sup> *annos*, A. & G. 256; G. 337; H. 379. <sup>8</sup> *occuparet*, A. & G. 331, a; G. 546; H. 499, 3. <sup>9</sup> *tempore*, A. & G. 256; G. 392; H. 429. <sup>10</sup> *obtinebat*, A. & G. 277; G. 222; II. 468. <sup>11</sup> *factu*, A. & G. 303; G. 437; H. 547. <sup>12</sup> *esse*, A. & G. 336, 1, 2; G. 653; II. 535. <sup>13</sup> *obtenturus esset*, A. & G. 113, b, 1; G. 515; II. 233; 516, II. <sup>14</sup> *Galliae*, A. & G. 216; G. 366; II. 397. <sup>15</sup> *possent*, A. & G. 319, d; G. 551, 2; H. 501, II, 2. <sup>16</sup> *regno occupato*, A. & G. 255; G. 408; H. 431, 2. <sup>17</sup> *Galliae*, A. & G. 249, a; G. 405, r. 3; H. 410, V, 3.

*The scheme is discovered. Orgetorix is tried, and is rescued by his vassals. His death.*

4. Ea res est Helvetiis per **indiciu**m enuntiata. <sup>1</sup>**moribus** suis Orgetorigem ex **vinculis** causam dicere coëgerunt; <sup>2</sup>**damnatu**m poenam sequi oportebat, ut igni <sup>3</sup>**cremaretur**. <sup>4</sup>**die** <sup>5</sup>**constituta** causae **dictionis** Orgetorix ad **iudiciu**m omnem suam **familiam**, ad hominum milia **decem**, undique coëgit et omnes <sup>6</sup>**clientes obaeratosque** suos, quorum magnum numerum habebat, **eodem** **conduxit**: <sup>7</sup>**per** cos, **ne** causam diceret, se **eripuit**. **cum** civitas **ob** eam rem **incitata** **armis** **ius** suum **exsequi** <sup>8</sup>**conaretur** multitudinemque hominum ex agris **magistratus** cogent, Orgetorix **mortuus** est; **neque** abest **suspicio**, ut Helvetii arbi-  
trantur, quin ipse sibi **mortem** <sup>9</sup>**consciverit**.

#### Topics for Study.

(1.) The idiom *ex vinculis causam dicere*. (2.) The participle. (3.) The substantive clause of result. (4.) The distinction between *per* with the accusative and *ab* with the ablative. (5.) The conjunction *cum* in temporal sense. (6.) The preposition *ad* with numerals. (7.) The subjunctive with *quin* after negative clauses. (8.) The intensive pronoun.

*The Helvetii nevertheless complete their preparations.*

5. **Post** eius mortem <sup>1</sup>**nihilo** minus Helvetii id, quod constituerant, **facere** conantur, <sup>2</sup>**ut** e finibus suis **exeant**. **ubi** iam se ad eam rem **paratos** esse arbitrati sunt, oppida sua

4. <sup>1</sup> *moribus*, A. & G. 245; G. 407; H. 416. <sup>2</sup> *damnatum*, A. & G. 292, ex. 5; G. 670; H. 549, 2. <sup>3</sup> *cremaretur*, A. & G. 332; G. 559; H. 501, III. <sup>4</sup> *die*, A. & G. 256, 1; G. 392; H. 429. <sup>5</sup> *constituta*, A. & G. 73; G. 70; H. 123. <sup>6</sup> *per cos*, A. & G. 246, b; G. 417; H. 415, I, 1, n. 1. <sup>7</sup> *conaretur*, A. & G. 325; G. 586; H. 521, II, 2. <sup>8</sup> *consciverit*, A. & G. 319, d; G. 551; H. 504.

5. <sup>1</sup> *nihilo*, A. & G. 250; G. 400; H. 423. <sup>2</sup> *ut — exeant*, A. & G. 332; G. 546; H. 501, III.

omnia, <sup>3</sup> numero ad duodecim, vicos ad quadringentos, reliqua privata aedificia incendunt, frumentum omne, praeterquam quod secum portaturi erant, comburunt, ut domum reditionis spe sublata paratiores ad omnia pericula subeunda <sup>4</sup> essent, trium  
 5 mensum molita cibaria sibi quemque <sup>5</sup> domo efferre iubent. persuadent Rauracis et Tulingis et Latovicis finitimis, uti eodem <sup>6</sup> usi consilio oppidis suis vieisque exustis una cum iis proficiscantur, Boiosque, qui trans Rhenum ineoluerant et in agrum Noricum transierant Noreiamque oppugnant, re-  
 10 ceptos ad se socios sibi adsciscunt.

#### Topics for Study.

(1.) The ablative of degree of difference. (2.) Substantive clauses of purpose. (3.) The accusative of limit of motion. (4.) Verbal nouns. (5.) The ablative absolute. (6.) The gerundive. (7.) The construction after *utor*. (8.) Other verb which the student has met in the text that has the same construction after it.

#### *The two routes offering an egress from the country.*

6. Erant omnino itinera duo, quibus <sup>1</sup> itineribus domo exire <sup>2</sup> possent: <sup>3</sup> unum per Sequanos, angustum et difficile, inter montem Iuram et flumen Rhodanum, vix qua singuli earri <sup>4</sup> ducerentur; mons autem altissimus impendebat, ut facile per-  
 15 pauci prohibere possent: <sup>5</sup> alterum per provinciam nostram, <sup>6</sup> multo facilius atque expeditius, propterea quod inter fines Helvetiorum et Allobrogum, qui nuper pacati erant, Rhodanus fluit isque nonnullis <sup>7</sup> locis vado transitur. extremum oppi-

5. <sup>3</sup> numero, A. & G. 253; G. 398; H. 424. <sup>4</sup> essent, A. & G. 317; 287 e; G. 545, I; H. 497, II; 495, II. <sup>5</sup> domo, A. & G. 258, a; G. 411; H. 412, II, 1. <sup>6</sup> usi, A. & G. 249; G. 405; H. 421, 1.

6. <sup>1</sup> itineribus, A. & G. 200; G. 617; II. 453, 2. <sup>2</sup> possent, A. & G. 320; G. 633; H. 503. <sup>3</sup> unum, A. & G. 184; G. 321; H. 364. <sup>4</sup> ducerentur, A. & G. 320; G. 633; H. 503. <sup>5</sup> alterum, A. & G. 184; G. 321; H. 364. <sup>6</sup> multo, A. & G. 250; G. 400; H. 423. <sup>7</sup> locis, A. & G. 258, f; G. 384; II. 425, II, 2.



dum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvetiorum finibus **Genava**. ex eo oppido pons ad Helvetios pertinet. Allobrogibus sese vel persuasuros, quod **nondum** <sup>8</sup> **bono** animo in populum Romanum <sup>9</sup> **viderentur**, **existimabant**, **vel vi** eoacturos, ut per suos fines eos **ire paterentur**. omnibus rebus ad profectorem <sup>5</sup> **comparatis** diem dieunt, <sup>10</sup> **qua die** ad **ripam** Rhodani omnes <sup>11</sup> **convenient**. is dies erat a. d. V. <sup>12</sup> Kal. Apr. I. Pisone, A. **Gabinio** consulibus.

### Topics for Study.

(1.) The relative pronoun. (2.) Partitive apposition. (3.) The ablative of quality. (4.) Sequence of tenses. (5.) The Roman reckoning of time.

*Caesar attempts to check the march of the Helvetii. They send ambassadors to him.*

7. <sup>1</sup> **Caesari** eum id <sup>2</sup> **nuntiatum** esset, eos per provinciam nostram iter facere <sup>3</sup> **conari**, **maturat** ab **urbe** proficisci et quam <sup>10</sup> **maximis** potest itineribus in Galliam **ulteriorem** contendit et ad Genavam **pervenit**. <sup>5</sup> provinciae toti quam maximum potest **militum** numerum **imperat** (erat omnino in Gallia ulteriore <sup>6</sup> **legio** una), **pontem**, qui erat ad Genavam, iubet **rescindi**. ubi de eius **adventu** Helvetii **certiores** facti sunt, **legatos** ad eum **mit-** <sup>15</sup> **tunt** nobilissimos civitatis, eius legationis **Nammeius** et **Verucloetius** principem locum obtinebant, qui <sup>7</sup> **dicerent** <sup>8</sup> **sibi** esse in animo **sine ullo maleficio** iter per provinciam facere, propterea

6. <sup>8</sup> *bono animo*, A. & G. 251; G. 402; H. 419, II. <sup>9</sup> *viderentur*, A. & G. 286; 336, 2; G. 653; H. 524; 493, I, 2. <sup>10</sup> *qua die*, A & G. 200; G. 617; II. 453, 2. <sup>11</sup> *convenient*, A. & G. 317; G. 632; II. 497, I. <sup>12</sup> *Kal.*, A. & G. 259, e; 376; G. appendix; H. 642, III, 3; 644, 11.

7. <sup>1</sup> *Caesari*, A. & G. 225, e; G. 344; H. 384, 1. <sup>2</sup> *nuntiatum esset*, A. & G. 325 ex. 2; G. 586; H. 521, II, 2. <sup>3</sup> *conari*, A. & G. 329, 1; H. 539, II. <sup>4</sup> *maximis*, A. & G. 93, b; G. 317; H. 170, 2. <sup>5</sup> *provinciae*, A. & G. 227; G. 345; H. 385, 1. <sup>6</sup> *legio*, Introd. No. 98. <sup>7</sup> *dicerent*, A. & G. 317; G. 544; H. 497, I. <sup>8</sup> *sibi*, A. & G. 231; G. 349; H. 387.

quod aliud iter haberent nullum: rogare, ut eius voluntate id sibi facere liceat. Caesar, quod <sup>9</sup> memoria tenebat L. Cassium consulem <sup>10</sup> occisum exercitumque eius ab Helvetiis pulsum et sub iugum missum, concedendum non putabat; neque homines <sup>5</sup> inimico animo data facultate per provinciam <sup>11</sup> itineris faciendi temperaturos ab iniuria et maleficio existimabat. tamen, ut spatium intercedere posset, dum milites, quos imperaverat, <sup>12</sup> convenirent, legatis respondit diem se ad deliberandum sump-  
 turum: si quid vellent, ad Idus Apr. <sup>13</sup> reverterentur.

#### Topics for Study.

(1.) The dative of indirect object. (2.) The infinitive clause as an appositive. (3.) The relative in purpose clauses. (4.) The dative of possessor. (5.) The idiom *certiores facti*. (6.) The ablatives in this chapter. (7.) The gerundive. (8.) The imperative after a verb of saying. (9.) The Roman legion.

*Caesar erects fortifications. The Helvetii attempt to cross the Rhone against his will, but are compelled to desist.*

<sup>10</sup> 8. Interea ea <sup>1</sup> legione, quam secum habebat, militibusque, qui ex provincia convenerant, a lacu Lemanno, qui in flumen Rhodanum influit, ad montem Iuram, qui fines Sequanorum ab Helvetiis dividit, milia passuum decem novem murum in altitudinem <sup>2</sup> pedum sedecim fossamque perducit. eo opere per-  
<sup>15</sup> fecto praesidia disponit, castella communit, <sup>3</sup> quo facilius, si <sup>4</sup> se invito transire <sup>5</sup> conarentur, prohibere possit. ubi ea dies, quam constituerat cum legatis, venit, et legati ad eum reverterunt, negat, se <sup>6</sup> more et exemplo populi Romani posse iter ulli per

<sup>7</sup> <sup>9</sup> *memoria*, A. & G. 248; G. 403; H. 420 <sup>10</sup> *occisum*, A. & G. 272; G. 527; H. 535, 1. <sup>11</sup> *itineris faciendi*, A. & G. 296; G. 428; 151, 5; H. 544. <sup>12</sup> *convenirent*, A. & G. 328; G. 574; H. 519, II, 2. <sup>13</sup> *reverterentur*, A. & G. 339; G. 655; H. 523, III.

8. <sup>1</sup> *legione*, A. & G. 248; G. 403; H. 420. <sup>2</sup> *pedum*, A. & G. 215, b; G. 364; H. 396, V. <sup>3</sup> *quo* — *possit*, A. & G. 317, b; G. 545, 2; H. 497, II. <sup>4</sup> *se invito*, A. & G. 255, a; G. 408; H. 431, 4. <sup>5</sup> *conarentur*, A. & G. 342; G. 631; H. 529, 2. <sup>6</sup> *more*, A. & G. 245; G. 407; H. 416.

provineiam dare et, si vim facere <sup>7</sup>conentur, prohibiturum ostendit. Helvetii ea <sup>8</sup>spe **deiecti navibus iunctis ratibusque compluribus** faetis, alii vadis Rhodani, qua minima altitudo fluminis erat, **nonnumquam interdū**, saepius noctu, si **perrumpere** <sup>9</sup>possent, conati, operis **munitione** et militum **concursu** et <sup>5</sup>**telis repulsi** hoc conatu **destiterunt**

### Topics for Study.

(1.) The ablative of instrument. (2.) The genitive of quality. (3.) The regular conjunction in final clauses containing a comparative. (4.) The subjunctive by attraction. (5.) The indirect question. (6.) The different parts of speech for forming the ablative absolute that the student has met with.

*Dumnorix prevails upon the Sequani to allow the Helvetii to march through their territory.*

9. **Relinquebatur** una per Sequanos **via**, qua <sup>1</sup>Sequanis **invitis propter angustias** ire non poterant. his eum sua **sponte** persuadere non possent, legatos ad Dumnorigem Haeduum mittunt, ut <sup>2</sup>eo **deprecatore** a Sequanis <sup>3</sup>**impetrarent**. Dumnorix <sup>10</sup>**gratia et largitione** apud Sequanos plurimum poterat et Helvetiis erat amicus, quod ex ea civitate Orgetorigis filiam in matrimonium duxerat, et cupiditate regni adductus <sup>4</sup>**novis rebus studebat** et quam plurimas civitates suo **beneficio** habere **obstrictas** volebat. **itaque** rem suseipit et a Sequanis impetrat, ut per 15 fines suos Helvetios ire patiantur, **obsides**que uti inter sese dent, perficit: Sequani, ne itinere Helvetios prohibeant, Helvetii, ut sine maleficio et iniuria <sup>5</sup>transeant.

8. <sup>7</sup>conentur, A. & G. 336; G. 653; H. 524. <sup>8</sup>spe, A. & G. 243; G. 388; H. 414. <sup>9</sup>possent, A. & G. 334, b; G. 462, 2; H. 529, 1.

9. <sup>1</sup>Sequanis invitis, A. & G. 255; G. 408; H. 431. <sup>2</sup>eo deprecatore, A. & G. 255, a; G. 403; H. 431, 4. <sup>3</sup>impetrarent, A. & G. 287, e; G. 511. R.; H. 495, II. <sup>4</sup>novis rebus, A. & G. 227, e; G. 345; H. 384, 1, 6. <sup>5</sup>transeant, A. & G. 317; G. 545; H. 497, II.

## Topics for Study.

(1.) The mood used with the conjunction *cum* in causal sense. (2.) The historical present. (3.) The construction after *studeo*. (4.) The idiom *plurimum posse*. (5.) The expression for "to marry" used of the man. (6.) The negatives used in purpose clauses. (7.) The anticipation of the part the verb "to have" was to hold in verbal conjugation.

*Caesar prepares to defeat this plan.*

10. **Caesari renuntiatur**, Helvetiis esse in animo, per agrum Sequanorum et Haeduarum iter in **Santonum** fines facere, qui non longe a **Tolosatum** finibus absunt, quae civitas est in provincia. id si <sup>1</sup>fieret, **intellegebat** magno eum periculo provinciae  
5 futurum, ut homines **bellicosos**, populi Romani inimicos, locis patentibus maximeque frumentariis finitimos <sup>2</sup>haberet. ob eas causas ei <sup>3</sup>munitioni, quam fecerat, **T. Labienum** <sup>4</sup>legatum **praefecit**, ipse in **Italiam** magnis itineribus contendit duasque **ibi** legiones **conscribit** et tres, quae **circum Aquileiam** hiemabant,  
10 ex **hibernis educit** et, qua proximum iter in ulteriorem Galliam per **Alpes** erat, cum his **quinque** legionibus ire contendit. **ibi** **Centrones** et **Graioceli** et **Caturiges** <sup>5</sup>locis **superioribus** occupatis  
<sup>6</sup>itineri exercitum prohibere conantur. compluribus his proeliis pulsus ab **Ocelo**, quod est **citerioris** provinciae extremum, in fines  
15 **Vocontiorum** ulterioris provinciae die **septimo** pervenit; **inde** in **Allobrogum** fines, ab **Allobrogibus** in **Segusiavos** exercitum ducit. hi sunt **extra** provinciam trans **Rhodanum primi**.

## Topics for Study.

(1.) Subordinate clauses in indirect discourse. (2.) The dative after compounds. (3.) The ablative absolute. (4.) Substantive clauses of result. (5.) The ablative of separation. (6.) The comparison of adjectives in *us* preceded by a vowel. (7.) The functions of the *legatus*.

10. <sup>1</sup> *fieret*, A. & G. 336; G. 653; H. 524. <sup>2</sup> *haberet*, A. & G. 329; G. 507; H. 501, 1. <sup>3</sup> *munitioni*, A. & G. 228; G. 346; H. 386. <sup>4</sup> *legatum*, Introd. No. 100, b. <sup>5</sup> *locis—occupatis*, A. & G. 255; G. 408; H. 431, 2. <sup>6</sup> *itineri*, A. & G. 243; G. 388; H. 414.

*The Haedui and other tribes complain to Caesar of the devastation of their fields.*

**11.** Helvetii iam per angustias et fines Sequanorum suas copias **traduxerant** et in Haeduum fines pervenerant eorumque agros **populabantur**. Haedui, cum se <sup>1</sup>suaque ab iis **defendere** non <sup>2</sup>possent, legatos ad Caesarem mittunt <sup>3</sup>**rogatum auxilium**: ita se omni tempore de populo Romano <sup>4</sup>**meritos esse**, ut **paene** <sup>5</sup>in **conspectu** exercitus nostri agri <sup>5</sup>**vastari**, **liberi** eorum in **servitute** abduci, oppida **expugnari** non <sup>6</sup>**debuerint**. eodem tempore Haedui **Ambarri**, **necessarii** et **consanguinei** Haeduum, Caesarem certiores faciunt sese <sup>7</sup>**depopulatis** agris non facile ab oppidis vim **hostium** prohibere. item Allobroges, qui trans <sup>10</sup>Rhodanum vicis **possessionesque** habebant, <sup>8</sup>**fuga** se ad Caesarem recipiunt et **demonstrant** sibi **praeter** agri **solum** nihil esse <sup>9</sup>reliqui. <sup>10</sup>quibus rebus adductus Caesar non <sup>11</sup>**expectandum** <sup>12</sup>sibi **statuit**, dum omnibus **fortunis** sociorum **consumptis** in Santonos Helvetii <sup>13</sup>pervenirent.

15

**Topics for Study.**

(1.) Causal clauses with *cum*. (2.) The use of the present infinitive after *debeo*. (3.) The time denoted by the infinitive. (4.) The supine. (5.) The passive notion in deponent verbs. (6.) The impersonal construction. (7.) The ablative of means. (8.) The partitive genitive. (9.) The dative of agent. (10.) Temporal clauses with *dum*. (11.) The omission of the verb which governs the indirect discourse.

**11.** <sup>1</sup> *sua*, A. & G. 188, 197, *d*, ex. 2; G. 195, R. 2; H. 441, 449. <sup>2</sup> *possent*, A. & G. 326; G. 587; H. 517. <sup>3</sup> *rogatum*, A. & G. 302; G. 436; H. 546. <sup>4</sup> *meritos esse*, A. & G. 330 *e*, 335, 336; G. 651-653; H. 522-524. <sup>5</sup> *vastari*, A. & G. 288, *a*; H. 537, 1. <sup>6</sup> *debuerint*, A. & G. 287, *e*; H. 495, VI. <sup>7</sup> *depopulatis agris*, A. & G. 135, *b*; H. 231, 2. <sup>8</sup> *fuga*, A. & G. 248; G. 403; H. 420. <sup>9</sup> *reliqui*, A. & G. 216; G. 371; H. 397. <sup>10</sup> *quibus*, A. & G. 180 *f*; G. 612 R. 1; H. 453. <sup>11</sup> *expectandum*, A. & G. 330, *e*; G. 353; H. 234. <sup>12</sup> *sibi*, A. & G. 232; G. 352; H. 388. <sup>13</sup> *pervenirent*, A. & G. 328; G. 574; H. 519, II, 2.

*The destruction of the Tigurini.*

12. Flumen est **Arar**, quod per fines Haeduum et Sequanorum in Rhodanum influit **incredibili** <sup>1</sup> lenitate, ita ut oculis, in **utram** partem <sup>2</sup> fluat, **iudicari** non <sup>3</sup> possit. id Helvetii rati- bus **ac** **linitribus** iunctis transibant. ubi per exploratores Caesar 5 certior factus est, tres iam copiarum partes Helvetios id <sup>4</sup> flumen traduxisse, **quartam** fere partem **citra** flumen Ararim reliquam esse, de tertia **vigilia** cum legionibus tribus **e castris** profectus ad eam partem pervenit, quae nondum flumen transierat. eos **impeditos** et **inopinantes** aggressus magnam eorum partem **con-** 10 **cidit**: reliqui fugae sese <sup>5</sup> **mandarunt** atque in proximas **silvas** **abdiderunt**. is pagus appellabatur **Tigurinus**; **nam** omnis civitas Helvetia in **quattuor** pagos divisa est. hic pagus unus, cum domo exisset patrum nostrorum memoria, L. Cassium consulem **interfecerat** et eius exercitum sub iugum miserat. ita **sive** **casu** 15 **sive** consilio **deorum immortalium**, quae <sup>6</sup> pars civitatis Helvetiae **insignem calamitatem** populo Romano intulerat, ea <sup>7</sup> princeps poenas **persolvit**. qua in re Caesar non **solum** **publicas**, **sed** etiam **privatas** iniurias **ultus** est, quod eius **soceri** L. Pisonis **avum**; L. Pisonem legatum, Tigurini eodem proelio, quo Cas- 20 sium, interfecerant.

**Topics for Study.**

(1.) The ablative of manner. (2.) The accusative after compounds. (3.) Indirect question. (4.) Subjunctive of result. (5.) The attraction of the antecedent. (6.) The contraction of the perfect. (7.) The idiom *princeps poenas persolvit*. (8.) The deponent verb. (9.) Temporal clauses. (10.) The divisions of the Roman day and night. (11.) The three methods (illustrated in this chapter) of supplying the deficiency caused by the absence of a perfect active participle in the Latin language.

12. <sup>1</sup> *lenitate*, A. & G. 248; G. 401; H. 419, III. <sup>2</sup> *fluat*, A. & G. 334; G. 469; H. 529, I. <sup>3</sup> *possit*, A. & G. 319; G. 554; H. 500, II. <sup>4</sup> *flumen*, A. & G. 239, *b*; G. 330; H. 376. <sup>5</sup> *mandarunt*, A. & G. 128, *a*; G. 191; H. 235. <sup>6</sup> *pars*, A. & G. 200, *b*, *x*.; G. 622; H. 445, 9. <sup>7</sup> *princeps*, A. & G. 191; H. 442.

*The embassy sent from the Helvetii. Divico speaks.*

13. Hoc proelio facto reliquas copias Helvetiorum ut **consequi** <sup>1</sup>posset, pontem in Arare <sup>2</sup>faciendum **curat** atque ita exercitum traducit. Helvetii **repentino** eius adventu **commoti** eum id, quod ipsi diebus **viginti** aegerrime confecerant, ut flumen transirent, uno illum die fecisse <sup>3</sup>intellegerent, legatos ad eum <sup>5</sup>mittunt; cuius legationis **Divico** princeps fuit, qui bello **Cassiano** dux Helvetiorum fuerat. is ita cum Caesare **egit**: si pacem populus Romanus cum Helvetiis <sup>4</sup>faceret, in eam partem <sup>5</sup>ituros atque ibi futuros Helvetios, ubi eos Caesar constituisset atque esse voluisset; **sin** bello **persequi** **perseveraret**, <sup>6</sup>remi- <sup>10</sup>nisceretur et **veteris incommodi** populi Romani et **pristinæ** virtutis Helvetiorum. quod **improviso** unum pagum **adortus** esset, cum ii, qui flumen transissent, <sup>7</sup>suis auxilium **ferre** non possent, ne ob eam rem aut suæ **magnopere** virtuti **tribueret** aut ipsos **despiceret**. se ita a patribus **maioribusque** suis <sup>15</sup>**dicisse**, ut **magis** virtute, quam **dolo** <sup>8</sup>contenderent aut **insidiis** niterentur. **quare** ne **committeret**, ut is locus, ubi **constitissent**, ex calamitate populi Romani et **interneccione** exercitus **nomen** caperet aut **memoriam** proderet.

**Topics for Study.**

(1.) The subjunctive of purpose. (2.) Temporal clauses with *cum*. (3.) The gerundive construction. (4.) The ablative of time. (5.) Subordinate clauses in indirect discourse. (6.) The prepositions in this chapter. (7.) The mood in indirect discourse representing the indicative future (perfect) of the direct. (8.) The sequence of tenses.

13. <sup>1</sup> *posset*, A. & G. 317; G. 545, 1; H. 497, II. <sup>2</sup> *faciendum*, A. & G. 294, d; G. 431; H. 544. <sup>3</sup> *intellegerent*, A. & G. 325; G. 586; H. 521, II, 2. <sup>4</sup> *faceret*, A. & G. 336; G. 653; H. 524. <sup>5</sup> *ituros*, A. & G. 330, 1; G. 527; H. 535, 1. <sup>6</sup> *reminisceretur*, A. & G. 339; G. 655; H. 523, III. <sup>7</sup> *suis*, A. & G. 190, a; G. 195; H. 441, 1. <sup>8</sup> *contenderent*, A. & G. 319; G. 554; H. 500, II.

*Caesar's reply.*

14. His Caesar ita respondit: <sup>1</sup>eo sibi minus <sup>2</sup>dubitationis dari, quod eas res, quas legati Helvetii commemorassent, <sup>3</sup>memoria teneret, atque <sup>4</sup>eo gravius ferre, quo minus merito populi Romani accidissent: qui si alicuius <sup>5</sup>iniuriae sibi <sup>5</sup>consci-  
 5 sciuis fuisset, non fuisse difficile cavere; sed eo deceptum, quod neque commissum a se intellexeret, quare timeret, neque sine causa timendum putaret. <sup>6</sup>quod si veteris <sup>7</sup>contumeliae obli-  
 visci vellet, <sup>8</sup>num etiam recentium iniuriarum, quod eo invito iter per provinciam per vim temptassent, quod Haeduos, quod  
 10 Ambarros, quod Allobrogas <sup>9</sup>vexassent, memoriam deponere posse? quod sua victoria tam insolenter gloriarentur quodque tam diu se impune iniurias tulisse admirarentur, eodem pertinere. consuesse enim deos immortales, quo gravius homines  
 ex commutatione rerum doleant, quos pro scelere eorum ulcisci  
 15 velint, his secundiores interdum res et diuturniorem impunitatem concedere. eum ea ita <sup>10</sup>sint, tamen, si obsides ab iis sibi dentur, uti ea, quae polliceantur, facturos intellegat, et si Haeduis de iniuriis, quas ipsis sociisque eorum intulerint, item si Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sese eum iis pacem esse faeturum.  
 20 Divico respondit: ita Helvetios a maioribus suis institutos esse, uti obsides accipere, non dare, consuerint: eius rei populum Romanum esse testem. hoc responso dato discessit.

**Topics for Study.**

(1.) The ablative of cause. (2.) The partitive genitive. (3.) The correlative *quo — eo*. (4.) The ablative of difference. (5.) The ablative of means. (6.) The genitive after adjectives. (7.) The genitive after verbs. (8.) Concessive clauses with *cum*. (9.) Interrogative words used in text thus far.

14. <sup>1</sup>eo, A. & G. 245; G. 407; H. 416. <sup>2</sup>dubitationis, A. & G. 216; G. 370; H. 397. <sup>3</sup>memoria, A. & G. 248; G. 403; H. 420. <sup>4</sup>eo — quo, A. & G. 106, c; G. 400; H. 423. <sup>5</sup>iniuriae, A. & G. 218, a; G. 373; H. 399, 2. <sup>6</sup>quod si, A. & G. 240, b; H. 423, 6. <sup>7</sup>contumeliae, A. & G. 219; G. 375; H. 406, II. <sup>8</sup>num, A. & G. 210, 6; G. 458; H. 351, 1, n. 3. <sup>9</sup>vexassent, A. & G. 333; G. 525; H. 516. <sup>10</sup>sint, A. & G. 326; G. 588; H. 515, III.



*The cavalry of Caesar defeated by the Helvetii. The march of both armies.*

**15. Postero die castra ex eo loco movent.** idem facit Caesar equitatumque omnem, ad numerum quattuor milium, quem ex omni provincia et Haeduis atque eorum sociis coactum habebat, **praemittit**, qui <sup>1</sup>videant, quas in partes hostes iter faciant. qui <sup>2</sup>cupidius **novissimum agmen insecuti alieno loco cum equitatu** 5 Helvetiorum proelium committunt; et **pauci** <sup>3</sup>de nostris **cadunt**. quo proelio sublatis Helvetii, quod **quingentis** equitibus **tantam** multitudinem equitum **propulerant**, **audacius subsistere** nonnumquam et novissimo agmine proelio nostros **lacessere coeperunt**. Caesar suos a proelio continebat ac satis habebat in 10 **praesentia** hostem **rapinis, pabulationibus populationibusque** prohibere. ita dies **circiter quindecim** iter fecerunt, uti inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum primum non **amplius quinque** aut **senis** milibus **passuum interesset**.

#### Topics for Study.

(1.) The relative clause of purpose (2.) An equivalent for the partitive genitive. (3.) The force of the comparative. (4.) Collective nouns. (5.) The ablative of instrument. (6.) The accusative of duration of time. (7.) Distributive numerals.

*The delay of the Haedui in furnishing grain. Caesar calls a council of their chiefs.*

**16. Interim cotidie Caesar** <sup>1</sup>Haeduos frumentum, quod essent 15 publice polliciti, <sup>2</sup>**flagitare**. nam propter **frigora**, quod Gallia sub septentrionibus, ut ante dictum est, **posita** est, non **modo** frumenta in agris **matura** non erant, sed ne **pabuli quidem** satis

**15.** <sup>1</sup> *videant*, A. & G. 317; G. 632; H. 497, l. <sup>2</sup> *cupidius*, A. & G. 93, a; G. 312; H. 444, l. <sup>3</sup> *de nostris*, A. & G. 216, c; G. 371, R. 5; H. 397, 3, x. 3.

**16.** <sup>1</sup> *Haeduos frumentum*, A. & G. 239, c; G. 233; H. 374. <sup>2</sup> *flagitare*, A. & G. 275; G. 650; H. 536, l.

magna eopia suppetebat: eo autem <sup>3</sup>frumento, quod flumine Arare navibus **subvexerat**, propterea uti minus poterat, quod iter ab Arare Helvetii **averterant**, a quibus discedere **nolebat**, diem ex die duere Haedui: **conferri, comportari**, adesse dicere. 5 ubi se diutius duei intellexit et diem **instare**, quo die frumentum militibus **metiri** oporteret, **convocatis** eorum principibus, quorum magnam copiam in eastris habebat, in his Divitiaceo et **Lisco**, qui **summo** magistratui **praeerat**, quem **vergobretum** appellant Haedui, qui **creatur annuus** et **vitae necisque** in suos 10 habet **potestatem**, graviter eos **accusat**, quod, cum neque **emi** neque ex agris sumi posset, tam **necessario** tempore, tam **propinquis** hostibus ab iis non <sup>4</sup>**sublevetur**; **praesertim** eum magna ex parte eorum **precibus** adductus bellum susceperit, multo etiam gravius, quod sit **destitutus, queritur**.

#### Topics for Study.

(1.) Verbs which admit two accusatives. (2.) Frequentatives. (3.) The "historical infinitive." (4.) The construction after *utor*. (5.) Position of the emphatic word with *ne—quidem*. (6.) The dative with compounds. (7.) The ablative with comparatives. (8.) Causal clauses introduced by *quod* on authority of another.

#### Speech of Liscus.

15 **17. Tum demum** Liscus oratione Caesaris adductus, quod **antea tacuerat, proponit**: esse nonnullos, quorum auctoritas apud plebem plurimum **valeat**, qui **privatim** plus possint, quam ipsi magistratus. hos **seditiosa** atque **improba** oratione multitudinem **detertere**, ne frumentum <sup>1</sup>**conferant**, quod praestare 20 debeant: si iam principatum Galliae obtinere non possint, Gallorum quam Romanorum imperia **praeferre**, neque **dubitare** [debeant], <sup>2</sup>**quin**, si Helvetios **superaverint** Romani, una eum

**16.** <sup>3</sup> *frumento*, A. & G. 249; G. 405; H. 421, 1. <sup>4</sup> *sublevetur*, A. & G. 321; G. 541; H. 516, H.

**17.** <sup>1</sup> *conferant*, A. & G. 331, e; G. 548; H. 505, II, 2. <sup>2</sup> *quin*, A. & G. 319, d; G. 551; H. 505, 1.

reliqua Gallia <sup>3</sup> Haeduis libertatem sint erepturi. ab eisdem nostra consilia quaeque in castris gerantur hostibus enuntiarī: hos a se coërceri non posse: quin etiam, quod necessarium rem coactus Caesari enuntiarit, intellegere sese, quanto id cum periculo fecerit, et ob eam causam, quam diu potuerit, tacuisse. 5

### Topics for Study.

- (1.) Subjunctive after verbs of *hindering*. (2.) The time of the infinitive. (3.) Result expressed by *quin*. (4.) The dative for the ablative of separation. (5.) The accusatives in this chapter.

### *Liscus discloses the treachery of Dumnorix.*

18. Caesar hac oratione Lisci Dumnorigem, Divitiaci fratrem, designari sentiebat, sed, quod pluribus praesentibus cas res iactari nolebat, celeriter concilium dimittit, Liscum retinet. quaerit ex solo ea, quae in conventu dixerat. dicit liberius atque audacius. eadem secreto ab aliis quaerit; reperit esse 10 vera: ipsum esse Dumnorigem, summa audacia, magna apud plebem propter liberalitatem gratia, cupidum rerum novarum. compluris <sup>1</sup> annos portoria reliquaque omnia Haeduorum vectigalia parvo pretio redempta <sup>2</sup> habere, propterea, quod illo licente contra liceri audeat nemo. his rebus et suam rem 15 familiarem auxisse et facultates ad largiendum magnas comparasse; magnum numerum equitatus suo sumptu semper alere et circum se habere, neque solum <sup>3</sup> domi, sed etiam apud finitimas civitates largiter posse, atque huius potentiae <sup>4</sup> causa matrem in Biturigibus homini illic nobilissimo ac potentissimo collocasse, ipsum ex Helvetiis uxorem habere, sororem ex matre et propinquas suas <sup>5</sup> nuptum in alias civitates collocasse. favere et

17. <sup>3</sup> *Haeduis*, A. & G. 229; G. 344, R. 2; H. 385, II, 2.

18. <sup>1</sup> *annos*, A. & G. 256; G. 337; H. 379. <sup>2</sup> *habere*, A. & G. 292, c; G. 230; H. 388, 1, N. <sup>3</sup> *domi*, A. & G. 258, d; G. 412, R. 1; H. 426, 2. <sup>4</sup> *causa*, A. & G. 245, c; G. 407; H. 416. <sup>5</sup> *nuptum*, A. & G. 302; G. 436; H. 546, 1.

cupere Helvetiis propter eam **affinitatem**, **odisse** etiam suo nomine Caesarem et Romanos, quod eorum adventu potentia eius **deminuta** et Divitiacus frater in **antiquum** locum gratiae atque **honoris** sit **restitutus**. si quid accidat Romanis, summam in  
 5 spem per Helvetios regni obtinendi venire; imperio populi Romani non modo de regno, sed etiam de ea, quam habeat, gratia **desperare**. reperiebat etiam in quaerendo Caesar, quod proelium **equestre adversum** paucis ante diebus esset factum, initium eius fugae factum a Dumnorige atque eius equitibus (nam equitatu,  
 10 quem <sup>6</sup>auxilio Caesari Haedui miserant, Dumnorix praecerat): eorum fuga reliquum esse equitatum **perterritum**.

#### Topics for Study.

(1.) The locative case. (2.) The ablative of cause. (3.) The supine. (4.) Two datives. (5.) The ablative of price. (6.) The dative with special verbs. (7.) The ablative of characteristic.

*Caesar summons Divitiacus, brother of Dumnorix.*

19. Quibus rebus **cognitis**, cum ad has suspiciones certissimae res **accederent**, quod per fines Sequanorum Helvetios  
 1 traduxisset, quod **obsides** inter eos dandos curasset, quod ca  
 15 omnia non modo <sup>2</sup>**iniussu** suo et civitatis, sed etiam **inscientibus** ipsis fecisset, quod a magistratu Haeduum accusaretur, satis esse causae arbitrabatur, quare in eum aut ipse animadverteret, aut civitatem animadvertere iuberet. his omnibus rebus unum **repugnabat**, quod Divitiaci fratris summum in populum  
 20 Romanum **studium**, summam in se voluntatem, **egregiam** fidem, **iustitiam**, **temperantiam** cognoverat: nam, <sup>3</sup>**ne** eius **supplicio** Divitiaci animum **offenderet**, **verebatur**. itaque **prius**, quam

18. <sup>6</sup> *auxilio Caesari*, A. & G. 233; G. 350; H. 390, II.

19. <sup>1</sup> *traduxisset*, A. & G. 341, d; G. 630; H. 516, II    <sup>2</sup> *iniussu*, A. & G. 71 b; G. 76, b; H. 134.    <sup>3</sup> *ne*, A. & G. 331, f; G. 552; H. 498, III, x.

quicquam <sup>4</sup>conaretur, Divitiacum ad se **vocari** iubet et cotidianis **interpretibus remotis**, per C. **Valerium Procillum**, principem Galliae provinciae, familiarem suum, cui summam omnium rerum fidem habebat, cum eo **colloquitur simul commonefacit**, quae ipso praesente in concilio Gallorum de Dumnorige <sup>5</sup>sint dicta, et ostendit, quae **separatim** quisque de eo apud se dixerit. **petit** atque **hortatur**, ut sine eius **offensione** animi vel ipse de eo causa cognita statuatur, vel civitatem statuere iubeat.

### Topics for Study.

(1.) Clauses introduced by *quod* on another's authority. (2.) The partitive genitive. (3.) The construction after verbs of fearing. (4.) Defective nouns. (5.) The subjunctive with *priusquam*. (6.) Subjunctive of purpose.

*Divitiacus intercedes for his brother. Caesar pardons Dumnorige.*

20. Divitiacus multis cum lacrimis Caesarem **complexus obsecrare** coepit, ne quid gravius in fratrem statueret: **scire** se 10 illa esse vera, nec quemquam ex eo plus quam se doloris capere, propterea quod, cum ipse <sup>1</sup>gratia plurimum domi atque in reliqua Gallia, ille minimum propter **adulescentiam** posset, per se **crevisset**; quibus **opibus** ac **nervis** non solum ad **minuendam** gratiam, sed paene ad **perniciem** suam <sup>2</sup>uteretur. sese tamen et 15 **amore** <sup>3</sup>fraterno et **existimatione vulgi** commoveri. quod si quid ei a Caesare gravius <sup>4</sup>accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amicitiae apud eum teneret, neminem existimaturum, non sua voluntate factum; qua ex re futurum, uti totius Galliae animi a se averterentur. haec cum pluribus **verbis flens** a Caesare 20 peteret, Caesar eius **dextram** prendit; **consolatus** rogat, finem **orandi** <sup>5</sup>faciat; <sup>6</sup>tanti eius apud se gratiam esse ostendit, uti et

19. <sup>4</sup> conaretur, A. & G. 327; G. 579; H. 520, II.

20 <sup>1</sup> gratia, A. & G. 245; G. 407; H. 416. <sup>2</sup> uteretur, A. & G. 336; G. 653; H. 524. <sup>3</sup> fraterno, A & G. 190, b; G. 363, R.; H. 395, N. 2. <sup>4</sup> accidisset, A. & G. 307, f; G. 659; H. 525, 2. <sup>5</sup> faciat, A. & G. 331, f, R.; G. 546, R. 2; H. 499, 2. <sup>6</sup> tanti, A. & G. 252, a; G. 379; H. 405.

reipublicae iniuriam et suum dolorem eius voluntati ac precibus **condonet**. Dumnorigem ad se vocat, fratrem **adhibet**; quae in eo **reprehendat**, ostendit, quae ipse intellegat, quae civitas queratur, proponit; **monet**, ut in reliquum tempus omnes suspiciones **vitet**; **praeterita** se Divitiaco fratri condonare dicit. Dumnorigi **custodes** ponit, ut, quae agat, quibuscum **loquatur**, scire possit.

#### Topics for Study.

(1.) The adjective for the genitive. (2.) Principal clauses in indirect discourse. (3.) Subordinate clauses in indirect discourse. (4.) Change of person in indirect discourse. (5.) The omission of *ut*. (6.) The periphrastic form *futurum esse*.

#### *The preparations for engaging the Helvetii.*

**21.** Eodem die ab exploratoribus certior factus hostes sub monte **consedisse** milia passuum ab ipsius castris **octo**, **qualis** esset natura montis et qualis in **circuitu ascensus**, qui <sup>1</sup>cognoscerent, misit. renuntiatum est, facilem esse. de tertia vigilia Titum Labienum, legatum pro **praetore**, cum duabus legionibus et iis **ducibus**, qui iter cognoverant, summum iugum montis **ascendere** iubet; quid sui consilii sit, ostendit. ipse de quarta vigilia eodem itinere, quo hostes ierant, ad eos contendit equitatumque omnem ante se mittit. P. **Considius**, qui rei **militaris peritissimus** habebatur et in exercitu L. **Sullae** et **postea** in M. **Crassi** fuerat, cum exploratoribus praemittitur.

#### Topics for Study.

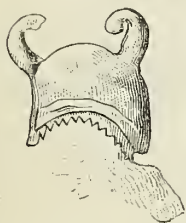
(1.) The powers of *praetor*. (2.) Relative clauses of purpose. (3.) The *vigiliae*. (4.) The indirect question.

*These preparations are rendered useless by the fears of P. Considius.*

**22.** Prima luce, cum summus mons a T. Labieno teneretur, ipse ab hostium castris non longius mille et quingentis passibus

**21.** <sup>1</sup> *cognoscerent*, A. & G. 317; G. 632; H. 497, 1.

abesset, neque, ut postea ex **captivis comperit**, aut ipsius adventus aut Labieni <sup>1</sup>cognitus esset, Considius equo **admisso** ad eum **accurrit**, dicit montem, quem a Labieno occupari voluerit, ab hostibus teneri: id se a **Gallicis** armis atque insignibus cognovisse. Caesar suas copias in proximum <sup>2</sup>**collem subducit**, <sup>5</sup>**aciem instruit**. Labienus, ut erat ei **praeceptum** a Caesare, ne proelium <sup>3</sup>committeret, nisi ipsius copiae **prope** hostium castra visae essent, ut undique uno tempore in hostes **impetus** fieret, monte occupato nostros exspectabat <sup>4</sup>proelioque **abstinebat**. multo **denique** die per exploratores Caesar cognovit et montem a suis teneri et Helvetios castra movisse et



10

15

Considium timore perterritum, quod non vidisset, pro viso sibi renuntiasset. eo die quo consuerat **intervallo** hostes sequitur et <sup>5</sup>milia passuum tria ab eorum castris castra ponit.

### Topics for Study.

(1) The idiom *equo admisso*. (2) Substantive clauses. (3.) Dependent clauses in indirect discourse. (4) Asyndeton. (5.) The idiom *multo die*.

### *Caesar advances towards Bibracte.*

**23.** **Postridie** eius <sup>1</sup>diei, quod omnino **biduum** supererat, cum exercitui frumentum metiri oporteret, et quod a **Bibracte**, <sup>20</sup>oppido Haeduorum longe maximo et **copiosissimo**, non amplius milibus passuum XVIII aberat, rei **frumentariae prospiciendum**

**22.** <sup>1</sup> *cognitus esset*, A. & G. 325; G. 586; H. 521, II, 2. <sup>2</sup> *collem*, Introd. No. 116. <sup>3</sup> *committeret*, A. & G. 321, a; G. 546; H. 498, I. <sup>4</sup> *proelio*, A. & G. 243; G. 388; H. 414, I. <sup>5</sup> *milia*, A. & G. 257, b; G. 335; H. 379.

**23.** <sup>1</sup> *diei*, A. & G. 214, g; G. 371, r. 4; H. 398, 5.

existimavit: iter ab Helvetiis avertit ac Bibracte ire contendit. ea res per **fugitivos** L. Aemilii, **decurionis** equitum Gallorum, hostibus nuntiatur. Helvetii, seu quod **timore** perterritos Romanos discedere a se existimarent, <sup>2</sup>eo magis, quod **pridie** superioribus locis occupatis proelium non commisissent, sive eo, quod re frumentaria **intercludi** posse **confiderent**, **commutato** consilio atque itinere **converso** nostros a novissimo agmine insequi ac laessere coeperunt.

### Topics for Study.

(1.) The genitive with *postridie*. (2.) The impersonal construction. (3.) The powers of the *decurio*. (4.) Ablative of degree of difference. (5.) The dative after compounds.

### Preparations for battle.

**24.** Postquam id animum advertit, copias suas Caesar in proximum collem subducit <sup>1</sup>equitatumque, qui **sustineret** hostium impetum, misit. ipse interim in colle **medio triplicem** <sup>2</sup>aciem instruxit <sup>3</sup>legionum quattuor **veteranarum** [ita uti **supra**]; sed in summo iugo duas legiones, quas in Gallia citiore proxime conscripserat, et omnia <sup>4</sup>auxilia collocavit ac totum montem hominibus **complevit**; interea <sup>5</sup>sarcinas in unum locum conferri et eum ab his, qui in superiore acie constiterant, **muniri** iussit. Helvetii cum omnibus suis carris secuti **impedimenta** in unum locum **contulerunt**; ipsi **confertissima** <sup>6</sup>acie reiecto nostro equitatu **phalange** facta sub primam nostram aciem **successerunt**.



20 SARCINA.

**23.** <sup>2</sup>eo, A. & G. 250, R; G. 400; H. 423.

**24.** <sup>1</sup>equitatum, Introd. No. 108. <sup>2</sup>aciem, Introd. No. 115. <sup>3</sup>legionum, Introd. No. 98. <sup>4</sup>auxilia, Introd. No. 107. <sup>5</sup>sarcinas — conferri, Introd. No. 123, I, 2) b. <sup>6</sup>acie, A. & G. 248, R; G. 401; H. 419, III.

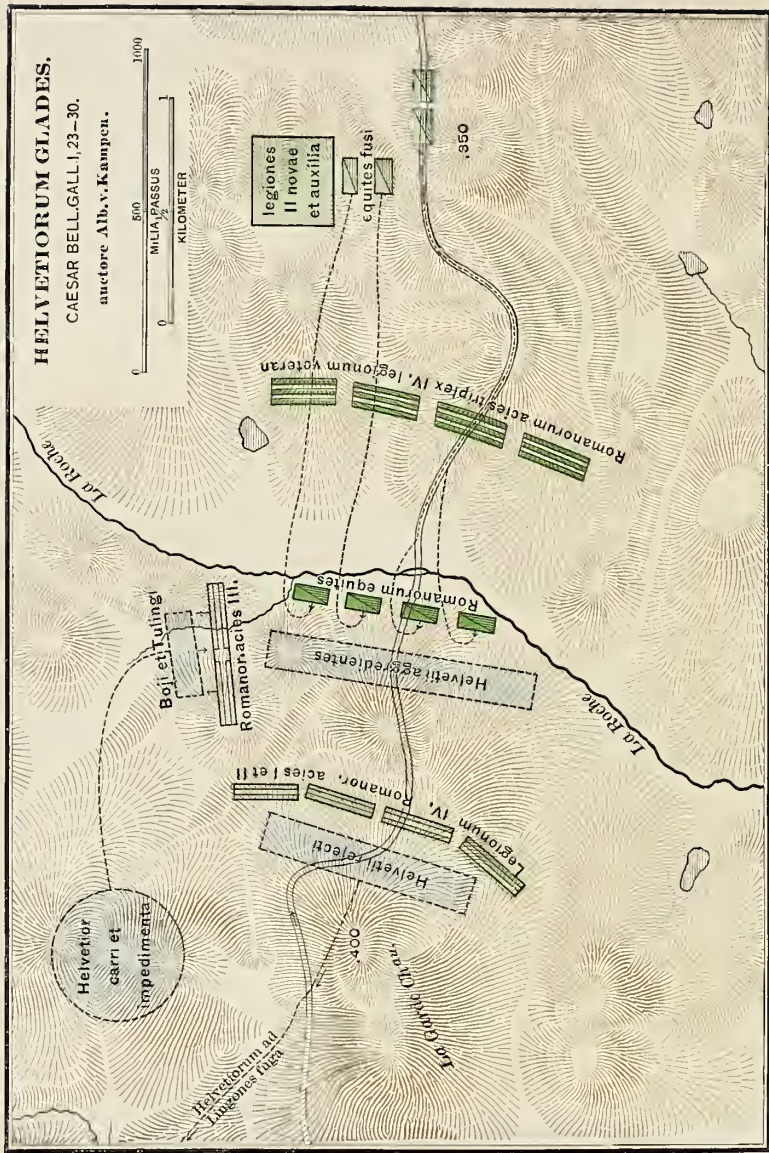
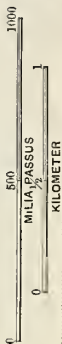




# HELVEIORUM GLADES.

CAESAR BELL. GALL. I, 23—30.

auctore Alb. v. Kampen.



## Topics for Study.

(1.) The Roman legion. (2.) The distinction between *sarcinas* and *impedimenta*. (3.) The Roman cavalry. (4.) Ablative absolute. (5.) The Roman line of battle.

*The battle.*

25. Caesar **primum** suo, **deinde** omnium ex conspectu remotis **equis**. ut **aequato** omnium periculo **spem** fugae **tolleret**, **cohortatus** suos proelium commisit. **milites** e loco superiore **pilis** missis facile hostium phalangem **perfregerunt**. ea **disiecta** <sup>1</sup>**gladiis dextris** in eos impetum fecerunt. Gallis magno ad **pugnam** erat impedimento, quod pluribus eorum <sup>2</sup>**scutis** uno **ictu** <sup>3</sup>**pilorum transfixis** et **colligatis**, cum **ferrum** se <sup>4</sup>**inflexisset**, neque **evellere** neque **sinistra** impedita satis **commode** **pugnare** poterant, multi ut diu **iactato** **brachio** **praeoptarent** **scutum** **manu** **emit-** 10 **tere** et **nudo** corpore **pugnare**. **tandem** **vulneribus defessi** et **pedem** **referre** et, quod **mons** **suberat** circiter mille passuum, eo se recipere coeperunt. **capto** monte et **succedentibus** nostris Boii et Tulingi, qui hominum <sup>5</sup>**milibus** circiter XV **agmen** hostium **claudebant** et **novissimis** praesidio erant, 15 **ex itinere** nostros **latere** **aperto** **aggressi** **circumvenire**, et id **conspicati** Helvetii, qui in montem sese receperant, **rursus** **instare** et proelium **redintegrare** coeperunt. **Romani** **conversa** <sup>6</sup>**signa** **bipartito** intulerunt: **prima** ac **secunda** **acies**, ut **victis** ac **summotis** resisteret, <sup>7</sup>**tertia**, ut **venientes** 20 **exciperet**.

## Topics for Study.

(1.) The ablative of manner. (2.) Roman arms. (3.) Causal clauses **PILUM**. with *cum*. (4.) The dative of service. (5.) The idiom *pedem referre*.

25. <sup>1</sup> *gladiis dextris*, Introd. No. 116. <sup>2</sup> *scutis*, Introd. No. 102. <sup>3</sup> *pilorum*, Introd. No. 102. <sup>4</sup> *inflexisset*, A & G. 326; G. 587; H. 517. <sup>5</sup> *milibus*, A & G. 218; G. 403; H. 420. <sup>6</sup> *signa*, Introd. No. 103. <sup>7</sup> *tertia*, Introd. No. 125, 1) a.

*The defeat of the Helvetii.*

26. Ita **incipiti** proelio diu atque **acriter** pugnatum est. diutius eum sustinere nostrorum impetus non possent, alteri se, ut coeperant, in montem receperunt, alteri ad impedimenta et earros suos se contulerunt. nam hoc toto proelio, cum ab **hora** septima  
 5 ad **vesperum** pugnatum sit, aversum hostem videre nemo potuit. ad multam noctem etiam ad impedimenta pugnatum est, propterea quod pro **vallo** earros **obiecera**nt et e loco superiore in nostros venientes tela **coniciebant** et nonnulli inter carros **rotasque mareas** ae **tragulas** **subiciebant** nostrosque **vulnerabant**. diu eum esset  
 10 pugnatum, impedimentis eastrisque nostri potiti sunt. ibi Orgetorigis filia atque unus e filiis captus est. ex eo proelio eireiter milia hominum **CXXX** **superfuerunt** eaque tota **nocte** continenter ierunt: nullam <sup>1</sup>partem noctis itinere **intermisso** in fines **Lingonum** [die quarto] pervenerunt, cum et propter vulnera militum et prop-  
 15 ter **sepulturam** oecisorum nostri [**triduum morati**] eos sequi non potuissent. Caesar ad <sup>2</sup>Lingonas **litteras nuntiosque** misit, ne eos frumento **neve** alia re **iuvarent**: qui si invissent, se eodem loco, quo Helvetios, habiturum. ipse triduo intermisso eum omnibus copiis eos sequi coepit.

**Topics for Study.**

- (1.) The impersonal construction. (2.) Duration of time. (3.) Missive weapons. (4.) Greek form in accus. plur.

*The Helvetii surrender. Six thousand try to escape.*

20 27. Helvetii omnium rerum **inopia** adducti legatos de **deditione** ad eum miserunt. <sup>1</sup>qui cum eum in itinere convenissent seque ad pedes **proiecissent suppliciterque** locuti flentes pacem petissent,

26. <sup>1</sup> *partem*, A. & G. 256; G. 337; H. 379. <sup>2</sup> *Lingonas*, A. & G. 63, f; G. 73; H. 68.

27. <sup>1</sup> *qui*, A. & G. 180, f; G. 612, R.; H. 453.

atque eos in eo loco, quo tum essent, suum adventum expectare iussisset, **paruerunt**. eo postquam Caesar pervenit, obsides, arma, **servos**, qui ad eos **perfugissent**, **poposcit**. dum ea **conquiruntur** et conferuntur, nocte intermissa circiter hominum milia VI eius pagi, qui **Verbigenus** appellatur, sive timore perterriti, ne armis **traditis** 5 supplicio <sup>2</sup> afficerentur, sive spe **salutis** inducti, quod in tanta multitudi-  
 ne **deditionum** suam fugam aut **occultari**, aut omnino **ignori** posse <sup>3</sup> existimarent, prima nocte e castris Helvetiorum **egressi** ad Rhenum finesque Germanorum contenderunt.

### Topics for Study.

- (1.) The relative pronoun taking the place of a conjunction with a demonstrative.  
 (2.) The construction after verbs of fearing. (3.) Causal clauses with *quod* expressing the thought of some other person than the author.

### *The return of the Helvetii to their territory.*

28. Quod ubi Caesar **resciit**, quorum per fines ierant, his, uti 10 conquirent et **reducerent**, si sibi **purgati** esse vellent, imperavit: reductos in hostium numero habuit; reliquos omnes obsidibus, armis, **perfugis** traditis in deditionem accepit. Helvetios, Tulingos, Latovicos in fines suos, **unde** erant profecti, reverti iussit, et quod omnibus fructibus amissis <sup>1</sup> domi nihil erat, quo **famem tol-** 15 **erarent**, Allobrogibus imperavit, ut iis frumenti copiam facerent: ipsos oppida vicosque, quos incederant, restituere iussit. id ea maxime **ratione** fecit, quod noluit eum locum, unde Helvetii discesserant, **vacare**, ne propter **bonitatem** agrorum Germani, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, e suis finibus in Helvetiorum fines tran- 20 sissent et finitimi Galliae provinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Boios, petentibus Haeduis, quod egregia virtute erant cogniti, ut in fini-

27. <sup>2</sup> *afficerentur*, A. & G. 331, *f*; G. 552; H. 498, III. <sup>3</sup> *existimarent*, A. & G. 321; G. 630; H. 516, II.

28. <sup>1</sup> *domi*, A. & G. 258, *d*; G. 412, R. 1; H. 426, 2.

bus suis collocarent, concessit ; quibus illi agros dederunt, quosque postea in <sup>2</sup> *parem* iuris libertatisque condicionem, atque ipsi erant, receperunt.

#### Topics for Study.

(1.) The locative case. (2.) The dative after *impero*. (3.) Compare the construction after *iubeo* with that after *impero*. (4.) The idiom *parem atque*.

*The comparative estimate of the number of Helvetii who returned home and the number that had gone forth from their country.*

29. In castris Helvetiorum **tabulae** repertae sunt litteris **Graecis** 5 confectae et ad Caesarem **relatae**, quibus in tabulis **nominatim** ratio confecta erat, <sup>1</sup> qui numerus domo <sup>2</sup> exisset eorum, qui arma ferre possent, et item separatim **pueri senes mulieresque**. quarum omnium rerum **summa** erat **capitum** Helvetiorum milia CCLXIII, Tulingorum milia XXXVI, Latovicorum XIII, Rauracorum 10 XXIII, Boiorum XXXII ; ex his, qui arma ferre possent, ad milia XCII. **summa** omnium fuerunt ad milia CCCLXVIII. eorum, qui domum **redierunt**, **censu** habito, ut Caesar imperaverat, repertus est numerus milium C et X.



#### Topics for Study.

(1.) The ablative of place. (2.) The form of the interrogative pronoun used adjectively. (3.) Subjunctive in indirect questions. (4.) Agreement of a verb with the predicate noun.

28. <sup>2</sup> *parem* — *atque*, A. & G. 156 a ; G. 646 ; H. 451, 5.

29. <sup>1</sup> *qui*, A. & G. 104, a ; G. 104 ; H. 188, II. 1. <sup>2</sup> *exisset*, A. & G. 34 ; G. 469 ; H. 529, 3.

## 30-54. THE WAR WITH ARIOVISTUS.

*Ambassadors from almost all parts of Gaul congratulate Caesar and request a council.*

30. Bello Helvetiorum confecto totius fere Galliae legati, principes civitatum, ad Caesarem <sup>1</sup> **gratulatum** convenerunt : intellegere sese, **tametsi** pro veteribus Helvetiorum iniuriis populi Romani ab his poenas bello **repetisset**, tamen eam rem non minus ex **usu terrae** Galliae quam populi Romani accidisse, propterea quod eo <sup>5</sup> concilio **florentissimis** rebus domos suas Helvetii reliquissent, uti toti Galliae bellum inferrent <sup>2</sup> imperioque potirentur locumque **domicilio** ex magna copia deligerent, quem ex omni Gallia **oportunissimum** ac **fructuosissimum** iudicassent, reliquasque civitates **stipendiarias** haberent. petierunt, uti sibi concilium totius Galliae <sup>10</sup> in diem certam **indicere** idque Caesaris voluntatē facere liceret : sese habere **quasdam** res, quas ex **communi consensu** ab eo petere vellent. ea re **permissa** diem concilio constituerunt et iureiurando, ne quis enuntiaret, nisi quibus communi consilio <sup>3</sup> **mandatum** esset, inter se **sanxerunt**.

15

**Topics for Study.**

(1.) Distinction between the subjective and objective genitive. (2.) The Supine.  
(3.) The mood and tense which represent the future perfect indicative in the indirect discourse. (4.) The ablative with special verbs.

*Complaints made against Ariovistus and the Germans.*

31. Eo concilio dimisso idem principes civitatum, qui ante fuerant, ad Caesarem reverterunt petieruntque, uti sibi secreto in **occulto** de sua omniumque salute cum eo agere liceret. ea re impetrata sese omnes flentes <sup>1</sup> Caesari ad pedes proiecerunt : non minus se id contendere et **laborare**, ne ea, quae dixissent, enuntia- <sup>20</sup>

30. <sup>1</sup> *gratulatum*, A. & G. 302; G. 436; H. 546. <sup>2</sup> *imperio*, A. & G. 249; G. 405; H. 421, I. <sup>3</sup> *mandatum esset*, A. & G. 336; G. 653; H. 524.

31. <sup>1</sup> *Caesari*, A. & G. 235, a; G. 343, R. 2; H. 384, 4, N. 2.

rentur, quam uti ea, quae <sup>2</sup> vellent, impetrarent, propterea quod, si enuntiatum esset, summum in erueiatum se venturos viderent. loentus est pro his **Divitiacus** Haeduus: Galliae totius **factiones** esse duas: harum alterius principatum tenere Haeduos, alterius  
 5 **Arvernos**. hi eum **tantopere de potentatu** inter se multos annos contenderent, factum esse, uti ab Arvernibus Sequanisque Germani <sup>3</sup> **mercede arcesserentur**. horum **primo** circiter milia XV Rhenum transisse: **posteaquam** agros et cultum et copias Gallorum homines **feri ac barbari adamassent**, traductos plures: nunc esse in Gallia  
 10 ad C et XX milium numerum. eum his Haeduos eorumque clientes **semel** atque **iterum** armis contendisse; magnam calamitatem pulsos accepisse, omnem nobilitatem, omnem senatum, omnem equitatum amisisse. quibus proeliis calamitatibusque **fractos**, qui et sua virtute et populi Romani **hospitio** atque amicitia plurimum  
 15 ante in Gallia potuissent, coactos esse Sequanis obsides dare nobilissimos civitatis, et iureiurando civitatem obstringere, sese neque obsides repetituros neque auxilium a populo Romano **imploratu- ros** neque **recusatu- ros**, quo minus **perpetuo** sub illorum **dicione** atque imperio <sup>4</sup> essent. nunc se esse ex omni civitate Haeduorum, qui  
 20 adduci non potuerit, ut **iuraret** aut liberos suos obsides daret. ob eam rem se ex civitate **profugisse** et <sup>5</sup> **Romam** ad senatum venisse auxilium **postulatum**, quod solus neque iureiurando neque obsidibus teneretur. sed **peius victoribus** Sequanis quam Haeduis victis accidisse, propterea quod **Ariovistus**, **rex** Germanorum, in eorum  
 25 finibus consedisset tertiamque partem agri Sequani, qui esset **optimus** totius Galliae, occupavisset et nunc de altera parte tertia Sequanos **decedere** iuberet, propterea quod paucis <sup>6</sup> mensibus ante **Harudum** milia hominum XXIII ad eum venissent, quibus locus ac **sedes pararentur**. futurum esse paucis annis, uti omnes ex

31. <sup>2</sup> *vellent*, A. & G. 336; G. 653; H. 524. <sup>3</sup> *mercede*, A. & G. 252; G. 404; H. 422. <sup>4</sup> *essent*, A. & G. 317, *b*; G. 545, 2; H. 497, II, 2. <sup>5</sup> *Romam*, A. & G. 258, *b*; G. 410; H. 380, II. <sup>6</sup> *mensibus*, A. & G. 259, *d*; G. 400, R. 3; H. 430.



Galliae finibus pellerentur atque omnes Germani Rhenum transirent: neque enim conferendum esse Gallicum cum Germanorum agro, neque hanc **consuetudinem victus** cum illa comparandam. Ariovistum autem, ut semel Gallorum copias proelio vicerit, quod proelium factum sit ad **Magetobriam**, **superbe** et **crudeliter** imperare, obsides nobilissimi cuiusque liberos poscere et in eos omnia exempla cruciatusque **edere**, si qua res non ad **nutum** aut ad voluntatem eius facta sit. hominem esse barbarum, **iracundum**, **temerarium**: non posse eius imperia diutius sustineri. <sup>7</sup> nisi si quid in Caesare populoque Romano sit auxilii, omnibus Gallis <sup>10</sup> idem esse faciendum, quod Helvetii fecerint, ut domo **emigrant**, aliud domicilium, alias sedes, remotas a Germanis, petant fortunamque, **quaecumque** accidat, **experiantur**. haec si enuntiata Ariovisto sint, non dubitare, quin de omnibus obsidibus, qui apud eum sint, **gravissimum** supplicium <sup>8</sup>sumat. Caesarem vel <sup>15</sup> auctoritate sua atque exercitus, vel recenti victoria, vel nomine populi Romani deterrere posse, ne **maior** multitudo Germanorum <sup>9</sup>Rhenum traducatur, Galliamque omnem ab Ariovisti iniuria posse defendere.

#### Topics for Study.

- (1.) The idiom *Caesari ad pedes*. (2.) Subordinate clauses in indirect discourse. (3.) Purpose clauses with *quo*. (4.) The ablative of price. (5.) Accusative of limit of motion, *Roman ad senatum*. (6.) Construction with *quum* after verbs of doubting. (7.) Manner of denoting an interval between two events. (8.) The ablative of time. (9.) The predicate accusative. (10.) The partitive genitive. (11.) Hendiadys. (12.) Relative clauses of purpose.

#### *The wretched lot of the Sequani.*

**32.** Hac oratione ab Divitiaco habita omnes, qui aderant, magno <sup>20</sup> fletu auxilium a Caesare petere coeperunt. animadvertit Caesar

**31.** <sup>7</sup> nisi si. A. & G. 315, a; G. 529; H. 507, 3, x. 4. <sup>8</sup> sumat, A. & G. 332, g; G. 551, 2; H. 501, II, 2. <sup>9</sup> Rhenum, A. & G. 239, b; G. 330, R. 1; H. 376, x

unos ex omnibus Sequanos nihil earum rerum facere, quas **ceteri** facerent, sed **tristes** capite **demisso** terram **intueri**. eius rei causa quae <sup>1</sup> esset, **miratus** ex ipsis quaesivit. nihil Sequani respondere, sed in eadem **tristitia** taciti **permanere**. cum ab his saepius quaereret neque ullam omnino **vocem exprimere** posset, idem Divitiacus Haeduus respondit : hoc esse **miseriorem** gravioremque fortunam Sequanorum quam reliquorum, quod soli ne in occulto quidem queri neque auxilium implorare auderent **absentisque** Ariovisti **crudelitatem**, **velut** si **coram** adesset, **horrerent**, propterea quod reliquis tamen fugae facultas daretur, <sup>2</sup> Sequanis **vero**, qui **intra** fines suos Ariovistum recepissent, quorum oppida omnia in potestate eius essent, omnes cruciatus essent perferendi.

#### Topics for Study.

(1.) The ablative absolute. (2.) The historical infinitive. (3.) Dative of agent. (4.) The indirect question.

#### *Caesar resolves to remedy their evils.*

**33.** His rebus cognitis Caesar Gallorum animos verbis confirmavit pollicitusque est <sup>1</sup> sibi eam rem **curae** futuram : magnam se habere spem et beneficio suo et auctoritate adductum Ariovistum finem iniuriis facturum. hac oratione habita concilium dimisit. et <sup>2</sup> **secundum** ea multae res eum hortabantur, quare sibi eam rem **cogitandam** et suscipiendam putaret, **imprimis** quod Haeduos, fratres consanguineosque saepenumero a senatu appellatos, in servitute atque in dicione videbat Germanorum teneri eorumque obsides esse apud Ariovistum ac Sequanos intellegebat ; quod in tanto imperio populi Romani **turpissimum** sibi et reipublicae esse arbitrabatur. **paulatim** autem Germanos consuescere Rhenum

**32.** <sup>1</sup> *esset*, A. & G. 334; G. 469; H. 529      <sup>2</sup> *Sequanis*, A. & G. 232; G. 353; H. 388.

**33.** <sup>1</sup> *sibi*, A. & G. 233; G. 350; H. 390      <sup>2</sup> *secundum*, A. & G. 153; G. 417; H. 433.

transire et in Galliam magnam eorum multitudinem venire populo Romano **periculosum** videbat, neque sibi homines feros ac barbaros temperaturos existimabat, quin, cum omnem Galliam occupavissent, ut ante **Cimbri Teutonique** fecissent, in provinciam exirent atque inde in Italiam contenderent, praesertim cum Sequanos a provincia nostra Rhodanus divideret; quibus <sup>3</sup> rebus quam maturime **occurrendum** putabat. ipse autem Ariovistus tantos sibi **spiritus**, tantam **arrogantiam** sumpserat, ut ferendus non videretur.

#### Topics for Study.

(1.) The dative after compounds. (2.) The dative of service. (3.) The dative with special verbs. (4.) The preposition *secundum*. (5.) Relative clauses of result.

*Caesar demands a conference with Ariovistus. The refusal of Ariovistus.*

**34.** Quamobrem **placuit** ei, ut ad Ariovistum legatos mitteret, qui <sup>1</sup> ab eo <sup>2</sup> postularent, uti aliquem locum medium **utriusque** <sup>10</sup> **colloquio** diceret: velle sese de **republica** et summis utriusque rebus cum eo agere. ei legationi Ariovistus respondit: si quid ipsi a Caesare <sup>3</sup> **opus** esset, sese ad eum venturum fuisse; si <sup>4</sup> quid ille se velit, illum ad se venire oportere. **praeterea** se neque sine exercitu in eas partes Galliae venire audere, quas Caesar **possideret**, <sup>15</sup> neque exercitum sine magno **commeatu** atque **molimento** in unum locum **contrahere** posse. sibi autem **mirum** videri, quid in sua Gallia, quam bello vicisset, aut Caesari aut omnino populo Romano <sup>5</sup> **negotii** esset.

#### Topics for Study.

(1.) The construction with *postulo*. (2.) The regular construction with *opus*, and the construction with *opus* as a predicate noun. (3.) The construction after verbs of asking. (4.) The dative of possession.

**33.** <sup>3</sup> *rebus*, A. & G. 223; G. 346; H. 386.

**34.** <sup>1</sup> *ab eo*, A. & G. 239, *e*, N. 1; G. 333, *r*.; H. 374, *N* 2. <sup>2</sup> *postularent*, A. & G. 317; G. 632; H. 497, *l*. <sup>3</sup> *opus*, A. & G. 243, *e*, *r*.; G. 390; H. 414, *4*, *N*. 4. <sup>4</sup> *quid* — *se*, A. & G. 239, *e*; G. 333; H. 374. <sup>5</sup> *negotii*, A. & G. 216; G. 371; H. 397.

*The second embassy.*

35. His responsis ad Caesarem relatis iterum ad eum Caesar legatos eum his mandatis mittit: **quoniam** tanto suo populi que Romani beneficio affectus, eum in **consulatu** suo rex atque amicus a senatu appellatus esset, hanc sibi populo que Romano gratiam  
 5 referret, ut in colloquium venire **invitatus gravaretur** neque de communi re dicendum sibi et cognoscendum putaret, haec esse, quae ab eo postularet: primum ne quam hominum multitudinem amplius trans Rhenum in Galliam traduceret; deinde obsides, quos haberet ab Haeduis, **redderet** Sequanisque permetteret, ut,  
 10 quos illi haberent, voluntate eius reddere illis liceret; neve Haeduos <sup>1</sup>iniuria laesseret, neve his sociisve eorum bellum inferret. si id ita <sup>2</sup>fecisset, sibi populo que Romano **perpetuam** gratiam atque amicitiam cum eo futuram: si non impetraret, sese, quoniam M. Messala, M. Pisone consulibus senatus **censuisset**, uti, quicum-  
 15 que Galliam provinciam obtineret, quod **commodo** reipublicae facere posset, Haeduos ceterosque amicos populi Romani defenderet, sese Haeduorum iniurias non **neglecturum**.

**Topics for Study.**

(1.) The idiom *gratiam referre*. (2.) The repetition of prepositions. (3.) The ablative of manner. (4.) Conditional sentences in indirect discourse.

*The reply of Ariovistus.*

36. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: nus esse belli, ut, qui vicissent, iis, quos vicissent, **quemadmodum** vellent, imperarent: item  
 20 populum Romanum <sup>1</sup>victis non ad alterius **praescriptum**, sed ad suum **arbitrium** imperare consuesse. si ipse populo Romano non **praescriberet**, quemadmodum suo iure uteretur, non oportere sese a populo Romano in suo iure impediri. Haeduos sibi, quoniam belli fortunam temptassent et armis **congressi** ac superati

35. <sup>1</sup> *iniuria*, A. & G. 248, R.; G. 401; H. 419, III, N. 2. <sup>2</sup> *fecisset*, A. & G. 337; G. 659; H. 527, 1

36. <sup>1</sup> *victis*, A. & G. 118; G. 195, R. 1; H. 441.

essent, stipendiarios esse factos. magnam Caesarem iniuriam facere, qui suo adventu vectigalia sibi **deteriora** <sup>2</sup> faceret. Haeduis se obsides redditurum non esse, neque iis neque eorum sociis iniuria bellum **illaturum**, si in eo **manerent**, quod convenissent, **stipendiumque quotannis penderent**; si id non fecissent, longe <sup>5</sup> iis fraternum nomen populi Romani **afuturum**. quod sibi Caesar **denuntiaret** se Haeduum iniurias non neglecturum, neminem secum sine sua pernicie contendisse. cum vellet, <sup>3</sup> **congrederetur**: intellecturum, quid **invicti** Germani, **exercitatissimi** in armis, qui inter annos **quatuordecim tectum** non subissent, virtute possent. 10

### Topics for Study.

- (1.) The substantive use of adjectives and participles. (2.) Relative clauses expressing cause. (3.) The mood which represents the imperative in indirect discourse. (4.) The idiom *longe* — *afuturum*.

#### *Caesar hastens against Ariovistus and seizes Vesontio.*

**37.** Haec eodem tempore Caesari mandata referebantur et legati ab Haeduis et a Treveris veniebant: Haedui <sup>1</sup> **questum**, quod Harudes, qui nuper in Galliam <sup>2</sup> **transportati** essent, fines eorum <sup>3</sup> **popularentur**: sese ne obsidibus quidem datis pacem Ariovisti redimere potuisse; **Treveri** autem, pagos centum **Sue-** 15 **borum** ad ripas Rheni conscdisse, qui Rhenum transire conarentur; his praeesse **Nasum** et **Cimberium** fratres. quibus rebus Caesar **vehementer** commotus maturandum sibi existimavit, ne, si nova manus Sueborum cum veteribus copiis Ariovisti sese **coniunxisset**, minus facile <sup>4</sup> **resisti** posset. itaque re frumentaria <sup>20</sup> quam celerrime potuit comparata magnis itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.

**36.** <sup>2</sup> *faceret*, A. & G. 320, e; G. 636; H. 517. <sup>3</sup> *congrederetur*, A. & G. 339; G. 655; H. 523, III.

**37.** <sup>1</sup> *questum*, A. & G. 302; G. 436; H. 546. <sup>2</sup> *transportati essent*, A. & G. 341, a; G. 509; H. 524. <sup>3</sup> *popularentur*, A. & G. 341, d; G. 630; H. 516, II. <sup>4</sup> *resisti*, A. & G. 230; G. 208; H. 384, 5.

## Topics for Study.

- (1.) The idiom *eodem tempore* — *et*. (2.) The dative with special verbs.  
 (3.) The impersonal construction. (4.) Clauses introduced by *quod* expressing the reason of another.

38. Cum tridui <sup>1</sup>viam processisset, nuntiatum est ei Ariovistum eum suis omnibus copiis ad occupandum Vesontionem, <sup>2</sup>quod est oppidum maximum Sequanorum, contendere triduique viam a suis finibus profecisse. id ne accideret, magnopere sibi  
 5 praecavendum Caesar existimabat. namque omnium rerum, quae ad bellum usui erant, summa erat in eo oppido facultas, idque natura loci sic muniebatur, ut magnam ad ducendum bellum daret facultatem, propterea quod flumen Dubis ut circino  
 10 circumductum paene totum oppidum cingit; reliquum spatium, quod est non amplius pedum DC, qua flumen intermittit, mons continet magna altitudine, ita ut radices montis ex utraque parte ripae fluminis contingant. hunc murus circumdatus arcem efficit et cum oppido coniungit. huc Caesar magnis nocturnis diurnisque itineribus contendit occupatoque oppido ibi praesidium  
 15 colloeat.

## Topics for Study.

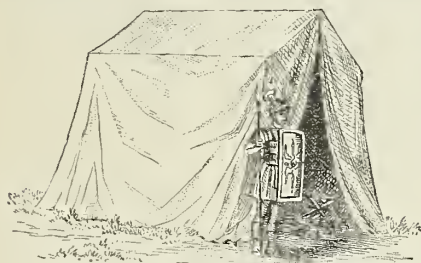
- (1.) The accusative of extent of space. (2.) The attraction of the relative. (3.) The gerundive. (4.) The ablative of characteristic.

*Reports reach the Roman soldiers concerning the huge stature and remarkable skill of the Germans. The army is in a state of panic.*

39. Dum paucos dies ad Vesontionem rei frumentariae comeatuque causa moratur, ex percontatione nostrorum vocibusque Gallorum ac mercatorum, qui ingenti magnitudine corporum Germanos, incredibili virtute atque exercitatione in armis esse  
 20 praedicabant (saepenumero sese cum his congressos ne vultum

38. <sup>1</sup> *viam*, A. & G. 257; G. 355; H. 379. <sup>2</sup> *quod*, A. & G. 119; G. 616, 3, II.; H. 445, 4.

quidem atque aeiem oeorum dicebant ferre potuisse), tantus subito timor omnem exereitum oeeupavit, ut non mediocriter omnium mentes animosque perturbaret. hic primum ortus est a <sup>1</sup>tribunis militum, praefectis reliquisque, qui ex urbe amicitiae eausa Caesarem seuti non magnum in re militari usum habebant: quorum <sup>2</sup>alius alia causa illata, quam sibi ad proficiscendum necessariam esse <sup>3</sup>diceret, petebat, ut eius voluntate discedere liceeret; nonnulli pudore adducti, ut timoris suspieionem vitarent, remanebant. hi ueque vultum fingere neque interdum lacrimas



TABERNACULUM.

tenere poterant: abditi in <sup>10</sup>tabernaculis aut suum factum querebantur, aut cum familiaribus suis commune periculum miserabantur. volgo totis castris <sup>15</sup>tamenta obsignabantur. horum vocibus ac timore paulatim etiam ii, qui magnum in castris usum habebant, milites centurionesque quique equitatu praerant, perturbabantur. qui se ex his minus timidos existimari volebant, non se hostem vereri, sed angustias itineris, magnitudinem silvarum, quae intercederent inter ipsos atque Ariovistum, aut <sup>4</sup>rem frumentariam, ut satis commode supportari posset, timere dicebant. nonnulli etiam Caesari renuntiabant, cum castra moveri ac signa <sup>25</sup>ferri iussisset, non fore dicto audientes milites neque propter timorem signa laturos.

#### Topics for Study.

(1.) The idiom *alius alia*. (2.) Clauses which contain a statement on the authority of another. (3.) The accusative of anticipation. (4.) The idiom *signa laturos*.

39. <sup>1</sup> *tribunis militum*. Introd. No. 101. <sup>2</sup> *alius alia*, A. & G. 203, c; G. 306; H. 459, c. <sup>3</sup> *diceret*, A. & G. 341, d; G. 630; H. 528, I. <sup>4</sup> *rem frumentariam*, A. & G. 334, c; H. 420.

*Caesar's speech.*

40. Haec cum animadvertisset, convocato consilio omniumque ordinum ad id consilium adhibitis centurionibus vehementer eos incusavit: primum, quod, aut quam in partem aut quo consilio ducerentur, sibi quaerendum aut cogitandum <sup>1</sup>putarent. Ariovistum se consule cupidissime populi Romani amicitiam appetisse: cur hunc tam temere quisquam ab officio discessurum <sup>2</sup>iudicaret? sibi quidem <sup>3</sup>persuaderi cogitis suis postulatis atque aequitate condicionum perspecta eum neque suam neque populi Romani gratiam repudiaturum. quod si furore atque amentia impulsus bellum intulisset, quid tandem vererentur? aut cur de sua virtute aut de ipsius diligentia desperarent? factum eius hostis periculum patrum nostrorum memoria, cum Cimbris et Teutonibus a Gaio Mario pulsus non minorem laudem exercitus quam ipse imperator meritis <sup>4</sup>videbatur; factum etiam nuper in Italia servili tumultu, <sup>5</sup>quos tamen aliquid usus ac disciplina, quae a nobis acceperant, sublevarent. ex quo iudicari posse, quantum haberet in se <sup>6</sup>boni constantia, propterea quod, quos aliquamdiu inermos sine causa timuissent, hos postea armatos ac victores superassent. denique hos esse eosdem, quibuscum saepenumero Helvetii congressi non solum in suis, sed etiam in illorum finibus plerumque superarint, qui tamen pares esse nostro exercitui non potnerint. si quos adversum proelium et fuga Gallorum commoveret, hos, si quaerent, reperire posse diuturnitate belli defetigatis Gallis Ariovistum, cum multos menses castris se ac paludibus tenuisset neque sui potestatem fecisset, desperantes iam de pugna et dispersos subito adortum magis ratione et consilio

40. <sup>1</sup> putarent, A. & G. 341, d; G. 630; H. 516, II. <sup>2</sup> iudicaret, A. & G. 338, R.; G. 654, R. 2; H. 523, II, N. <sup>3</sup> persuaderi, A. & G. 230; G. 208; H. 301, I. <sup>4</sup> videbatur, A. & G. 336, b; G. 630, R. 1; H. 524, 2, 2. <sup>5</sup> quos, A. & G. 119, b; H. 445, 6. <sup>6</sup> boni, A. & G. 187; G. 195, R. 2; H. 397, 3.



quam virtute vicisse. cui <sup>7</sup>rationi contra homines barbaros atque imperitos locus fuisset, hac ne ipsum quidem sperare nostros exercitus capi posse. qui suum timorem in rei frumentariae simulationem angustiasque itineris conferrent, facere arroganter, cum aut de officio imperatoris desperare aut praescribere viderentur. haec sibi esse curae; frumentum Sequanos, Leucos, Lingones subministrare, iamque esse in agris frumenta matura; de itinere ipsos brevi tempore iudicatu-<sup>8</sup>ros. quod non fore dicto audientes milites neque signa <sup>8</sup>latu-<sup>9</sup>ricantur, nihil se ea re commoveri: scire enim, quibuscumque exercitus dicto audiens non fuerit, aut male re gesta fortunam defuisse, aut aliquo facinore comperto avaritiam esse convictam. suam innocentiam perpetua vita, felicitatem Helvetiorum bello esse perspectam. itaque se, quod in longiorem diem collaturus fuisset, repraesentaturum et proxima nocte de quarta vigilia castra moturum, ut quam primum intellegere posset, <sup>10</sup>utrum apud eos pudor atque officium, an timor valeret. quod si praeterea nemo sequatur, tamen se cum sola decima legione iturum, de qua non dubitaret, sibi-<sup>11</sup>que eam praetoriam cohortem futuram. huic legioni Caesar et indulserat praecipue et propter virtutem confidebat maxime. <sup>20</sup>

#### Topics for Study.

(1.) The rank of the centurions. (2.) The passive of intransitive verbs. (3.) Parenthetical clauses in indirect discourse. (4.) The antecedent implied in an adjective. (5.) The attraction of the antecedent. (6.) The personal construction with verbs of saying. (7.) Double questions. (8.) The dative of service. (9.) The partitive genitive. (10.) The subjunctive in interrogative sentences.

*The ardor of the soldiers. The march.*

41. Hac oratione habita mirum in modum conversae sunt omnium mentes, summaque alacritas et cupiditas belli gerendi

40. <sup>7</sup>rationi, A. & G. 200 b; G. 618; H. 445, 9. <sup>8</sup>latu-<sup>9</sup>ricantur, A. & G. 272, b; H. 536, 2. <sup>9</sup>dicantur, A. & G. 330, b; G. 528; H. 534, I, n. I. <sup>10</sup>utrum — an, A. & G. 211; G. 460; H. 353.

**innata** est, <sup>1</sup> princepsque decima legio per tribunos militum ei gratias egit, quod de se optimum iudicium fecisset, seque esse ad bellum gerendum paratissimam confirmavit. deinde reliquae legiones per tribunos militum et primorum ordinum centuriones 5 egerunt, uti Caesari satisfacerent: se neque **umquam** dubitasse neque timuisse neque de summa belli suum iudicium, sed <sup>2</sup> imperatoris esse, existimavisse. eorum **satisfactione** accepta et itinere **exquisito** per Divitiacum, quod ex aliis ei maximam fidem habebat, ut milium amplius **quinguenta** circuitu locis 10 apertis exercitum duceret, de quarta vigilia, ut dixerat, profectus est. septimo die, cum iter non intermitteret, ab exploratoribus certior factus est, Ariovisti copias a nostris milibus passuum quattuor et viginti abesse.

#### Topics for Study.

(1.) The idiom *princeps egit*. (2.) The predicate genitive. (3.) The Subjunctive of result. (4.) The Roman legion. (5.) The Roman method of march.

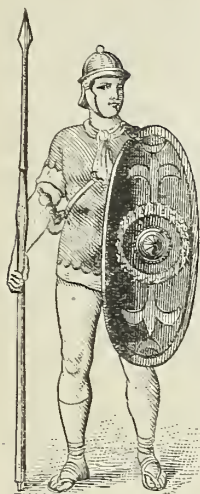
#### *The demands for a conference.*

**42.** Cognito Caesaris adventu Ariovistus legatos ad eum mittit: 15 quod antea de colloquio postulasset, id per se fieri licere, quoniam propius accessisset, seque id sine periculo facere posse existimare. non **respu**it condicionem Caesar iamque eum ad **sanitatem** reverti arbitrabatur, cum id, quod antea petenti <sup>1</sup> **denegasset**, **ultra** polliceretur, magnamque in spem veniebat, pro suis tantis populique 20 Romani in eum beneficiis cognitis suis postulatis fore, uti **pertinacia** desisteret. dies colloquio dictus est ex eo die quintus. interim saepe **ultra** **citroque** cum legati inter eos mitterentur, Ariovistus postulavit, ne quem **peditem** ad colloquium Caesar

**41.** <sup>1</sup> *princeps*, A. & G. 191; G. 324, R. 6; H. 443, N. 1. <sup>2</sup> *imperatoris*, A. & G. 214, c; G. 365; H. 402.

**42.** <sup>1</sup> *denegasset*, A. & G. 336; G. 653; H. 524.

adduceret : vereri se, ne per insidias ab eo circumveniretur :



uterque cum equitatu veniret : alia ratione se non esse venturum. Caesar, quod neque colloquium **interposita** causa tolli volebat, neque salutem suam Gallorum equitatu com- 5 mittere audebat, commodissimum esse statuit omnibus equis Gallis <sup>2</sup>equitibus **detractis** eo **legionarios** milites legionis decimae, cui quam maxime confidebat, **imponere**, ut praesidium quam amicissimum, si <sup>3</sup>quid <sup>10</sup>opus <sup>4</sup>facto esset, haberet. quod cum fieret, non **irridicule** quidam ex militibus decimae legionis dixit : plus, quam pollicitus esset, Caesarem facere : pollicitum se in cohortis praetoriae loco decimam legionem habiturum <sup>15</sup> ad equum **rescribere**.

MILES LEVIS ARMATURAE.

### Topics for Study.

(1.) The dative instead of the ablative of separation. (2.) The adverbial accusative. (3.) The construction after *opus*. (4.) The periphrastic future.

### Caesar's speech.

**43.** Planities erat magna et in ea **tumulus terrenus** satis grandis. hic locus **aequo** fere spatio ab castris Ariovisti et Caesaris aberat. eo, ut erat dictum, ad colloquium venerunt. legionem Caesar, quam equis **devexerat**, <sup>1</sup>passibus ducentis ab eo tumulo constituit. item equites Ariovisti pari intervallo constiterunt. Ariovistus, ex equis ut colloquerentur et praeter se **denos** ut ad colloquium adducerent, postulavit. ubi eo ventum

**42.** <sup>2</sup> *equitibus*, A. & G. 229 ; G. 346 ; H. 385, II, 2. <sup>3</sup> *quid*, A. & G. 240, a ; G. 331, r. 2 ; H. 378. <sup>4</sup> *facto*, A. & G. 243, e ; G. 390 ; H. 414, n. 3.

**43.** <sup>1</sup> *passibus*, A. & G. 257, b ; G. 400, r. 1 ; H. 379, 2.

est, Caesar initio orationis sua senatusque in eum beneficia commemoravit, quod rex <sup>2</sup> appellatus esset a senatu, quod amicus, quod **munera** amplissima missa; quam rem et paucis hominum **contigisse** et pro magnis officiis consuesse tribui **docebat**; illum, <sup>5</sup> cum neque **aditum** neque eausam postulandi **iustam** haberet, beneficio ac liberalitate sua ac senatus ea **praemia** consecutum. docebat etiam, quam veteres quamque iustae causae **necessitudinis** ipsis cum Haeduis intereederent, quae **senatusconsulta** **quotiens** quamque **honorifica** in eos facta essent, ut omni tempore totius Galliae principatum Haedui tenuissent, prius etiam, <sup>10</sup> quam nostram amicitiam **appetissent**. populi Romani hanc esse consuetudinem, ut socios atque amicos non modo sui nihil **depredere**, sed gratia, **dignitate**, honore **auctiores** velit esse: quod vero ad amicitiam populi Romani **attulissent**, id iis eripi quis pati <sup>15</sup> <sup>3</sup> posset? postulavit deinde eadem, quae legatis in mandatis dederat, ne aut Haeduis aut eorum sociis bellum inferret; obsides redderet; si nullam partem Germanorum domum **remittere** posset, **at** ne <sup>4</sup> quos amplius Rhenum transire pateretur.

#### Topics for Study.

- (1.) The ablative of degree of difference. (2.) Causal clauses introduced by *quod*.  
 (3.) The deliberative subjunctive in indirect discourse. (4.) The indefinite *quis* in compounds.

#### *The answer of Ariovistus.*

**44.** Ariovistus ad postulata Caesaris pauca respondit, de suis <sup>20</sup> virtutibus multa praedicavit: transisse Rhenum sese non sua sponte, sed rogatum et **arcessitum** a Gallis; non sine magna <sup>1</sup> spe magnisque praemiis domum propinquosque reliquisse; sedes

**43.** <sup>2</sup> *appellatus esset*, A. & G. 341, *d*; G. 541; H. 528, I. <sup>3</sup> *posset*, A. & G. 338, *a*; G. 654, R. 1; H. 523, II, 1, N. <sup>4</sup> *quos*, A. & G. 105, *d*; G. 302; H. 455, I.

**44.** <sup>1</sup> *spe* — *praemiis*, G. 695; H. 636, III, 2.

habere in Gallia ab ipsis concessas, obsides ipsorum voluntate datos; stipendium capere iure belli, quod victores victis imponere consuerint. non sese Gallis, sed Gallos sibi bellum intulisse: omnes Galliae civitates ad se oppugnandum venisse ac contra se castra habuisse; eas omnes copias a se uno proelio <sup>5</sup> pulsas ac superatas esse. si iterum experiri velint, se iterum paratum sese **decertare**; si pace uti velint, **iniquum** esse de stipendio recusare, quod sua voluntate ad id tempus pependerit. amicitiam populi Romani <sup>2</sup> sibi **ornamento** et praesidio, non **detrimen-** **to** esse oportere, idque se ea spe petisse. si per populum <sup>10</sup> Romanum stipendium remittatur et dediticii **subtrahantur**, non minus **libenter** sese recusaturum populi Romani amicitiam, quam appetierit. quod multitudinem Germanorum in Galliam traducat, id se sui muniendi, non Galliae **impugnandae** causa facere; eius rei **testimonium** esse, quod nisi rogatus non venerit, et quod bel- <sup>15</sup> lum non intulerit, sed defenderit. se prius in Galliam venisse, quam populum Romanum. **numquam** ante hoc tempus exercitum populi Romani Galliae provinciae fines egressum. quid sibi vellet? cur in suas possessiones veniret? provinciam suam hanc esse Galliam, **sicut** illam nostram. ut ipsi concedi non oporteret, <sup>20</sup> si in nostros fines impetum faceret, sic item nos esse iniquos, qui in suo iure se **interpellaremus**. quod fratres a senatu Haeduos appellatos diceret, non se tam barbarum neque tam imperitum esse rerum, ut non sciret neque bello Allobrogum proximo Haeduos Romanis auxilium tulisse neque ipsos in his **contentionibus**, <sup>25</sup> quas Haedui secum et cum Sequanis habuissent, auxilio populi Romani usos esse. debere se **susplicari simulata** Caesarem amicitia, quod exercitum in Gallia habeat, sui **opprimendi** causa habere. qui nisi decedat atque exercitum **deducat** ex his **regionibus**, sese illum non pro amico, sed hoste habiturum. quod si eum inter- <sup>30</sup> fecerit, multis sese nobilibus principibusque populi Romani **gratum**

esse facturum : id se ab ipsis per eorum nuntios <sup>3</sup>compertum habere, quorum omnium gratiam atque amicitiam eius morte redimere posset. quod si decessisset et liberam possessionem Galliae sibi tradidisset, magno se illum praemio remuneraturum  
5 et quaecumque bella geri vellet, sine ullo eius labore et periculo confecturum.

#### Topics for Study.

- (1.) Hendiadys. (2.) The dative of service. (3.) The genitive with adjectives  
(4.) The impersonal construction. (5.) The ablative of time.

*Caesar's reply. The conference broken off by an attack of the Germans.*

45. Multa ab Caesare in eam **sententiam** dicta sunt, quare negotio desistere non <sup>1</sup>posset, et neque suam neque populi Romani consuetudinem pati, uti optime merentes socios **desereret**,  
10 neque se iudicare Galliam **potius** esse Ariovisti quam populi Romani. bello superatos esse Arvernos et **Rutenos** ab Q. **Fabio Maximo**, quibus populus Romanus **ignovisset** neque in provinciam **redegisset** neque stipendium imposuisset. quod si <sup>2</sup>antiquissimum quodque tempus spectari oporteret, populi Romani  
15 iustissimum esse in Gallia imperium ; si iudicium senatus **observari** oporteret, liberam debere esse Galliam, quam bello victam suis legibus uti voluisset.

#### Topics for Study.

- (1) The indirect question. (2.) Distinction between ablative of agent and ablative of means. (3.) The dative after special verbs. (4.) *Quisque* with superlatives.

46. Dum haec in colloquio <sup>1</sup>geruntur, Caesari nuntiatum est, equites Ariovisti proprius <sup>2</sup>tumulum accedere et ad nostros **ade-**

44. <sup>3</sup> *compertum habere*, A. & G. 292, c; G. 230; H. 388, I, x.

45. <sup>1</sup> *posset*, A. & G. 334; G. 469; H. 529, I. <sup>2</sup> *antiquissimum quodque*, A. & G. 93, c; G. 305; H. 458, I.

46. <sup>1</sup> *geruntur*, A. & G. 276, e; G. 220, R. 1; H. 467, 4. <sup>2</sup> *tumulum*, A. & G. 234, e; G. 356, 4; H. 437, I.

**quitare**, **lapides** telaque in nostros conicere. Caesar loquendi finem facit sequē ad suos recepit suisque imperavit, ne quod omnino telum in hostes reicerent. nam **etsi** sine ullo periculo legionis delectae cum equitatu proelium fore videbat, tamen committendum non putabat, ut pulsīs hostibus dici posset eos ab se<sup>5</sup> per fidem in colloquio circumventos. posteaquam in **volgus** militum **elatum** est, qua arrogātia in colloquio Ariovistus usus<sup>3</sup> omni Gallia Romanis **interdixisset**, impetunque in nostros eius equites fecissent, eaque res colloquium ut **diremisset**, multo maior alacritas studiumque pugnandi maius exercitui **iniectum** est. 10

### Topics for Study.

(1.) The regular tense used with *dum*. (2.) The two constructions after *propius*, *propior*, *proxime*, *proximus*. (3.) The construction with *interdixisset*. (4.) The objective genitive.

*The ambassadors sent to Ariovistus are put in chains.*

47. <sup>1</sup>Biduo post Ariovistus ad Caesarem legatos mittit: velle se de his rebus, quae inter eos agi coeptae neque perfectae essent, agere cum eo: uti aut iterum colloquio diem constitueret, aut, si id minus vellet, ex suis [legatis] aliquem ad se mitteret. colloquendi Caesari causa visa non est, et eo magis, quod pridie<sup>15</sup> eius diei Germani retineri non poterant, quin in nostros tela<sup>2</sup> conicerent. legatum ex suis sese magno cum periculo ad eum missurum et hominibus feris obiecturum existimabat. commodissimum visum est, Gaium Valerium Procillum, C. Valeri **Caburi** filium, summa virtute et humanitate **adulescentem**, cuius pater<sup>20</sup> a Gaio Valerio **Flacco** <sup>3</sup>civitate **donatus** erat, et propter fidem et propter linguae Gallicae **scientiam**, qua multa iam Ariovistus

46. <sup>3</sup> *omni Gallia*, A. & G. 243; G. 358; H. 413.

47. <sup>1</sup> *biduo*, A. & G. 250; G. 400, R. 3; H. 430. <sup>2</sup> *conicerent*, A. & G. 319, *d*; G. 550; H. 504, 4. <sup>3</sup> *civitate*, A. & G. 225, *d*; G. 348; H. 384. II, 2.

longinqua consuetudine utebatur, et quod in eo peccandi Germanis causa non esset, ad eum mittere, et M. Metium, qui hospitio Ariovisti utebatur. his mandavit, ut, quae diceret Ariovistus, cognoscerent et ad se referrent. quos eum apud se in castris  
 5 Ariovistus conspexisset, exercitu suo praesente conclamavit: quid ad se venirent? an speculandi causa? conantis dicere prohibuit et in catenas comiecit.

#### Topics for Study.

- (1.) The ablative of degree of difference. (2.) *Coepi* with a passive infinitive.  
 (3.) The construction after verbs of hindering. (4.) The constructions with *donare*.

#### *The German method of fighting.*

48. Eodem die castra promovit et milibus passuum sex a Caesaris castris sub monte consedit. postridie eius diei praeter  
 10 castra Caesaris suas copias traduxit et milibus passuum duobus ultra eum castra fecit eo consilio, uti frumento comneatuque, qui ex Sequanis et Haeduis<sup>1</sup> supportaretur, Caesarem intereluderet. ex eo die dies continuos quinque Caesar pro castris suas copias produxit et aeicm instructam habuit, ut, si vellet  
 15 Ariovistus proelio contendere, ei potestas non deesset. Ariovistus his omnibus diebus exercitum castris continuit, equestri proelio cotidie contendit. Genus hoc erat pugnae, quo se Germani exercuerant. equitum milia erant sex, totidem numero pedites velocissimi ac fortissimi, quos ex omni copia singuli  
 20 singulos suae salutis causa delegerant: eum his in proeliis versabantur. ad hos se equites recipiebant: hi, si quid erat durius, concurrebant: si qui graviore vulnere accepto equo deciderat, circumstebant; si quo erat longius prodeundum aut celerius recipiendum, tanta erat horum exercitatione celeritas, ut iubis  
 25 equorum sublevati cursum adaequant.

48. <sup>1</sup> *supportaretur*, A. & G. 342; G. 631; H. 529, II.



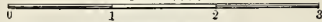


# ARIOVISTI GLADES.

CAESAR BELL. GALL. I, 42-54.

auctore Alb. v. Kampen,

MILIA PASSUUM



**Topics for Study.**

(1.) The manners of the Germans. (2.) The subjunctive by attraction. (3.) The ablative of time. (4.) The ablative of specification.

*Ariovistus attacks the lesser camp of Caesar, but does not dare to contend in battle.*

49. Ubi eum <sup>1</sup>castris se tenere Caesar intellexit, ne diutius comneatu prohiberetur, ultra eum locum, quo in loco Germani consederant, circiter passus sexcentos ab iis, castris **idoneum** locum delegit acieque triplici instructa ad eum locum venit. primam et secundam aciem in armis esse, <sup>2</sup>tertiam castra munire 5 iussit. hic locus ab hoste circiter passus sexcentos, uti dictum est, aberat. eo circiter hominum numero sedecim milia expedita cum omni equitatu Ariovistus misit, quae copiae nostros pertererent et munitione <sup>3</sup>prohiberent. nihilo **secius** Caesar, ut ante constituerat, duas acies hostem **propulsare**, tertiam opus perficere 10 iussit. munitis castris duas ibi legiones reliquit et partem auxiliorum, quattuor reliquas in castra maiora reduxit.

**Topic for Study.**

The Roman camp.

50. Proximo die instituto suo Caesar e castris utrisque copias suas eduxit **paulumque** a maioribus castris **progressus** aciem instruxit, hostibus pugnandi potestatem fecit. ubi ne tum quidem 15 eos prodire intellexit, circiter **meridiem** exercitum in castra reduxit. tum demum Ariovistus partem suarum copiarum, quae castra minora oppugnaret, misit. acriter **utrimque usque** ad vesperum pugnatum est. solis occasu suas copias Ariovistus multis et inlatis et acceptis vulneribus in eastra reduxit. cum 20 ex captivis quaereret Caesar, quamobrem Ariovistus proelio non

49. <sup>1</sup> *castris*, Introd. No. 121. <sup>2</sup> *tertiam*, Introd. No. 125, 1) *a*. <sup>3</sup> *prohiberent*, A. & G. 317; G. 632; H. 497, 1.

decertaret, hanc reperiebat eausam, quod apud Germanos ea consuetudo <sup>1</sup>esset, ut matresfamiliae eorum **sortibus** et **vaticinationibus declararent**, <sup>2</sup>utrum proelium committi ex usu esset, **necne** : eas ita dicere : non esse **fas** Germanos superare, si ante novam  
5 **lunam** proelio contendissent.

#### Topics for Study.

(1.) The mood used with *quod* to assign a reason on another's authority. (2.) Clauses of result. (3.) Double questions.

#### *The battle.*

51. Postridie eius diei Caesar praesidio utrisque castris, quod satis esse visum est, reliquit, omnis <sup>1</sup>**alarios** in conspectu hostium pro castris minoribus constituit, quod minus multitudine militum legionariorum pro hostium numero valebat, ut ad **speciem** alariis uteretur; ipse triplici instructa acie usque ad castra  
10 hostium accessit. tum demum necessario Germani suas copias castris eduxerunt **generatimque** constituerunt paribus intervallis, **Harudes, Marcomanos, Triboces, Vangiones, Nemetes, Sedusios, Suebos**, omnemque aciem suam **redis** et earris circumdederunt, ne  
15 qua spes in fuga relinqueretur. eo mulieres imposuerunt, quae in proelium proficiscentes milites **passis** manibus flentes implorabant, ne se in servitatem Romanis traderent.

#### Topic for Study.

The Roman legion.

52. Caesar singulis legionibus singulos legatos et <sup>1</sup>**quaestorem** praefecit, uti eos testes suae quisque virtutis haberet; ipse a  
20 dextro cornu, quod eam partem minime firmam hostium esse

50. <sup>1</sup> *esset*, A. & G. 341, *d*; G. 630; H. 516, II. <sup>2</sup> *utrum — necne*, A. & G. 211; G. 460; H. 353, x. 3

51. <sup>1</sup> *alarios*, Introd. No. 108.

52. <sup>1</sup> *quaestorem*, Introd. No. 110, *e*.

animadverterat, proelium eommisit. ita nostri acriter in hostes signo dato impetum leecerunt, itaque hostes **repente** eeleriterque **procurrerunt**, ut spatium pila in hostes conieciendi non daretur. reiectis pilis, **comminus** gladiis pugnatum est. at Germani, ceeleriter ex consuetudine sua phalange facta impetus gladiatorum ex-<sup>5</sup>eeperunt. reperti sunt eomplures nostri milites, qui in <sup>2</sup> phalangas <sup>3</sup> insilirent et senta manibus **revellerent** et de supero vulnerarent. eum hostium aeies a sinistro **cornu** pulsa atque in fugam conversa esset, a dextro eornu vehementer multitudine suorum nostram aeiem **premebant**. id eum animadvertisset **Publius Crassus** <sup>10</sup> adulescens, qui equitatu praecerat, quod expeditior erat quam hi, qui inter aeiem versabantur, <sup>4</sup>tertiam aeiem laborantibus nostris **subsidio** misit.

#### Topics for Study.

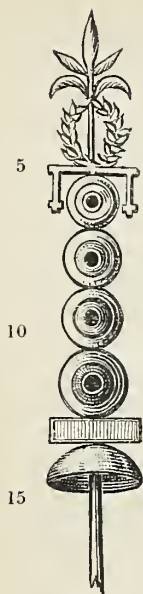
(1.) The gerund with direct object. (2.) The Greek accusative plural. (3.) The subjunctive of characteristic. (4.) The idiom *a sinistro cornu*. (5.) The dative of service.

*The defeat of the Germans. Caesar leads his army into winter quarters and sets out for Cisalpine Gaul.*

**53.** Ita proelium restitutum est, atque omnes hostes **terga verterunt** neque prius **fugere** destiterunt, quam ad flumen Rhe-<sup>15</sup>num milia passuum ex eo loco eireiter quinque pervenerunt. ibi perpauci aut viribus eonfisi **tranare** eontenderunt aut lintribus **inventis** sibi salutem repererunt. in his fuit Ariovistus, qui **naviculam deligatam** ad ripam **nactus** ea profugit: reliquos omnes eonseenti equites nostri interfeecerunt. duae fuerunt Ariovisti <sup>20</sup>uxores, una **Sueba** <sup>1</sup>natione, quam domo secum duxerat, altera Norica, regis **Voccionis** soror, quam in Gallia duxerat a fratre

**52.** <sup>2</sup> phalangas, A. & G. 63, f; G. 73; H. 68. <sup>3</sup> insilirent, A. & G. 320, a; G. 633; H. 503, I. <sup>4</sup> tertiam aeiem, Introd. No. 125, 1) a.

**53.** <sup>1</sup> natione, A. & G. 253; G. 398; H. 424.



missam : utracque in ea fuga **perierunt**. duae filiae harum, altera occisa, altera capta est. Gaius Valerius Procillus, cum a custodibus in fuga <sup>2</sup>**trinis** catenis **vinctus traheretur**, in ipsum Caesarem hostis <sup>3</sup>**equitatu** persequentem **incidit**. quae quidem res Caesari non minorem quam ipsa victoria **voluptatem** attulit, quod hominem **honestissimum** provinciae Galliae, suum familiarem et **hospitem**, ereptum e manibus hostium sibi restitutum videbat, neque eius calamitate de tanta voluptate et **gratulatione** quicquam fortuna deminuerat. is se praesente de se **ter** sortibus consultum dicebat, utrum igni **statim necaretur**, an in aliud tempus **reservaretur** : sortium beneficio se esse **incolumem**. item M. Metius repertus et ad eum reductus est.

#### Topics for Study.

(1.) Semi-deponent verbs. (2.) The ablative of specification. (3.)

**SIGNUM.** Distributive numerals.

**54.** Hoc proelio trans Rhenum nuntiato Suebi, qui ad ripas Rheni venerant, domum reverti coeperunt ; quos **Ubi**, qui proximi <sup>1</sup>Rhenum incolunt, perterritos insecuti, magnum ex his numerum occiderunt. Caesar una **aestate** duobus maximis bellis <sup>2</sup>confectis maturius paulo, quam tempus anni postulabat, in <sup>2</sup>hiberna in Sequanos exercitum deduxit, hibernis Labienum **praeposuit** ; ipse in citeriorem Galliam ad conventus agendos profectus est.

#### Topics for Study.

(1.) The accusative of limit of motion. (2.) The omission of the preposition with this accusative. (3.) The two possible constructions with *proximi*. (4.) The gerundive construction.

**53.** <sup>2</sup> *trinis*, A. & G. 95, b ; G. 95 ; H. 172, 3. <sup>3</sup> *equitatu*, Introd. No. 125, 1) b.

**54.** <sup>1</sup> *Rhenum*, A. & G. 234, e ; G. 356, 4 ; H. 391, II, 2. <sup>2</sup> *hiberna*, Introd. No. 121.

C. IULII CAESARIS  
 DE BELLO GALLICO  
 COMMENTARIUS SECUNDUS.

THE BELGIAN WAR.

*The Belgian confederacy. Caesar proceeds against the Belgae.*



1. Cum esset Caesar in citeriore Gallia [in hibernis], ita uti supra demonstravimus, **crebri** ad eum **rumores** afferebantur, litterisque item Labieni certior fiebat omnes Belgas, <sup>1</sup>quam <sup>5</sup>tertiam esse Galliae partem dixeramus, contra populum Romanum **coniurare** obsidesque inter se dare. <sup>2</sup>coniurandi has esse causas: primum, quod <sup>3</sup>vererentur, ne omni pacata Gallia ad eos <sup>10</sup>exercitus noster adduceretur; deinde, quod ab nonnullis Gallis **sollicitarentur**, **partim** qui, ut Germanos diutius

in Gallia versari noluerant, ita populi Romani exercitum hiemare atque **inveterascere** in Gallia **moleste** ferebant, partim qui **mo-** <sup>15</sup>**bilitate** et **levitate** animi <sup>4</sup>novis imperiis studebant, ab nonnullis etiam, quod in Gallia a potentioribus atque iis, qui ad

1. <sup>1</sup> *quam*, A. & G. 199; G. 616, 3; H. 445, 4. <sup>2</sup> *coniurandi*, A. & G. 298; G. 429; H. 542, I <sup>3</sup> *vererentur*, A. & G. 341, d; G. 541; H. 516, II. <sup>4</sup> *novis imperiis*, A. & G. 227; G. 345; H. 385.

conducendos homines facultates habebant, vulgo regna occupabantur, qui minus facile eam rem imperio nostro consequi poterant.

#### Topics for Study.

(1.) The attraction of the antecedent. (2.) The genitive of the gerund. (3.) *Quod* assigning a reason on the authority of another. (4.) The idiom *molestè ferebant*. (5.) The ablative of cause. (6.) The dative with special verbs.

2. His nuntiis litterisque commotus Caesar duas legiones in  
5 citiore Gallia novas conscripsit et <sup>1</sup>in *Italia* aestate, in *interiorem*  
Galliam qui deduceret, Quintum *Pedium* legatum misit. ipse,  
cum primum pabuli copia esse <sup>2</sup>*inciperet*, ad exercitum venit.  
dat negotium *Senonibus* reliquisque Gallis, qui finitimi Belgis  
erant, uti ea, quae apud eos gerantur, cognoscant seque de his  
10 rebus certiore faciant. hi *constanter* omnes nuntiaverunt  
manus cogi, exercitum in unum locum conduci. tum vero dubi-  
tandum non existimavit, quin ad eos proficisceretur. re frumen-  
taria comparata castra movet <sup>3</sup>diebusque circiter quindecim ad  
fines Belgarum pervenit.

#### Topics for Study.

(1.) The ablative absolute. (2.) Relative clause of purpose. (3.) The idiom *cum primum*. (4.) *Cum* in temporal clauses. (5.) The impersonal construction.

*The Remi submit to Caesar and inform him of the strength of the confederates.*

15 3. Eo cum de improvise celeriusque omni <sup>1</sup>*opinione* venisset,  
*Remi*, qui proximi <sup>2</sup>*Galliae* ex Belgis sunt, ad eum legatos *Iccium*  
et *Andecumborium*, primos civitatis, miserunt, qui <sup>3</sup>dicerent se  
suaque omnia in fidem atque in potestatem populi Romani per-

2. <sup>1</sup> *in Italia aestate*, A. & G. 255; G. 408; H. 431. <sup>2</sup> *inciperet*, A. & G. 325; G. 586; H. 521, II, 2 <sup>3</sup> *diebus*, A. & G. 256; G. 392; H. 429.

3. <sup>1</sup> *opinione*, A. & G. 247; G. 399; H. 417. <sup>2</sup> *Galliae*, A. & G. 234 a; G. 356; H. 391, I. <sup>3</sup> *dicerent*, A. & G. 317; G. 632; H. 497, I.



mittere, neque se cum Belgis reliquis **consensisse** neque contra populum Romanum coniurasse, paratosque esse et obsides dare et imperata facere et oppidis recipere et frumento ceterisque rebus iuvare; reliquos omnes Belgas in armis esse, Germanosque, qui **cis** Rhenum incolant, sese cum his coniunxisse, tantumque esse 5 eorum omnium furorem, ut ne **Suessiones** quidem, fratres consanguineosque suos, qui eodem <sup>4</sup> iure et eisdem legibus utantur, unum imperium unumque magistratum cum ipsis habeant, detertere potuerint, quin cum his consentirent.

#### Topics for Study.

(1.) The idiom *celerius omni opinione*. (2.) The dative after adjectives.  
 (3.) Adjectives used substantively. (4.) The two possible constructions after *paratus*.

4. Cum ab his quaereret, quae civitates, quantaeque in armis 10 essent et quid in bello <sup>1</sup> possent, sic reperiebat: **plerosque** Belgas esse ortos ab Germanis <sup>2</sup> Rhenumque **antiquitus** traductos propter loci **fertilitatem** ibi consedissee Gallosque, qui ea loca incolerent, **expulisse**, solosque esse, qui patrum nostrorum memoria omni Gallia vexata Teutonos Cimbrosque intra fines suos **ingredi** 15 prohibuerint; qua ex re fieri, uti earum rerum memoria magnam sibi auctoritatem magnosque spiritus in re militari sumerent. de numero eorum omnia se habere **explorata** Remi dicebant, propterea quod **propinquitatibus** affinitatibusque coniuncti, quantam quisque multitudinem in communi Belgarum concilio ad id bel- 20 lum pollicitus sit, cognoverint. plurimum inter eos **Bellovacos** et virtute et auctoritate et hominum numero valere: hos posse conficere armata milia centum: pollicitos ex eo numero **electa** LX, totius belli imperium sibi postulare. **Suessiones** suos esse finitimos; latissimos **feracissimosque** agros possidere. apud eos 25

3. <sup>4</sup> *iure*, A. & G. 249; G. 405; H. 421, I.

4. <sup>1</sup> *possent*, A. & G. 334; G. 469; H. 529, I. <sup>2</sup> *Rhenum*, A. & G. 237, b; G. 330, R. 1; H. 376, N.

fuisse regem nostra etiam memoria Divitiaem, totius Galliae potentissimum, qui <sup>3</sup>cum magnae partis harum regionum, tum etiam **Brittaniae** imperium obtinuerit: nunc esse regem **Galbam**: ad hunc propter iustitiam **prudentiam**que totius belli summam  
 5 omnium voluntate **deferri**: oppida habere numero XII, polliceri milia armata quinquaginta; totidem **Nervios**, qui maxime feri inter ipsos habeantur longissimeque absint; XV milia **Atrebates**, **Ambianos** X milia, **Morinos** XXV milia, **Menapios** VII milia, **Caletos** X milia, **Veliocasses** et **Viromandos** totidem, **Aduatucos**  
 10 decem et novem milia; **Condrusos**, **Eburones**, **Caeroesos**, **Pae-manos**, qui uno nomine Germani appellantur, arbitrari ad XL milia.

#### Topics for Study.

(1.) The adverbial accusative. (2.) The indirect question. (3.) The two accusatives with transitive verbs compounded with a preposition. (4.) The idiom *plurimum valere*. (5.) Correlatives.

#### *Caesar encamps on the banks of the Arona.*

5. Caesar Remos cohortatus **liberaliter**que oratione **prosecutus** omnem senatum ad se convenire principumque liberos obsides  
 15 ad se adduci iussit. quae omnia ab his **diligenter** ad diem facta sunt. ipse Divitiaem Haeduum magnopere cohortatus docet, quanto opere rei publicae communisque salutis <sup>1</sup>intersit manus hostium **distineri**, ne eum tanta multitudine uno tempore **confligendum** sit. id fieri posse, si suas copias Haedui in fines  
 20 Bellovacorum **introduxerint** et eorum agros <sup>2</sup>populari coeperint. his mandatis eum ab se dimittit. postquam omnes Belgarum copias in unum locum coactas ad se venire vidit, neque iam longe abesse ab iis, quos miserat, exploratoribus et ab Remis cognovit, flumen **Axonam**, quod est in extremis Remorum fini-

4. <sup>3</sup> *cum — tum*, A. & G. 155 a; G. 589; H. 554, I, 5.

5. <sup>1</sup> *intersit*, A. & G. 222; G. 381; H. 406, III. <sup>2</sup> *populari*, A. & G. 271; G. 424; H. 533, I, 2.

bus, exercitum traducere maturavit atque ibi castra posuit. quae res et latus unum castrorum ripis fluminis <sup>3</sup>muniebat et post eum quae essent, **tuta** ab hostibus reddebat et, commeatus ab Remis reliquisque civitatibus ut sine periculo ad eum portari possent, efficiebat. in eo flumine pons erat. ibi praesidium <sup>5</sup>ponit et in altera parte fluminis Q. **Titurium Sabinum** legatum cum sex <sup>4</sup>cohortibus relinquit; castra in altitudinem pedum duodecim <sup>5</sup>vallo <sup>6</sup>fossaque duodeviginti pedum munire iubet.

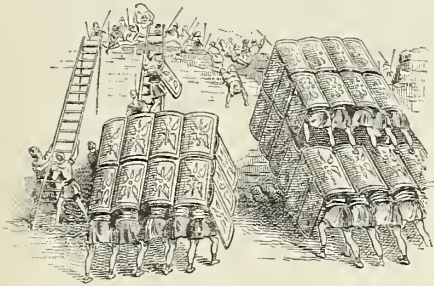
### Topics for Study.

(1.) The complementary infinitive. (2.) The intensive pronoun. (3.) The construction with *interest*. (4.) The ablative of manner. (5.) Substantive clauses of result. (6.) The Roman method of fortifying the camp.

*Bibrax, a town of the Remi, attacked by the Belgae. Caesar relieves the siege and fortifies a camp.*

6. Ab his castris oppidum Remorum <sup>1</sup>nomine Bibrax aberat milia passuum octo. id ex itinere magno impetu Belgae oppu- 10

guare coeperunt. aegre eo die **sustentatum** est. Gallorum eadem atque Belgarum **oppugnatio** est haec. ubi **circumiecta** <sup>15</sup>multitudine hominum totis <sup>2</sup>moenibus undique in murum lapides **iaci** <sup>3</sup>coepti sunt murusque **defensoribus** <sup>20</sup>nudatus



TESTUDO.

est, **testudine** facta [**portas**] **succedunt** murumque **subruunt**.

5. <sup>3</sup>muniebat, Introd. No. 125, 2). <sup>4</sup>cohortibus, Introd. No. 99. <sup>5</sup>vallo, Introd. No. 121, b. <sup>6</sup>fossa, Introd. No. 121, a, and note.

6. <sup>1</sup>nomine, A. & G. 253; G. 398; H. 424. <sup>2</sup>moenibus, A. & G. 258 f; G. 387; H. 425, II, 2. <sup>3</sup>coepti sunt, A. & G. 143, a; G. 424, R. 1; H. 297, I, 1.

quod tum facile fiebat. nam cum tanta multitudo lapides ac tela conicerent, in muro consistendi potestas erat nulli. cum finem oppugnandi nox fecisset, Iccius Remus, summa nobilitate et gratia inter suos, qui tum oppido praefuerat, unus ex iis, 5 qui legati de pace ad Caesarem venerant, nuntium ad eum mittit, nisi subsidium sibi **submitatur**, sese diutius sustinere non posse.

#### Topics for Study.

(1.) The ablative of specification. (2.) The ablative of place. (3.) The ablative of time. (4.) The voice of *coepi* when used with a passive infinitive. (5.) The ablative of separation.

7. Eo de media nocte Caesar <sup>1</sup>isdem ducibus usus, qui nuntii ab Iccio venerant, **Numidas** et **Cretas sagittarios** et **funditores** 10 **Baleares** <sup>2</sup>subsidio **oppidanis** mittit; quorum adventu et Remis cum spe **defensionis** studium **propugnandi** accessit, et hostibus eadem de causa spes potiundi oppidi discessit. itaque paulisper apud oppidum morati agrosque Remorum depopulati omnibus vicis aedificiisque, <sup>3</sup>quos **adire** potuerant, incensis ad castra Caesaris omnibus copiis contenderunt et ab milibus passuum minus 15 duobus castra posuerunt; quae castra, ut **fumo** atque ignibus **significabatur**, amplius <sup>4</sup>milibus passuum octo in latitudinem patebant.

#### Topics for Study.

(1.) The construction after *utor*. (2.) The dative of purpose. (3.) The treatment of *potior* in the gerundive construction. (4.) The idiom *de media nocte*.

8. Caesar primo et propter multitudinem hostium et propter 20 **eximiam** opinionem virtutis proelio **supersedere** statuit; cotidie

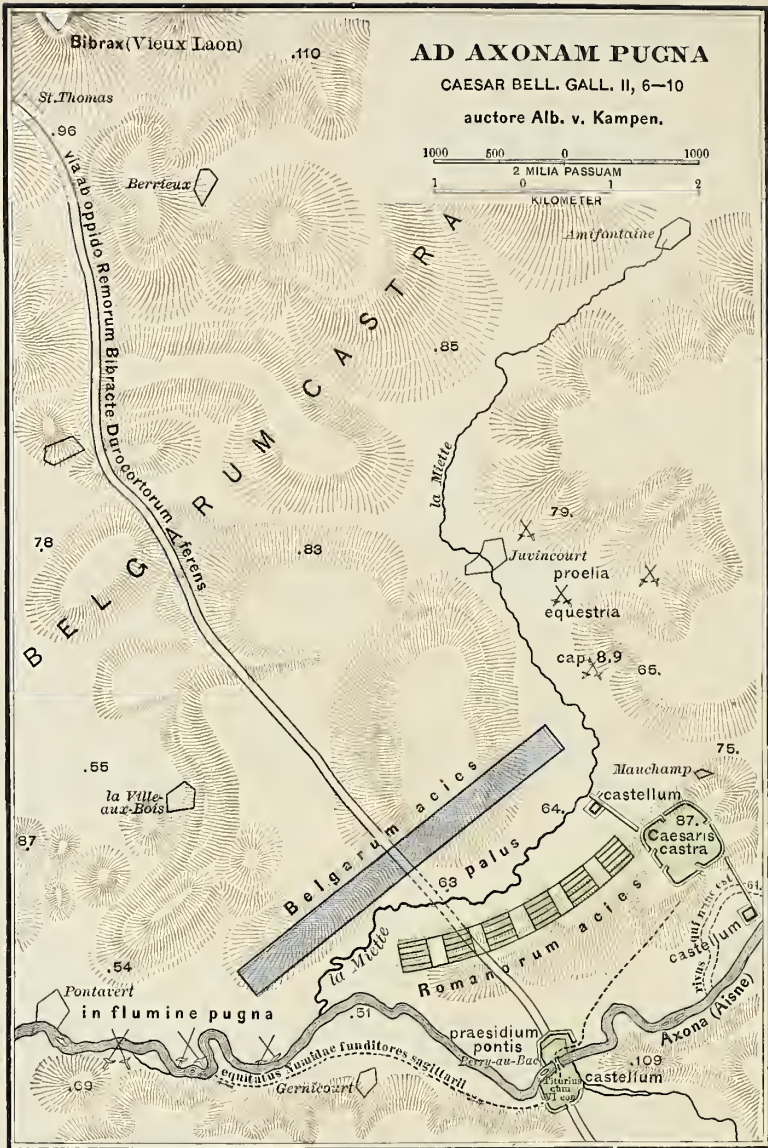
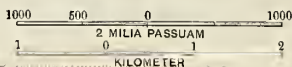
7. <sup>1</sup> *isdem*, A. & G. 249; G. 405; H. 421, 1. <sup>2</sup> *subsidio oppidanis*, A. & G. 233; G. 350; H. 390. <sup>3</sup> *quos*, G. 616, R. 5; H. 445, 3, N. 1. <sup>4</sup> *milibus*, A. & G. 247; G. 399; H. 417.



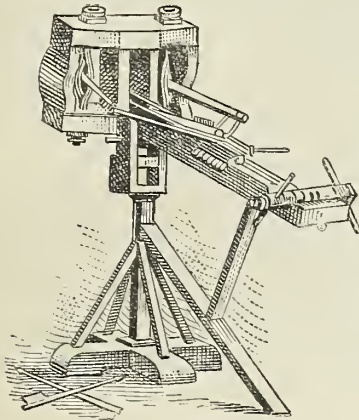
# AD AXONAM PUGNA

CAESAR BELL. GALL. II, 6-10

auctore Alb. v. Kampen.



tamen equestribus proeliis, quid hostis virtute <sup>1</sup>posset et quid nostri auderent, **periclitabatur**. ubi nostros non esse inferiores intellexit, loco pro castris ad aciem instruendam natura opportuno atque idoneo, quod is collis, ubi castra posita erant, **paulu- 5 lum** ex planitie **editus** tantum adversus in latitudinem patebat, quantum <sup>2</sup>loci acies instructa occupare poterat, atque ex utraque parte lateris deiectus habe- 10 bat et **frontem leniter fastigatus** paulatim ad planitiem redibat, ab utroque latere eius collis **transversam** fossam **obduxit** circiter passuum CD, et ad 15 <sup>3</sup>extremas <sup>4</sup>fossas castella constituit ibique **tormenta** collo-



CATAPULTA.

cavit, ne, cum aciem instruxisset, hostes, quod tantum multitudine poterant, ab lateribus pugnantes suos circumvenire possent. hoc facto duabus legionibus, quas proxime conscripserat, in cas- 20 tris relictis, ut, si quo opus esset, subsidio duci possent, reliquas sex legiones pro castris in acie constituit. hostes item suas copias ex castris eductas instruxerant.

### Topics for Study.

(1.) The indirect question. (2.) The gerundive construction. (3.) The partitive genitive. (4.) *Cum* in temporal clauses. (5.) The use of participles. (6.) The adverbial accusative. (7.) The difference of construction after *ubi* and *cum*, as illustrated in this chapter. (8.) The Roman engines of war.

8. <sup>1</sup> *posset*, A. & G. 334; G. 469; H. 529, 1. <sup>2</sup> *loci*, A. & G. 216; G. 371; H. 397, 3. <sup>3</sup> *extremas fossas*, A. & G. 193; G. 287, r.; H. 440, 2, n. 1. <sup>4</sup> *fossas*, Introd. No. 121, a, and note.

*The Belgae try to cross the Axona. The Romans attack them in the rear and pursue them with great slaughter.*

9. Palus erat non magna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. hanc <sup>1</sup>si nostri transirent, hostes expectabant; nostri autem, si ab illis initium transeundi fieret, ut impeditos <sup>2</sup>adgrederentur, parati in armis erant. interim proelio equestri  
 5 inter duas acies contendebatur. ubi **neutri** transeundi initium faciunt, <sup>3</sup>secundiore equitum proelio nostris Caesar suos in castra reduxit. hostes **protinus** ex eo loco ad flumen Axonam contenderunt, quod esse post nostra castra demonstratum est. ibi vadis repertis partem suarum copiarum traducere conati sunt eo  
 10 consilio, ut, si possent, castellum, cui praecrat Quintus Titurius legatus, expugnarent pontemque **interscindere**; si minus potuissent, agros Remorum popularentur, qui magno nobis usui ad bellum gerendum erant commatuque nostros prohiberent.

#### Topics for Study.

(1.) Clauses of purpose. (2.) The ablative absolute construction with a noun and adjective. (3.) The ablative of separation.

10. Caesar certior factus ab Titurio omnem equitatum et **levis**  
 15 **armaturae** Numidas, funditores sagittariosque pontem traducit atque ad eos contendit. acriter in eo loco pugnatum est. hostes impeditos nostri in flumine adgressi magnum eorum numerum occiderunt: per eorum corpora reliquos audacissime transire conantes multitudine telorum repulerunt; primos, qui transierant,  
 20 equitatu circumventos interfecerunt. hostes ubi et <sup>1</sup>de expugnando oppido et de flumine transeundo spem se **fefellisse** intellexerunt neque nostros in locum iniquiorem progredi pugnandi

9. <sup>1</sup> *si*, A. & G. 334, *f*; G. 462, 2; H. 529, II, 1, n. 1. <sup>2</sup> *adgrederentur*, A. & G. 317; G. 545; H. 497, II. <sup>3</sup> *secundiore proelio*, A. & G. 255, *a*; G. 408; H. 431, 4.

10. <sup>1</sup> *de expugnando oppido*, A. & G. 301; G. 434; H. 544, 2.



causa viderunt, atque ipsos res frumentaria **deficere** coepit, concilio convocato constituerunt optimum esse, <sup>2</sup>domum suam quemque reverti et, quorum in fines primum Romani exercitum introduxissent, ad eos defendendos undique convenirent, ut potius in suis quam in alienis finibus decertarent et **domesticis** copiis rei frumentariae uterentur. ad eam sententiam cum reliquis causis haec quoque ratio eos deduxit, quod Divitiacum atque Haeduos finibus Bellovacorum **adpropinquare** cognoverant. his <sup>3</sup>persuaderi, ut diutius morarentur neque suis auxilium ferrent, non poterat.

10

### Topics for Study.

(1.) The idiom *certior factus*. (2.) The ablative of the gerundive with *de*. (3.) The accusative of limit of motion. (4.) The dative with compounds. (5.) The impersonal construction.

**11.** Ea re constituta secunda vigilia magno cum **strepitu** ac tumultu castris egressi nullo certo ordine neque imperio, cum sibi quisque primum itineris locum <sup>1</sup>peteret et domum pervenire **properaret**, <sup>2</sup>fecerunt, ut **consimilis** fugae profectio videretur. hac re statim Caesar per **speculatores** cognita insidias veritus, quod, **15** qua de causa discederent, nondum perspexerat, exercitum equitatumque castris continuit. prima luce confirmata re ab exploratoribus omnem equitatum, qui novissimum agmen <sup>3</sup>moraretur, praemisit. his Quintum Pedium et Lucium **Aurunculeium Cottam** legatos praefecit. **Titum** Labienum legatum cum legionibus **20** tribus **subsequi** iussit. hi novissimos adorti et multa milia passuum persecuti magnam multitudinem eorum fugientium conciderunt, cum ab extremo agmine, ad quos ventum erat, consisterent

**10.** <sup>2</sup> *domum*, A. & G. 258 b; G. 410; H. 380, II, 2, 1. <sup>3</sup> *persuaderi*, A. & G. 230; G. 208; H. 284, 5.

**11.** <sup>1</sup> *peteret*, A. & G. 326; G. 587; H. 517. <sup>2</sup> *fecerunt, ut*, A. & G. 332, e; G. 557; H. 498, II, n. 2. <sup>3</sup> *moraretur*, A. & G. 317; G. 632; H. 497, I.

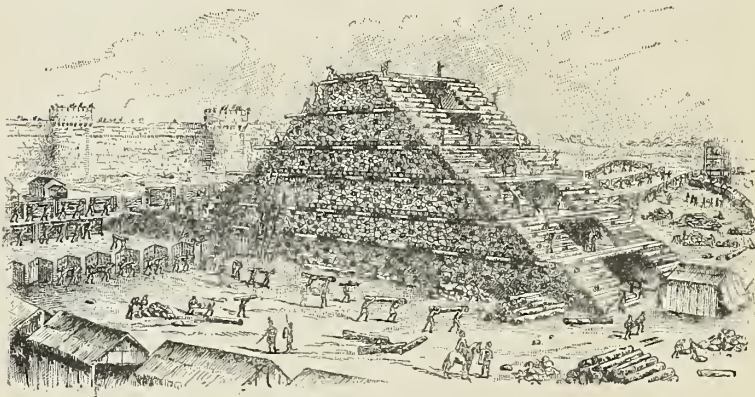
fortiterque impetum nostrorum militum sustinerent, **priores**, quod abesse a perieulo <sup>4</sup> viderentur neque ulla **necessitate** neque imperio continerentur, **exaudito clamore** perturbatis ordinibus omnes in fuga sibi praesidium ponerent. ita sine ullo perieulo tantam  
5 eorum multitudinem nostri interfecerunt, quantum fuit diei spatium, sub occasumque solis destiterunt seque in castra, ut erat imperatum, receperunt.

#### Topics for Study.

(1.) *Cum* in causal clauses. (2.) The idiom *prima luce*. (3.) Relative clauses of purpose. (4.) The subjunctive by attraction.

*Caesar marches against the Suessiones and the Bellovaci.  
Divitiacus pleads for the latter.*

12. Postridie eius <sup>1</sup> diei Caesar, priusquam se hostes ex **terrore** ac fuga <sup>2</sup> reciperent, in fines Suessionum, qui proximi Remis  
10 erant, exercitum duxit et magno itinere [confecto] ad oppidum



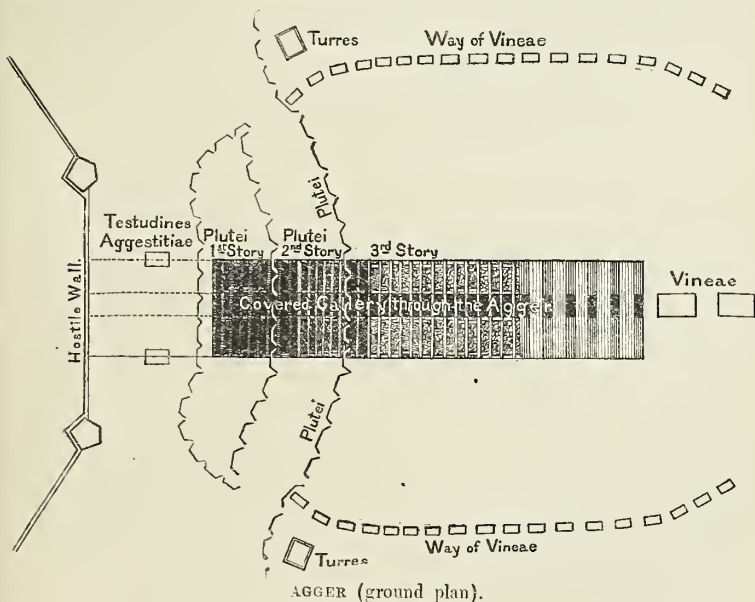
AGGER (perspective view).

11. <sup>4</sup> *viderentur*, A. & G. 342; G. 631; H. 529, II.

12. <sup>1</sup> *diei*, A. & G. 214, *g*; G. 371, R. 4; H. 398, 5. <sup>2</sup> *reciperent*, A. & G. 327; G. 579; H. 520, II.

**Noviodunum** contendit. id ex itinere oppugnare conatus, quod **vacuum** ab defensoribus esse audiebat, propter latitudinem fossae murique altitudinem paucis defendentibus expugnare non potuit. castris munitis **vineas** agere quaeque ad oppugnandum usui erant comparare coepit. interim omnis ex fuga Suessionum multitudo 5 in oppidum proxima nocte convenit. celeriter vineis ad oppidum actis, <sup>3</sup> **aggere** iacto **turribusque** constitutis magnitudine operum, quae neque viderant ante Galli neque audierant, et celeritate Romanorum permoti legatos ad Caesarem de deditione mittunt et petentibus Remis, ut **conservarentur**, impetrant.

10



**Topics for Study.**

- (1.) The genitive after *postridie*. (2.) The two possible constructions after *proximi*. (3.) The dative of purpose. (4.) The construction of the *agger*.

12. <sup>3</sup> *aggere*. Introd. No. 127.

13. Caesar obsidibus acceptis primis civitatis atque ipsius Galbae regis duobus filiis armisque omnibus ex oppido traditis in deditionem Suessiones accepit exercitumque in Bellovacos ducit. qui cum se suaque omnia in oppidum **Bratuspantium** 5 contulissent, atque ab eo oppido Caesar cum exercitu circiter milia passuum quinque abesset, omnes <sup>1</sup>maiores **natu** ex oppido egressi manus ad Caesarem **tendere** et voce significare coeperunt, sese in eius fidem ac potestatem venire neque contra populum Romanum armis contendere. item cum ad oppidum accessisset 10 castraque ibi poneret, pueri mulieresque ex muro passis manibus suo more pacem ab Romanis petierunt.

#### Topics for Study.

(1.) The adjective used substantively. (2.) The idiom *maiores natu*. (3.) The accusative of extent of space.

14. Pro his Divitiacus (nam post **discessum** Belgarum dimissis Haeduorum copiis ad eum reverterat) facit verba: Bellovacos omni tempore in fide atque amicitia civitatis **Haeduae** fuisse: impulsos 15 ab suis principibus, qui <sup>1</sup>dicerent Haeduos a Caesare in servitutum redactos omnes **indignitates** contumeliasque perferre et ab Haeduis defecisse et populo Romano bellum intulisse. qui eius consilii principes fuissent, quod intellegent, quantam calamitatem civitati intulissent, in Britanniam profugisse. petere non 20 solum Bellovacos, sed etiam pro his Haeduos, ut sua **clementia** ac **mansuetudine** in eos utatur. quod si feerit, Haedorum auctoritatem apud omnes Belgas **amplificaturum**; quorum auxiliis atque opibus, si qua bella inciderint, sustentare consuerint.

#### Topic for Study.

The changes in moods, tenses, and persons in the indirect discourse.

13. <sup>1</sup> *maiores natu*, A. & G. 253; G. 398; H. 424.

14. <sup>1</sup> *dicerent*, A. & G. 336; G. 653; H. 524.

*Caesar's reply. Account of the Nervii.*

15. Caesar honoris Divitiaci atque Haeduorum causa sese eos in fidem recepturum et conservaturum dixit; quod erat civitas magna inter Belgas <sup>1</sup>auctoritate atque hominum multitudine praestabat, sexcentos obsides poposcit. his traditis omnibusque armis ex oppido collatis ab eo loco in fines Ambianorum per-<sup>5</sup> venit, qui se suaque omnia sine **mora dederunt**. eorum fines Nervii attingebant; quorum de natura moribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sic reperiebat: nullum aditum esse ad eos mercatoribus; nihil pati <sup>2</sup>vini reliquarumque rerum [ad luxuriam pertinentium] inferri, quod iis rebus **relanguescere** animos [eorum] et <sup>10</sup>remitti virtutem existimarent: esse homines feros magnaque virtutis: **increpitare** atque incusare reliquos Belgas, qui se populo Romano dedidissent **patriamque** virtutem proiecissent; confirmare sese neque legatos missuros neque ullam condicionem pacis accepturos.

15

**Topics for Study.**

(1.) The ablative of cause. (2.) The objective genitive. (3.) The partitive genitive. (4.) The ablative of quality. (5.) The genitive of quality.

*Caesar marches against the Nervii. Some Gauls and Belgians desert to the Nervii and give information.*

16. Cum per eorum fines <sup>1</sup>triduum iter fecisset, inveniebat ex captivis <sup>2</sup>Sabim flumen ab castris suis non amplius-<sup>3</sup>milia passuum decem abesse: trans id flumen omnes Nervios consedissee adventumque ibi Romanorum expectare una cum Atrebatis et Viromanduis, finitimis suis (nam his ntrisque persuaserant, uti <sup>20</sup>

15. <sup>1</sup> auctoritate, A. & G. 351; G. 402; H. 419, III. <sup>2</sup> vini, A. & G. 216; G. 371; H. 397, 1.

16. <sup>1</sup> triduum, A. & G. 256; G. 337; H. 379. <sup>2</sup> Sabim, A. & G. 56, a, 1; G. 60, 2, a; H. 62, II, 2. <sup>3</sup> milia, A. & G. 247, c; G. 311, r. 4; H. 417, 1, x. 2.

eandem belli fortunam experirentur); exspectari etiam ab his Aduatueorum copias atque esse in itinere: mulieres quique per aetatem ad pugnam **inutiles** viderentur in eum locum coniecisse, quo propter paludes exercitui aditus non esset.

#### Topics for Study.

(1.) The accusative of duration of time. (2.) The idiom *iter fecisset*. (3.) The two possible constructions after *amplius*. (4.) The dative with special verbs.

5 **17.** His rebus cognitis, exploratores centurionesque praemittit, qui locum <sup>1</sup>idoneum castris deligant. eum ex dediticiis Belgis reliquisque <sup>2</sup>Gallis complures Caesarem secuti una iter facerent, quidam ex his, ut postea ex captivis cognitum est, eorum dierum consuetudine <sup>3</sup>itineris nostri exercitus perspecta nocte ad Nervios  
10 pervenerunt atque his demonstrarunt inter singulas legiones impedimentorum magnum numerum intereedere, neque esse quicquam negotii, eum prima <sup>4</sup>legio in castra venisset reliquaeque legiones magnum <sup>5</sup>spatium abessent, hanc sub sarcinis adoriri; qua pulsa impedimentisque **direptis** futurum, ut reliquae contra  
15 consistere non auderent. **adiuvabat** etiam eorum consilium, qui rem deferebant, quod Nervii antiquitus, eum equitatu nihil possent (neque enim ad hoc tempus ei rei student, sed, **quicquid** possunt, **pedestribus** valent copiis), quo facilius finitimorum equitatum, si **praedandi** eausa ad eos venisset, impedirent,  
20 **teneris arboribus incisis** atque inflexis erebrisque in latitudinem ramis enatis et rubis sentibusque **interiectis** effecerant, ut instar muri hae **sepes munimenta praerberent**, quo non modo non **intrari**, sed ne perspicere quidem posset. his rebus eum iter agminis nostri impediretur, non **omittendum** sibi consilium Nervii  
25 existimaverunt.

**17.** <sup>1</sup> *idoneum castris*, Introd. No. 121. <sup>2</sup> *ex Gallis*, A. & G. 216, c; G. 371. R. 2; H. 397, N. 3. <sup>3</sup> *itineris*, Introd. No. 122. <sup>4</sup> *legio*, Introd. No. 98. <sup>5</sup> *spatium*, A. & G. 257; G. 335, 2; H. 379.

**Topics for Study.**

(1.) *Cum* in temporal clauses. (2.) The idiom *quicquam negotii*. (3.) The accusative of extent of space. (4.) The impersonal construction. (5.) The Roman legion. (6.) The Roman method of march.

*The character of the ground. The assault of the Nervii.*

18. Loci natura erat haec, quem <sup>1</sup>locum nostri castris delegerant. collis ab summo **aequaliter declivis** ad flumen Sabim, quod supra **nominavimus**, vergebat. ab eo flumine pari **adclivitate** collis **nascebatur** adversus huic et **contrarius**, passus circiter ducentos infimus apertus, ab superiore parte **silvestris**, ut non facile **introrsus** perspicere posset. intra eas silvas hostes in occulto sese continebant; in aperto loco secundum flumen paucae **stationes** equitum videbantur. fluminis erat altitudo circiter pedum trium.

**Topics for Study.**

(1.) The subjective genitive in all its divisions. (2.) The repetition of the antecedent in the relative clause. (3.) The substantive use of adjectives.

19. Caesar equitatu praemisso subsequerebatur omnibus copiis; 10 sed ratio ordoque agminis **aliter** se habebat, ac Belgae ad Nervios detulerant. nam quod ad hostis adpropinquabat, consuetudine sua Caesar sex legiones expeditas ducebat; post eas totius exercitus impedimenta collocarat; inde duae legiones, quae proxume conscriptae erant, totum agmen claudebant praesidioque **impedi-** 15 **mentis** erant. equites nostri cum funditoribus sagittariisque flumen **transgressi** cum hostium equitatu proelium commiserunt. cum se illi **identidem** in silvas ad suos reciperent ac rursus ex silva in nostros impetum facerent, neque nostri longius, quam quem ad finem **porrecta** loca aperta pertinebant, **cedentes** inse- 20 qui auderent, interim legiones sex, quae <sup>1</sup>primae venerant, opere

18. <sup>1</sup> *locum*, A. & G. 200, a; G. 618; H. 445, 9.

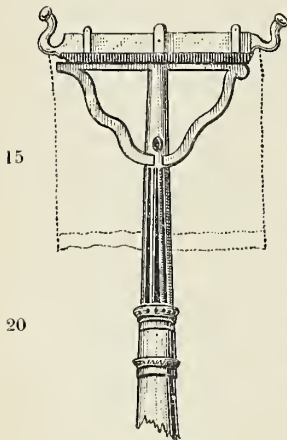
19. <sup>1</sup> *primae*, A & G. 191; G. 324, R. 6; H. 443.

<sup>2</sup>**dimenso** eastra munire eoepcrunt. ubi prima impedimenta nostri exereitus ab iis, qui in silvis abditi **latebant**, visa sunt, quod tempus inter eos committendi proelii convenerat, ita ut intra silvas aciem ordinesque constituerant atque ipsi sese confirmaverant, subito omnibus eopiis **provolaverunt** impetumque in nostros equites fecerunt. his faeile pulsus ac **proturbatis** incredibili eeleritate ad flumen **decucurrerunt**, ut paene uno tempore et ad silvas et in flumine et iam in manibus nostris hostes viderentur. eadem autem celeritate <sup>3</sup>**adverso** colle ad nostra eastra atque eos,   
10 qui in opere oceupati erant, contenderunt.

#### Topics for Study.

- (1.) The ablative of accompaniment. (2.) Contract forms. (3.) Two datives. (4.) Deponent verbs in passive sense.

#### *The generalship and courage of Caesar.*



VEXILLUM.

20. Caesari omnia uno tempore erant agenda: **vexillum** proponendum, quod erat insigne, eum ad arma eoncurri oporteret, signum <sup>1</sup>**tuba** dandum, ab opere **revocandi** milites, qui <sup>2</sup>paulo longius aggeris petendi eansa proeesserant, areesendi, acies instruenda, <sup>3</sup>milites cohortandi, signum dandum. quarum rerum magnam partem temporis **brevitas** et **successus** hostium impediabat. his **difficultatibus** duae res erant subsidio, scientia atque usus militum, quod superioribus proeliis exercitati quid fieri oporteret, non minus eommode ipsi sibi praeseri-

19. <sup>2</sup> *dimenso*, A. & G. 135, *b*; H. 231. 2 <sup>3</sup> *adverso colle*, A. & G. 258, *g*; G. 387; H. 431.

20. <sup>1</sup> *tuba*, Introd. No. 104. <sup>2</sup> *paulo longius*, A. & G. 93, *a*; G. 312, 2; H. 44. <sup>3</sup> *milites cohortandi*, Introd. No. 125, 1) *e*.



bere, quam ab aliis doceri poterant, et quod ab opere singulisque legionibus singulos legatos Caesar discedere nisi munitis castris **vetuerat**. hi propter propinquitatem et celeritatem hostium <sup>4</sup>nihil iam Caesaris imperium expectabant, sed per se, quae videbantur, **administrabant**.

5

### Topics for Study.

- (1.) The gerundive construction. (2.) The significations of the comparative.  
(3.) Distributive numerals. (4.) The dative of agency.

**21.** Caesar necessariis rebus imperatis, ad cohortandos milites, quam [in] partem **fors obtulit**, decurrit et ad legionem decimam **devenit**. milites non longiore oratione cohortatus, quam uti suae pristinae virtutis memoriam <sup>1</sup>retinerent **neu** perturbarentur ani- 10  
mo hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinerent, quod non longius hostes aberant, quam quo telum **adici** <sup>2</sup>posset, proelii committendi signum dedit. atque in alteram partem item cohortandi causa profectus pugnantis 15  
occurrit. temporis tanta fuit **exiguitas** hostiumque tam paratus ad **dimicandum** animus, ut non modo ad insignia **accommodanda**, sed etiam ad **galeas** induendas <sup>3</sup>scutisque **tegimenta detrudenda** tempus defuerit. quam quisque ab opere in partem casu devenit, quaeque prima 20  
signa conspexit, ad haec constitit, ne in quaerendis suis pugnandi tempus dimitteret.



SCUTUM.

### Topics for Study.

- (1.) A result clause with *ut* after *quam*. (2.) The dative after compounds.  
(3.) Relative clause of result after *quam*. (4.) The ablative of separation.

**20.** <sup>4</sup>nihil, A. & G. 240, a; G. 331, R. 3; H. 378, 2.

**21.** <sup>1</sup>retinerent, A. & G. 332, b; G. 554; H. 502, 2. <sup>2</sup>posset, A. & G. 320, c; G. 313; H. 502, 2. <sup>3</sup>scutisque tegimenta detrudenda, Intro. No. 123, I, 2) b.

*The various fortune of the battle.*

22. Instructo exercitu, magis ut loci natura deiectusque collis et necessitas temporis, quam ut rei militaris ratio atque ordo



ARIES.

postulabat, cum **diversis** legionibus <sup>1</sup>aliae alia in parte hostibus resisterent, sepibusque **densissimis**, ut ante demonstravimus, interiectis **prospectus** impediretur, neque certa subsidia collocari neque, quid in quaque parte opus esset, **provideri** neque ab uno omnia imperia administrari poterant. itaque in tanta rerum **iniquitate** fortunae quoque **eventus varii** sequebantur.

**Topics for Study.**

(1.) The ablative absolute. (2.) The idiom *aliae alia*. (3.) The indirect question.

23. Legionis **nonae** et decimae milites, ut in sinistra parte <sup>1</sup>acie constiterant, pilis emissis cursu ac **lassitudine** **exanimatos** vulneribusque confectos Atrebates (nam his ea pars **obvenerat**) **celeriter** ex loco superiore in flumen **compulerunt** et transire conantes insecuti gladiis magnam partem eorum impeditam interfecerunt. ipsi transire flumen non dubitaverunt et in locum iniquum progressi rursus resistentes hostes redintegrato proclio in fugam coniecerunt. item alia in parte diversae duae legiones, **undecima** et **octava**, **profigatis** Viromanduis, quibuscum erant **congressi**, ex loco superiore in ipsis fluminis ripis **proeliabantur**. at totis fere a fronte et ab sinistra parte nudatis castris, cum in dextro cornu legio duodecima et non magno ab ea intervallo septima constitisset, omnes Nervii confertissimo agmine duce

22. <sup>1</sup> *aliae alia*, A. & G. 203, c; G. 306; H. 459, I.

23. <sup>1</sup> *acie*, A. & G. 74, a; G. 69, R. 2; H. 120.

**Boduognato** qui summam imperii tenebat, ad eum locum contenderunt; quorum pars <sup>2</sup>aperto latere legiones circumvenire, pars summum castrorum locum petere coepit.

### Topics for Study.

- (1.) The position of preposition *cum* with relative pronouns. (2.) The ablative of degree of difference. (3.) Two nouns in the ablative absolute construction. (4.) The ablative of place.

**24.** Eodem tempore equites nostri levisque armaturae pedites, qui cum iis una fuerant, quos primo hostium impetu pulsos <sup>5</sup>dixeram, cum se in castra recipere, adversis hostibus occurrerant ac rursus aliam in partem fugam petebant, et **calones**, qui ab **decumana** porta ac summo iugo collis nostros victores flumen transisse conspexerant, praedandi causa egressi, cum **respexissent** et hostes in nostris castris versari vidissent, **praecipites** fugae <sup>10</sup>sese mandabant. simul eorum, qui cum impedimentis veniebant, clamor **fremitusque** oriebatur, <sup>1</sup>aliique aliam in partem perterriti ferebantur. quibus omnibus rebus permoti equites Treveri, quorum inter Gallos virtutis opinio est **singularis**, qui auxilii causa ab civitate ad Caesarem missi venerant, cum multitudine hos- <sup>15</sup>tium castra compleri nostra, legiones premi et paene circumventas teneri, calones, equites, funditores, Numidas diversos **dissipatosque** in omnes partes fugere vidissent, desperatis nostris rebus domum contenderunt; Romanos pulsos superatosque, castris impedimentisque eorum hostes potitos civitati renuntiaverunt. <sup>20</sup>

### Topics for Study.

- (1.) *Cum* in temporal clauses. (2.) The ablative of cause. (3.) The idiom *alii aliam in partem*. (4.) Agreement of a verb with compound subject.

**23.** <sup>2</sup> *aperto latere*, Introd. No. 116.

**24.** <sup>1</sup> *alii aliam*, A. & G. 203, c; G. 321; H. 461, 3.

25. Caesar ab decimae legionis <sup>1</sup> **cohortatione** ad dextrum cornu profectus, ubi suos **urgeri** signisque in unum locum eolatis duodecimae legionis confertos milites sibi ipsos ad pugnam esse impedimento vidit, quartae cohortis omnibus centurionibus  
 5 oecisis **signifero**que interfecto, signo amisso, reliquarum cohortium omnibus fere centurionibus aut vulneratis aut oecisis, in his <sup>2</sup> **primipilo** P. **Sextio Baculo**, fortissimo **viro**, multis gravibusque vulneribus confecto, ut iam se sustinere non posset, reliquos esse **tardiores** et nonnullos ab novissimis deserto proelio **excedere**  
 10 ac tela vitare, hostis neque a fronte ex inferiore loco subeuntes intermittere et ab utroque latere instare et rem esse in angusto vidit, neque ullum esse subsidium, quod summitti <sup>3</sup> posset, seuto ab novissimis uni <sup>4</sup> **militi** detracto, quod ipse eo sine seuto venerat, in primam aciem processit centurionibusque nominatim ap-  
 15 pellatis reliquos cohortatus milites signa inferre et <sup>5</sup> **manipulos** <sup>6</sup> **laxare** iussit, quo facilius gladiis uti possent. eius adventu spe illata militibus ac redintegrato animo, eum pro se quisque in conspectu imperatoris etiam in extremis suis rebus **operam navare** euperet, paulum hostium impetus **tardatus** est.

#### Topics for Study.

(1.) The periodic structure. (2.) The relative clause of characteristic. (3.) The dative to supply the place of the ablative of separation.

*Labienus sends the tenth legion as a relief to the Romans.*

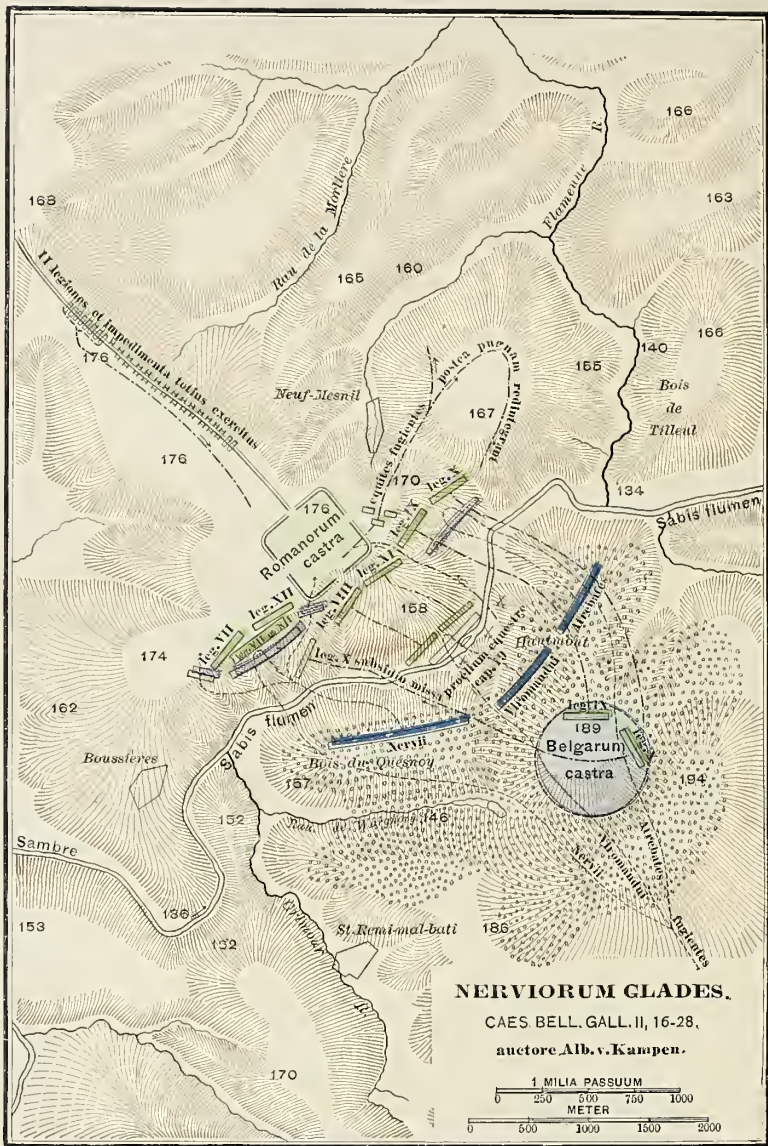
*The defeat and excessive losses of the Nervii.*

20 26. Caesar, eum septimam legionem, quae **iuxta** constiterat, item **urgeri** ab hoste vidisset, tribunos militum monuit, ut paulatim sese legiones coniungerent et <sup>1</sup> **conversa** signa in hostes

25. <sup>1</sup> *cohortatione*, Introd. No. 125, 1) *e*. <sup>2</sup> *primipilo*, Introd. No. 100. <sup>3</sup> *posset*, A. & G. 320, a; G. 633, 634; H. 503, 1. <sup>4</sup> *militi*, A. & G. 229; G. 344, R 2; H. 385, II, 2. <sup>5</sup> *manipulos*, Introd. No. 99. <sup>6</sup> *laxare*, Introd. No. 114.

26. <sup>1</sup> *conversa signa*, A. & G. 292, R.; G. 671; H. 549, 5.





**NERVIORUM GLADES.**

CAES. BELL. GALL. II, 16-28,

auctore Alb. v. Kampen.



inferrent. quo facto cum alius alii subsidium ferret, neque timerent, ne aversi ab hoste circumvenirentur, audacius resistere ac fortius pugnare coeperunt. interim milites legionum duarum, quae in novissimo agmine praesidio impedimentis fuerant, proelio nuntiato cursu incitato in summo colle ab hostibus conspiciebantur, 5 et T. Labienus, castris hostium potitus et ex loco superiore, quae res in nostris castris gererentur, conspicatus decimam legionem subsidio nostris misit. qui cum ex equitum et calonum fuga, quo in loco res esset, quantoque in periculo et castra et legiones et imperator versaretur, cognovissent, nihil ad celerita- 10 tem sibi reliqui fecerunt.

#### Topics for Study.

(1.) The predicate use of the participle. (2.) The indirect question. (3.) The partitive genitive.

27. Horum adventu tanta rerum commutatio est facta, ut nostri etiam qui vulneribus confecti **procubuissent**, scutis **innixi** proelium redintegrarent, tum calones perterritos hostes conspicati etiam **inermes** armatis occurrerent, equites vero, ut **turpitudinem** 15 fugae virtute **delerent**, omnibus in locis pugnarent, <sup>1</sup>quo se legionariis militibus praeferrent. at hostes etiam in extrema spe salutis tantam virtutem praestiterunt, ut, cum primi eorum cecidissent, proximi **iacentibus insisterent** atque ex eorum corporibus pugnarent; his deiectis et **coacervatis cadaveribus**, qui 20 superessent, ut ex tumulo tela in nostros conicerent et pila **intercepta** remitterent: ut non **nequiquam** tantae virtutis homines iudicari deberet ausos esse transire latissimum flumen, ascendere altissimas ripas, subire iniquissimum locum; quae facilia ex difficillimis animi magnitudo redegerat. 25

#### Topics for Study.

(1.) The locative ablative. (2.) Purpose clauses introduced by *quo*. (3.) The dative with compounds.

27. <sup>1</sup> *quo* — *praeferrent*, A. & G. 317, *b*; G. 545, 2; H. 497, 2.

28. Hoc proelio facto et prope ad interuiccionem **gente** ac nomine Nerviorum redacto maiores natu, quos una cum pueris mulieribusque in **aestuaria** ac paludes coniectos dixeramus, hac pugna nuntiata, cum victoribus nihil impeditum, victis nihil tutum arbitrarentur, omnium, qui supererant, consensu legatos ad Caesarem miserunt seque ei dediderunt et in commemoranda civitatis calamitate ex DC ad tres **senatores**, ex hominum milibus LX vix ad quingentos, qui arma ferre <sup>1</sup>possent, sese redactos esse dixerunt. quos Caesar, ut in miseros ac **supplices** usus  
 10 **misericordia** videretur, diligentissime conservavit suisque finibus atque oppidis uti iussit et finitinis imperavit, ut ab iniuria et maleficio se suosque prohiberent.

#### Topics for Study.

(1.) The idiom *maiores natu*. (2.) The ablative absolute. (3.) The gerundive construction.

*The Aduatuci withdraw to a town fortified by nature.*

29. Aduatuci, de quibus supra **scripsimus**, cum omnibus copiis auxilio Nervii venirent, hac pugna nuntiata ex itinere domum  
 15 reverterunt; **cunctis** oppidis castellisque desertis sua omnia in unum oppidum egregie natura munitum contulerunt. quod eum ex omnibus in circuitu partibus altissimas **rupes despectusque** haberet, una ex parte leniter **acclivis** aditus in latitudinem non amplius ducentorum pedum relinquebatur; quem locum **duplici**  
 20 altissimo muro munierant: tum <sup>1</sup>magni **ponderis saxa** et **praeacutas trabes** in muro collocabant. ipsi erant ex Cimbris Teutonisque **prognati**, qui, cum iter in provinciam nostram atque Italiam facerent, iis impedimentis, quae secum agere ac portare non poterant, citra flumen Rhenum depositis **custodiam** ex suis  
 25 ac praesidium sex milia hominum una reliquerunt. hi post

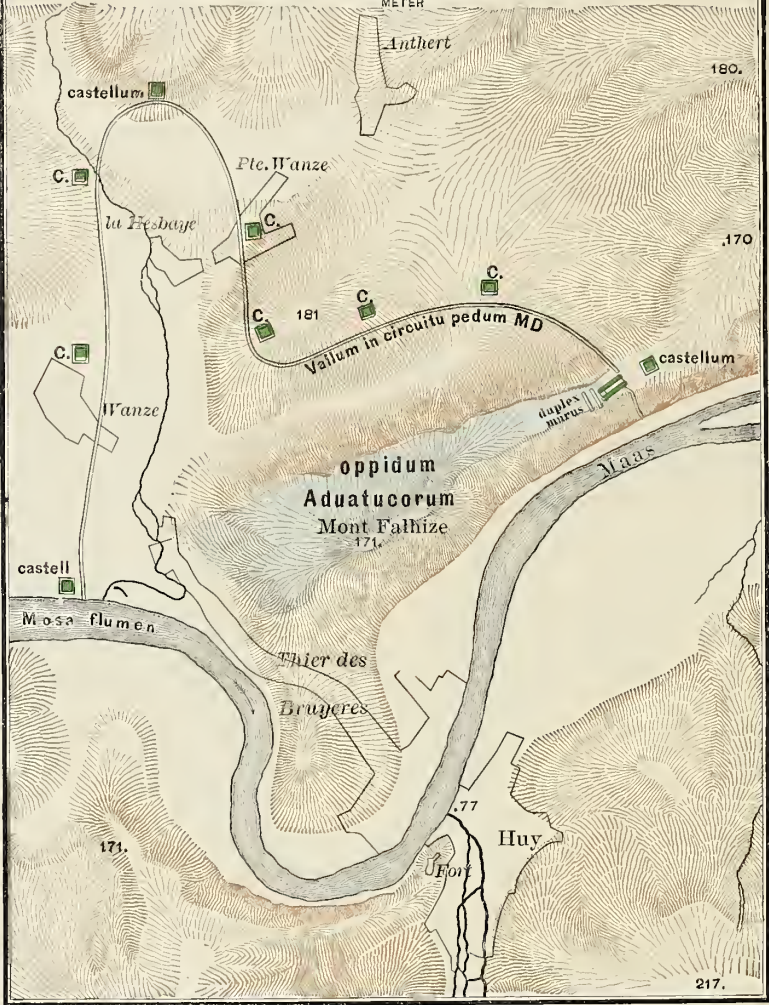
28. <sup>1</sup> *possent*, A. & G. 336, 2; G. 653; H. 524.

29. <sup>1</sup> *magni ponderis*, A. & G. 215, b; G. 364; H. 396, V.





ADUATUCORUM OPPIDUM lib. II. 29—33.



eorum **obitum** multos annos a finitimis **exagitati**, cum alias bellum inferrent, alias illatum defenderent, consensu eorum omnium pace facta hunc sibi domicilio locum delegerunt.

#### Topics for Study.

(1.) The ablative of accompaniment. (2.) The two possible constructions after *amplius*. (3.) The genitive of measure. (4.) The dative of purpose.

*They show contempt for the Roman engineering.*

30. Ac primo adventu exercitus nostri crebras ex oppido **excursiones** faciebant **parvulisque** proeliis cum nostris contendebant; postea vallo pedum XII, in circuitu XV milium crebrisque castellis **circummuniti** oppido sese continebant. ubi vineis actis aggere **exstructo** turrim **procul** constitui viderunt, primum **irridere** ex muro atque increpitare vocibus, quod tanta **machinatio** ab tanto spatio instrueretur: **quibusnam** manibus aut quibus viribus praesertim homines **tantulae staturae** (nam plerumque hominibus Gallis **prae** magnitudine corporum suorum brevitudo nostra <sup>1</sup> **contemptui** est) tanti **oneris** turrim moturos sese confiderent?

#### Topics for Study.

(1.) The ablative in *ab tanto spatio*. (2.) The dative of service. (3.) The genitive of quality.

*They pretend to submit to the Romans.*

31. Ubi vero moveri et appropinquare moenibus viderunt, nova atque **inusitata** specie commoti legatos ad Caesarem de pace miserunt, qui ad hunc modum locuti: non existimare Romanos sine ope **divina** bellum gerere, qui tantae altitudinis machinationes tanta celeritate promovere <sup>1</sup> possent, se suaque

30. <sup>1</sup> *contemptui*, A. & G. 233, n. 1; G. 350; H. 390.

31. <sup>1</sup> *possent*, A. & G. 320, e; G. 636; H. 517.

omnia eorum potestati permittere dixerunt. unum petere ac **deprecari**: si forte pro sua elementia ac mausuetudine, quam ipsi ab aliis audirent, statuisset Aduatucos esse conservaundos, ne se armis <sup>2</sup>**despoliaret**. sibi omnes fere finitimos esse inimicos ac  
 5 suae virtuti **invidere**; a quibus se defeudere traditis armis non possent. sibi praestare, si in eum casum deducerentur, **quamvis** fortunam a populo Romano pati, quam ab his per cruciatum interfici, inter quos **dominari** consuessent.

### Topics for Study.

- (1.) Relative clause expressing cause. (2.) The imperative in indirect discourse.  
 (3.) Omitted subjects of infinitives.

*Caesar receives them into surrender. They treacherously attack the Romans, but many are cut to pieces and the rest reduced to slavery.*

**32.** Ad haec Caesar respondit: se magis consuetudine sua  
 10 quam merito eorum civitatem conservaturum, si prius, quam **aries** murum attigisset, se dedidissent: sed deditionis nullam esse condicionem nisi armis traditis. se id, quod in Nervii fecisset, facturum finitimisque imperaturum, ne quam dediticiis populi Romani iniuriam inferrent. re nuntiata ad suos, quae  
 15 imperarentur, facere dixerunt. armorum magna multitudine de muro in fossam, quae erat ante oppidum, iacta, sic ut prope summam muri aggerisque altitudinem **acervi** armorum adaequarent, et tamen circiter parte tertia, ut postea perspectum est, **celata** atque in oppido retenta portis **patefactis** eo die pace  
 20 sunt usi.

### Topics for Study.

- (1.) The future perfect in the indirect discourse (2.) Subjunctive of result.  
 (3.) Construction after *utor*.

**31.** <sup>2</sup> *despoliaret*, A. & G. 339; G. 655; H. 523, III.

33. Sub vesperum Caesar portas claudi militesque ex oppido exire iussit, ne quam noctu oppidani ab militibus iniuriam acciperent. illi ante inito, ut intellectum est, consilio, quod deditioe facta nostros praesidia deducturos aut denique **indiligentius servaturos crediderant**, partim cum his, quae retinuerant et celaverant, armis, partim scutis ex **cortice** factis aut **viminibus intextis**, quae subito, ut temporis exiguitas postulabat, **pellibus** induxerant, tertia vigilia, qua minime **arduus** ad nostras munitiones ascensus videbatur, omnibus copiis **repentino** ex oppido **erruptionem** fecerunt. celeriter, ut ante Caesar imperarat, ignibus **significatione** facta ex proximis castellis eo concursum est, pugnatumque ab hostibus ita acriter est, ut a viris fortibus in extrema spe salutis iniquo loco contra eos, qui ex vallo turribusque tela iacerent, <sup>1</sup>pugnari debuit, cum in una virtute omnis spes salutis consisteret. occisis ad hominum milibus quattuor reliqui <sup>15</sup> in oppidum reiecti sunt. postridie eius diei **refractis** portis, cum iam defenderet nemo, atque **intromissis** militibus nostris, **sectionem** eius oppidi universam Caesar **vendidit**. de iis, qui emerant, capitum numerus ad eum relatus est milium quinquaginta trium.

20

#### Topics for Study.

(1.) *Sub* with the accusative in temporal expressions. (2.) The impersonal construction. (3.) The present infinitive after a past tense of *debeo*.

*Many maritime states are subdued.*

34. Eodem tempore a Publio Crasso, quem cum legione una miserat ad **Venetos**, **Venellos**, **Osismos**, <sup>1</sup>**Curiosolitas**, **Esubios**, **Aulercos**, **Redones**, quae sunt **maritimae** civitates Oceanumque attingunt, certior factus est omnes eas civitates in dicionem potestatemque populi Romani esse redactas.

25

33. <sup>1</sup> *pugnari debuit*, A. & G. 288, *a*; H. 537, I.

34. <sup>1</sup> *Curiosolitas*, A. & G. 63, *b*; G. 73; H. 68.

**Topics for Study.**

(1.) The idiom *certior factus*. (2.) The time indicated by the tenses of the infinitive.

*The Germans send ambassadors to Caesar on account of the high opinion of the war. Caesar returns to Italy. A thanksgiving is decreed at Rome.*

**35.** His rebus gestis omni Gallia pacata tanta huius belli ad barbaros opinio perlata est, uti ab iis nationibus, quae trans Rhenum incolerent, mitterentur legati ad Caesarem, qui se obsides daturas, imperata facturas pollicerentur. quas legationes Caesar, quod in  
 5 Italiam **Illyricum**que properabat, inita proxima aestate ad se reverti iussit. ipse in **Carnutes**, **Andes**, **Turones**que, quae civitates propinquae his locis erant, ubi bellum gesserat, legionibus in **hibernacula** deductis in Italiam profectus est. ob easque res ex litteris Caesaris dies quindecim **supplicatio decreta** est, quod ante id  
 10 tempus accidit nulli.

**Topics for Study.**

(1.) The idiom *in ita proxima aestate*. (2.) The intensive pronoun. (3.) The accusative of duration of time. (4.) The relative in agreement with the idea contained in a clause.

C. IULII CAESARIS  
DE BELLO GALLICO

COMMENTARIUS TERTIUS.

1-6. WAR WITH THE ALPINE TRIBES.

*Servius Galba is sent against the Nantuates, Veragri, and the Seduni. Galba goes to winter-quarters at Octodurus.*



1. Cum in Italiam <sup>1</sup>proficisceretur Caesar, **Servium** Galbam cum legione duodecima et parte equitatus in **Nantuatis**, **Veragros** **Sedunosque** misit, qui ab finibus Allobrogum et lacu 5

Lemanno et flumine Rhodano ad summas Alpes pertinent. causa mittendi fuit, quod iter per Alpes, quo magno cum periculo magnisque cum portoriis mercatores ire consueverant, patefieri volebat. huic permisit, si opus esse arbitraretur, uti in his locis legionem hibernandi causa collocaret. Galba secundis aliquot 10 procliis factis castellisque compluribus eorum expugnatis, missis ad eum undique legatis obsidibusque datis et pace facta, constituit cohortes duas in Nantuatibus collocare et ipse cum reliquis eius legionis cohortibus in vico Veragrorum, qui appellatur **Octodurus**, hiemare; qui vicus positus in valle non magna 15 adiecta planitie altissimis montibus undique continetur. cum hic in duas partes flumine divideretur, alteram partem eius vici

1. <sup>1</sup> proficisceretur, A. & G. 325; G. 586; II. 521, II. 2.

Gallis [ad hiemandum] concessit, alteram vacuum ab illis relictam cohortibus **attribuit**. eum locum vallo fossaque munivit.

### Topics for Study.

(1.) *Cum* introducing temporal clauses. (2.) The idiom *summas Alpes*. (3.) The ablative absolute. (4.) The conditional sentence. (5.) The Roman legion.

*The Seduni and Veragri form a design of cutting off the legion. Galba calls a council.*

2. Cum dies hibernorum complures transissent frumentumque eo comportari iussisset, subito per exploratores certior factus est 5 ex ea parte vici, quam Gallis concesserat, omnes noctu discessisse montesque, qui impenderent, a maxima multitudine Sedunorum et Veragrorum teneri. id aliquot de causis acciderat, ut subito Galli belli **renovandi** legionisque opprimendae consilium caperent: primum, quod legionem neque eam **plenissimam** detractis cohortibus 10 duabus et compluribus **cingillatim**, qui commeatus petendi causa missi erant, [absentibus] propter **paucitatem** despiciebant; tum etiam, quod propter iniquitatem loci, cum ipsi ex montibus in vallem decurrerent et tela conicerent, ne primum quidem posse impetum suum sustineri existimabant. accedebat, quod suos ab 15 se liberos **abstractos** obsidum nomine dolebant et Romanos non solum itinerum causa, sed etiam perpetuae possessionis **culmina** Alpium occupare conari et ea loca finitimae provinciae **adiungere** sibi <sup>1</sup> persuasum habebant.

### Topics for Study.

(1.) The indirect discourse. (2) Substantive clauses. (3) The expression *sibi persuasum habebant*.

3. His munitiis acceptis Galba, cum neque opus hibernorum 20 munitionesque plene essent <sup>1</sup> perfectae, neque de frumento reli-

2. <sup>1</sup> *persuasum habebant*, A. & G. 292, c; G. 230; H. 388, 1, κ.

3. <sup>1</sup> *perfectae*, A. & G. 187, a; H. 439.



quoque commeatu satis esset provisum, quod deditioe facta obsidibusque acceptis nihil de bello timendum existimaverat, consilio celeriter convocato sententias exquirere coepit. quo in consilio, cum tantum repentini periculi praeter opinionem accidisset, ac iam omnia fere superiora loca multitudine armatorum <sup>5</sup> completa conspicerentur, neque <sup>2</sup> subsidio veniri neque commeatus supportari intereluis itinibus possent, prope iam desperata salute nonnullae **huiusmodi** sententiae dicebantur, ut impedimentis relictis eruptione facta isdem itineribus, quibus eo pervenissent, ad salutem contenderent. maiori tamen parti placuit, hoc <sup>10</sup> reservato ad extremum consilio interim rei eventum experiri et castra defendere.

#### Topics for Study.

(1.) The agreement of an adjective with two nouns of different gender. (2.) The impersonal construction. (3.) The dative of purpose.

*The Romans are attacked. The battle rages for six hours without cessation.*

4. Brevi spatio interiecto, vix ut his rebus, quas <sup>1</sup> constituisent, collocandis atque administrandis tempus daretur, hostes ex omnibus partibus signo dato <sup>2</sup> decurrere, lapides **gaesa**que in <sup>15</sup> vallum conieere. nostri primo **integris** viribus fortiter repugnare neque ullum **frustra** telum ex loco superiore mittere, ut quaeque pars castrorum nudata defensoribus premi videbatur, eo occurrere et auxilium ferre, sed hoc superari, quod diurnitate pugnae hostes defessi proelio excedebant, alii integris viribus succedebant; <sup>20</sup> quarum rerum a nostris propter paucitatem fieri nihil poterat, ac non modo defesso ex pugna excedendi, sed ne **saucio** quidem eius loci, ubi constiterat, relinquendi ac sui recipiendi facultas dabatur.

3. <sup>2</sup> *subsidio*, A. & G. 233; G. 350; H. 384, 1, 3.

4. <sup>1</sup> *constituissent*, A. & G. 342; G. 631; H. 529, II. <sup>2</sup> *decurrere*, A. & G. 275; G. 650; H. 536, I.

## Topics for Study.

(1.) The subjunctive by attraction. (2.) The historical infinitive. (3.) A noun and adjective in ablative absolute construction.

5. Cum iam amplius horis sex continenter <sup>1</sup>pugnaretur, ac non solum vires, sed etiam tela nostros deficerent atque hostes acrius instarent **languidioribus**que nostris vallum **scindere** et fossas complere coepissent, resque esset iam ad extremum perducta  
 10 casum, Publius Sextius Baculus, **pili** primi centurio, quem **Nervico** proelio compluribus confectum vulneribus diximus, et item Gaius **Volusenus**, tribunus militum, vir et consilii magni et virtutis, ad Galbam adcurrunt atque unam esse spem salutis docent, si eruptione facta extremum auxilium experirentur. itaque con-  
 15 vocatis centurionibus celcriter milites certiores facit, paulisper intermitterent proelium ac **tantummodo** tela missa **exciperent** seque ex labore **reficerent**, post dato signo ex castris crumperent atque omnem spem salutis in virtute ponerent.

## Topics for Study.

(1.) The use of the imperfect tense. (2.) The historical present. (3.) Purpose clauses.

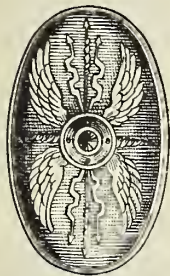
*The enemy is defeated in a sally. Galba hastens to return to the province.*

6. Quod iussi sunt, faciunt ac subito omnibus portis eruptione facta neque cognoscendi, quid fieret, neque <sup>1</sup>sui **colligendi**  
 15 hostibus facultatem relinquunt. ita commutata fortuna eos, qui in spem potiundorum castrorum venerant, undique circumventos interficiunt et ex hominum milibus amplius triginta, quem numerum barbarorum ad castra venisse **constabat**, plus tertia

5. <sup>1</sup> *pugnaretur*, A. & G. 277, b; G. 225; H. 469, II, 2.

6. <sup>1</sup> *sui colligendi*, A. & G. 298, a; G. 429, R.; H. 542, I, N. 1.

parte interfecta reliquos perterritos in fugam coniciunt ac ne in locis quidem superioribus consistere patiuntur. sic omnibus hostium copiis **fusis** <sup>2</sup> armisque **exutis** se in castra munitionesque suas recipiunt. quo proelio facto, quod saepius fortunam tentare Galba nolebat atque alio se in hiberna consilio venisse **meminerat**, aliis occurrisse rebus viderat, maxime frumenti commeatusque inopia permotus postero die omnibus eius vici aedificiis incensis in provinciam reverti <sup>10</sup> contendit, ac nullo hoste prohibente aut iter **demorante** incolumem legionem in Nantuatis, inde in Allobroges perduxit ibique hiemavit.



SCUTUM.

#### Topics for Study.

- (1.) The gerund and gerundive construction. (2.) The ablative of separation.  
 (3.) The use of the participle. (4.) Asyndeton.

#### 7-16. WAR WITH THE VENETI.

*An unexpected war breaks out in Gaul. The Veneti are the instigators.*

7. His rebus gestis cum omnibus de causis Caesar pacatam Galliam existimaret, superatis Belgis, expulsis Germanis, victis <sup>15</sup> in Alpibus Sedunis, atque ita in hieme in Illyricum profectus esset, quod eas quoque nationes adire et regiones cognoscere volebat, **subitum** bellum in Gallia **coortum** est. eius belli haec fuit causa. Publius Crassus adulescens cum legione septima proximus <sup>1</sup> **mare** Oceanum in Andibus hiemarat. is, quod in his <sup>20</sup> locis inopia frumenti erat, praefectos tribunosque militum com-

6. <sup>2</sup> *armis*, A. & G. 225, *d*; G. 348; H. 414, I.

7. <sup>1</sup> *mare*, A. & G. 261, *a*; G. 356, R. 4; H. 391, 2.

plures in finitimas civitates frumenti commeatusque petendi causa dimisit; quo in numero erat Titus **Terrasidius**, missus in Esubios, Marcus **Trebius Gallus** in Curiosolitas, Quintus **Velanius** cum Tito **Silio** in Venetos.

#### Topic for Study.

The two possible constructions after *proximus*.

5 **8.** Huius est civitatis longe amplissima auctoritas omnis orae  
maritimae regionum earum, quod et naves habent Veneti pluri-  
mas, quibus in Britanniam **navigare** consuerunt, et scientia atque  
usu **nauticarum** rerum reliquos **anteceđunt** et in magno impetu  
maris atque aperto paucis **portibus** interiectis, quos tenent ipsi,  
10 omnes fere, qui eo mari uti consuerunt, habent **vectigales**. ab  
his fit initium retinendi Silii atque Velanii, quod per eos suos  
se obsides, quos Crasso dedissent, **recuperaturos** existimabant.  
horum auctoritate finitimi adducti (ut sunt Gallorum subita et  
repentina consilia) eadem de causa Trebium Terrasidiumque re-  
15 tinent, et celeriter missis legatis per suos principes inter se  
coniurant, nihil nisi communi consilio acturos, eundemque omnis  
fortunaе **exitum** esse laturos, reliquasque civitates sollicitant, ut  
in ea libertate, quam a maioribus <sup>1</sup> acceperant, permanere quam  
Romanorum servitutem perferre **mallent**. omni ora maritima  
20 celeriter ad suam sententiam perducta communem legationem ad  
Publium Crassum mittunt, si velit suos recipere, obsides sibi  
remittat.

#### Topics for Study.

(1.) Subordinate clauses in indirect discourse. (2.) The imperative form of speech in indirect discourse. (3.) The use of the indicative mood in indirect discourse.

**8.** <sup>1</sup> *acceperant*, A. & G. 336, *b*; G. 630. R. 1; H. 524, 2.

*Caesar prepares for the war. The Veneti unite allies to themselves. The motives that urged Caesar to the war.*

9. Quibus de rebus Caesar ab Crasso certior factus, quod ipse aberat longius, naves interim longas **aedificari** in flumine **Iigere**, quod influit in Oceanum, **remiges** ex provincia institui, **nautas gubernatoresque** comparari iubet. his rebus celeriter administratis ipse, cum primum per anni tempus potuit, ad exercitum 5 contendit. Veneti reliquaeque item civitates cognito Caesaris adventu, simul quod, quantum in se facinus admisissent, intellegebant, legatos, quod nomen ad omnes nationes **sanctum inviolatumque** semper fuisset, retentos ab se et in vincula coniectos, pro magnitudine periculi bellum parare et maxime ea, quae ad 10 usum navium pertinent, providere instituunt, hoc maiore spe, quod multum natura loci confidebant. pedestria esse itinera concisa aestuariis, **navigationem** impeditam propter **inscientiam** locorum paucitatemque portuum sciebant, neque nostros exercitus propter frumenti inopiam diutius apud se morari posse confide- 15 bant: ac iam <sup>1</sup> ut omnia contra opinionem acciderent, tamen se plurimum navibus posse, Romanos neque ullam facultatem habere navium, neque eorum locorum, ubi bellum gesturi essent, vada, portus, **insulas novisse**; ac longe aliam esse navigationem in **concluso** mari atque in **vastissimo** atque **apertissimo** Oceano 20 perspiciebant. his initis consiliis oppida muniunt, frumenta ex agris in oppida comportant, naves in **Venetiam**, ubi Caesarem primum esse bellum gesturum constabat, quam plurimas possunt, cogunt. socios sibi ad id bellum **Osimos**, **Lexovios**, **Namnetes**, **Ambiliatos**, **Morinos**, **Diablintres**, **Menapios** adsciscunt; auxilia ex 25 Britannia, quae contra eas regiones posita est, arcessunt.

#### Topics for Study.

(1.) *Ut* with the subjunctive expressing concession. (2.) The idiom *plurimum posse*. (3.) The idiom *aliam — atque*.

9. <sup>1</sup> *ut — acciderent*, A. & G. 266, *c*; G. 610; H. 515, III.

10. Erant hae difficultates belli gerendi, quas supra ostendimus, sed multa Caesarem tamen ad id bellum incitabant: iniuriae <sup>1</sup>retentorum equitum Romanorum, **rebellio** facta post deditionem, **defectio** datis obsidibus, **tot** civitatum coniuratio, imprimis, ne  
 5 hac parte neglecta reliquae nationes sibi idem licere arbitrarentur. itaque cum intellexeret omnes fere Gallos novis rebus studere et ad bellum **mobiliter** celeriterque **excitari**, omnes autem homines natura libertati studere et condicionem servitutis odisse, priusquam  
 10 plures civitates **conspirarent**, **partiendum** sibi ac latius **distribuen-**  
**dum** exercitum putavit.

#### Topic for Study.

The participle containing the main idea.

*Labienus is sent to the north, Crassus into Aquitania. Brutus is given command of the fleet.*

11. Itaque Titum Labienum legatum in Treveros, qui proximi flumini Rheno sunt, cum equitatu mittit. huic mandat, Remos reliquosque Belgas <sup>1</sup>adeat atque in officio contineat Germanosque, qui auxilio a Belgis arcessiti dicebantur, si per vim navibus  
 15 flumen transire conentur, prohibeat. Publium Crassum cum cohortibus legionariis XII et magno numero equitatus in Aquitaniam proficisci iubet, ne ex his nationibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur ac tantae nationes coniungantur. Quintum Titurium Sabinum legatum cum legionibus tribus in Venellos, Curiosolites  
 20 Lexoviosque mittit, qui eam manum destinendam curet. **Decimum Brutum** adolescentem **classi** Gallicisque navibus, quas ex **Pictonibus** et Santonis reliquisque pacatis regionibus convenire iusserat, praeficit et, cum primum posset, in Venetos proficisci iubet. ipse eo pedestribus copiis contendit.

10. <sup>1</sup> *retentorum equitum*, A. & G. 292, a; G. 667, R. 2; H. 549, 5, N. 2.

11. <sup>1</sup> *adeat*, A. & G. 331, f, R.; G. 547, R. 3; H. 499, 2.

## Topics for Study.

- (1.) The two possible constructions with *proximus*. (2.) The omission of *ut*.  
 (3.) The relative clause of purpose.

*The advantageous situation of the towns of the Veneti. Description of their maritime power.*

12. Erant eiusmodi fere situs oppidorum, ut posita in extremis lingulis promonturiisque neque pedibus aditum haberent, cum ex alto se aestus incitavisset, quod bis accidit semper horarum XXIII spatio, neque navibus, quod rursus minuenta aestu naves in vadis afflictaerentur. ita utraque re oppidorum 5 oppugnatio impediabatur; ac si quando magnitudine operis forte superati, extruso mari <sup>1</sup>aggere ac molibus, atque his oppidi moenibus adaequatis, suis fortunis desperare coeperant, magno numero navium appulso, cuius rei summam facultatem habebant, sua deportabant omnia seque in proxima oppida recipiebant: 10 ibi se rursus isdem opportunitatibus loci defendebant. haec eo facilius magnam partem aestatis faciebant, quod nostrae naves tempestatibus detinebantur, summaque erat <sup>2</sup>vasto atque aperto mari, magnis aestibus, raris ac prope nullis portibus, difficultas navigandi.

5

## Topics for Study.

- (1.) Hendiadys. (2.) The ablative of degree of difference. (3.) A noun and adjective in the ablative absolute construction.

13. Namque ipsorum naves ad hunc modum factae armataeque erant: carinae aliquanto planiores quam nostrarum navium, <sup>1</sup>quo facilius vada ac decessum aestus excipere possent; prorae admodum erectae atque item puppes ad magnitudinem fluctuum

12. <sup>1</sup> *aggere ac molibus*, A. & G. 385, x. 13; G. 695; H. 636, III, 2.

<sup>2</sup> *vasto — mari*, A. & G. 255, a; G. 408; H. 431, I, 4.

13. <sup>1</sup> *quo — possent*, A. & G. 317, b; G. 545, 2; H. 497, 2.

tempestatumque accommodatae; naves totae factae ex robore ad quamvis vim et contumeliam perferendam; transtra pedalibus in altitudinem trabibus confixa clavis ferreis dígiti pollicis crassitudine; ancorae pro funibus ferreis catenis revinctae; pelles  
 5 pro velis alutaeque tenuiter confectae, hae sive propter lini inopiam atque eius usus inscientiam, sive eo, quod est magis verisimile, quod tantas tempestates Oceani tantosque impetus ventorum sustineri ac tanta onera navium regi velis non satis commode posse arbitrabantur. cum his navibus nostrae <sup>2</sup>classi  
 10 eiusmodi congressus erat, ut una celeritate et pulsu remorum praestaret, reliqua pro loci natura, pro vi tempestatum illis essent aptiora et accommodatiora. neque enim his nostrae rostro nocere poterant (tanta in iis erat firmitudo), neque propter altitudinem facile telum adiciebatur et eadem de causa minus com-  
 15 mode copulis continebantur. accedebat, ut, cum saevire ventus cecisset et se vento dedissent, et tempestatem ferrent facilius et in vadis consisterent tutius et ab aestu relictæ nihil saxa et cautes timerent; quarum rerum omnium nostris <sup>3</sup>navibus casus erat extimescendus.

#### Topics for Study.

(1.) The ablative *quo* in final clauses. (2.) The dative of possession. (3.) The dative of agent.

*A naval engagement. The Veneti defeated. The war terminated.*

20 **14.** Compluribus expugnatis oppidis Caesar, ubi intellexit frustra tantum laborem sumi, neque hostium fugam captis oppidis reprimi neque <sup>1</sup>iis noceri posse, statuit expectandam classem. quae ubi convenit ac primum ab hostibus visa est, circiter CCXX

**13.** <sup>2</sup>classi, A. & G. 231; G. 349; H. 387. <sup>3</sup>navibus, A. & G. 232; G. 353; H. 388.

**14.** <sup>1</sup>iis noceri, A. & G. 230; G. 208; H. 384, 5.



naves eorum paratissimae atque omni genere armorum **ornatissimae** profectae ex portu nostris adversae constituerunt; neque satis Bruto, qui classi praeerat, vel tribunis militum centurionibusque, quibus singulae naves erant attributae, constabat, quid agerent aut quam rationem pugnae insisterent. rostro enim noceri non posse cognoverant; turribus autem excitatis tamen has altitudo puppium ex barbaris navibus superabat, ut neque ex inferiore loco satis commode tela adici possent et missa ab Gallis gravius acciderent. una erat magno usui res **praeparata** a nostris, **falces** praecutatae **insertae affixaeque longuriis**, non **absimili** 10 **forma muralium falcium**. his eum funes, qui **antennas** ad **malos** destinabant, **comprehensi** adductique erant, **navigio** remis incitato **praerumpebantur**. quibus **abscisis** antennae necessario **concidebant**, ut, cum omnis Gallicis <sup>2</sup> navibus spes in velis **armamentisque** consisteret, his ereptis omnis usus navium uno tem- 15 pore eriperetur. reliquum erat **certamen** positum in virtute, qua nostri milites facile superabant, atque eo magis, quod in conspectu Caesaris atque omnis exercitus res gerebatur, ut nullum paulo fortius factum latere posset; omnes enim colles ac loca superiora, unde erat propinquus despectus in mare, ab exercitu 20 tenebantur.

#### Topics for Study.

(1.) The passive of intransitive verbs. (2.) The dative of purpose. (3.) The dative of reference. (4.) The ablative of degree of reference.

15. Disiectis, ut diximus, antennis, cum singulas **binae ac ternae** naves circumsteterant, milites summa vi **transcendere** in hostium naves contendebant. quod postquam barbari fieri animadverterunt, expugnatis compluribus navibus, cum ei rei nullum 25 reperiretur auxilium, fuga salutem petere contenderunt. ac iam conversis in eam partem navibus, quo ventus ferebat, tanta subito

14. <sup>2</sup> *navibus*, A. & G. 235; G. 343; H. 384, II, 4, n. 2.

malacia ac tranquillitas exstitit, ut se ex loco commovere non possent. quae quidem res ad negotium conficiendum maxime fuit opportuna: nam singulas nostri **consectati** expugnauerunt, ut perpaucae ex omni numero noctis **interventu** ad terram pervenerint, cum ab hora fere quarta usque ad solis occasum pugnaretur.

5



GLADIUS.

10

#### Topics for Study.

- (1.) Distributives. (2.) The use of the imperfect tense.

16. Quo proelio bellum Venetorum totiusque orae maritimae confectum est. nam <sup>1</sup>cum omnis **iuventus**, omnes etiam gravioris aetatis, in quibus aliquid consilii aut dignitatis fuit, eo convenerant, tum navium quod **ubique** fuerat in unum locum coëgerant; quibus amissis reliqui neque quo se reciperent, neque quemadmodum oppida defenderent, habebant. itaque se suaque omnia Caesari dederunt. in suos eo gravius  
15 Caesar **vindicandum** statuit, quo diligentius in reliquum tempus a barbaris ius legatorum conservaretur. itaque omni senatu necato reliquos sub **corona** vendidit.

#### Topics for Study.

- (1.) Correlatives. (2.) The partitive genitive.

#### 17-19. WAR WITH THE VENELLI.

*Q. Titurius Sabinus by stratagems defeats the Venelli.*

17. Dum haec in Venetis <sup>1</sup>geruntur, Quintus Titurius Sabinus cum iis copiis, quas a Caesare acceperat, in fines Venellorum  
20 pervenit. his praeerat **Viridovix** ac summam imperii tenebat earum omnium civitatum, quae defeccrant, ex quibus exercitum

16. <sup>1</sup> cum — tum, A. & G. 155, A; G. 589; H. 554, I, 5.

17. <sup>1</sup> geruntur, A. & G. 276, e; G. 220, R.; H. 467, III, 4.

magnasque copias coegerat; atque his paucis diebus Aulcri **Ebuovices** Lexoviique senatu suo interfecto, quod auctores belli esse nolebant, portas clausurunt seque cum Viridovice coniuxerunt; magnaque praeterea multitudo undique ex Gallia **perditorum** hominum **latronum**que convenerat, quos spes praedandi <sup>5</sup> studiumque bellandi ab **agricultura** et cotidiano labore revocabat. Sabinus idoneo omnibus rebus loco castris sese tenebat, cum Viridovix contra eum duum milium spatio consedisset cotidieque productis copiis pugnandi potestatem faceret, ut iam non solum <sup>2</sup>hostibus in **contemptionem** Sabinus veniret, sed etiam nostro- <sup>10</sup> rum militum vocibus **nonnihil carperetur**; tantamque opinionem timoris praebuit, ut iam ad vallum castrorum hostes accedere auderent. id ea de causa faciebat, quod cum tanta multitudine hostium, praesertim eo absente, qui summam imperii teneret, nisi aequo loco aut opportunitate aliqua data legato dimicandum non <sup>15</sup> existimabat.

#### Topics for Study.

(1) *Dum* with the present indicative. (2.) The dative of reference. (2.) The adverbial accusative. (4) The dependent clause in indirect discourse.

**18.** Hac confirmata opinione timoris idoneum quendam hominem et **callidum** delegit, Gallum, ex iis, quos auxilii causa secum habebat. huic magnis praemiis **pollicitationibus**que persuadet, uti ad hostes trauseat et, qui fieri velit, **edocet**. qui ubi pro <sup>20</sup> perfuga ad eos venit, timorem Romanorum proponit, quibus angustiis ipse Caesar a Venetis prematur, docet, neque longius abesse, quin proxima nocte Sabinus **clam** ex castris exercitum educat et ad Caesarem auxilii ferendi causa proficiscatur. quod ubi auditum est, conclamant omnes **occasionem** negotii **bene** <sup>25</sup> gerendi amittendam non esse, ad castra iri oportere. multae res ad hoc consilium Gallos hortabantur: superiorum dierum Sabini **cunctatio**, perfugae **confirmatio**, inopia cibariorum, cui rei **parum**

**17.** <sup>2</sup> *hostibus*, A. & G. 235, *a*; G. 343; H. 384, II, 4, *n.* 2.

diligenter ab iis erat provisum, spes **Venetici** belli et quod fere libenter homines id, quod volunt, credunt. his rebus adducti non prius Viridovicem reliquosque duces ex concilio dimittunt, quam ab his <sup>1</sup>sit concessum, arma uti capiant et ad castra con-  
5 tendant. qua re concessa <sup>2</sup>laeti, ut explorata victoria, **sarmentis virgultisque** collectis, quibus fossas Romanorum compleant, ad castra **pergunt**.

#### Topics for Study.

(1.) Indirect question. (2.) The impersonal construction. (3.) *Prius quam* with the subjunctive. (4.) The use of the ablative absolute.

**19.** Locus erat castrorum editus et paulatim ab **imo** acclivis circiter passus mille. huc magno cursu contenderunt, ut quam  
10 minimum spatii ad se colligendos armaudosque Romanis daretur, exanimatique pervenerunt. Sabinus suos hortatus cupientibus signum dat. impeditis hostibus propter ea, quae ferebant, onera subito duabus portis eruptionem fieri iubet. factum est opportunitate loci, hostium inscientia ac **defatigatione**, virtute militum  
15 et superiorum pugnarum exercitatione, ut ne munus quidem nostrorum impetum ferrent ac statim terga verterent. quos impeditos integris viribus milites nostri consecuti magnum numerum eorum occiderunt; reliquos equites consecrati paucos, qui ex fuga **evaserant**, reliquerunt. sic uno tempore et de **navali**  
20 pugna Sabinus et de Sabini victoria Caesar certior factus est, civitatesque omnes se statim Titurio dederunt. nam ut ad bella suscipienda Gallorum **alacer** ac **promptus** est animus, sic **mollis** ac minime resistens ad calamitates preferendas mens eorum est.

#### Topic for Study.

The various uses of the genitive.

**18.** <sup>1</sup> *sit concessum*, A. & G. 327; G. 579; H. 520, I, 2. <sup>2</sup> *laeti*, A. & G. 191; G. 324, R. 6; H. 443.

## 20-27. EXPEDITION OF CRASSUS INTO AQUITANIA.

*Crassus defeats the Sontiates. The "Soldurii."*

20. Eodem fere tempore P. Crassus, cum in Aquitaniam pervenisset, quae pars, ut ante dictum est, et regionum latitudine et multitudine hominum ex tertia parte Gallia est **aestimanda**, cum intellegeret in iis locis sibi bellum gerendum, ubi <sup>1</sup>paucis ante annis L. Valerius **Praeconius** legatus exercitu pulso interfectus esset, atque unde L. **Mallius proconsul** impedimentis amissis profugisset, non mediocrem sibi diligentiam adhibendam intellegebat. itaque re frumentaria provisa, auxiliis equitatuque comparato, multis praeterea viris fortibus **Tolosa** et **Narbone**, quae sunt civitates Galliae provinciae finitimae his regionibus, 10 nominatim **evocatis** in **Sontiatum** fines exercitum<sup>o</sup> introduxit. cuius adventu cogito Sontiates magnis copiis coactis equitatuque, quo plurimum valebant, in itinere agmen nostrum adorti primum equestre proelium commiserunt, deinde equitatu suo pulso atque insequentibus nostris subito pedestres copias, quas 15 in **convalle** in insidiis collocaverant, ostenderunt. hi nostros disiectos adorti proelium renovarunt.

**Topics for Study.**

- (1.) The ablative of degree of difference. (2.) The dative after adjectives.

21. Pugnatum est diu atque acriter, cum Sontiates superioribus victoriis **freti** in sua virtute totius Aquitaniae salutem positam putarent, nostri autem, quid sine imperatore et sine reliquis legionibus **adulescentulo** duce efficere possent, perspicere cuperent: tandem confecti vulneribus hostes terga verterunt. quorum magno numero interfecto Crassus ex itinere oppidum Sontiatum oppugnare coepit. quibus fortiter resistentibus vineas turresque egit. illi alias eruptione temptata, alias **cuniculis** ad aggerem 25

20. <sup>1</sup> *paucis ante annis*, A. & G. 259, d; G 400, r. 3; H 430

vincasque actis, cuius rei sunt longe peritissimi Aquitani, propterea quod multis locis apud eos <sup>1</sup>aerariae secturaeque sunt, ubi diligentia nostrorum nihil his rebus profici posse intellexerunt, legatos ad Crassum mittunt seque in deditionem ut recipiat, 5 petunt. qua re impetrata arma tradere iussi faciunt.

#### Topics for Study.

- (1.) *Cum* with the subjunctive. (2.) Description of the *vineae* and *turres*.  
 (3.) The idiom *alias* — *alias*. (4.) Hendiadys.

22. Atque in ea re omnium nostrorum **intentis** animis alia ex parte oppidi Adiatunus, qui summam imperii tenebat, cum sexcentis **devotis**, quos illi <sup>1</sup>**soldurios** appellant, quorum haec est condicio, uti omnibus in vita commodis una cum his **fruan-**  
 10 **tur**, quorum se amicitiae dederint, si quid iis per vim accidat, aut eundem casum una ferant aut sibi mortem consciscant; neque **adhuc** hominum memoria repertus est quisquam, qui eo interfecto, cuius se amicitiae <sup>2</sup>devovisset, mortem recusaret: cum his Adiatunus eruptionem facere conatus clamore ab ea parte  
 15 munitionis sublato, cum ad arma milites concurrissent vehementerque ibi pugnatum esset, repulsus in oppidum, tamen, uti eadem deditionis condicione uteretur, ab Crasso impetravit.

#### Topics for Study.

- (1.) The idiom *mortem consciscant*. (2.) The relative clause of characteristic.  
 (3.) The subjunctive by attraction.

*Crassus advances against the Vocates and Turusates. He invites the enemy to battle. They decline.*

23 Armis obsidibusque acceptis Crassus in fines Vocatium et **Tarusatium** profectus est. tum vero barbari commoti, quod  
 20 oppidum et natura loci et manu munitum paucis diebus, quibus

21. <sup>1</sup> *aerariae secturaeque*, A. & G. 385, no. 13; G. 695; H. 636, III, 2.

22. <sup>1</sup> *soldani*, Introd. No. 60. <sup>2</sup> *devovisset*, A. & G. 342; G. 631; H. 529, II.

eo ventum erat, expugnatum cognoverant, legatos quoqueversum dimittere, coniurare, obsides inter se dare, copias parare coeperunt. mittuntur etiam ad eas civitates legati, quae sunt citerioris Hispaniae, finitimae Aquitaniae: inde auxilia ducesque arcessuntur. quorum adventu magna cum auctoritate et magna cum 5 hominum multitudinē bellum gerere conantur. duces vero illos deliguntur, qui una cum Q. Sertorio omnes annos fuerant summamque scientiam rei militaris habere existimabantur. hi consuetudine populi Romani loca capere, castra munire, com meatibus nostros intercludere instituunt. quod ubi Crassus animadvertit, 10 suas copias propter exiguitatem non facile diduci, hostem et vagari et vias obsidere et castris satis praesidii relinquere, ob eam causam minus commode frumentum com meatumque sibi supportari, in dies hostium numerum augeri, non cunctandum existimavit, quin pugna decertaret. hac re ad consilium delata, ubi 15 omnes idem sentire intellexit, posterum diem pugnae constituit.

#### Topics for Study.

(1.) The predicate genitive of possession. (2.) The relative taking the place of a demonstrative pronoun and a conjunction. (3.) The impersonal construction.



TUBA.

24. Prima luce productis omnibus copiis <sup>1</sup>duplici acie instituta, auxiliis in mediam aciem coniectis, quid hostes consilii caperent, exspectabat. illi, etsi propter multitudinem et veterem belli gloriam paucitatemque nostrorum 20 se tuto dimicaturos existimabant, tamen tutius esse arbitrabantur obsessis viis com meatu intercluso sine ullo vulnere victoria potiri et, si propter inopiam rei frumentariae Romani sese recipere coepissent, <sup>2</sup>impeditos in agmine et sub sarcinis <sup>3</sup>infirmiore animo adoriri cogitabant. hoc consilio probato ab ducibus productis Romanorum copiis sese castris tenebant. hac re perspecta

24. <sup>1</sup> *duplici acie*, Introd. No. 125, 1) a. <sup>2</sup> *impeditos*, Introd. No. 60.

<sup>3</sup> *infirmiore animo*, A. & G. 179; G. 402; H. 419, II.

Crassus, cum sua cunctatione atque opinione timoris hostes nostros milites alacriores ad pugnandum effecissent, atque omnium voces audirentur, expectari diutius non oportere, quin ad castra iretur, cohortatus suos omnibus cupientibus ad hostium castra  
5 contendit.

#### Topics for Study.

(1.) The uses of the participle. (2.) The ablative of quality. (3.) The partitive genitive.

*Crassus attacks the enemy in their camp and is victorious. The greater part of Aquitania surrenders to Crassus.*

25. Ibi cum alii fossas complerent, alii multis telis coniectis defensores vallo munitionibusque **depellerent**, **auxiliaresque**, quibus ad pugnam non multum Crassus confidebat, lapidibus telisque subministrandis et ad aggerem **cespitibus** comportandis speciem  
10 atque opinionem pugnantium praeberent, cum item ab hostibus constanter ac non timide pugnaretur telaque ex loco superiore missa non frustra acciderent, equites **circumitis** hostium castris Crasso renuntiaverunt non eadem esse diligentia ab <sup>1</sup>decumana porta castra munita facilemque aditum habere.

#### Topics for Study.

(1.) The idiom *abi* — *alii*. (2.) The ablative of separation. (3.) Position of the *decumana porta*.

15 26. Crassus equitum praefectos cohortatus, ut magnis praemiis pollicitationibusque suos excitarent, quid fieri velit, ostendit. illi, ut erat imperatum, eductis iis cohortibus, quae praesidio castris relictae **inritae** ab labore erant, et longiore itinere circumductis, ne ex hostium castris conspici possent, omnium oculis mentibus-  
20 que ad pugnam intentis celeriter ad eas, quas diximus, munitiones pervenerunt atque his **prorutis** prius in hostium castris

25. <sup>1</sup> *decumana porta*, Introd. No. 121.



constiterunt, quam plane ab his videri aut, quid rei gereretur, cognosci<sup>1</sup> posset. tum vero clamore ab ea parte audito nostri redintegratis viribus, quod plerumque in spe victoriae accidere consuevit, acrius impugnare coeperunt. hostes undique circumventi desperatis omnibus rebus se per munitiones deiecere et fuga salutem petere intenderunt. quos equitatus apertissimis **campis** consetatus ex milium L numero, quae ex Aquitania **Cantabrisque** convenisse constabat, vix quarta parte relicta multa nocte se in castra recepit.

#### Topics for Study.

- (1.) *Prius quam* with the subjunctive. (2.) The idiom *multa nocte*.

27. Hae audita pugna maxima pars Aquitaniae sese Crasso 10 dedidit obsidesque ultro misit; quo in numero fuerunt **Tarbelli**, **Bigerriones**, **Ptiani**, **Vocates**, **Tarusates**, **Elusates**, **Gates**, **Ausci**, **Garumni**, **Sibuzates**, **Cocosates**, paucae **ultima**e nationes ami tempore confisae, quod hiems suberat, hoc facere neglexerunt.

#### Topic for Study.

The semi-deponent verb.

### 28-29. EXPEDITION OF CAESAR AGAINST THE MORINI AND THE MENAPII.

*Caesar advances against the Morini and Menapii, who are defeated with great loss.*

28. Eodem fere tempore Caesar, etsi prope **exacta** iam aestas 15 erat, tamen, quod omni Gallia pacata Morini Menapiique supererant, qui in armis essent neque ad eum umquam legatos de pace misissent, arbitratus id bellum eeleriter confici posse, eo exercitum adduxit; qui longe<sup>1</sup> alia ratione ac reliqui Galli bellum gerere coeperunt. nam quod intellegebant maximas nationes, 20

26. <sup>1</sup> *posset*, A. & G. 327; G. 579; H. 520.

28. <sup>1</sup> *alia* — *ac*, A. & G. 156, *a*; G. 646; H. 459, 2.

quae proelio contendissent, pulsas superatasque esse, continentesque silvas ac paludes habebant, eo se suaque omnia contulerunt. ad quarum initium silvarum cum Caesar pervenisset castraque munire instituisset, neque hostis interim visus esset, dispersis in opere nostris subito ex omnibus partibus silvae **evolaverunt** et in nostros impetum fecerunt. nostri eeleriter arma ceperunt eosque in silvas repulerunt et compluribus interfectis longius impeditioribus locis secuti paucos ex suis deperdiderunt.

#### Topics for Study.

(1.) The idiom *longe alia*—*ac*. (2.) *Cum* with the subjunctive. (3.) The signification of the comparative degree.

*The complete subjugation prevented by the inclemency of the season. Caesar leads his army into winter-quarters.*

10 **29.** Reliquis **deinceps** diebus Caesar silvas **caedere** instituit, et ne quis inermibus **imprudentibusque** militibus ab latere impetus fieri posset, omnem eam **materiam**, quae erat caesa, conversam ad hostem collocebat et pro vallo ad utrumque latus extruebat. incredibili eeleritate magno spatio paucis diebus  
15 confecto, cum iam **pecus** atque extrema impedimenta ab nostris tenerentur, ipsi densiores silvas peterent, eiusmodi sunt tempestates consecutae, uti opus necessario intermitteretur et **continuatione imbrum** diutius sub pellibus milites contineri non possent. itaque vastatis omnibus eorum agris, vicis aedificiisque  
20 incensis, Caesar exercitum reduxit et in Aulereis Lexoviisque, reliquis item civitatibus, quae proxime bellum fecerant, in hibernis collocevit.

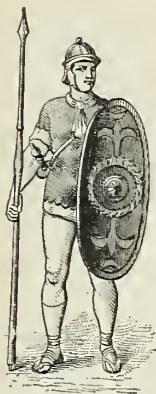
#### Topics for Study.

(1.) The ablative absolute. (2.) The subjunctive of result.

C. IULII CAESARIS  
DE BELLO GALLICO  
COMMENTARIUS QUARTUS.

1-15. WAR WITH THE USIPETES AND THE TENCTHERI.

*The Usipetes and Tenctheri, disturbed by the Suebi, cross over into Gaul. Description of the Suebi.*



1. Ea, quae secuta est, hieme, <sup>1</sup>qui fuit annus Gneo Pompeio, Marco Crasso consulibus, Usipetes Germani et item Tencteri magna cum multitudine hominum flumen Rhenum transierunt, non longe a mari, quo Rhenus influit. 5 causa transeundi fuit, quod ab Suebis complures annos exagitati bello premebantur et agricultura prohibebantur. Sueborum gens est longe maxima et bellicosissima Germanorum omnium. hi centum pagos habere <sup>2</sup>dicuntur, 10 ex quibus quotannis <sup>3</sup>singula milia armatorum bellandi causa ex finibus educunt. reliqui, qui

domi manserunt, se atque illos alunt. hi rursus in vicem anno post in armis sunt, illi domi remanent. sic neque agricultura nec ratio atque usus belli intermittitur. sed privati ac separati 15 agri apud eos nihil est, neque longius anno remanere uno in

1. <sup>1</sup> qui, A. & G. 199; G. 616, 3, II; H. 445, 4. <sup>2</sup> dicuntur, A. & G. 330, b; G. 528; H. 534, I, v. 1. <sup>3</sup> singula milia, A. & G. 95, a; G. 95; H. 174, 2, I.

loco incolendi causa licet. neque multum frumento, sed maximam partem lacte atque pecore vivunt multumque sunt in venationibus; quae res et cibi genere et cotidiana exercitatione et libertate vitae, cum a pueris nullo officio aut disciplina assuefacti nihil omnino contra voluntatem faciant, et vires alit et immani corporum magnitudine homines efficit. atque in eam se consuetudinem adduxerunt, ut locis frigidissimis neque vestitus praeter pellis haberent quicquam, quarum propter exiguitatem magna est corporis pars aperta, et lavarentur in fluminibus.

#### Topics for Study.

(1.) The agreement of the relative with an appositive in its own clause. (2.) The ablative of separation. (3.) The personal construction with verbs of saying. (4.) The partitive genitive.

10 2. Mercatoribus est adifus magis eo, ut, quae bello ceperint, quibus vendant, habeant, quam quo ullam rem ad se importari <sup>1</sup>desiderent. quin etiam iumentis, quibus maxime Gallia delectatur quacque impenso parant pretio, Germani importatis non utuntur, sed quae sunt apud eos nata, parva atque deformia,  
 15 haec cotidiana exercitatione summi ut sint <sup>2</sup>laboris efficiunt. equestribus procliis saepe ex equis desiliunt ac pedibus procliantur, equosque eodem remanere vestigio assuefecerunt, ad quos se celeriter, cum usus est, recipiunt; neque eorum moribus turpius quicquam aut inertius habetur, quam ephippiis uti. itaque  
 20 ad quemvis numerum ephippiatorum equitum quamvis pauci adire audent. vinum ad se omnino importari non sinunt, quod ea re ad laborem ferendum remollescere homines atque effeminari arbitrantur.

#### Topics for Study.

(1.) *Quo* with an implied negative. (2.) The ablative of price. (3.) The predicative genitive.

2. <sup>1</sup> *desiderent*, A. & G. 341, *d*; G. 541, R. 1; H. 516, II, 2. <sup>2</sup> *laboris*, A. & G. 214, *e*; G. 365; H. 402.

3. Publice maximam putant esse laudem, quam latissime a suis finibus vacare agros: hac re significari, magnum numerum civitatum suam vim sustinere non posse. itaque una ex parte a Suebis circiter milia passuum sexcenta agri vacare dicuntur. ad alteram partem succedunt Ubii, quorum fuit civitas ampla 5 atque florens, ut est captus Germanorum, et paulo sunt eiusdem generis ceteris **humanoiores**, propterea quod Rhenum attingunt, multumque ad eos mercatores **ventitant**, et ipsi propter propinquitatem Gallicis sunt moribus assuefacti. hos cum Suebi multis saepe bellis experti propter **amplitudinem gravitatemque** civita- 10 tis finibus expellere non potuissent, tamen <sup>1</sup> vectigales sibi fecerunt ac multo **humiliores** infirmioresque redegerunt.

#### Topics for Study.

(1.) The idiom *una ex parte*. (2.) The accusative of extent of space. (3.) The ablative of degree of difference.

#### *The Menapii are distressed.*

4. In eadem causa fuerunt Usipetes et Teneteri, quos supra diximus, qui complures annos Sueborum vim sustinuerunt; ad extremum tamen agris expulsi et multis locis **Germaniae trien-** 15 **nium** vagati ad Rhenum pervenerunt; quas regiones Menapii incolebant et ad utramque ripam fluminis agros, aedificia vicosque habebant, sed tantae multitudinis aditu perterriti ex iis aedificiis, quae trans flumen habuerant, **demigraverunt** et cis Rhenum dispositis praesidiis Germanos transire prohibebant. illi omnia 20 experti, cum neque vi contendere propter inopiam navium neque clam transire propter custodias Menapiorum possent, reverti se in suas sedes regionesque simulaverunt et tridui viam progressi rursus reverterunt atque omni hoc itinere una nocte equitatu confecto **inscios** inopinantesque Menapios oppresserunt, qui de 25 Germanorum discessu per exploratores certiores facti sine **metu**

3. <sup>1</sup> *vectigales*, A. & G. 186, c; G. 334; H. 373, 1.

trans Rhenum in suos vicos **remigraverant**. his interfectis navibusque eorum occupatis, priusquam ea pars Menapiorum, quae citra Rhenum quicta in suis sedibus erat, certior <sup>1</sup> fieret, flumen transierunt atque omnibus eorum aedificiis occupatis reliquam  
5 partem hiemis se eorum eopiis aluerunt.

#### Topics for Study.

(1.) The difference between the construction after *prohibere* and that after other verbs of hindering. (2.) The construction with *priusquam*.

*Caesar resolves to make war upon the Usipetes and Tenctheri.*

5. His de rebus Caesar certior factus et **infirmi-  
tatem** Gallorum veritus, quod sunt in consiliis capiendis **mobiles** et novis ple-  
runque rebus student, nihil his committendum existimavit. est enim hoc Gallicae <sup>1</sup> consuetudinis, uti et **viatores** etiam invitos  
10 consistere <sup>2</sup> cogant et, quod quisque eorum de quaque re audierit aut cognoverit, quaerant, et mercatores in oppidis vulgus circum-  
sistat, quibusque ex regionibus veniant quasque ibi res cognove-  
rint, **pronuntiare** cogant. his rebus atque **auditionibus** permoti de summis saepe rebus consilia ineunt, <sup>3</sup> quorum eos e vestigio  
15 **paenitere** necesse est, cum **incertis** rumoribus **serviant**, et ple-  
rique ad voluntatem eorum fieta respondeant.

#### Topics for Study.

(1.) The predicate genitive (2.) Singular subject with plural verb. (3.) The construction after *paenitere*. (4.) The ablative of the gerundive construction with *in*.

6. Qua consuetudine cognita Caesar, ne <sup>1</sup> graviori bello occurreret, maturius, quam consuevit, ad exercitum proficiscitur. eo cum venisset, ea, quae fore suspicatus erat, facta cognovit:

4. <sup>1</sup> *fieret*, A. & G. 327; G. 579; H. 520, II.

5. <sup>1</sup> *consuetudinis*, A. & G. 214, *d*; G. 365, R. 1; H. 401. <sup>2</sup> *cogant*, A. & G. 205, *c*; G. 202, ex. 1; H. 461, I. <sup>3</sup> *quorum*, A. & G. 221, *b*; G. 376; H. 409, III.

6. <sup>1</sup> *graviori*, A. & G. 93, *a*; H. 414.

missas legationes ab nonnullis civitatibus ad Germanos invitatosque eos, uti ab Rheno discederent, omniaque, quae <sup>2</sup>postulassent, ab se fore parata. qua spe adducti Germani latius vagabantur et in fines Eburonum et Condrusorum, qui sunt Treverorum clientes, pervenerant. principibus Galliae evocatis Caesar ea, quae 5 eognoverat, **dissimulanda** sibi existimavit eorumque animis **per-mulsis** et confirmatis equitatuque imperato bellum eum Germanis gerere constituit.

#### Topics for Study

(1.) The significations of the comparative. (2.) The future perfect in indirect discourse. (3.) The ablative absolute.

#### *The Germans send ambassadors to Caesar.*

7. Re frumentaria comparata equitibusque deletis iter in ea loca facere coepit, quibus in locis esse Germanos audiebat. a 10 quibus eum paucorum dierum <sup>1</sup>iter abesset, legati ab his venerunt, quorum haec fuit oratio: Germanos neque priores populo Romano bellum inferre neque tamen recusare, si laessantur, quin armis contendant, quod Germanorum consuetudo sit a maioribus tradita, quicumque bellum inferant, resistere neque depreari. 15 haec tamen dicere, venisse invitos, **eiectos** domo. si suam gratiam Romani velint, posse iis **utiles** esse amicos; vel sibi agros <sup>2</sup>**attribuant** vel patiantur eos tenere, quos armis **possederint**: sese unis Suebis concedere, quibus ne dii quidem immortales pares esse possint; reliquum quidem in terris esse neminem, 20 quem non superare possint.

#### Topics for Study.

(1.) The accusative of extent of space. (2.) The repetition of the antecedent. (3.) The mood which represents the imperative in indirect discourse.

6. <sup>2</sup> *postulassent*, A. & G. 336, 2; G. 510; H. 525, 2.

7. <sup>1</sup> *iter*, A. & G. 257; G. 335, 2; H. 379. <sup>2</sup> *attribuant*, A. & G. 339; G. 655; H. 523, III.

8. Ad haec Caesar quae visum est respondit ; sed exitus fuit orationis : sibi nullam cum his amicitiam esse posse, si in Gallia remanerent ; neque verum esse, qui suos fines **tueri** non potuerint, alienos occupare ; neque ullos in Gallia vacare agros, qui dari 5 tantae praesertim multitudini sine iniuria possint ; sed licere, si velint, in Ubiorum finibus consistere, quorum sint legati apud se et de Sueborum iniuriis querantur et a se auxilium petant : hoc se Ubiis imperaturum.

**Topic for Study.**

The moods and tenses of *oratio obliqua*.

9. Legati haec se ad suos relaturos dixerunt et re deliberata 10 post diem tertium ad Caesarem reversuros : interea ne propius<sup>1</sup> se castra moveret, petierunt. ne id quidem Caesar ab se impetrari posse dixit. cognoverat enim, magnam partem equitatus ab iis aliquot diebus ante praedandi **frumentandique** causa ad **Ambivaritos** trans **Mosam** missam : hos exspectari equites atque 15 eius rei causa moram interponi arbitrabatur.

**Topic for Study.**

The two possible constructions after *propius*, *proxime*, *propior*, and *proximus*.

*Description of the Meuse and the Rhine.*

10. Mosa **profluit** ex monte **Vosego**, qui est in finibus Lingonum, et parte quadam ex Rheno recepta, quae appellatur **Vacalus**, insulam efficit **Batavorum**, neque longius ab Rheno milibus passuum LXXX in Oceanum influit. Rhenus autem oritur 20 ex **Lepontiis**, qui Alpes incolunt, et longo spatio per fines Nautuatium, Helvetiorum, Sequanorum, **Mediomatricum**, **Tribocorum**, Treverorum <sup>1</sup>**citatus** fertur et, ubi Oceano appropinquavit, in

9. <sup>1</sup> *se*, A. & G. 234, e ; G. 356, 4 ; H. 437, 1.

10. <sup>1</sup> *citatus*, A. & G. 191 ; G. 324, r. 6 ; H. 443.



plures **defluit** partes multis ingentibusque insulis effectis, quarum pars magna a feris barbarisque nationibus incolitur, ex quibus sunt, qui **piscibus** atque **ovis avium** vivere existimantur, multisque capitibus in Oceanum influit.

#### Topic for Study.

The different uses of the ablative in the chapter.

#### *The perfidy of the Germans.*

**11.** Caesar cum ab hoste non amplius passuum XII milibus <sup>5</sup> abesset, ut erat constitutum, ad eum legati revertuntur; qui in itinere congressi magnopere, ne longius progrediretur, orabant. cum id non impetrassent, petebant, uti ad eos equites, qui agmen <sup>1</sup> antecessissent, praemitteret eosque pugna prohiberet, sibi que uti potestatem faceret in Ubios legatos mittendi; quorum si prin- <sup>10</sup> cipes ac senatus sibi iureiurando fidem fecissent, ea condicione, quae a Caesare ferretur, se usuros ostendebant: ad has res conficiendas sibi tridui spatium daret. haec omnia Caesar eodem illo pertinere arbitratur, ut tridui mora interposita equites eorum, qui abessent, reverterentur; tamen sese non longius mili- <sup>15</sup> bus passuum quattuor **aquationis** causa processurum eo die dixit: huc postero die quam **frequentissimi** convenirent, ut de eorum postulatis cognosceret. interim ad praefectos, qui cum omni equitatu antecesserant, mittit qui munitarent, ne hostes proelio lacesserent et, si ipsi lacesserentur, sustinerent, **quoad** ipse cum <sup>20</sup> exercitu propius accessisset.

#### Topics for Study.

(1.) The subjunctive by attraction. (2.) Relative clauses of purpose. (3.) The gerund with direct object.

**12.** At hostes ubi primum nostros equites conspexerunt, quorum erat quinque milium numerus, cum ipsi non amplius

**11.** <sup>1</sup> *antecessissent*, A & G. 342; G. 631; H. 529, II.

oetingentos <sup>1</sup>equites haberent, quod ii, qui frumentandi causa  
 ierant trans Mosam, nondum redierant, nihil timentibus nostris,  
 quod legati eorum paulo ante a Caesare discesserant atque is dies  
**indutiis** erat ab his petitus, impetu facto celeriter nostros per-  
 5 turbaverunt; rursus resistentibus consuetudine sua ad pedes  
 desiluerunt, **subfossis** equis compluribusque nostris deiectis reli-  
 quos in fugam coniecerunt atque ita perterritos egerunt, ut non  
 prius fuga desisterent, quam in conspectum agminis nostri venis-  
 sent. in eo proelio ex equitibus nostris interficiuntur quattuor  
 10 et septuaginta, in his vir fortissimus, Piso Aquitanus, amplis-  
 simo genere natus, cuius avus in civitate sua regnum obtinuerat  
 amicus ab senatu nostro appellatus. hic cum fratri intercluso  
 ab hostibus auxilium ferret, illum ex periculo eripuit: ipse equo  
 vulnerato deiectus, quoad potuit, fortissime restitit: cum circum-  
 15 ventus multis vulneribus acceptis cecidisset, atque id frater, qui  
 iam proelio excesserat, procul animadvertisset, incitato equo se  
 hostibus obtulit atque interfectus est.

#### Topics for Study.

(1.) The idiom *ubi primum*. (2.) The ablative of source. (3.) The various  
 significations of the participle.

*Caesar resolves to attack them at once.*

13. Hoc facto proelio Caesar neque iam sibi legatos audiendos  
 neque condiciones accipiendas arbitrabatur ab iis, qui per dolum  
 20 atque insidias petita pace ultro bellum intulissent: exspectare  
 vero, dum hostium copiae auferentur equitatusque reverteretur,  
 summae **dementiae** esse iudicabat, et cognita Gallorum infirmi-  
 tate, quantum iam apud eos hostes uno proelio auctoritatis essent  
 consecuti, sentiebat; quibus ad consilia capienda nihil spatii dan-  
 25 dum existimabat. his constitutis rebus et consilio cum legatis

12. <sup>1</sup> equites, A. & G. 247, c; G. 311, R. 4; H. 417, 1, N. 2.

et quaestore **communicato**, ne quem diem pugnae **praetermitteret**, opportunissima res accidit, quod postridie eius <sup>1</sup>diei **mane** eadem et **perfidia** et simulatione usi Germani frequentes omnibus principibus maioribusque natu adhibitis ad eum in castra venerunt, simul, ut dicebatur, sui purgandi causa, quod contra, <sup>5</sup> atque esset dictum et ipsi petissent, proelium pridie commisissent, simul ut, si quid possent, de indutiis fallendo impetrarent. quos sibi Caesar **oblato** **gavisus** illos retineri iussit; ipse omnes copias castris eduxit equitatumque, quod recenti proelio perterritum esse existimabat, agmen subsequi iussit. 10

### Topics for Study.

(1.) The different uses of the genitive in this chapter. (2.) The expression *sui purgandi*. (3.) Semi-deponent verbs.

*The enemy are defeated with great slaughter and betake themselves into the territories of the Sigambri.*

**14.** <sup>1</sup>Acie triplici instituta et celeriter octo milium itinere confecto prius ad hostium castra pervenit, quam, quid ageretur, Germani sentire <sup>2</sup>possent. qui omnibus rebus subito perterriti, et celeritate adventus nostri et discessu snorum, neque consilii habendi neque arma capiendi spatio dato perturbantur, copiasne **adversus** <sup>15</sup> hostem educere, <sup>3</sup>an castra defendere, an fuga salutem petere praestaret. quorum timor cum fremitu et concursu significaretur, milites nostri pristini diei perfidia incitati in castra **irruerunt**. quo loco, qui celeriter arma capere potuerunt, paulisper nostris restiterunt atque inter carros impedimentaue proelium commisc- <sup>20</sup> runt: at reliqua multitudo puerorum mulierumque (nam cum omnibus suis domo excesserant Rhenumque transierant) **passim** fugere coepit; ad quos consecrandos Caesar equitatum misit.

**13.** <sup>1</sup> diei, A. & G. 214, g; G. 371, R. 4; H. 398, 5.

**14.** <sup>1</sup> acie triplici instituta, Introd. 123, I, 2), c. <sup>2</sup> possent, A. & G. 327; G. 579; II. 520, II. <sup>3</sup> ne — an — an, A. & G. 221; G. 460; H. 353.

## Topics for Study.

(1.) The line of battle. (2.) The construction after *prius — quam*. (3.) Cor-relatives. (4.) Double questions.

15. Germani post tergum clamore audito, eum suos interficere viderent, armis **abiectis** signisque militaribus relictis se ex castris cicerunt, et cum ad **confluentem** Mosae et Rheni pervenis-  
sent, reliqua fuga desperata magno numero interfecto reliqui se  
5 in flumen **praecipitaverunt** atque ibi timore, lassitudine, vi  
fluminis oppressi perierunt. nostri ad unum omnes incolumes  
perpaucis vulneratis ex tanti belli timore, eum hostium numerus  
capitum CCCXXX milium fuisset, se in castra receperunt.  
Caesar iis, quos in castris retinuerat, discedendi potestatem fecit.  
10 illi supplicia cruciatusque Gallorum veriti, quorum agros vexa-  
verant, remanere se apud eum velle dixerunt. his Caesar liber-  
tatem concessit.

## Topics for Study.

(1.) The idiom *ad unum omnes*. (2.) The various significations of the ablative absolute

## 16-19. CAESAR'S CROSSING INTO GERMANY.

*Caesar determines to cross into Germany.*

16. **Germanico** bello confecto multis de causis Caesar statuit  
sibi Rhenum esse transeundum; quarum illa fuit iustissima,  
15 quod, eum videret Germanos tam facile impelli, ut in Galliam  
venirent, suis quoque rebus eos timere voluit, eum intellegent  
et posse et audere populi Romani exercitum Rhenum transire.  
accessit etiam, quod illa pars equitatus Usipetum et Tenetero-  
rum, quam supra commemoravi praedandi frumentandique causa  
20 Mosam transisse neque proelio interfuisse, post fugam suorum  
se trans Rhenum, in fines **Sugambrorum** receperat sequi eum iis  
coniunxerat. ad quos eum Caesar nuntios misisset, qui postula-  
rent, eos, qui sibi Galliaeque bellum intulissent, sibi <sup>1</sup>dederent,

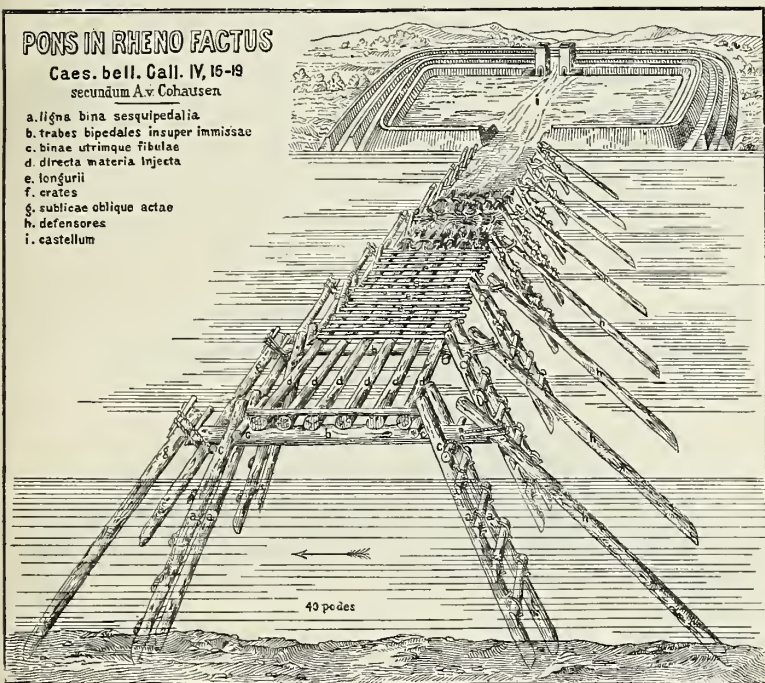
16. <sup>1</sup> *dederent*, A. & G. 331, f, R.; G. 546, R. 3; H. 499, 2.

responderunt: populi Romani imperium Rhenum finire: si se invito Germanos in Galliam transire non aequum existimaret, cur sui quicquam esse imperii aut potestatis trans Rhenum postulare? Ubii autem, qui uni ex **Transrhenanis** ad Caesarem legatos miserant, amicitiam fecerant, obsides dederant, magnopere 5

### PONS IN RHENO FACTUS

Caes. bell. Gall. IV, 16-19  
secundum A. v. Coehausen

- a. ligna bina sesquipedalia
- b. traves bipedales insuper immissae
- c. binae utrimque fibulae
- d. directa materia injecta
- e. longurii
- f. crates
- g. sublicae oblique actae
- h. defensores
- i. castellum



orabant, ut sibi auxilium ferret, quod graviter ab Suebis premerentur; vel, si id tacere **occupationibus** reipublicae prohiberetur, exercitum modo Rhenum transportaret: id sibi ad auxilium spemque reliqui temporis satis futurum. tantum esse nomen atque opinionem eius exercitus Ariovisto pulso et hoc novissimo 10 proelio facto etiam ad ultimas Germanorum nationes, uti opi-

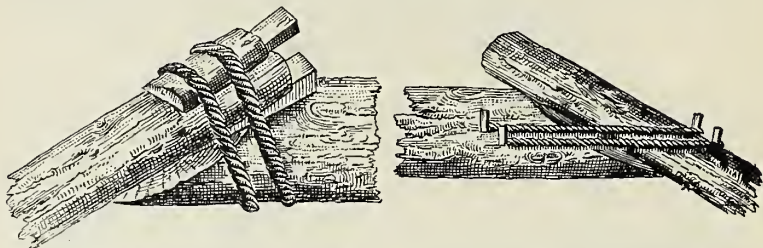
nione et amicitia populi Romani tuti esse possint. navium magnam copiam ad transportandum exercitum pollicebantur.

**Topics for Study.**

(1.) The omission of *ut*. (2.) The use of the relative at the beginning of a sentence. (3.) The possessive genitive in the predicate.

*Description of the bridge which Caesar builds across the Rhine.*

17. Caesar his de causis, quas commemoravi, Rhenum transire decreverat; sed navibus transire neque satis tutum esse arbitrabatur, neque suae neque populi Romani dignitatis esse statuebat. itaque, etsi summa difficultas faciendi pontis proponebatur propter latitudinem, **rapiditatem** altitudinemque fluminis, tamen id sibi contendendum aut aliter non transducendum exercitum existimabat. rationem pontis hanc instituit. **tigna bina sesquipedalia**, paulum ab imo praeacuta dimensa ad altitudinem fluminis intervallo pedum duorum inter se iungebat. haec cum machinationi-

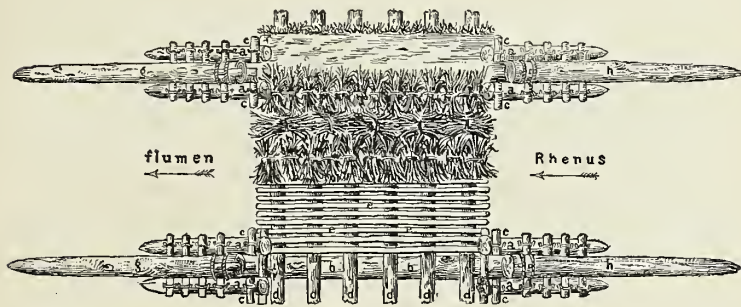


QUOMODO SUBLICAE AC DEFENSORES CUM TRABIBUS BIPEDALIBUS CONIUNCTA SINT.

bus immissa in flumen defixerat fistucisque adegerat, non sublicae modo directe ad perpendicularum, sed prone ac fastigate, ut secundum naturam fluminis procumberent, his item 15 contraria duo ad eundem modum iuncta intervallo pedum <sup>1</sup>quadragenum ab inferiore parte contra vim atque impetum fluminis

17. <sup>1</sup> *quadragenum*, A. & G. 40, e; G. 29, R. 3; H. 52, 3.

conversa statuebat. haec utraque **insuper bipedalibus** trabibus immissis, quantum eorum tignorum **iunctura distabat**, binis utrimque **fibulis** ab extrema parte distinebantur; quibus **disclusis** atque in contrariam partem revinctis tanta erat operis firmitudo atque ea rerum natura, ut, quo maior vis **aquae** se <sup>2</sup>in-5 citavisset, hoc **artius illigata** tenerentur. haec <sup>3</sup>**directa** materia iniecta **contexebantur** et longuriis **cratibusque consternebantur**; ac nihilo secius sublicae et ad inferiorem partem fluminis **oblique** agebantur, quae pro ariete subiectae et cum omni opere coniunctae vim fluminis <sup>4</sup>exciperent, et aliae item supra pontem <sup>10</sup>medioeri spatio, ut, si arborum **trunci** sive naves <sup>5</sup>deiciendi operis essent a barbaris missae, his defensoribus earum rerum vis minueretur, neu ponti nocerent.



PONTIS IUGUM SUPERNE VISUM.

### Topics for Study.

- (1.) The structure of the bridge (see plan). (2.) The indicative mood after *cum*.  
 (3.) The ablative of degree of difference. (4.) The uses of the participle. (5.)  
 Purpose clauses. (6.) The genitive of the gerundive. (7.) Distributive numerals.

17. <sup>2</sup> *incitavisset*, A. & G. 342; G. 631; H. 529, II. <sup>3</sup> *directa*, A. & G. 191; G. 324, R. 6; H. 443. <sup>4</sup> *exciperent*, A. & G. 317; G. 632; H. 497, I.  
<sup>5</sup> *deiciendi operis*, A. & G. 298 R.; G. 429, R. 2; H. 544, N. 2.

*Caesar enters the territories of the Sugambri, and proceeds into the country of the Ubiï, from whom he gains information regarding the Suebi. He returns to Gaul.*

18. Diebus decem, quibus materia coepta erat comportari, omni opere effecto exercitus traducitur. Caesar ad utramque partem pontis firmo praesidio relicto in fines Sugambrorum contendit. interim a compluribus civitatibus ad eum legati veniunt; quibus pacem atque amicitiam petentibus liberaliter respondit  
 5 obsidesque ad se adduci iubet. Sugambri ex eo tempore, quo pons institui coeptus est, fuga comparata hortantibus iis, quos ex Tenetris atque Usipetibus apud se habebant, finibus suis excesserant suaque omnia **exportaverant**, seque in **solitudinem**  
 10 ac silvas abdiderant.

#### Topic for Study.

The voice of *coept* when used with a passive infinitive.

19. Caesar paucos dies in eorum finibus moratus omnibus vicis aedificiisque incensis frumentisque **succisis**, se in fines Ubiorum recepit atque iis auxilium suum pollicitus, si ab Suebis premerentur, haec ab iis cognovit: Suebos, posteaquam per exploratores pontem fieri comperissent, more suo concilio habito nuntios in omnes partes dimisisse, uti de oppidis demigrarent, liberos, uxores suaque omnia in silvas deponerent, atque omnes, qui arma ferre possent, unum in locum convenirent: hunc esse  
 15 delectum <sup>1</sup> medium fere regionum earum, quas Suebi obtinerent: **hic** Romanorum adventum expectare atque ibi decertare constituisse. quod ubi Caesar comperit, omnibus his rebus confectis, quarum rerum causa traducere exercitum constituerat, ut Germanis metum iniceret, ut Sugambros ulcisceretur, ut Ubios **obsidione liberaret**, diebus omnino decem et octo trans Rhenum

19. <sup>1</sup> *medium*, A. & G. 193; G. 324, R. 6; H. 440, N. 2.



consumptis satis et ad laudem et ad **utilitatem** profectum arbitratus se in Galliam recepit pontemque rescidit.

**Topic for Study.**

Appositive clauses.

20-26. WAR IN BRITAIN.

*Caesar resolves to proceed into Britain.*

20. **Exigua** parte aestatis reliqua Caesar, etsi in his locis, quod omnis Gallia ad septentriones vergit, maturae sunt hiemes, tamen in Britanniam proficisci contendit, quod omnibus fere Gallicis 5 bellis hostibus nostris inde subministrata auxilia intellegebat et, si tempus anni ad bellum gerendum deficeret, tamen magno sibi usui fore arbitrabatur, si modo insulam <sup>1</sup>adisset et genus hominum perspexisset, loca, portus, aditus cognovisset; quae omnia fere Gallis erant **incognita**. neque enim temere praeter merca- 10 tores illo adit quisquam, neque iis ipsis quicquam, praeter oram maritimam atque eas regiones, quae sunt contra Gallias, notum est. itaque evocatis ad se undique mercatoribus neque quanta esset insulae magnitudo, neque quae aut quantae nationes inco- 15 lerent, neque quem usum belli haberent aut quibus institutis 15 uterentur, neque qui essent ad maiorum navium multitudinem idonei portus, reperire poterat.

**Topics for Study.**

(1.) Conditional sentences. (2.) Sequence of tenses.

*Volusenus is sent to examine the state of affairs on the island.*

*Ambassadors come from Britain.*

21. Ad haec cognoscenda, priusquam periculum faceret, idoneum esse arbitratus Gaium Volusenum cum navi longa praemittit. huic mandat, ut exploratis omnibus rebus ad se quam 20

20. *adisset*, A & G. 307, f; G. 598, R. 3; H. 509, N. 6.

primum revertatur. ipse eum omnibus copiis in Morinos proficiscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam **traiectus**. huc naves undique ex finitimis regionibus et <sup>1</sup>quam superiore aestate ad Veneticum bellum effecerat classem iubet convenire.   
 5 interim consilio eius cognito et per mercatores perlato ad **Britannos** a compluribus eius insulae civitatibus ad eum legati veniunt, qui polliceantur obsides <sup>2</sup>dare atque imperio populi Romani **obtemperare**. quibus auditis liberaliter pollicitus hortatusque, ut in ea sententia permanerent, eos domum remittit et   
 10 eum iis una **Commius**, quem ipse Atrebatibus superatis regem ibi constituerat, cuius et virtutem et consilium probabat et quem sibi **fidelem** arbitrabatur, cuiusque auctoritas in his regionibus <sup>3</sup>magni habebatur, mittit. huc imperat, quas possit, adeat civitates horteturque, ut populi Romani fidem sequantur, seque   
 15 celeriter eo venturum nuntiet. Volusenus perspectis regionibus omnibus, quantum ei facultatis dari potuit, qui navi egredi ac se barbaris committere non auderet, quinto die ad Caesarem revertitur quaeque ibi perspexisset, renuntiat.

#### Topics for Study.

(1.) The verbal noun *traiectus*. (2.) The genitive of price. (3.) The idiom *fidem sequantur*. (4.) The omission of *ut*.

#### *Caesar's passage across, and his arrival.*

**22.** Dum in his locis Caesar navium parandarum causa moratur, ex magna parte Morinorum ad eum legati venerunt, qui se de superioris temporis consilio **excusarent**, quod homines barbari et nostrae consuetudinis imperiti bellum populo Romano <sup>1</sup>fecissent, seque ea, quae imperasset, facturos polliceerentur. hoc sibi satis opportune Caesar accidisse arbitratus, quod neque post ter-

**21.** <sup>1</sup> *quam classem*, A. & G. 200, *b*; G. 618; H. 445, 9. <sup>2</sup> *dare*, A. & G. 330, *f*; G. 527, R. 2; H. 537, N. <sup>3</sup> *magni*, A. & G. 215, *c*; G. 399; H. 404.

**22.** <sup>1</sup> *fecissent*, A. & G. 341, *d*; G. 541; H. 516, II.



Castellum oppidum

**C A S S I**

Wolford  
Chipping  
Barnet  
Epping  
Roding R.  
Billerica  
Roufford  
Barking

Tamesis (R. Thames)  
Londinium (London)  
Epsom  
Sunbury  
Kingston  
Uxbridge  
Mole R.  
Dorking

Weymouth  
Wareham  
Tisbury  
Mildred R.  
Wareham  
Wareham  
Wareham  
Wareham  
Wareham

**B I B R O C I**

Wiltshire  
St. Mary's  
South Foreland  
West Langdon  
Suttons  
Wilden-share  
Great Langdon  
East Langdon  
St. Mary's at Cliffe  
St. Mary's

THE SMALL DOWNS  
RITVAE  
Sandwich  
North-C  
bourne  
Suttons  
Caesar bell Gall. V. 3-11.

Wiltshire  
St. Mary's  
South Foreland  
West Langdon  
Suttons  
Wilden-share  
Great Langdon  
East Langdon  
St. Mary's at Cliffe  
St. Mary's

Wiltshire  
St. Mary's  
South Foreland  
West Langdon  
Suttons  
Wilden-share  
Great Langdon  
East Langdon  
St. Mary's at Cliffe  
St. Mary's

oppid. caed. a Paris

**T R I N O B A N T E S**

Ingalstone  
Burnham  
Crouch R.  
Rooford

Sherness  
Rochester  
Milton  
Maidstone  
Charing  
Kingston  
Folkestone  
Dover

**C A A N T I U M**

Wareham  
Wareham  
Wareham  
Wareham  
Wareham  
Wareham  
Wareham  
Wareham

Wareham  
Wareham  
Wareham  
Wareham  
Wareham  
Wareham  
Wareham  
Wareham

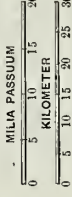
Wareham  
Wareham  
Wareham  
Wareham  
Wareham  
Wareham  
Wareham  
Wareham

Wareham  
Wareham  
Wareham  
Wareham  
Wareham  
Wareham  
Wareham  
Wareham

Wareham  
Wareham  
Wareham  
Wareham  
Wareham  
Wareham  
Wareham  
Wareham

**IN BRITANNIAM  
TRANSGRESSUS II.**

Caesar b. G. IV, 20-36; V, 1-23,  
anctore Alb. v. Kampen.



MILIA PASSUUM

0 5 10 15 20

KILOMETER

0 5 10 15 20 25 30

North Foreland

Stow R. Rainegate

Sandwich

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

Wolborough

gum hostem relinquere volebat neque belli gerendi propter anni tempus facultatem habebat neque has <sup>2</sup>tantularum rerum occupationes sibi Britanniae **anteponendas** iudicabat, magnum his obsidum uumerum imperat. quibus adductis eos in fidem recepit. navibus circiter LXXX **onerariis** coactis constratisque, quot <sup>5</sup>satis esse ad duas transportandas legiones existimabat, quod praeterea navium longarum habebat, quaestori, legatis praefectisque distribuit. huc accedebant XVIII onerariae naves, quae ex eo loco ab milibus passuum octo vento tenebantur, quo minus in eundem portum pervenire possent: has equitibus distribuit. <sup>10</sup>reliquum exercitum Quinto Titurio Sabino et Lucio Aurunculeio Cottae legatis in Menapios atque in eos pagos Morinorum, ab quibus ad eum legati non venerant, deducendum dedit. Publium Sulpicium **Rufum** legatum cum eo praesidio, quod satis esse arbitrabatur, portum tenere iussit. 15

#### Topics for Study.

(1.) Relative clauses of purpose. (2.) Diminutives. (3.) *Quod* expressing cause on the authority of another. (4.) The gerundive construction.

**23.** His constitutis rebus nactus idoneam ad navigandum tempestatem tertia fere vigilia **solvit** equitesque in ulteriorem portum progredi et naves **conscendere** et se sequi iussit. a quibus cum paulo tardius esset administratum, ipse hora diei circiter quarta cum primis navibus Britanniam attigit atque ibi in omni- <sup>20</sup>bus collibus **expositas** hostium copias armatas conspexit. cuius loci haec erat natura, atque ita montibus angustis mare continebatur, uti ex locis superioribus in **litus** telum adigi posset. hunc ad egrediendum **nequaquam** idoneum locum arbitratus, dum reliquae naves eo <sup>1</sup>convenirent, ad horam nonam in ancoris <sup>25</sup>expectavit. interim legatis tribunisque militum convocatis et

**22.** <sup>2</sup> *tantularum*, A. & G. 164, *a*; G. 786, 9, *b*; H. 332.

**23.** <sup>1</sup> *convenirent*, A. & G. 328; G. 574; H. 519.

quae ex Voluseno cognosset, et quae fieri vellet, ostendit monuitque, ut rei militaris ratio, maxime ut maritumae res postulerent, ut quae celerem atque **instabilem motum** <sup>2</sup> haberent, ad nutum et ad tempus omnes res ab iis administrarentur. his dimissis et 5 ventum et aestum uno tempore nactus secundum dato signo et sublatis ancoris circiter milia passuum **septem** ab eo loco progressus aperto ac plano litore naves constituit.

#### Topics for Study.

(1) *Dum* with the subjunctive. (2.) Relative clause expressing cause. (3) The omission of *ut*.

24. At barbari consilio Romanorum cognito praemisso equitatu et **essedariis**, quo plerumque genere in proeliis uti consuerunt, 10 reliquis copiis subsecuti nostros navibus egredi prohibebant. erat ob has causas summa difficultas, quod naves propter magnitudinem nisi in alto constitui non poterant, <sup>1</sup> militibus autem ignotis locis, impeditis manibus magno et gravi armorum onere oppressis simul et de navibus desiliendum et in fluctibus con- 15 sistendum et cum hostibus erat pugnandum, cum illi aut ex **arido** aut paulum in aquam progressi omnibus **membris** expeditis, notissimis locis audacter tela conicerent et equos **insuefactos** incitarent. quibus rebus nostri perterriti atque huius omnino <sup>2</sup> generis pugnae imperiti non eadem alacritate ac studio, quo in 20 pedestribus uti proeliis consuerant, nitebantur.

#### Topics for Study.

(1.) The difference between the construction after *prohibere* and that after other verbs of hindering. (2.) The dative of agent. (3.) The use of conjunctions. (4.) The genitive after adjectives.

23. <sup>2</sup> *haberent*, A. & G. 320, *e*; G. 637; II. 517, 3, I.

24. <sup>1</sup> *militibus*, A. & G. 232; G. 353; II. 388. <sup>2</sup> *generis*, A. & G. 218, *a*; G. 373; II. 399.

*Engagement with the Britons.*

25. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, naves longas, quarum et species erat barbaris inusitatio et motus ad usum expeditior, paulum removeri ab onerariis navibus et remis incitari et ad latus apertum hostium constitui atque inde **fundis, sagittis**, tormentis hostes propelli ac submoveri iussit; quae res magno usui nostris fuit. nam et navium **figura** et remorum motu et inusitato genere tormentorum permoti barbari constiterunt ac paulum modo pedem retulerunt. atque nostris militibus cunctantibus, maxime propter altitudinem maris, qui decimae legionis <sup>1</sup>**aquilam** ferebat, **contestatus** deos, ut ea res legioni **feliciter eveniret**: 10 ‘desilite,’ **inquit**, ‘milites, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prodere: **ego** certe **meum** reipublicae atque imperatori officium <sup>2</sup>**praestitero.**’ hoc cum magna voce dixisset, se ex navi proiecit atque in hostes aquilam ferre coepit. tum nostri cohortati <sup>3</sup>inter se, ne tantum **dedecus** admitteretur, universi ex navi desiluerunt; 15 hos item ex proximis primis navibus cum conspexissent, subsecuti hostibus appropinquant.

**Topics for Study.**

(1.) The dative of service. (2.) The idiom *pedem retulerunt*. (3.) The future perfect. (4.) Condensed expressions.

26. Pugnatum est ab utrisque acriter. nostri tamen, quod neque ordines servare neque **firmiter** insistere neque signa subsequi poterant, atque <sup>1</sup>**alius alia** ex navi, quibuscumque signis 20 occurrerat, se **aggregabat**, magnopere perturbabantur: hostes vero notis omnibus vadis, ubi ex litore aliquos singulares ex navi egredientes conspexerant, incitatis equis impeditos adoriebantur, plures paucos circumsistebant, alii ab latere aperto in

25. <sup>1</sup> *aquilam*, Introd. No. 103. <sup>2</sup> *praestitero*, A. & G. 381, R.; G. 236; H. 473. <sup>3</sup> *inter se*, A. & G. 196, f; G. 212; H. 448, N.

26. <sup>1</sup> *alius alia*, A. & G. 203, c; G. 306; H. 429, I.

universos tela conieciabant. quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, **scaphas** longarum navium, item **speculatoria** navigia militibus compleri iussit et, quos laborantes conspexerat, his subsidia submittebat. nostri, simul in arido constiterunt, suis omnibus  
 5 consecutis in hostes impetum fecerunt atque eos in fugam dederunt neque longius prosequi potuerunt, quod equites cursum tenere atque insulam capere non potuerant. hoc unum ad pristinam fortunam Caesari defuit.

#### Topics for Study.

(1.) The impersonal construction. (2.) The idiom *alius alia*. (3.) The adjective used substantively. (3.) The dative after compounds.

#### *The Britons surrender.*

27. Hostes proelio superati, simul atque se ex fuga recep-  
 10 runt, statim ad Caesarem legatos de pace miserunt, obsides duros quaeque imperasset facturos sese polliciti sunt. una cum his legatis Commius Atrebas venit, quem supra demonstraveram a Caesare in Britanniam praemissum. hunc illi e navi egressum, cum ad eos **oratoris** modo Caesaris mandata deferret, compre-  
 5 henderant atque in vincula coniecerant: tum proelio facto remiserunt et in petenda pace eius rei **culpam** in multitudinem contulerunt et propter **imprudenciam** ut ignosceretur, petiverunt. Caesar questus, quod, cum ultro in continentem legatis missis pacem ab se petissent, bellum sine causa intulissent, ignoscere  
 20 imprudenciae dixit obsidesque imperavit; quorum illi partem statim dederunt, partem ex longinquiore locis arcessitam paucis diebus sese duros dixerunt. interea suos remigrare in agros iusserunt, principesque undique convenire et se civitatesque suas Caesari **commendare** coeperunt.

#### Topic for Study.

The passive of the intransitive verb.



*A severe storm assails the Roman fleet.*

28. His rebus pace confirmata post diem quartum, quam est in Britanniam ventum, naves XVIII, de quibus supra demonstratum est, quae equites sustulerant, ex superiore portu leni vento solverunt. quae cum appropinquarent Britanniae et ex castris viderentur, tanta tempestas subito coorta est, ut nulla 5 earum cursum tenere posset, sed aliae eodem, unde erant profectae, referrentur, aliae ad inferiorem partem insulae, quae est propius solis occasum, magno <sup>1</sup>sui cum periculo deicerentur; quae tamen ancoris iactis cum fluctibus complerentur, necessario adversa nocte in altum **provectae** continentem petierunt. 10

**Topics for Study.**

- (1.) The two possible constructions after *propius*, *proxime*, *propior*, *proximus*.  
 (2.) The reflexive pronoun. (3.) The objective genitive.

29. Eadem nocte accidit, ut esset luna plena, qui dies maritimos aestus maximos in Oceano efficere consuevit, nostrisque id erat incognitum. ita uno tempore et longas naves, quibus Caesar exercitum transportandum curaverat quasque in aridum subduxerat, aestus compleverat, et onerarias, quae ad ancoras erant 15 deligatae, tempestas afflictabat, neque ulla nostris facultas aut administrandi aut **auxiliandi** dabatur. compluribus navibus fractis reliquae cum essent funibus, ancoris reliquisque armamentis amissis ad navigandum inutiles, magna, <sup>1</sup>id quod necesse erat accidere, totius exercitus **perturbatio** facta est. neque enim 20 naves erant aliae, quibus **reportari** possent, et omnia deerant, quae ad reficiendas naves erant usui, et, quod omnibus constabat hiemari in Gallia oportere, frumentum his in locis in hiemem provisum non erat.

**Topics for Study.**

- (1.) The gerundive construction. (2.) A neuter pronoun in apposition with a clause.

28. <sup>1</sup> *sui*, A. & G. 217; G. 361; H. 396, III.

29. <sup>1</sup> *id quod*, A. & G. 200, *e*; G. 616, R. 2; H. 445. 7

*The Britons take advantage of this opportunity. Caesar's provision against emergencies.*

30. Quibus rebus eognitis princeps Britanniae, qui post proelium ad Caesarem convenerant, inter se collocuti, eum equites et naves et frumentum Romanis deesse intellegent et paucitatem militum ex eastrorum exiguitate cognoscerent, quae <sup>1</sup>hoc erant  
5 etiam angustiora, quod sine impedimentis Caesar legiones transportaverat, optimum factu esse duxerunt rebellione faeta frumento commeatuque nostros prohibere et rem in hiemem producere, quod his superatis aut reditu intereluis neminem postea belli inferendi causa in Britanniam transiturum confidebant.

#### Topic for Study.

The ablative of degree of difference.

10 31. Itaque rursus coniuuratione faeta paulatim ex castris discedere ac suos clam ex agris deducere eooperunt. at Caesar, etsi nondum eorum consilia cognoverat, tamen et ex eventu navium suarum et ex eo, quod obsides dare intermiserant, fore id, quod  
15 accidit, suspicabatur. itaque ad omnes casus subsidia comparabat. nam et frumentum ex agris cotidie in eastra conferebat et  
1 quae gravissime **afflictae** erant naves, earum materia atque **aere** ad reliquas refeiendas utebatur et quae ad eas res erant usui ex continenti eomportari iubebat. itaque, cum summo studio a militibus administraretur, duodecim navibus amissis, reliquis ut  
20 navigari eommode posset, effecit.

#### Topics for Study.

(1.) The antecedent in the relative clause. (2.) The signification of the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect of *cognosco*.

30. <sup>1</sup> *hoc*, A. & G. 250; G. 400; H. 423.

31. <sup>1</sup> *quae* — *naves*, A. & G. 200. *b*; G. 618; H. 445, 9.

*The stratagem of the Britons.*

32. Dum ea <sup>1</sup>geruntur, legione ex consuetudine una frumentatum missa, quae appellabatur septima, neque ulla ad id tempus belli suspicione interposita, cum pars hominum in agris remaneret, pars etiam in castra <sup>2</sup>ventitaret, ii, qui pro portis castrorum in statione erant, Caesari nuntiaverunt **pulverem** maiorem, <sup>5</sup>quam consuetudo ferret, in ea parte videri, quam in partem legio iter fecisset. Caesar id, quod erat, suspicatus, aliquid novi a barbaris initum consilii, cohortes, quae in stationibus erant, secum in eam partem proficisci, ex reliquis duas in stationem succedere, reliquas <sup>3</sup>armari et **confestim** sese subsequi <sup>10</sup>iussit. cum paulo longius a castris processisset, suos ab hostibus premi atque aegre sustinere et conferta legione ex omnibus partibus tela conici animadvertit. nam quod omni ex reliquis partibus **demesso** frumento pars una erat reliqua, suspicati hostes huc nostros esse venturos noctu in silvis **delituerant**; <sup>15</sup>tum dispersos depositis armis in **metendo** occupatos subito adorti paucis interfectis reliquos incertis ordinibus perturbaverant, simul equitatu atque essedis circumdederant.

**Topics for Study.**

(1.) *Dum* with the present indicative. (2) The partitive genitive. (3.) The reflexive use of verbs. (4.) Frequentative verbs.

*Their mode of fighting from chariots.*

33. Genus hoc est ex essedis pugnae: primo per omnes partes **perequant** et tela coniciunt atque ipso terrore equorum <sup>20</sup>et strepitu rotarum ordines plerumque perturbant, et cum se inter equitum <sup>1</sup>**turmas** **insinuaverunt**, ex essedis desiliunt et

32. <sup>1</sup> *geruntur*, A. & G. 276, *e*; G. 220, R. 1; H. 467, III, 4. <sup>2</sup> *ventitaret*, A. & G. 167, *b*; H. 336. <sup>3</sup> *armari*, A. & G. 111, *b*, N. 1; G. 209; H. 455.

33. <sup>1</sup> *turmas*, Introd. No. 120.

pedibus proeliantur. aurigae interim paulatim ex proelio excedunt atque ita **currus** collocant, ut, si illi a multitudine hostium premantur, expeditum ad suos **receptum** habeant. ita mobilitatem equitum, **stabilitatem** peditum in proeliis praestant ac  
 5 tantum usu cotidiano et exercitatione efficiunt, uti in declivi ac praecipiti loco incitatos equos sustinere et brevi **moderari** ac **flectere** et per **temonem** **percurrere** et in iugo insistere et se inde in **currus** citissime recipere consuerint.

#### Topics for Study.

- (1.) The objective genitive. (2.) The reflexive pronoun. (3.) Subjunctive of result. (4.) The use of the participles.

*They advance upon the Roman camp.*

**34.** Quibus rebus perturbatis nostris **novitate** pugnae tempore  
 10 opportunissimo Caesar auxilium tulit: namque eius adventu hostes constiterunt, nostri se ex timore receperunt. quo facto ad lacessendum et ad committendum proelium alienum esse tempus arbitratus suo se loco continuit et brevi tempore intermisso in castra legiones reduxit. dum haec geruntur, nostris omnibus  
 15 occupatis qui erant in agris reliqui discesserunt. secutae sunt continuos complures dies tempestates, quae et nostros in castris  
 1 continerent et hostem a pugna prohiberent. interim barbari nuntios in omnes partes dimiserunt paucitatemque nostrorum militum suis praedicaverunt et, quanta **praedae** faciendae atque  
 20 in perpetuum sui liberandi facultas daretur, si Romanos castris expulissent, demonstraverunt. his rebus celeriter magna multitudine **peditatus** equitatusque coacta ad castra venerunt.

#### Topics for Study.

- (1.) The various uses of the ablative in this chapter. (2.) A-syndeton. (3.) The gerund and gerundive constructions. (4.) Relative clauses of result. (5.) Indirect question.

**34.** <sup>1</sup> *continerent*, A. & G. 319; G. 633; II. 500, 1.

*Caesar defeats them and returns to Gaul.*

35. Caesar, etsi idem, quod superioribus diebus acciderat, fore videbat, ut, si essent hostes pulsi, celeritate periculum **effugerent**, tamen nactus equites circiter XXX, quos Commius Atrebas, de quo ante dictum est, secum transportaverat, legiones in acie pro castris constituit. commisso proelio diutius nostrorum militum 5 impetum hostes ferre non potuerunt ac terga verterunt. quos tanto <sup>1</sup>spatio scuti, quantum cursu et viribus efficere potuerunt, complures ex iis occiderunt, deinde omnibus longe lateque aedificiis incensis se in castra receperunt.

**Topics for Study.**

- (1) Conditional sentences in indirect discourse. (2.) The reflexive pronoun.

36. Eodem die legati ab hostibus missi ad Caesarem de pace 10 venerunt. his Caesar numerum obsidum, quem antea imperaverat, **duplicavit** eosque in continentem adduci iussit, quod propinqua die **aequinocitii** infirmis navibus hiemi navigationem subiciendam non existimabat. ipse idoneam tempestatem nactus paulo post mediam noctem naves solvit; quae omnes incolumes 15 ad continentem pervenerunt; sed ex iis onerariae duae eisdem, quos reliqui, portus capere non potuerunt et paulo **infra** delatae sunt.

**Topics for Study.**

- (1.) The idiom *mediam noctem*. (2.) The gerundive construction. (3.) Deponent verbs. (4.) The idiom *portus capere*.

## 37-38. WAR WITH THE MORINI AND MENAPII.

*The Morini attack a detachment of the Romans.*

37. Quibus ex navibus cum essent expositi milites circiter **trecenti** atque in castra contenderent, Morini, quos Caesar in Britanniam proficiscens pacatos reliquerat, spe praedae adducti primo non ita magno suorum numero circumsteterunt ac, si sese

35 <sup>1</sup> *spatio*, A. & G. 257, *b*; G 387; H 379, 2.

interfici nollent, arma ponere iusserunt. cum illi <sup>1</sup>orbe facto sese defenderent, celeriter ad clamorem hominum circiter milia sex convenerunt. qua re nuntiata Caesar omnem ex castris equitatum <sup>2</sup>suis auxilio misit. interim nostri milites impetum  
 5 hostium sustinuerunt atque amplius horis quattuor fortissime pugnauerunt et paucis vulneribus acceptis complures ex his occiderunt. postea vero quam equitatus noster in conspectum venit, hostes abiectis armis terga verterunt magnusque eorum numerus est occisus.

#### Topics for Study.

(1.) *Cum* with the subjunctive. (2.) The ablative absolute. (3.) The dative of service. (4.) The two possible constructions after *amplius*, *plus*, etc. (5.) Tmesis as illustrated in *postea* — *quam*.

*Labiennus subduces them. Titurius and Cotta lay waste the territories of the Menapii. Caesar fixes his winter-quarters among the Belgae. A thanksgiving is decreed at Rome.*

10 **38.** Caesar postero die T. Labienum legatum cum iis legionibus, quas ex Britannia reducerat, in Morinos, qui rebellionem fecerant, misit. qui cum propter <sup>1</sup>siccitates paludum, quo se recipere non haberent, quo superiore anno **perfugio** fuerant  
 15 et L. Cotta legati, qui in Menapiorum fines legiones duxerant, omnibus eorum agris vastatis, frumentis succisis, aedificiis incensis, quod Menapii se omnes in densissimas silvas abdiderant, se ad Caesarem receperunt. Caesar in Belgis omnium legionum hiberna constituit. eo duae omnino civitates ex Britannia  
 20 obsides miserunt, reliquae neglexerunt. his rebus gestis ex litteris Caesaris dierum viginti supplicatio a senatu decreta est.

#### Topics for Study.

(1.) The relative pronoun used for a demonstrative and a conjunction. (2.) Relative clause of characteristic. (3.) The construction after *utor*.

**37.** <sup>1</sup> *orbe facto*, Introd. No. 117, 2). <sup>2</sup> *suis auxilio*, A. & G. 233; G. 350; H. 390, II.

**38.** <sup>1</sup> *siccitates*, A. & G. 75, c; G. 195, 5; H. 130, 2.

C. IULII CAESARIS  
DE BELLO GALLICO

COMMENTARIUS QUINTUS.

---

1-23. CAESAR'S SECOND EXPEDITION INTO BRITAIN.

*Caesar orders a fleet to be built. He subdues the Pirustae.*



1. L. Domitio, Ap. Claudio consulibus discedens ab hibernis Caesar in Italiam, ut quotannis facere consuevit, legatis imperat, quos legionibus praefecerat, uti quam plurimas possent hieme naues aedificandas veteresque reficiendas curarent. earum modum formamque demonstrat. ad celeritatem **onerandi subductiones**que paulo facit humiliores, quam quibus in nostro mari uti consuevimus, atque id eo magis, quod propter crebras commutationes aestuum minus magnos ibi fluctus fieri cognoverat, ad onera ac multitudinem iumentorum transportanda paulo latiores, quam quibus in reliquis utimur maribus. has omnes **actuarias** imperat fieri, quam ad rem **humilitas** multum adiuvat. ea, quae sunt usui ad armandas naues, ex Hispania **apportari** iubet. ipse conventibus Galliae citerioris **peractis** in Illyricum proficiscitur, quod a **Pirustis** finitimam partem provinciae **incursionibus** vas-

tari audiebat. eo cum venisset, civitatibus milites imperat certumque in locum convenire iubet. qua re nuntiata Pirustae legatos ad eum mittunt, qui doceant nihil earum rerum publico factum consilio, seseque paratos esse demonstrant omnibus  
 5 rationibus de iniuriis satisfacere. **percepta** oratione eorum Caesar obsides imperat eosque ad certam diem adduci iubet; nisi ita fecerint, sese bello civitatem persecuturum demonstrat. iis ad diem adductis, ut imperaverat, **arbitros** inter civitates dat, qui **litem** aestiment poenamque constituent.

*He returns to Gaul; marches against the Treveri.*

10 **2.** His confectis rebus conventibusque peractis in citeriorem Galliam revertitur atque inde ad exercitum proficiscitur. eo cum venisset, circuitis omnibus hibernis singulari militum studio in summa omnium rerum inopia circiter sexcentas eius generis, cuius supra demonstravimus, naves, et longas XXVIII inventi  
 15 instructas neque multum abesse ab eo, quin paucis diebus deduci possint. **collaudatis** militibus atque iis, qui negotio praefuerant, quid fieri velit, ostendit atque omnes ad portum **Itium** convenire iubet, quo ex portu commodissimum in Britanniam trajectum esse cognoverat, circiter milium passuum XXX [**transmissum**] a  
 20 continenti: huic rei quod satis esse visum est militum reliquit. ipse cum legionibus expeditis IIII et equitibus DCCC in fines Treverorum proficiscitur, quod hi neque ad concilia veniebant neque imperio parebant Germanosque Transrhenanos sollicitare dicebantur.

*Indutiomarus and Cingetorix.*

25 **3.** Haec civitas longe plurimum totius Galliae equitatu valet magnasque habet copias peditum, Rhenumque, ut supra demonstravimus, **tangit**. in ea civitate duo de principatu inter se contendebant, **Indutiomarus** et **Cingetorix**; ex quibus alter,



simul atque de Caesaris legionumque adventu cognitum est, ad eum venit, se suosque omnes in officio futuros neque ab amicitia populi Romani defecturos confirmavit quaeque in Treveris gere-rentur ostendit. at Indutiomarus equitatum peditatumque cogere iisque, qui per aetatem in armis esse non poterant, in silvam 5 **Arduennam** abditis, quae ingenti magnitudine per medios fines Treverorum a flumine Rheno ad initium Remorum pertinet, bellum parare instituit; sed posteaquam nonnulli principes ex ea civitate et **familiaritate** Cingetorigis adducti et adventu nostri exercitus perterriti ad Caesarem venerunt et de suis privatim 10 rebus ab eo petere coeperunt, quoniam civitati **consulere** non possent, veritus, ne ab omnibus desereretur, [Indutiomarus] legatos ad Caesarem mittit: sese **idcirco** ab suis discedere atque ad eum venire noluisse, quo facilius civitatem in officio contineret, ne omnis nobilitatis discessu plebs propter imprudentiam 15 **laberetur**: itaque esse civitatem in sua potestate, seque, si Caesar permitteret, ad eum in castra venturum, suas civitatisque fortunas eius fidei permissurum.

4. Caesar, etsi intellegebat, qua de causa ea dicerentur, quaeque eum res ab instituto consilio deterreret, tamen, ne aetatem in 20 Treveris consumere cogeretur, omnibus ad **Britannicum** bellum rebus comparatis, Indutiomarum ad se cum CC obsidibus venire iussit. his adductis, in iis filio propinquisque eius omnibus, quos nominatim evocaverat, consolatus Indutiomarum hortatusque est, uti in officio permaneret; nihilo tamen secius principibus Treverorum ad se convocatis hos singillatim Cingetorigi 25 conciliavit, quod cum merito eius ab se fieri intellegebat, tum magni interesse arbitrabatur eius auctoritatem inter suos quam plurimum valere, cuius tam egregiam in se voluntatem perspexisset. id tulit factum graviter Indutiomarus, suam gratiam inter 30 suos minui, et, qui iam ante inimico in nos animo fuisset, multo gravius hoc dolore **exarsit**.

*Caesar goes to port Itius. Dumnorix shows treachery and is slain.*

5 His rebus constitutis Caesar ad portum Itium eum legioni-  
bus pervenit. ibi cognoscit LX naves, quae in **Meldis** factae  
erant, tempestate reiectas eursum tenere non potuisse atque  
eodem, unde erant profectae, revertisse; reliquas paratas ad  
10 navigandum atque omnibus rebus instructas invenit. eodem  
totius Galliae equitatus convenit numero milium quattuor prin-  
cipesque omnibus ex civitatibus; ex quibus perpaucos, quorum  
in se fidem perspexerat, relinquere in Gallia, reliquos obsidum  
loco secum ducere decreverat, quod, cum ipse abesset, motum  
10 Galliae verebatur.

6. Erat una cum ceteris Dumnorix Haednus, ac quo ante ab  
nobis dictum est. hunc secum habere in primis constituerat,  
quod cum cupidum rerum novarum, cupidum imperii, magni  
animi, magnae inter Gallos auctoritatis cognoverat. accedebat  
15 huc, quod iam in concilio Haeduorum Dumnorix dixerat sibi a  
Caesare regnum civitatis deferri; quod dictum Haedni graviter  
ferebant neque recusandi aut deprecandi causa legatos ad Caesarem  
mittere audebant. id factum ex suis hospitibus Caesar  
cognoverat. ille omnibus primo precibus petere contendit, ut in  
20 Gallia relinqueretur, partim, quod **insuetus** navigandi mare  
timeret, partim, quod **religionibus** impediri sese diceret. postea-  
quam id **obstinate** sibi negari vidit, omni spe impetrandi  
**adempta** principes Galliae sollicitare, **sevocare** singulos hortari-  
que coepit, uti in continenti remanerent; metu **territare**: non  
25 sine causa fieri, ut Gallia omni nobilitate **spoliaretur**, id esse  
consilium Caesaris, ut, quos in conspectu Galliae interficere vere-  
retur, hos omnes in Britanniam traductos necaret; fidem reliquis  
interponere, iusiurandum poscere, ut, quod esse ex usu Galliae  
intellexissent, communi consilio administrarent. haec a complu-  
30 ribus ad Caesarem deferebantur.

7. Qua re cognita Caesar, quod tantum civitati Haeduae dignitatis tribuebat, coercendum atque deterrendum, quibuscumque rebus posset, Dumnorigem statuebat; quod longius eius amentiam progredi videbat, prospiciendum, ne quid sibi ac reipublicae nocere posset. itaque dies circiter XXV in eo loco **commoratus**, 5 quod **Corus** ventus navigationem impediēbat, qui magnam partem omnis temporis in his locis **flare** consuevit, dabat operam, ut in officio Dumnorigem contineret, nihilo tamen secius omnia eius consilia cognosceret: tandem idoneam nactus tempestatem milites equitesque conscendere in naves iubet. at omnium im- 10 peditis animis Dumnorix cum equitibus Haeduorum a castris insciente Caesare domum discedere coepit. qua re nuntiata Caesar intermissa profectioe atque omnibus rebus **postpositis** magnam partem equitatus ad eum insequendum mittit **retrahi-** que imperat; si vim faciat neque pareat, interfici iubet, nihil 15 hunc se absente pro **sano** facturum arbitratus, qui praesentis imperium neglexisset. ille enim revocatus resistere ac se manu defendere suorumque fidem implorare coepit, saepe **clamitans** liberum se liberaeque esse civitatis. illi, ut erat imperatum, circumstant hominem atque interficiunt; at equites Haedui ad 20 Caesarem omnes revertuntur.

*Caesar crosses into Britain.*

8. His rebus gestis Labieno in continente cum tribus legionibus et equitum milibus duobus relicto, ut portus tueretur et rem frumentariam provideret quaeque in Gallia gererentur cognosceret consiliumque pro tempore et pro re caperet, ipse cum 25 quinque legionibus et pari numero equitum, quem in continenti reliquerat, ad solis occasum naves solvit et leni **Africo** provectus media circiter nocte vento intermisso cursum non tenuit et longius delatus aestu orta luce sub sinistra Britanniam relictam conspexit. tum rursus aestus commutationem secutus remis 30

contendit, ut eam partem insulae caperet, qua optimum esse egressum superiore aestate cognoverat. qua in re admodum fuit militum virtus laudanda, qui vectoriis gravibusque navigiis non intermisso remigandi labore longarum navium cursum adae-  
 5 quarunt. accessum est ad Britanniam omnibus navibus meridiano fere tempore, neque in eo loco hostis est visus; sed, ut postea Caesar ex captivis comperit, eum magnae manus eo convenissent, multitudine navium perterritae, quae cum annotinis privatisque, quas sui quisque commodi fecerat, amplius octingentae uno erant  
 10 visae tempore, a litore discesserant ac se in superiora loca abdiderant.

*The Britons make a bold resistance but are defeated.*

9. Caesar exposito exercitu et loco castris idoneo capto, ubi ex captivis cognovit, quo in loco hostium copiae consedisent, cohortibus decem ad mare relictis et equitibus trecentis, qui praesidio  
 15 navibus essent, de tertia vigilia ad hostes contendit eo minus veritus navibus, quod in litore molli atque aperto deligatas ad ancoram relinquebat, et praesidio navibus Quintum Atrium praefecit. ipse noctu progressus milia passuum circiter XII hostium copias conspicatus est. illi equitatu atque essedis ad flumen  
 20 progressi ex loco superiore nostros prohibere et proelium committere coeperunt. repulsi ab equitatu se in silvas abdiderunt locum naeti egregie et natura et opere munitum, quem domestici belli, ut videbatur, causa iam ante praeparaverant: nam crebris arboribus succisis omnes introitus erant praecclusi. ipsi ex  
 25 silvis rari propugnabant nostrosque intra munitiones ingredi prohibebant. at milites legionis septimae testudine facta et aggere ad munitiones adiecto locum ceperunt eosque ex silvis expulerunt paucis vulneribus acceptis. sed eos fugientes longius Caesar prosequi vetuit, et quod loci naturam ignorabat, et quod  
 30 magna parte diei consumpta munitioni castrorum tempus relinquere volebat.

*The Roman fleet suffer from a storm. Labienus is ordered to build more ships.*

10. Postridie eius diei mane **tripartito** milites equitesque in **expeditionem** misit, ut eos, qui fugerant, persequerentur. his aliquantum itineris progressis, eum iam extremi essent in prospectu, equites a Quinto Atrio ad Caesarem venerunt, qui nuntiarent superiore nocte maxima coorta tempestate prope omnes 5 naves afflictas atque in litore eiectas esse, quod neque ancorae funesque subsisterent, neque nautae gubernatoresque vim pati tempestatis possent: itaque ex eo concursu navium magnum esse incommodum acceptum.

11. His rebus cognitis Caesar legiones equitatumque revocari 10 atque in itinere resistere iubet; ipse ad naves revertitur; eadem fere, quae ex nuntiis literisque cognoverat, coram perspicit, sic ut amissis circiter XL navibus reliquae tamen refici posse magno negotio viderentur. itaque ex legionibus **fabros** deligit et ex continenti alios arcessi iubet; Labieno scribit, ut, quam pluri- 15 mas posset, iis legionibus, quae sunt apud eum, naves instituat. ipse, etsi res erat multae operae ac laboris, tamen commodissimum esse statuit omnes naves subduci et eum castris una munitione coniungi. in his rebus circiter dies X consumit ne nocturnis quidem temporibus ad laborem militum intermissis. 20 subductis navibus castrisque egregie munitis easdem copias, quas ante, praesidio navibus reliquit, ipse eodem, unde redierat, proficiscitur. eo cum venisset, maiores iam undique in eum locum copiae Britannorum convenierant, summa imperii bellique administrandi eorum consilio permissa **Cassivellauno**, cuius fines a 25 maritimis civitatibus flumen dividit, quod appellatur **Tamesis**, a mari circiter milia passuum LXXX. huic superiore tempore cum reliquis civitatibus continentia bella intercesserant; sed nostro adventu permoti Britanni hunc toti bello imperioque praefecerant.

*A description of Britain and its inhabitants.*

12. Britanniae pars interior ab iis innotuit, quos natos in insula ipsi memoria proditum dicunt, maritima pars ab iis, qui praedae ac belli inferendi causa ex Belgio transierant (qui omnes fere iis nominibus civitatum appellantur, quibus orti ex civitatibus eo pervenerunt) et bello illato ibi permanserunt atque agros colere coeperunt. hominum est infinita multitudo ereberrimaeque aedificia fere Gallieis consimilia, pecorum magnus numerus. utuntur aut aere [aut nummo aereo] aut taleis ferreis ad certum pondus examinatis pro nummo. nascitur ibi plumbum album in mediterraneis regionibus, in maritimis ferrum, sed eius exigua est copia; aere utuntur importato. materia cuiusque generis ut in Gallia est, praeter fagum atque abietem. leporem et gallinam et anserem gustare fas non putant; haec tamen alunt animi voluptatisque causa. loca sunt temperatiora quam in Gallia remissioribus frigoribus.

13. Insula natura triquetra, cuius unum latus est contra Galliam. huius lateris alter angulus, qui est ad Cantium, quo fere omnes ex Gallia naves appellantur, ad orientem solem, inferior ad meridiem spectat. hoc pertinet circiter milia passuum quingenta. alterum vergit ad Hispaniam atque occidentem solem; qua ex parte est Hibernia, dimidio minor, ut aestimatur, quam Britannia, sed pari spatio transmissus atque ex Gallia est in Britanniam. in hoc medio cursu est insula, quae appellatur Mona; complures praeterea minores obiectae insulae existimantur, de quibus insulis nonnulli scripserunt, dies continuos XXX sub bruma esse noctem. nos nihil de eo peregrinationibus reperiebamus, nisi certis ex aqua mensuris breviores esse quam in continenti noctes videbamus. huius est longitudo lateris, ut fert illorum opinio, septingentorum milium. tertium est contra septentriones, cui parti nulla est obiecta terra, sed eius angulus

lateris maxime ad Germaniam spectat. hoc milia passuum octingenta in longitudinem esse existimatur. ita omnis insula est in circuitu **vicies** centum milium passuum.

**14.** Ex his omnibus longe sunt humanissimi, qui Cantium incolunt, quae regio est maritima omnis, neque multum a Gallica differunt consuetudine. interiores plerique frumenta non **serunt**, sed lacte et **carne** vivunt pellibusque sunt **vestiti**. omnes vero se Britanni **vitro inficiunt**, quod **caeruleum** efficit **colorem**, atque hoc **horridiore** sunt in pugna **aspectu**; **capillo**-que sunt **promisso** atque omni parte corporis **rasa** praeter caput **10** et **labrum** superius. uxores habent deni **duodenique** inter se communes et maxime fratres cum fratribus **parentesque** cum liberis; sed si qui sunt ex his nati, eorum habentur liberi, quo primum **virgo** quaeque deducta est.

*Cassivellaunus, the leader of the Britons, is defeated. Caesar advances as far as the Thames.*

**15.** Equites hostium essedariique acriter proelio cum equitatu **15** nostro in itinere conflixerunt, tamen ut nostri omnibus partibus superiores fuerint atque eos in silvas collesque compulerint; sed compluribus interfectis cupidius insecuti nonnullos ex suis amiserunt. at illi intermisso spatio imprudentibus nostris atque occupatis in munitione castrorum subito se ex silvis eiecerunt im- **20** petuque in eos facto, qui erant in statione pro castris collocati, acriter pugnaverunt duabusque missis subsidio cohortibus a Caesare atque his primis legionum duarum, cum haec **pereziguo** intermisso [loci] spatio inter se constitissent, novo genere pugnae perterritis nostris per medios audacissime perreperunt seque inde **25** incolumes receperunt. eo die Quintus **Laberius Durus**, tribunus militum, interficitur. illi pluribus submissis cohortibus repelluntur.

16. Toto hoc in genere pugnae, cum sub oculis omnium ac pro castris dimicaretur, intellectum est nostros propter gravitatem armorum, quod neque insequi cedentes possent neque ab signis discedere auderent, minus aptos esse ad huius generis  
 5 hostem, equites autem magno cum periculo proelio dimicare, propterea quod illi etiam **consulto** plerumque cederent et, cum paulum ab legionibus nostros removissent, ex essedis desilirent et pedibus **dispari** proelio contenderent. equestris autem proelii ratio et cedentibus et insequentibus par atque idem periculum  
 10 inferebat. accedebat huc, ut nunquam conferti, sed rari magnisque intervallis proeliarentur stationesque dispositas haberent, atque alios alii deinceps exciperent, integrique et recentes defatigatis succedrent.

17. Postero die procul a castris hostes in collibus constitue-  
 15 runt rarique se ostendere et lenius, quam pridie, nostros equites proelio lacessere coeperunt. sed meridie, cum Caesar **pabulandi** causa tres legiones atque omnem equitatum cum Gaio **Trebonio** legato misisset, repente ex omnibus partibus ad **pabulatores** **advolaverunt**, sic uti ab signis legionibusque non **absisterent**.  
 20 nostri acriter in eos impetu facto repulerunt neque finem sequendi fecerunt, quoad subsidio confisi equites, cum post se legiones viderent, praecipites hostes egerunt magnoque eorum numero interfecto neque sui eolligendi neque consistendi aut ex  
 25 essedis desiliendi facultatem dederunt. ex hac fuga protinus, quae undique convenerant, auxilia discesserunt, neque post id tempus unquam summis nobiscum copiis hostes contenderunt.

18. Caesar cognito consilio eorum ad flumen Tamesim in fines Cassivellauni exercitum duxit; quod flumen uno omnino loco pedibus, atque hoc aegre, transiri potest. eo eum venisset, animum advertit ad alteram fluminis ripam magnas esse copias  
 30 hostium instructas. ripa autem erat acutis **sudibus praefixis**



munita, eiusdemque generis sub aqua defixae sudes flumine **tegebantur**. his rebus cognitis a captivis perfugisque Caesar praemisso equitatu confestim legiones subsequi iussit. sed ea celeritate atque eo impetu milites ierunt, cum capite solo ex aqua **exstarent**, ut hostes impetum legionum atque equitum 5 sustinere non possent ripasque dimitterent ac se fugae mandarent.

**19.** Cassivellaunus, ut supra demonstravimus, omni deposita spe contentionis dimissis amplioribus copiis, milibus circiter quattuor essedariorum relictis itinera nostra servabat, paulumque 10 ex via excedebat locisque impeditis ac silvestribus sese occultabat atque iis regionibus, quibus nos iter facturos cognoverat, pecora atque homines ex agris in silvas compellebat et, cum equitatus noster liberius praedandi vastandique causa se in agros eiecerat, omnibus viis **semitis**que essedarios ex silvis emittebat et 15 magno cum periculo nostrorum equitum cum iis confligebat, atque hoc metu latius vagari prohibebat. relinquebatur, ut neque longius ab agmine legionum discedi Caesar pateretur et **tantum** in agris vastandis **incendiis**que faciendis hostibus noceretur, quantum labore atque itinere legionarii milites efficere 20 poterant.

*The Trinobantes and several other tribes surrender. The return to Gaul.*

**20.** Interim **Trinobantes**, prope firmissima earum regionum civitas, ex qua **Mandubracius** adulescens Caesaris fidem secutus ad eum in continentem Galliam venerat, cuius pater in ea civitate regnum obtinuerat interfectusque erat a Cassivellauno, ipse 25 fuga mortem vitaverat, legatos ad Caesarem mittunt pollicenturque, sese ei dedituros atque imperata facturos; petunt, ut Mandubracium ab iniuria Cassivellauni defendat atque in civitatem

mittat, qui praesit imperiumque obtineat. his Caesar imperat obsides quadraginta frumentumque exercitui Mandubraciumque ad eos mittit. illi imperata celeriter fecerunt, obsides ad numerum frumentumque miserunt.

5 **21.** Trinobantibus defensis atque ab omni militum iniuria prohibitis **Cenimagni**, **Segontiaci**, **Ancalites**, **Bibroci**, **Cassi** legionibus missis sese Caesari dedunt. ab his cognoscit non longe ex eo loco oppidum Cassivellauni abesse silvis paludibusque munitum, quo satis magnus hominum pecorisque numerus con-  
10 venerit. oppidum autem Britanni vocant, cum silvas impeditas vallo atque fossa munierunt, quo incursionis hostium vitandae causa convenire consuerunt. eo proficiscitur eum legionibus: locum reperit egregie natura atque opere munitum; tamen hunc  
15 duabus ex partibus oppugnare contendit. hostes paulisper morati militum nostrorum impetum non tulerunt seseque alia ex parte oppidi eiecerunt. magnus ibi numerus pecoris repertus, multique in fuga sunt comprehensi atque interfecti.

**22.** Dum haec in his locis geruntur, Cassivellaunus ad Cantium, quod esse ad mare supra demonstravimus, quibus regionibus  
20 quattuor reges praerant, **Cingetorix**, **Carvilius**, **Taximagulus**, **Segovax**, nuntios mittit atque his imperat, uti coactis omnibus copiis castra navalia de improvise adoriantur atque oppugnent. si eum ad castra venissent, nostri eruptione facta multis eorum interfectis, capto etiam nobili duce **Lugotorige**, suos incolomes  
25 reducerunt. Cassivellaunus hoc proelio nuntiato, tot detrimentis acceptis, vastatis finibus, maxime etiam permotus defectione civitatum, legatos per Atrebatem Commium de deditioe ad Caesarem mittit. Caesar, cum constitisset hiemare in continenti propter repentinos Galliae motus, neque multum aestatis super-  
30 esset, atque id facile **extrahi** posse intellegeret, obsides imperat et, quid in annos singulos vectigalis populo Romano Britannia

penderet, constituit; interdicit atque imperat Cassivellauno, ne Mandubracio neu Trinobantibus noceat.

**23.** Obsidibus acceptis exercitum reducit ad mare, naves invenit refectas. his deductis, quod et captivorum magnum numerum habebat, et nonnullae tempestate **deperierant** naves, 5 duobus comitatibus exercitum reportare instituit. ac sic accidit, uti ex tanto navium numero tot navigationibus neque hoc neque superiore anno ulla omnino navis, quae milites portaret, desideraretur; at ex iis, quae **inanes** ex continenti ad eum remitterentur et prioris comitatus expositis militibus et quas 10 postea Labienus faciendas curaverat numero LX, perpaucae locum caperent, reliquae fere omnes reicerentur quas cum aliquamdiu Caesar frustra expectasset, ne anni tempore a navigatione **excluderetur**, quod aequinoctium suberat, necessario angustius milites collocavit ac summa tranquillitate consecuta, 15 secunda inita cum solvisset vigilia, prima luce terram attigit omnesque incolumes naves perduxit.

#### 24-51. WAR WITH AMBIORIX.

*The Roman army is more widely scattered than usual on account of a scarcity of provisions. There is a sudden revolt of Ambiorix and Cativolcus.*

**24.** Subductis navibus concilioque Gallorum **Samarobrivae** peracto, quod eo anno frumentum in Gallia propter siccitates angustius **provenerat**, coactus est aliter ac superioribus annis 20 exercitum in hibernis collocare legionesque in plures civitates distribuere. ex quibus unam in Morinos ducendam Gaius Fabio legato dedit, alteram in Nervios Quinto **Ciceroni**, tertiam in Esubios Lucio **Roscio**, quartam in Remis cum Tito Labieno in **confinio** Treverorum hiemare iussit; tres in Belgis collocavit: 25 his Marcum Crassum quaestorem et Lucium **Munatium Plancum**

et Gaium Trebonium legatos praefecit. unam legionem, quam proxime trans **Padum** conscripserat, et cohortes V in Eburones, quorum pars maxima est inter Mosam ac Rhenum, qui sub imperio Ambiorigis et **Catuvolci** erant, misit. his militibus Quintum Titurium Sabinum et Lucium Aurunculeium Cottam legatos praeesse iussit. ad hunc modum distributis legionibus facillime inopiae frumentariae sese **mederi** posse existimavit. atque harum tamen omnium legionum hiberna praeter eam, quam Lucio Roseio in pacatissimam et **quietissimam** partem ducendam dederat, milibus passuum centum continebantur. ipse interea, quoad legiones collocatas munitaque hiberna cognovisset, in Gallia morari constituit.

**25.** Erat in Carnutibus summo loco natus **Tasgetius**, cuius maiores in sua civitate regnum obtinuerant. huic Caesar pro eius virtute atque in se **benevolentia**, quod in omnibus bellis singulari eius opera fuerat usus, maiorum locum restituerat. tertium iam hunc annum **regnantem** inimicis multis **palam** ex civitate et iis auctoribus eum interfecerunt. defertur ea res ad Caesarem. ille veritus, quod ad plures pertinebat, ne civitas eorum **impulsu** deficeret, Lucium Plancum cum legione ex Belgio celeriter in Carnutes proficisci iubet ibique hiemare, quorumque opera cognoverat Tasgetium interfectum, hos comprehensos ad se mittere. interim ab omnibus legatis quaestoreque, quibus legiones tradiderat, certior factus est in hiberna perventum locumque hibernis esse munitum.

**26.** Diebus circiter XV, quibus in hiberna ventum est, initium repentini tumultus ac defectionis ortum est ab **Ambiorige** et **Catuvolco**; qui cum ad fines regni sui Sabino Cottaeque **praesto** fuissent frumentumque in hiberna comportavissent, Indutiomari Treveri nuntiis impulsus suos **concitaverunt** subitoque oppressis **lignatoribus** magna manu castra oppugnatum venerunt. cum

celeriter nostri arma cepissent vallumque adscendissent atque una ex parte **Hispanis** equitibus emissis equestri proelio superiores fuissent, desperata re hostes ab oppugnatione suos reduxerunt. tum suo more conclamaverunt, uti aliqui ex nostris ad colloquium prodirent: habere sese, quae de re communi dicere vellent, 5 quibus rebus **controversias** minuui posse sperarent.

*The camp of Sabinus and Cotta is attacked. Sabinus is treacherously persuaded to leave the camp, and is slain together with the troops.*

27. Mittitur ad eos colloquendi causa Gaius **Arpineius**, eques Romanus, familiaris Quinti Titurii, et Quintus **Iunius** ex Hispania quidam, qui iam ante **missu** Caesaris ad Ambiorigem ventitare consueverat; apud quos Ambiorix ad hunc modum 10 locutus est: sese pro Caesaris in se beneficiis plurimum ei **confiteri** debere, quod eius opera stipendio liberatus esset, quod Aduatucis finitimis suis pendere consuisset, quodque ei et filius et fratris filius ab Caesare remissi essent, quos Aduatnei obsidum numero missos apud se in servitute et catenis tenuissent; neque 15 id, quod fecerit de oppugnatione castrorum, aut iudicio aut voluntate sua fecisse, sed **coactu** civitatis, suaque esse eiusmodi imperia, ut non minus haberet iuris in se multitudo, quam ipse in multitudinem. civitati **porro** hanc fuisse belli causam, quod repentinae Gallorum coniurationi resistere non potuerit. id se 20 facile ex humilitate sua probare posse, quod non **adeo** sit imperitus rerum, ut suis copiis populum Romanum se superare posse confidat. sed esse Galliae commune consilium: omnibus hibernis Caesaris oppugnandis hunc esse dictum diem, ne qua legio alterae legioni subsidio venire posset. non facile Gallos 25 Gallis negare potuisse, praesertim cum de **recuperanda** communi libertate consilium initum videretur. quibus quoniam pro **pietate** satisfecerit, habere nunc se rationem officii pro beneficiis

Caesaris : mouere, orare Titurium pro hospitio, ut suae ac militum salutem consulat. magnam manum Germanorum eandem Rhenum transisse ; hanc adfore biduo. ipsorum esse consilium, velintne prius, quam finitimi sentiant, eductos ex hibernis milites  
 5 aut ad Ciceronem aut ad Labienum deducere, quorum alter milia passuum circiter quinquaginta, alter paulo amplius ab his absit. illud se polliceri et iureiurando confirmare tutum iter per fines suos daturum. quod cum faciat, et civitati sese consulere, quod hibernis **levetur**, et Caesari pro eius meritis gratiam  
 10 referre. hac oratione habita discedit Ambiorix.

**28.** Arpineius et Iunius, quae audierunt, ad legatos deferunt. illi repentina re perturbati, etsi ab hoste ea dicebantur, tamen non neglegenda existimabant, maximeque hac re permovebantur, quod civitatem **ignobilem** atque humilem Eburonum sua sponte  
 15 populo Romano bellum facere ausam vix erat credendum. itaque ad consilium rem deferunt magnaue inter eos existit controversia. Lucius Aurunculeius compluresque tribuni militum et primorum ordinum centuriones nihil temere agendum, neque ex hibernis iniussu Caesaris discedendum, existimabant : **quantasvis**  
 20 copias etiam Germanorum sustineri posse munitis hibernis docebant : rem esse testimonio, quod primum hostium impetum multis ultro vulneribus illatis fortissime sustinuerint : re frumentaria non premi ; interea et ex proximis hibernis et a Caesare conventura subsidia : **postremo** quid esse levius aut turpius, quam  
 25 **auctore** hoste de summis rebus capere consilium ?

**29.** Contra ea Titurius **sero** facturos clamitabat, cum maiores hostium manus adiunctis Germanis convenissent, aut cum aliquid calamitatis in proximis hibernis esset acceptum. brevem consulendi esse occasionem. Caesarem arbitrari profectum in Italiam ;  
 30 neque aliter Carnutes interficiundi Tasgetii consilium fuisse capturos, neque Eburones, si ille adesset, tanta contemptione nostri

ad castra venturos esse. non hostem auctorem, sed rem spectare: subesse Rhenum; magno esse Germanis dolori Ariovisti mortem et superiores nostras victorias; **ardere** Galliam tot contumeliis acceptis sub populi Romani imperium redactam, superiore gloria rei militaris **exstincta**. postremo quis hoc sibi 5 persuaderet, sine certa re Ambiorigem ad eiusmodi consilium **descendisse**? suam sententiam in utramque partem esse tutam: si nil esset durius, nullo periculo ad proximam legionem perventuros; si Gallia omnis cum Germanis consentiret, unam esse in celeritate positam salutem. Cottae quidem atque eorum, qui 10 **dissentirent**, consilium quem habere exitum? in quo si, non praesens periculum, at certe longinqua obsidione fames esset pertimescenda.

30. Hac in utramque partem **disputatione** habita, cum a Cotta primisque ordinibus acriter resisteretur 'vincite,' inquit, 'si ita vultis,' Sabinus, et id **clariore** voce, ut magna pars militum exaudiret: 'neque is sum,' inquit, 'qui gravissime ex **vobis** mortis periculo **terrear**: hi **sapient**; si gravius quid acciderit, **abs te** rationem **reposit**; qui, si per te liceat, **perendino** die cum proximis hibernis coniuncti communem cum reliquis belli 20 casum sustineant, nec reiecti et **relegati** longe ab ceteris aut ferro aut fame **intereant**.'

31. **Consurgitur** ex consilio; comprehendunt utrumque et orant, ne sua **dissensione** et pertinacia rem in summum periculum deducant: facilem esse rem, seu maneant, seu proficiscantur, 25 si modo unum omnes sentiant ac probent; contra in dissensione nullam se salutem perspicere. res disputatione ad mediam noctem perducitur. tandem dat Cotta permotus manus: superat sententia Sabini. pronuntiatur prima luce ituros. consumitur vigiliis reliqua pars noctis, quum sua quisque miles **circumspi-** 30 **ceret**, quid secum portare posset, quid ex **instrumento** hiberno-

rum relinquere eogeretur. omnia **excogitantur**, quare nec sine periculo maneat, et **languore** militum et vigiliis periculum augeatur. prima luce sic ex castris proficiscuntur, ut quibus esset persuasum non ab hoste, sed ab homine amicissimo  
 5 Ambiorige consilium datum, longissimo agmine maximisque impedimentis.

32. At hostes, posteaquam ex nocturno fremitu vigiliisque de profectioe eorum senserunt, collocaatis insidiis bipartito in silvis opportuno atque occulto loco a milibus passuum eireiter duobus  
 10 Romanorum adventum expectabant, et eum se maior pars agminis in magnam convallem demisset, ex utraque parte eius vallis subito se ostenderunt novissimosque premere et primos prohibere ascensu atque iniquissimo nostris loco proelium committere coeperunt.

15 33. Tum demum Titurius, ut qui nihil ante providisset, **trepidare** et **concursare** cohortesque disponere, haec tamen ipsa timide atque ut eum omnia deficere viderentur; quod plerumque iis accidere consuevit, qui in ipso negotio consilium capere coguntur. at Cotta, qui cogitasset haec posse in itinere accidere atque  
 20 ob eam causam profectioe auctor non fuisset, nulla in re communi saluti deerat et in appellandis cohortandisque militibus imperatoris et in pugna militis officia praestabat. eum propter longitudinem agminis minus facile omnia per se **obire** et, quid quoque loco faciendum esset, providere possent, iusserunt pronuntiare,  
 25 ut impedimenta relinquerent atque in orbem consisterent. quod consilium etsi in eiusmodi casu reprehendendum non est, tamen **incommode** accidit: nam et nostris militibus spem minuit et hostes ad pugnam alacriores effecit, quod non sine summo timore et **desperatione** id factum videbatur. praeterea accidit,  
 30 quod fieri necesse erat, ut vulgo milites ab signis discederent, quae quisque eorum **carissima** haberet, ab impedimentis



petere atque **arripere** properaret, clamore et fletu omnia complerentur.

**34.** At barbaris consilium non defuit. nam duces eorum tota acie pronuntiare iusserunt, ne quis ab loco discederet: illorum esse praedam atque illis reservari, quaecumque Romani reliquis-  
sent: **proinde** omnia in victoria posita existimarent. erant et virtute et numero pugnando pares nostri; tametsi ab duce et a fortuna deserebantur, tamen omnem spem salutis in virtute ponebant, et quotiens quaeque cohors procurrerat, ab ea parte magnus hostium numerus cadebat. qua re animadversa Ambiorix pro-  
nuntari iubet, ut procul tela coniciant neu propius accedant et, quam in partem Romani impetum fecerint, cedant (levitate armorum et cotidiana exercitatione nihil iis noceri posse), rursus se ad signa recipientes insequantur.

**35.** Quo praecepto ab iis diligentissime observato, cum quae-  
piam cohors ex orbe excesserat atque impetum fecerat, hostes velocissime **refugiebant**. interim eam partem nudari necesse erat et ab latere aperto tela recipi. rursus, cum in eum locum, unde erant egressi, reverti coeperant, et ab iis, qui cesserant, et ab iis, qui proximi **steterant**, circumveniebantur; sin autem locum tenere  
vellent, nec virtuti locus relinquebatur, neque ab tanta multitudine coniecta tela conferti vitare poterant. tamen tot incommodis **conflictati**, multis vulneribus acceptis resistebant et magna parte diei consumpta, cum a prima luce ad horam octavam pugnaretur, nihil, quod ipsis esset **indignum**, committebant.  
tum Tito **Balventio**, qui superiore anno primum pilum duxerat, viro forti et maguae auctoritatis, utrumque **femur** tragula **traicitur**; Quintus **Lucanius**, eiusdem ordinis, fortissime pugnans, dum circumvento filio **subvenit**, interficitur; Lucius Cotta legatus omnes cohortes ordinesque **adhortans** in adversum **os** funda  
vulneratur.

36. His rebus permotus Quintus Titurius, cum procul Ambiorigem suos cohortantem conspexisset, interpretem suum Gneum Pompeium ad eum mittit rogatum, ut sibi militibusque **parcat**. ille appellatus respondit: si velit secum colloqui,  
 5 licere; sperare, a multitudine impetrari posse, quod ad militum salutem pertineat; ipsi vero nihil nocitum iri, inque eam rem se suam fidem interponere. ille eum Cotta saucio communicat, si videatur, pugna ut excedant et cum Ambiorige una colloquantur: sperare ab eo de sua ac militum salute impetrare posse. Cotta  
 10 se ad armatum hostem iturum negat atque in eo perseverat.

37. Sabinus quos in praesentia tribunos militum circum se habebat et primorum ordinum centuriones se sequi iubet et, cum propius Ambiorigem accessisset, iussus arma abicere, imperatum facit suisque, ut idem faciant, imperat. interim, dum de  
 15 condicionibus inter se agunt longiorque consulto ab Ambiorige instituitur **sermo**, paulatim circumventus interficitur. tum vero suo more victoriam conclamant atque **ululatum** tollunt impetuque in nostros facto ordines perturbant. ibi Lucius Cotta pugnaus interficitur cum maxima parte militum. reliqui se in castra recipiunt, unde erant egressi. ex quibus Lucius **Petrosidius aquilifer**, cum magna multitudine hostium premeretur, aquilam intra vallum proiecit, ipse pro castris fortissime pugnaus occiditur. illi aegre ad noctem oppugnationem sustinent; noctu ad unum omnes desperata salute se ipsi interficiunt. pauci ex proelio  
 20 **elapsi** incertis itineribus per silvas ad Titum Labienum legatum in hiberna perveniunt atque eum de rebus gestis certiolem faciunt.

*The Eburones attack Cicero. Caesar marches to his aid and relieves the siege. The enemy is defeated.*

38. Hac victoria sublatus Ambiorix statim cum equitatu in Aduatncos, qui erant eius regno finitimi, proficiscitur; neque noctem neque diem intermittit peditatumque se subsequi iubet,

re demonstrata Aduatucisque concitatis postero die in Nervios pervenit hortaturque, ne sui in perpetuum liberandi atque ulciscendi Romanos pro iis, quas acceperint, iniuriis, occasionem dimittant: interfectos esse legatos duos magnamque partem exercitus interisse demonstrat; nihil esse negotii subito oppressam 5 legionem, quae cum Cicerone hiemet, interfici; se ad eam rem **profitetur adiutorem**. facile hac oratione Nervii persuadet.

39. Itaque confestim dimissis nuntiis ad Ceutrones, Grudios, **Levacos, Pleumoxios, Geidumnos**, qui omnes sub eorum imperio sunt, quam maximas manus possunt, cogunt et de inproviso ad 10 Ciceronis hiberna advolant nondum ad eum **fama** de Titurii morte perlata. huic quoque accidit, quod fuit necesse, ut nonnulli milites, qui **lignationis** munitionisque causa in silvas discessissent, repentino equitum adventu interciperentur. his circumventis magna manu Eburones, Nervii, Aduatuci atque 15 horum omnium socii et clientes legionem oppugnare incipiunt. nostri celeriter ad arma concurrunt, vallum conscendunt. aegre is dies sustentatur, quod omnem spem hostes in celeritate ponebant atque hanc **adepti** victoriam in perpetuum se fore victores confidebant. 20

40. Mittuntur ad Caesarem confestim ab Cicerone litterae magnis propositis praemiis, si pertulissent. obsessis omnibus viis missi intercipiuntur. noctu ex materia, quam munitionis causa comportaverant, turres admodum CXX excitantur incredibili celeritate; quae deesse operi videbantur, perficiuntur. hostes 25 postero die multo maioribus coactis copiis castra oppugnant, fossam complent. eadem ratione, qua pridie, ab nostris resistitur. hoc idem deinceps reliquis fit diebus. nulla pars nocturni temporis ad laborem intermittitur; non **aegris**, non vulueratis facultas **quietis** datur. quaecumque ad proximi diei oppugnationem 30 opus sunt, noctu comparantur; multae **praeustae** sudes, magnus

muralium pilorum numerus instituitur; turres **contabulantur**, **pinnae loricaeque** ex cratibus **attexuntur**. ipse Cicero, cum **tenuissima valetudine** esset, ne nocturnum quidem sibi tempus ad quietem relinquebat, ut ultro militum concursu ac vocibus  
5 sibi parere cogretur.

**41.** Tunc duces principesque Nerviorum, qui aliquem sermone aditum causamque amicitiae cum Cicerone habebant, colloqui sese velle dicunt. facta potestate eadem, quae Ambiorix cum Titurio egerat, commemorant: omnem esse in armis Galliam;  
10 Germanos Rhenum transisse; Caesaris reliquorumque hiberna oppugnari. **addunt** etiam de Sabini morte: Ambiorigem **ostentant** fidei faciundae causa. **errare** eos dicunt, si quicquam ab his praesidii sperent, qui suis rebus **diffidant**; sese tamen hoc esse in Ciceronem populumque Romanum animo, ut nihil nisi  
15 hiberna recusent atque hanc inveterascere consuetudinem nolint: licere illis incolumibus per se ex hibernis discedere et, quas-cumque in partes velint, sine metu proficisci. Cicero ad haec unum modo respondit: non esse consuetudinem populi Romani, accipere ab hoste armato condicionem: si ab armis discedere  
20 velint, se adiutore utantur legatosque ad Caesarem mittant; sperare pro eius iustitia, quae petierint, impetraturos.

**42.** Ab hac spe repulsi Nervii vallo pedum IX et fossa pedum XV hiberna cingunt. haec et superiorum annorum consuetudine a nostris cognoverant, et quos de exercitu habebant  
25 captivos, ab his docebantur; sed nulla **ferramentorum** copia, quae esset ad hunc usum idonea, gladiis cespites **circumcidere**, manibus **sagulisque** terram **exhaurire** nitebantur. qua quidem ex re hominum multitudo cognosci potuit: nam minus horis tribus milium passuum XV in circuitu munitionem perfecerunt, reli-  
30 quisque diebus turres ad altitudinem valli, falces testudinesque, quas idem captivi docuerant, parare ac facere coeperunt.

43. Septimo oppugnationis die maximo coorto vento ferventes fusili ex argilla glandes fundis et fervefacta iacula in casas, quae more Gallico **stramentis** erant tectae, iacere coeperunt. hae celeriter ignem comprehenderunt et venti magnitudine in omnem castrorum locum distulerunt. hostes maximo clamore **sicuti parta** iam atque explorata victoria turres testudinesque agere et **scalis** vallum ascendere coeperunt. at tanta militum virtus atque ea praesentia animi fuit, ut, cum undique **flamma torrerentur** maximaque telorum multitudine premerentur suaque omnia impedimenta atque omnes fortunas **conflagrare** intellege- 10 rent, non modo demigrandi causa de vallo decederet nemo, sed pacne ne respiceret quidem quisquam, ac tum omnes acerrime fortissimeque pugnarent. hic dies nostris longe gravissimus fuit; sed tamen hunc habuit eventum, ut eo die maximus hostium numerus vulneraretur atque interficeretur, ut se sub ipso 15 vallo **constipaverant recessumque** primis ultimi non dabant. paulum quidem intermissa flamma et quodam loco turri adacta et contingente vallum tertiae cohortis centuriones ex eo, quo stabant, loco **recesserunt** suosque omnes removerunt, nutu vocibusque hostes, si **introire** vellent, vocare coeperunt; quorum 20 progredi ausus est nemo. tum ex omni parte lapidibus coniectis **deturbati** turrisque succensa est.

44. Erant in ea legione fortissimi viri, centuriones, qui primis ordinibus appropinquarent, Titus **Pulio** et Lucius **Vorenius**. hi perpetuas inter se controversias habebant, quinam **anteferretur**, 25 omnibusque annis de locis summis **simultatibus** contendebant. ex his Pulio, cum acerrime ad munitiones pugnaretur, 'quid dubitas,' inquit, 'Vorene? aut quem locum probandae virtutis **tuae** exspectas? hic dies de nostris controversiis iudicabit. haec cum dixisset, procedit extra munitiones, quaque parte hos- 30 tium confertissima est vis, ea irrumpit. ne Vorenius quidem tum vallo sese continet, sed omnium veritus existimationem subsequitur.

mediocri spatio relicto Pulio pilum in hostes immittit atque unum ex multitudine procurrentem traiecit; quo **percusso** et examinato hunc scutis **protegent**, in hostem tela universi coniciunt neque dant **regrediendi** facultatem. transfigitur scutum  
 5 Pulioni et **verutum** in **balteo** defigitur. avertit hic casus **vagiuam** et gladium educere conanti dextram moratur manum, impeditumque hostes circumsistunt. **succurrit** inimicus illi Vorenus et laboranti subvenit. ad hunc se confestim a Pulione omnis multitudo convertit: illum veruto arbitrantur occisum. gladio  
 10 comminus rem gerit Vorenus atque uno interfecto reliquos paulum propellit; dum cupidius instat, in locum deiectus inferiorem cecidit. huic rursus circumvento fert subsidium Pulio, atque **ambo** incolumes compluribus interfectis summa cum laude sese intra munitiones recipiunt. sic fortuna in contentione et certa-  
 15 mine utrumque versavit, ut alter alteri inimicus auxilio salutique esset, neque **diiudicari** posset, uter utri virtute anteferendus videretur.

**45.** Quanto erat in dies gravior atque **asperior** oppugnatio, et maxime quod magna parte militum confecta vulncribus res ad  
 20 paucitatem defensorum pervenerat, tanto crebriores litterae nuntiique ad Caesarem mittebantur; quorum pars **deprehensa** in conspectu nostrorum militum cum cruciatu necabantur. erat unus **intus** Nervius, nomine **Vertico**, loco natus honesto, qui a prima obsidione ad Ciceronem perfugerat suamque ei fidem  
 25 praestiterat. hic servo spe libertatis magnisque persuadet praemiis, ut litteras ad Caesarem deferat. has ille in iaculo illigatas effert et Gallus inter Gallos sine ulla suspicione versatus ad Caesarem pervenit. ab eo de periculis Ciceronis legionisque cognoscitur.

**30 46.** Caesar acceptis litteris hora circiter undecima diei statim nuntium in Bellovacos ad M. Crassum quaestorem mittit, cuius

hiberna aberant ab eo milia passuum XXV. iubet media nocte legionem proficisci celeriterque ad se venire. exit cum nuntio Crassus. alterum ad Gaium Fabium legatum mittit, ut in Atrebatium fines legionem adducat, qua sibi iter faciendum sciebat. scribit Labieno, si reipublicae commodo facere posset, cum 5 legione ad fines Nerviorum veniat. reliquam partem exercitus, quod paulo aberat longius, non putat exspectandam; equites circiter quadringentos ex proximis hibernis cogit.

47. Hora circiter tertia ab **antecursoribus** de Crassi adventu certior factus, eo die milia passuum XX progreditur. Crassum 10 Samarobriuae praeficit legionemque ei attribuit, quod ibi impedimenta exercitus, obsides civitatum, litteras publicas frumentumque omne, quod eo tolerandae hiemis causa **deveixerat**, relinquebat. Fabius, ut imperatum erat, non ita multum moratus in itinere cum legione occurrit. Labienus **interitu** Sabini et 15 **caede** cohortium cognita, cum omnes ad eum Treverorum copiae venissent, veritus, si ex hibernis fugae **similem** profectionem fecisset, ut hostium impetum sustinere posset, praesertim quos recenti victoria efferri sciret, litteras Caesari remittit, quanto cum periculo legionem ex hibernis educturus esset, rem gestam in 20 Eburonibus **perscribit**, docet, omnes equitatus peditatusque copias Treverorum tria milia passuum longe ab suis castris consedisse.

48. Caesar consilio eius probato, etsi opinione trium legionum deiectus ad duas redierat, tamen unum communis salutis auxilium in celeritate ponebat. venit magnis itineribus in Nervio- 25 rum fines. ibi ex captivis cognoscit, quae apud Ciceronem gerantur, quantoque in periculo res sit. tum cuidam ex equitibus Gallis magnis praemiis persuadet, uti ad Ciceronem **epistolam** deferat. hanc Graecis conscriptam litteris mittit, ne intercepta epistola nostra ab hostibus consilia cognoscantur. si adire non 30 possit, monet, ut tragulam cum epistola ad **amentum** deligata

intra munitiones castrorum abiciat. in litteris scribit se cum legionibus profectum celeriter adfore; hortatur, ut pristinam virtutem retineat. Gallus periculum veritus, ut erat praeceptum, tragulam mittit. haec casu ad turrin **adhaesit** neque ab nostris biduo animadversa tertio die a quodam milite conspicitur, **dempta** ad Ciceronem defertur. ille **perlectam** in conventu militum **recitat** maximaque omnes **laetitia** afficit. tum fumi incendiorum procul videbantur; quae res omnem dubitationem adventus legionum expulit.

10 **49.** Galli re cognita per exploratores obsidionem relinquunt, ad Caesarem omnibus copiis contendunt. hae erant armata circiter milia LX. Cicero data facultate Gallum ab eodem Verticone, quem supra demonstravimus, repetit, qui litteras ad Caesarem deferat; huic **admonet**, iter **caute** diligenterque faciat: 15 perscribit in litteris hostes ab se discessisse omnemque ad eum multitudinem convertisse. quibus litteris circiter media nocte Caesar allatis suos facit certiores cosque ad dimicandum animo confirmat. postero die luce prima movet castra et circiter milia passuum quattuor progressus trans vallem et **rivum** multitudinem 20 hostium conspicatur. erat magni periculi res, tantulis copiis iniquo loco dimicare; tum, quoniam obsidione liberatum Ciceronem sciebat, aequo animo remittendum de celeritate existimabat: consedit et, quam aequissimo loco potest, castra communit atque haec, etsi erant exigua per se, vix hominum milium septem 25 praesertim nullis cum impedimentis, tamen angustiis viarum, quam maxime potest, contrahit, eo consilio, ut in summam contemptionem hostibus veniat. interim speculatoribus in omnes partes dimissis explorat, quo commodissime itinere vallem transire possit.

30 **50.** Eo die parvulis equestribus proeliis ad aquam factis utriusque sese suo loco continent: Galli, quod ampliores copias,



quae nondum convenerant, expectabant; Caesar, si forte timoris simulatione hostes in suum locum **elicere** posset, ut citra vallem pro castris proelio contenderet; si id efficere non posset, ut exploratis itineribus minore cum periculo vallem rivumque transiret. prima luce hostium equitatus ad castra accedit proeliumque 5 cum nostris equitibus committit. Caesar consulto equites cedere seque in castra recipere iubet, simul ex omnibus partibus castra altiore vallo muni portaque **obstrui** atque in his administrandis rebus quam maxime concursari et cum simulatione timoris agi iubet. 10

51. Quibus omnibus rebus hostes invitati copias traducunt aciemque in quo loco constitunt, nostris vero etiam de vallo deductis propius accedunt et tela intra munitionem ex omnibus partibus coniciunt **praeconibusque circummissis** pronuntiari iubent, sen quis Gallus seu Romanus velit ante horam tertiam ad se transire, sine periculo licere; post id tempus non fore potestatem: ac sic nostros **contempserunt**, ut obstructis in speciem portis singulis ordinibus cespitem, quod ea non posse **introrumpere** videbantur, alii vallum manu scindere, alii fossas complere inciperent. tum Caesar omnibus portis eruptione facta equitatuque 20 emisso celeriter hostes in fugam dat, sic uti omnino pugnandi causa resisteret nemo, magnumque ex eis numerum occidit atque omnes armis exiit.

52. Longius prosequi veritus, quod silvae paludesque intercedebant neque etiam parvulo detrimento illorum locum relinquere 25 videbat, omnibus suis incolumibus copiis eodem die ad Ciceronem pervenit. institutas turres, testudines munitionesque hostium admiratur; legione producta cognoscit non decimum quemque esse reliquum militem sine vulnere: ex his omnibus iudicat rebus, quanto cum periculo et quanta cum virtute res sint administratae. Ciceronem pro eius merito legionemque collaudat; 30

eenturiones singillatim tribunosque militum appellat, quorum egregiam fuisse virtutem testimonio Ciceronis cognoverat. de easu Sabini et Cottae certius ex captivis cognoscit. postero die **contione** habita rem gestam proponit, milites consolatur et confirmat: quod detrimentum culpa et **temeritate** legati sit acceptum, hoc aequiore animo ferendum docet, quod beneficio deorum immortalium et virtute eorum **expiato** incommodo neque hostibus **diutina laetatio** neque ipsis longior dolor relinquatur.

53-58. INSURRECTIONS AMONG THE SENONES AND TREVERI.

*Indutiomarus retreats among the Treveri. Disturbance caused by the Senones.*

**53.** Interim ad Labicnum per Remos incredibili celeritate de 10 victoria Caesaris fama perfertur, ut, eum ab hibernis Ciceronis milia passuum abesset circiter LX, eoque post horam nonam diei Caesar pervenisset, ante mediam noctem ad portas castrorum clamor oriretur, quo clamore significatio victoriae gratulatioque ab Remis Labieno fieret. hae fama ad Treveros perlata 15 Indutiomarus, qui postero die castra Labieni oppugnare decreverat, noctu profugit copiasque omnes in Treveros reducit. Caesar Fabium cum sua legione remittit in hiberna, ipse eum tribus legionibus circum Samarobrivam trinīs hibernis hiemare constituit et, quod tanti motus Galliae existerant, totam hiemem ipse ad exercitum manere decrevit. nam illo incommodo de Sabini morte perlato omnes fere Galliae civitates de bello **consultabant**, nuntios legationesque in omnes partes dimittebant et, quid reliqui consilii caperent atque unde initium belli fieret, explorabant nocturnaque in locis desertis concilia habebant. neque ullum fere 20 totius hiemis tempus sine **solicitudine** Caesaris interessit, quin aliquem de consiliis ac motu Gallorum nuntium acciperet. in his ab Lucio Roseio [quaestore], quem legioni tertiae decimae praefecerat, certior factus est, magnas Gallorum copias earum

civitatum, quae **Aremoricae** appellantur, oppugnandi sui causa convenisse neque longius milia passuum octo ab hibernis suis afuisse, sed nuntio allato de victoria Caesaris discessisse, adeo ut fugae similis discessus videretur.

54. At Caesar principibus cuiusque civitatis ad se evocatis 5 alias territando, cum se scire, quae fierent, denuntiaret, alias cohortando magnam partem Galliae in officio tenuit. tamen Senones, quae est civitas in primis firma et magnae inter Gallos auctoritatis, **Cavarinum**, quem Caesar apud eos regem constitu- 10 erat, cuius frater **Moritasgus** adventu in Galliam Caesaris eius- que maiores regnum obtinuerant, interficere publico consilio conati, cum ille **praesensisset** ac profugisset, usque ad fines insecuti, regno domoque expulerunt, et missis ad Caesarem satisfaciendi causa legatis, cum is omnem ad se senatum venire iussisset, dicto audientes non fuerunt. tantum apud homines 15 barbaros valuit, esse aliquos repertos principes belli inferendi tantamque omnibus voluntatum commutationem attulit, ut praeter Haeduos et Remos, quos **praecipuo** semper honore Caesar habuit, alteros pro veteri ac perpetui **erga** populum Romanum fide, alteros pro recentibus Gallici belli officiis, nulla fere civitas 20 fuerit non **suspecta** nobis. idque adeo **haud** scio mirandumne sit, cum compluribus aliis de causis, tum maxime, quod ei, qui virtute belli omnibus gentibus praeferebantur, tantum se eius opinionis deperdidisse, ut a populo Romano imperia perferrent, gravissime dolebant. 25

*The enemy is overcome by Labienus. Gaul in a more peaceful state.*

55. Treveri vero atque Indutiomarus totius hiemis nullum tempus intermiserunt, quin trans Rhenum legatos mitterent, civitates sollicitarent, **pecunias** pollicerentur, magna parte exercitus nostri interfecta multo minorem superesse dicerent partem.

neque tamen ulli civitati Germanorum persuaderi potuit, ut Rhenum transiret, cum se **bis** expertos dicerent, Ariovisti bello et Teneterorum **transitu**: non esse amplius fortunam temptaturos. hac spe lapsus Indutiomarus nihilo minus copias cogere, 5 exercere, a finitimis equos parare, **exsules** damnatosque tota Gallia magnis praemiis ad se **allicere** coepit. ac tantam sibi iam his rebus in Gallia auctoritatem comparaverat, ut undique ad eum legationes concurrerent, gratiam atque amicitiam publice privatimque peterent.

10 **56.** Ubi intellexit ultro ad se veniri, altera ex parte Senones Camutesque **conscientia** facinoris **instigari**, altera Nervios Aduaticosque bellum Romanis parare, neque sibi **voluntariorum** copias defore, si ex finibus suis progredi coepisset, armatum concilium indicit. hoc more Gallorum est initium belli: quo 15 lege communi omnes **puberes** armati convenire consuerunt; qui ex iis novissimus venit, in conspectu multitudinis omnibus cruciatibus affectus necatur. in eo concilio Cingetorigem, alterius principem factionis, **generum** suum, quem supra demonstravimus Caesaris secutum fidem ab eo non discessisse, hostem iudi- 20 cat bonaque eius **publicat**. his rebus confectis in concilio pronuntiat accessitum se a Senonibus et Camutibus aliisque compluribus Galliae civitatibus; huc iter facturum per fines Remorum eorumque agros populaturum ac, priusquam id faciat, castra Labieni oppugnaturum.

25 **57.** Quae fieri velit, praecepit. Labienus, cum et loci natura et manu munitissimis castris sese teneret, de suo ac legionis periculo nihil timebat; ne quam occasionem rei bene gerendae dimitteret, cogitabat. itaque a Cingetorige atque eius propinquis oratione Indutiomari cognita, quam in concilio habuerat, nuntios 30 mittit ad finitimas civitates equitesque undique evocat: his certum diem conveniendi dicit. interim prope cotidie cum omni equitatu

Indutiomarus sub castris eius vagabatur, alias ut situm castrorum cognosceret, alias colloquendi aut territandi causa: equites plerumque omnes tela intra vallum coniciebant. Labienus suos intra munitionem continebat timorisque opinionem, quibuscumque poterat rebus, augebat.

5

**58.** Cum maiore in dies contemptione Indutiomarus ad castra accederet, nocte una intronissis equitibus omnium finitimarum civitatum, quos arcessendos curaverat, tanta diligentia omnes suos custodiis intra castra continuit, ut nulla ratione ea res enuntiari aut ad Treveros perferri posset. interim ex consuetudine 10 cotidiana Indutiomarus ad castra accedit atque ibi magnam partem diei consumit; equites tela coniciunt et magna cum contumelia verborum nostros ad pugnam evocant. nullo ab nostris dato responso, ubi visum est, sub vesperum dispersi ac dissipati discedunt. subito Labienus duabus portis omnem equitatum 15 emittit; praecipit atque interdicat, **proterritis** hostibus atque in fugam coniectis (quod fore, sicut accidit, videbat) unum omnes peterent Indutiomarum, neu quis quem prius vulneret, quam illum interfectum viderit, quod mora reliquorum spatium nactum illum effugere nolebat; magna proponit iis, qui occiderint, prae- 20 mia: summittit cohortes equitibus subsidio. **comprobat** hominis consilium fortuna, et cum unum omnes peterent, in ipso fluminis vado deprehensus Indutiomarus interficitur, caputque eius refertur in castra: redeuntes equites, quos possunt, consecantur atque occidunt. hac re cognita, omnes Eburonum et Nerviorum, quae 25 convenerant, copiae discedunt, pauloque habuit post id factum Caesar quietiorem Galliam.

C. IULII CAESARIS  
DE BELLO GALLICO

COMMENTARIUS SEXTUS.

1-8. COMMOTIONS IN GAUL.

*Caesar levies additional forces.*



5 **1.** Multis de causis Caesar maiorem Galliae motum  
exspectans, per Marcum **Silanum**, Gaium **Antis-**  
**tium Reginum**, Titum Sextium legatos **delectum** ha-  
bere instituit; simul ab Gneo Pompeio proconsule  
petit, quoniam ipse ad urbem cum imperio reipub-  
licae causa remaneret, quos ex **Cisalpina** Gallia  
consulis **sacramento** rogavisset, ad signa convenire  
et ad se proficisci inberet, magni interesse etiam in  
10 reliquum tempus ad opinionem Galliae existimans  
tantas videri Italiae facultates, ut, si quid esset in  
bello detrimenti acceptum, non modo id brevi tem-  
pore **resarciri**, sed etiam maioribus augeri copiis  
posset. quod eum Pompeius et reipublicae et amicitiae tribuis-  
set, celeriter confecto per suos delectu tribus ante exactam hie-  
15 mem et constitutis et adductis legionibus duplicatoque earum  
cohortium numero, quas cum Q. Titurio miserat et celeritate  
et copiis docuit, quid populi Romani disciplina atque opes  
possent.

*The Nervii, Senones, Carnutes, and Menapii are subdued.*

2. Interfecto Indutiomaro, ut docuimus, ad eius propinquos a Treveris imperium defertur. illi finitimos Germanos sollicitare et pecuniam polliceri non desistunt. cum ab proximis impetrare non possent, ultiores temptant. inventis nonnullis civitatibus iureiurando inter se confirmant obsidibusque de pecunia 5 cavent: Ambiorigem sibi **societate** et **foedere** adiungunt. quibus rebus cognitis Caesar, cum undique bellum parari videret, Nervios, Aduatucos [ac] Menapios adiunctis **Cisrhenanis** omnibus Germanis esse in armis, Senones ad imperatum non venire et cum Carnutibus finitimisque civitatibus consilia communicare, 10 a Treveris Germanos crebris legationibus sollicitari, maturius sibi de bello cogitandum putavit.

3. Itaque nondum hieme confecta proximis quattuor coactis legionibus de improvise in fines Nerviorum contendit et, priusquam illi aut convenire aut profugere possent, magno pecoris 15 atque hominum numero capto atque ea praeda militibus concessa vastatisque agris in deditionem venire atque obsides sibi dare coëgit. eo celeriter confecto negotio rursus in hiberna legiones reduxit. concilio Galliae primo **vere**, ut instituerat, indicto, cum reliqui praeter Senones, Carnutes Treverosque venissent, 20 initium belli ac defectionis hoc esse arbitratus, ut omnia postponere videretur, concilium **Lutetiam Parisiorum transfert**. **confines** erant hi Senonibus civitatemque patrum memoria communxerant, sed ab hoc consilio afuisse existinabantur. hac re pro **suggestu** pronuntiata eodem die cum legionibus in Senones 25 proficiscitur magnisque itineribus eo pervenit.

4. Cognito eius adventu **Acco**, qui princeps eius consilii fuerat, iubet in oppida multitudinem convenire. conantibus, priusquam id effici posset, adesse Romanos nuntiatur. necessario

sententia desistunt legatosque deprecandi causa ad Caesarem mittunt: adeunt per Haeduos, quorum antiquitas erat in fide civitas. libenter Caesar petentibus Haeduis dat **veniam excusationemque** accipit, quod **aestivum** tempus instantis belli, non  
 5 **quaestionis** esse arbitratur. obsidibus imperatis centum hos Haeduis **custodiendos** tradit. eodem Carnutes legatos obsidesque mittunt, usi deprecatoribus Remis, quorum erant in **clientela**: eadem ferunt responsa. peragit concilium Caesar equitesque imperat civitatibus.

10 **5.** Hac parte Galliae pacata totus et mente et animo in bellum Treverorum et Ambiorigis insistit. Cavarinum cum equitatu Senonum secum proficisci iubet, ne quis aut ex huius **iracundia**, aut ex eo, quod meruerat, **odio** civitatis motus existat. his rebus constitutis, quod pro explorato habebat Ambiorigem pro-  
 15 **lio** non esse **concertaturum**, reliqua eius consilia animo circumspiciebat. erant Menapii propinqui Eburonum finibus, perpetuis paludibus silvisque muniti, qui uni ex Gallia de pace ad Caesarem legatos numquam miserant. cum his esse hospitium Ambiorigi sciebat; item per Treveros venisse Germanis in ami-  
 20 **citiam** cognoverat. haec prius illi detrahenda auxilia existimabat, quam ipsum bello laefferet, ne desperata salute aut se in Menapios abderet aut cum Transrhenanis congregi cogeretur. hoc inuito consilio totus exercitus impedimenta ad Labieum in Treveros mittit duasque legiones ad eum proficisci iubet;  
 25 ipse cum legionibus expeditis quinque in Menapios proficiscitur. illi nulla coacta manu loci praesidio freti in silvas paludesque **confugiunt** suaque eodem conferunt.

**6.** Caesar partitis copiis cum Gaio Fabio legato et Marco Crasso quaestore celeriterque effectis pontibus adit tripartito,  
 30 aedificia vicosque incendit, magno pecoris atque hominum numero potitur. quibus rebus coacti Menapii legatos ad eum pacis



petendae causa mittunt. ille obsidibus acceptis hostium se habiturnum numero confirmat, si aut Amborigem aut eius legatos finibus suis recepissent. his confirmatis rebus Cominium Atrebatem cum equitatu custodis loco in Menapiis relinquit; ipse in Treveros proficiscitur.

5

*Labienus defeats the Treveri.*

7. Dum haec a Caesare geruntur, Treveri magnis coactis peditatus equitatusque copiis Labienum cum una legione, quae in eorum finibus hiemaverat, adoriri parabant, iamque ab eo non longius bidui via aberant, cum duas venisse legiones missu Caesaris cognoscunt. positis castris a milibus passuum XV 10 auxilia Germanorum expectare constituunt. Labienus hostium cognito consilio sperans, temeritate eorum fore aliquam dimicandi facultatem praesidio quinque cohortium impedimentis relicto cum XXV cohortibus magnoque equitatu contra hostem proficiscitur et mille passuum intermisso spatio castra communit. erat inter 15 Labienum atque hostem difficili transitu flumen ripisque praeruptis. hoc neque ipse transire habebat in animo neque hostes transituros existimabat. augebatur auxiliorum cotidie spes. loquitur in concilio palam, quoniam Germani appropinquare dicantur, sese suas exercitusque fortunas in dubium non **devo-** 20 **caturum** et postero die prima luce castra moturum. celeriter haec ad hostes deferuntur, ut ex magno Gallorum equitum numero nonnullos Gallicis rebus favere natura cogeat. Labienus noctu tribunis militum primisque ordinibus convocatis, quid sui sit consilii, proponit et, quo facilius hostibus timoris det 25 suspicionem, maiore strepitu et tumultu, quam populi Romani fert consuetudo, castra moveri iubet. his rebus fugae similem protectionem effecit. haec quoque per exploratores ante lucem in tanta propinquitate castrorum ad hostes deferuntur.

8. Vix agmen novissimum extra munitiones processerat, cum Galli cohortati inter se, ne speratam praedam ex manibus dimitterent: longum esse perterritis Romanis Germanorum auxilium exspectare, neque suam pati dignitatem, ut tantis copiis tam exigua  
 5 manum, praesertim fugientem atque impeditam, adoriri non audeant, flumen transire et iniquo loco proelium committere non dubitant. quae fore suspicatus Labienus, ut omnes citra flumen eliceret, eadem usus simulatione itineris, **placide** progrediebatur. tum praemissis paulum impedimentis atque in tumulto  
 10 quodam collocatis, ‘habetis,’ inquit, ‘milites, quam petistis, facultatem: hostem impedito atque iniquo loco tenetis: praestate eandem nobis ducibus virtutem, quam saepenumero imperatori praestitistis, atque illum adesse et haec coram **cernere** existimate.’ simul signa ad hostem converti aciemque **dirigi** iubet et  
 15 paucis turmis praesidio ad impedimenta dimissis reliquos equites ad latera disponit. celeriter nostri clamore sublato pila in hostes immittunt. illi, ubi praeter spem quos fugere credebant **infestis** signis ad se ire viderunt, impetum modo ferre non potuerunt ac primo concursu in fugam coniecti proximas silvas  
 20 petiverunt. quos Labienus equitatu consecutus magno numero interfecto, compluribus captis paucis post diebus civitatem recepit; nam Germani, qui auxilio veniebant, percepta Treverorum fuga sese domum contulerunt. cum his propinqui Indutiomari, qui defectionis auctores fuerant, **comitati** eos ex civitate  
 25 excessere. Cingetorigi, quem ab initio permanisse in officio demonstravimus, principatus atque imperium est traditum.

9–28. SECOND EXPEDITION INTO GERMANY.

*Caesar crosses the Rhine a second time and marches against the Suebi.*

9. Caesar, postquam ex Menapiis in Treveros venit, duabus de causis Rhenum transire constituit; quarum una erat, quod

auxilia contra se Treveris miserant, altera, ne ad eos Ambiorix receptum haberet. his constitutis rebus paulum supra eum locum, quo ante exercitum traduxerat, facere pontem instituit. nota atque instituta ratione magno militum studio paucis diebus opus efficitur. firmo in Treveris ad pontem praesidio relicto, ne quis ab his subito motus oriretur, reliquas copias equitatumque traducit. Ubi, qui ante obsides dederant atque in deditionem venerant, purgandi sui causa ad eum legatos mittunt, qui doceant neque auxilia ex sua civitate in Treveros missa, neque ab se fidem **laesam** : petunt atque orant, ut sibi parcat, ne communi 10 odio Germanorum **innocentes** pro nocentibus poenas pendant ; si amplius obsidum velit, dare pollicentur. cognita Caesar causa reperit ab Suebis auxilia missa esse ; Ubiorum satisfactionem accipit, aditus viasque in Suebos **perquirit**.

**10.** Interim paucis post diebus fit ab Ubiis certior Suebos 15 omnes in unum locum copias cogere atque iis nationibus, quae sub eorum sint imperio, denuntiare, ut auxilia peditatus equitatusque mittant. his cognitis rebus rem frumentariam providet, castris idoneum locum deligit ; Ubiis imperat, ut pecora deducant suaque omnia ex agris in oppida conferant, sperans barbaros 20 atque imperitos homines inopia cibariorum adductos ad iniquam pugnandi condicionem posse deduci ; mandat, ut crebros exploratores in Suebos mittant quaeque apud eos gerantur cognoscant. illi imperata faciunt et paucis diebus intermissis referunt : Suebos omnes, posteaquam certiores nuntii de exercitu Romanorum 25 venerint, cum omnibus suis sociorumque copiis, quas coegissent, **penitus** ad extremos fines sese recepisse : silvam esse ibi infinita magnitudinis, quae appellatur **Bacenis** ; hanc longe introrsus pertinere et pro **nativo** muro obiectam **Cheruscis** ab Suebis Suebosque ab Cheruscis iniuriis incursionibusque prohibere : ad 30 eius initium silvae Suebos adventum Romanorum expectare constituisse.

*The customs of the Gauls. Druidism, etc.*

11. Quoniam ad hunc locum perventum est, non alienum esse videtur de Galliae Germaniaeque moribus et quo differant haec nationes inter sese, proponere. in Gallia non solum in omnibus civitatibus atque in omnibus pagis partibusque, sed paene etiam  
 5 in singulis domibus factiones sunt, earumque factionum principes sunt qui summam auctoritatem eorum iudicio habere existimantur, quorum ad arbitrium iudiciumque summa omnium rerum consiliorumque redeat. itaque eius rei causa antiquitus institutum videtur, ne quis ex plebe contra potentiorum auxilium egeret:  
 10 suos enim quisque opprimi et circumveiri non patitur, neque, aliter si faciat, ullam inter suos habet auctoritatem. haec eadem ratio est in summa totius Galliae: namque omnes civitates in partes divisae sunt duas.

12. Cum Caesar in Galliam venit, alterius factionis principes  
 15 erant Haedui, alterius Sequani. hi cum per se minus valerent, quod summa auctoritas antiquitus erat in Haeduis magnaque eorum erant clientelae, Germanos atque Ariovistum sibi adiunxerant eosque ad se magnis iacturis pollicitationibusque perduxerant. proeliis vero compluribus factis secundis atque omni  
 20 nobilitate Haeduorum interfecta tantum potentia antecesserant, ut magnam partem clientium ab Haeduis ad se traducereut obsidesque ab iis principum filios accipereut et publice iurare cogerent nihil se contra Sequanos consilii inituros; et partem finitimi agri per vim occupatam possiderent Galliaeque totius principatum  
 25 obtinerent. qua necessitate adductus Divitiacus auxilium petendi causa Romam ad senatum profectus imperfecta re redierat. adventu Caesaris facta commutatione rerum, obsidibus Haeduis redditis, veteribus clientelis restitutis, novis per Caesarem comparatis. quod hi, qui se ad eorum amicitiam aggregaverant,  
 30 meliore condicione atque aequiore imperio se uti videbant, reliquis

rebus eorum gratia dignitateque amplificata Sequani principatum dimiserant. in eorum locum Remi successerant: quos quod adaequare apud Caesarem gratia intellegebatur, ii, qui propter veteres inimicitias nullo modo cum Haeduis coniungi poterant, se Remis in clientelam dicabant. hos illi diligenter tuebantur: ita et novam et repente collectam auctoritatem tenebant. eo tum statu res erat, ut longe principes haberentur Haedui, secundum locum dignitatis Remi obtinerent.

13. In omni Gallia eorum hominum, qui aliquo sunt numero atque honore, genera sunt duo; nam plebes paene servorum habetur loco, quae nihil audet per se, nullo adhibetur consilio. plerique, cum aut aere alieno aut magnitudine tributorum aut iniuria potentiorum premuntur, sese in servitutem dicant nobilibus: in hos eadem omnia sunt iura, quae dominis in servos. sed de his duobus generibus alterum est druidum, alterum equitum. illi rebus divinis intersunt, sacrificia publica ac privata procurant, religiones interpretantur: ad eos magnus adulescentium numerus disciplinae causa concurrat, magnoque hi sunt apud eos honore. nam fere de omnibus controversiis publicis privatisque constituunt, et, si quod est admissum facinus, si caedes facta, si de hereditate, si de finibus controversia est, idem decernunt, praemia poenasque constituunt; si qui aut privatus aut populus eorum decreto non stetit, sacrificiis interdiciunt. haec poena apud eos est gravissima. quibus ita est interdictum, hi numero impiorum ac sceleratorum habentur, his omnes decedunt, aditum sermonemque defugiunt, ne quid ex contagione incommodi accipiant, neque his petentibus ius redditur neque honos ullus communicatur. his autem omnibus druidibus praeest unus, qui summam inter eos habet auctoritatem. hoc mortuo aut, si qui ex reliquis excellit dignitate, succedit, aut, si sunt plures pares, suffragio druidum, nonnumquam etiam armis de principatu contendunt. hi certo anni tempore in finibus Carnutum,

quae regio totius Galliae media habetur, eonsidunt in loco **consecrato**. huc omnes undique, qui controversias habent, conveniunt eorumque decretis iudiciisque parent. disciplina in Britannia reperta atque inde in Galliam **translata** esse existimatur, et nunc, qui diligentius eam rem eognoscere volunt, plerumque **illo** discendi causa proficiscuntur.

**14.** Druides a bello abesse consuerunt neque tributa una cum reliquis pendunt, **militiae vacationem** omniumque rerum habent **immunitatem**. tantis excitati praemiis et sua sponte multi in  
 10 disciplina conveniunt et a parentibus propinquisque mittuntur. magnum ibi numerum **versuum ediscere** dieuntur: itaque annos nonnulli **vicenos** in disciplina permanent. neque fas esse existimant ea litteris mandare, eum in reliquis fere rebus, publicis  
 15 de causis instituisse videntur, quod neque in vulgum disciplinam efferri velint neque eos, qui discunt, litteris confisos minus memoriae studere; quod fere plerisque accidit, ut praesidio  
 20 litterarum diligentiam in **perdiscendo** ac memoriam remittant. imprimis hoc volunt persuadere, non interire **animas**, sed ab aliis post mortem transire ad alios, atque hoc maxime ad virtutem  
 excitari putant metu mortis neglecto. multa praeterea de **sideribus** atque eorum motu, de **mundi** ac terrarum magnitudine, de rerum natura, de deorum immortalium vi ac potestate **disputant** et inventum tradunt.

**15.** Alterum genus est equitum. hi, eum est usus atque aliquod bellum incidit (quod fere ante Caesaris adventum quotannis accidere **solebat**, uti aut ipsi iniurias inferrent aut illatas propulsarent). omnes in bello versantur, atque eorum ut quisque est genere eopiisque amplissimus, ita plurimos eircum se  
 30 **bactos** elientesque habet. hanc unam gratiam potentiamque noverunt.

16. Natio est omnis Gallorum admodum dedita religionibus atque ob eam causam, qui sunt affecti gravioribus **morbis** quique in proeliis periculisque versantur, aut pro **victimis** homines **immolant** aut se immolatuos **vovent** **administrisque** ad ea sacrificia druidibus utuntur, quod, pro vita hominis nisi hominis vita 5 reddatur, non posse aliter deorum immortalium **numen placari** arbitrantur, publiceque eiusdem generis habent instituta sacrificia. alii immani magnitudine **simulacra** habent, quorum contexta viminibus membra **vivis** hominibus complent: quibus succensis circumventi flamma exanimantur homines. supplicia eorum, qui 10 in **furto** aut in **latrocinio** aut aliqua **noxia** sint comprehensi, gratiora dis immortalibus esse arbitrantur; sed, cum eius generis copia deficit, etiam ad innocentium supplicia descendunt.

17. Deum maxime **Mercurium** colunt: huius sunt plurima simulacra, hunc omnium **inventorem artium** ferunt, hunc viarum 15 atque itinerum ducem, hunc ad **quaestus** pecuniae **mercaturasque** habere vim maximam arbitrantur. post hunc **Apollinem** et **Martem** et **Iovem** et **Minervam**; de his eandem fere, quam reliquae gentes, habent opinionem: Apollinem morbos depellere, Minervam operum atque **artificiorum** initia tradere, Iovem im- 20 perium **caelestium** tenere, Martem bella regere. huic, cum proelio dimicare constituerunt, ea, quae bello ceperint, plerumque devovent. cum superaverunt, **animalia** capta immolant reliquasque res in unum locum conferunt. multis in civitatibus harum rerum exstructos tumulus locis consecratis conspicari licet; 25 neque saepe accidit, ut, neglecta quispiam religione aut capta apud se occultare aut posita tollere auderet, gravissimumque ei rei supplicium cum cruciatu constitutum est.

18. Galli se omnes ab **Dite** patre prognatos praedicant idque ab druidibus proditum dicunt. ob eam causam spatia omnis 30 temporis non numero dierum, sed noctium finiunt; dies **natales**

et mensium et annorum initia sic observant, ut noctem dies subsequatur. in reliquis vitae institutis hoc fere ab reliquis differunt, quod suos liberos, nisi cum **adoleverunt**, ut munus militiae sustinere possint, palam ad se adire non patiuntur  
 5 filiumque **puerili** aetate in publico in conspectu patris **adsistere** turpe ducunt.

**19.** Viri, quantas pecunias ab uxoribus **dotis** nomine acceperunt, tantas ex suis bonis **aestimatione** facta cum dotibus communicant. huius omnis pecuniae **coniunctim** ratio habetur  
 10 **fructusque** servantur: uter eorum vita superavit, ad cum pars utriusque cum fructibus superiorum temporum pervenit. viri in uxores, sicuti in liberos, vitae necisque habent potestatem; et cum paterfamiliae **illustriore** loco natus decessit, eius propinqui conveniunt et, de morte si res in suspicionem venit, de uxori-  
 15 bus in servilem modum quaestionem habent et, si compertum est, igni atque omnibus tormentis **excrucciatas** interficiunt. **funera** sunt pro cultu Gallorum **magnifica** et **sumptuosa**; omniaque, quae vivis **cordi** fuisse arbitrantur, in ignem inferunt, etiam animalia, ac paulo supra hanc memoriam servi et clientes,  
 20 quos ab iis **dilectos** esse constabat, iustis funeribus confectis una cremabantur.

*The manners of the Germans.*

**20.** Quae civitates commodius suam rempublicam administrare existimantur, habent legibus sanctum, si quis quid de re publica a finitimis rumore aut fama acceperit, uti ad magistratum de-  
 25 ferat neve cum quo alio communicet, quod saepe homines temerarios atque imperitos **falsis** rumoribus terreri et ad facinus impelli et de summis rebus consilium capere cognitum est. magistratus quae visa sunt occultant, quaeque esse ex usu iudicaverunt, multitudini produnt. de re publica nisi per con-  
 30 cilium loqui non conceditur.



21. Germani multum ab hac consuetudine differunt. nam neque druides habent, qui rebus divinis praesint, neque sacrificiis student. deorum numero eos solos ducunt, quos cernunt et quorum aperte opibus iuvantur, Solem et **Vulcanum** et **Lanam**, reliquos ne fama quidem acceperunt. vita omnis in 5 venationibus atque in studiis rei militaris consistit: ab parvulis labori ac **duritiae** student. qui diutissime **impuberes** permanserunt, maximam inter suos ferunt laudem: hoc ali staturam, ali vires nervosque confirmari putant. intra annum vero **vicesimum feminae notitiam** habuisse in turpissimis habent rebus; cuius 10 rei nulla est **occultatio**, quod et **promiscue** in fluminibus **perluuntur** et pellibus aut parvis **rhenonum** tegimentis utuntur magna corporis parte nuda.

22. Agriculturae non student; maiorque pars victus eorum in lacte, **caseo**, carne consistit. neque quisquam agri modum 15 certum aut fines habet **proprios**; sed magistratus ac principes in annos singulos gentibus **cognationibusque** hominum, qui una **coierunt**, quantum et quo loco visum est agri attribuunt atque anno post **alio** transire cogunt. eius rei multas **afferunt** causas: ne **assidua** consuetudine capti studium belli gerendi agricultura 20 commutent; ne latos fines parare studeant potentioresque humiliores possessionibus expellant; ne **accuratius** ad frigora atque aestus vitandos aedificent; ne qua oriatur pecuniae cupiditas, qua ex re factiones dissensionesque nascuntur; ut animi aequitate plebem contineant, cum suas quisque opes cum potentissimis 25 aequari videat.

23. Civitatibus maxima laus est quam latissimas circum se vastatis finibus solitudines habere. hoc proprium virtutis extimant, expulsos agris finitimos cedere, neque quemquam prope audere consistere; simul hoc se fore tutiores arbitrantur repentinae incursionis timore sublato. cum bellum civitas aut illatum

defendit aut infert, magistratus, qui ei bello praesint, ut vitae  
 neisque habeant potestatem, deliguntur. in pace nullus est  
 communis magistratus, sed principes regionum atque pagorum  
 inter suos ius dicunt controversiasque minuunt. Latrocinia nul-  
 5 lam habent **infamiam**, quae extra fines cuiusque civitatis fiunt,  
 atque ea iuventutis exereandae ac **desidia** minuendae causa fieri  
 praedieant. atque ubi quis ex principibus in concilio dixit, se  
 ducem fore, qui sequi velint, profiteantur, eonsurgunt ii, qui et  
 causam et hominem probant suumque auxilium pollicentur atque  
 10 ab multitudine collaudantur: qui ex iis secuti non sunt, in deser-  
 torum ac **proditorum** numero duentur omniumque his rerum  
 postea fides **derogatur**. hospites **violare**, fas non putant; qui qua-  
 eumque de causa ad eos venerunt, ab iniuria prohibent, sanctos  
 habent, hisque omnium domus patent vietusque communicatur.

15 **24.** Ac fuit antea tempus, cum Germanos Galli virtute supe-  
 rarent, ultro bella inferrent, propter hominum multitudinem  
 agrique inopiam trans Rhenum **colonias** mitterent. itaque ea,  
 quae **fertilissima** Germaniae sunt, loca circum **Hercyniam** silvam,  
 quam **Eratostheni** et quibusdam Graecis fama notam esse video,  
 20 quam illi **Orcyniam** appellant, **Volcae Tectosages** occupaverunt  
 atque ibi consederunt; quae gens ad hoc tempus his sedibus  
 sese continet summamque habet iustitiae et **bellicae** laudis  
 opinionem. nunc, quod in eadem inopia, **egestate patientiaque**  
 Germani permanent, eodem victu et cultu corporis utuntur,  
 25 Gallis autem provinciarum propinquitas et **transmarinarum**  
 rerum notitia multa ad copiam atque usus largitur, paulatim  
 assuefacti superari multisque vietis proeliis ne se quidem ipsi  
 cum illis virtute **comparant**.

*The Hercynian forest and the remarkable animals found there.*

**25.** Huius Hercyniae silvae, quae supra demonstrata est,  
 30 latitudo novem dierum iter expedito patet: non enim aliter

finiri potest, neque mensuras itinerum noverunt. oritur ab Helvetiorum et Nemetum et Rauracorum finibus, **rectaque** fluminis **Danuvii** regione pertinet ad fines **Dacorum** et **Anartium**: hinc se flectit **sinistrorsus** diversis ab flumine regionibus multarumque gentium fines propter magnitudinem attingit; neque quisquam est huius Germaniae, qui se aut adisse ad initium eius silvae dicat, cum dierum iter LX processerit, aut, quo ex loco oriatur, acceperit: multaque in ea genera **ferarum** nasci constat, quae reliquis in locis visa non sint; ex quibus quae maxime differant ab ceteris et memoriae prodenda videantur, haec 10 sunt.

26. Est **bos cervi** figura, cuius a media fronte inter **ares** unum cornu existit **excelsius** magisque **directum** his, quae nobis nota sunt, cornibus. ab eius summo sicut **palmae** rami-que late **diffunduntur**. eadem est feminae **marisque** natura, 15 eadem forma magnitudoque cornuum.

27. Sunt item, quae appellantur **alces**. harum est consimilis **capris** figura et **varietas** pellium, sed magnitudine paulo antecedunt **mutilaeque** sunt cornibus et **crura** sine **nodis articulisque** habent, neque quietis causa procumbunt, neque, si quo afflictas 20 casu conciderint, erigere sese aut sublevare possunt. his sunt arbores pro **cubilibus**: ad eas se **applicant** atque ita paulum modo **reclinatae** quietem capiunt. quarum ex vestigiis cum est animadversum a **venatoribus**, quo se recipere consuerint, omnes eo loco aut ab radicibus subruunt aut **accidunt** arbores, tantum 25 ut summa species earum stantium relinquatur. huc cum se consuetudine reclinaverunt, infirmas arbores pondere affligunt atque una ipsae concidunt.

28. Tertium est genus eorum, qui **uri** appellantur. hi sunt magnitudine paulo infra **elephantos**, specie et colore et figura **tauri**. 30

magna vis eorum est et magna **velocitas**, neque homini neque ferae, quam conspexerunt, parcunt. hos **studiose foveis** captos interficiunt. hoc se labore **durant** homines adulescentes atque hoc genere venationis exercent, et qui plurimos ex his interfece-  
 5 runt, relatis in publicum cornibus, quae sint testimonio, magnam ferunt laudem. sed **assuescere** ad homines et **mansuefieri** ne parvuli quidem excepti possunt. amplitudo cornuum et figura et species multum a nostrorum boum cornibus differt. haec studiose conquisita ab labris **argento circumcludunt** atque in  
 10 amplissimis **epulis** pro **poculis** utuntur.

29-44. WAR AGAINST AMBIORIX AND THE EBURONES.

*Caesar returns to Gaul. Ambiorix is defeated. The territories of the Eburones are laid waste.*

29. Caesar, postquam per Ubios exploratores comperit Suebos sese in silvas recepisse, inopiam frumenti veritus, quod, ut supra demonstravimus, minime omnes Germani agriculturac student, constituit non progredi longius; sed, ne omnino metum **reditus**  
 15 sui barbaris tolleret, atque ut eorum auxilia tardaret, reducto exercitu partem ultimam pontis, quae ripas Ubiorum contingebat, in longitudinem pedum CC rescindit, atque in extremo ponte turrim **tabulatorum** quattuor constituit praesidiumque cohortium duodecim pontis tuendi causa ponit magnisque eum  
 20 locum munitionibus **firmat**. ei loco praesidioque Gaium **Volcatium Tullum** adulescentem praefecit, ipse, cum **maturescere** frumenta inciperent, ad bellum Ambiorigis profectus, per Arduennam silvam, quae est totius Galliac maxima atque ab ripis Rheni finibusque Treverorum ad Nervios pertinet milibusque amplius  
 25 quingentis in longitudinem patet, Lucium **Minucium Basilum** cum omni equitatu praemittit, si quid celeritate itineris atque opportunitate temporis proficere possit; monet, ut ignes fieri in

castris prohibeat, ne qua eius adventus procul significatio fiat : sese confestim subsequi dicit. Basilus, ut imperatum est, facit.

**30.** Celeriter contraque omnium opinionem confecto itinere multos in agris inopinantesprehendit : eorum indicio ad ipsum 5 Ambiorigem contendit, quo in loco cum paucis equitibus esse dicebatur. multum cum in omnibus rebus, tum in re militari potest fortuna. nam sicut magno accidit casu, ut in ipsum **incautum** atque etiam **imparatum** incideret, priusque eius adventus ab omnibus videretur, quam fama ac nuntiis afferretur, sic 10 magnae fuit fortunae omni militari instrumento, quod circum se habebat, erepto, redis equisque comprehensis ipsum effugere mortem. sed hoc quoque factum est, quod aedificio circumdato silva, ut sunt fere domicilia Gallorum, qui vitandi aestus causa plerumque silvarum ac fluminum petunt propinquitates, **comites** 15 familiaresque eius angusto in loco paulisper equitum nostrorum vim sustinuerunt. his pugnantibus illum in equum quidam ex suis intulit : fugientem silvae texerunt. sic et ad subeundum periculum et ad vitandum multum fortuna valuit.

**31.** Ambiorix copias suas iudicione non conduxerit, quod 20 proelio dimicandum non existimarit, an tempore exclusus et repentino equitum adventu prohibitus, cum reliquum exercitum subsequi crederet, dubium est ; sed certe dimissis per agros nuntiis sibi quemque consulere iussit. quorum pars in Arduennam silvam, pars in continentes paludes profugit ; qui proximi 25 Oceanum fuerunt, hi insulis sese occultaverunt, quas aestus efficere consuerunt : multi ex suis finibus egressi se suaque omnia alienissimis crediderunt. Catuvolcus, rex dimidiae partis Eburonum, qui una cum Ambiorige consilium iniurat, aetate iam confectus, cum laborem belli aut fugae ferre non posset, omni- 30

bus precibus **detestatus** Ambiorigem, qui eius consilii auctor fuisset, **taxo**, cuius magna in Gallia Germanique copia est, se exanimavit.

**32.** **Segni** Condrusique, ex gente et numero Germanorum, qui  
 5 sunt inter Eburones Treverosque, legatos ad Caesarem miserunt, oratum, ne se in hostium numero duceret neve omnium Germanorum, qui essent citra Rhenum, unam esse causam indicaret: nihil se de bello cogitavisse, nulla Ambiorigi auxilia misisse. Caesar explorata re quaestione captivorum, si qui ad eos Ebu-  
 10 nes ex fuga convenissent, ad se ut reducerentur, imperavit; si ita fecissent, fines eorum se violaturum negavit. tum copiis in tres partes distributis impedimenta omnium legionum **Aduatucam** contulit. id castelli nomen est. hoc fere est in mediis Eburonum finibus, ubi Titurius atque Aurunculeius hiemandi causa  
 15 considerant. hunc eum reliquis rebus locum probarat, tum quod superioris anni munitiones integrae manebant, ut militum laborem sublevaret. praesidio impedimentis legionem quartamdecimam reliquit, unam ex his tribus, quas proxime conscriptas ex Italia traduxerat. ei legioni castrisque Quintum **Tullium** Ciceronem praeficit ducentosque equites attribuit.  
 20

**33.** Partito exercitu Titum Labienum eum legionibus tribus ad Oceanum **versus** in eas partes, quae Menapios **attingunt**, proficisci iubet; Gaium Trebonium eum pari legionum numero ad eam regionem, quae Aduatueis **adiacet**, depopulandam mittit;  
 25 ipse eum reliquis tribus ad flumen **Scaldem**, quod influit in Mosam, extremasque Arduennae partis ire constituit, quo eum paucis equitibus profectum Ambiorigem audiebat. discedens post diem septimum sese reversurum confirmat: quam ad diem ei legioni, quae in praesidio relinquebatur, frumentum deberi  
 30 sciebat. Labienum Treboniumque hortatur, si reipublicae com-

modo facere possint, ad eum diem revertantur, ut rursus communicato consilio exploratisque hostium rationibus aliud belli initium capere possint.



MANIPULUS.

34. Erat, ut supra demonstravimus, manus certa nulla, non oppidum, non praesidium, quod se armis 5 defenderet, sed in omnes partis dispersa multitudo. ubi cuique aut valles abdita aut locus silvestris aut palus impedita spem praesidii aut salutis aliquam **offerebat**, consererat. haec loca **vicinitatibus** erant nota, mag-  
namque res diligentiam **requirebat**, non in summa 10 exercitus tucuda (nullum enim poterat universis ab perterritis ac dispersis periculum accidere), sed in singulis militibus conservandis; quae tamen ex parte res ad salutem exercitus pertinebat. nam et praedae cupiditas multos longius evocabat, et silvae incertis 15 occultisque itineribus confertos adire prohibebant. si negotium confici **stirpemque** hominum sceleratorum interfici vellet, dimittendae plures manus diducendique erant milites; si continere ad signa manipulos vellet, ut instituta ratio et consuetudo exercitus Romani postulabat, 20 locus ipse erat praesidio barbaris, neque ex occulto **insidiandi** et dispersos circumveniendi singulis deerat audacia. at in eiusmodi difficultatibus, quantum diligentia provideri poterat, providebatur, ut potius in nocendo aliquid praetermitteretur, etsi omnium animi ad ulciscendum ardebant, quam cum aliquo militum detri- 25 mento noceretur. dimittit ad finitimas civitates nuntios Caesar: omnes ad se evocat spe praedae ad diripiendos Eburones, ut potius in silvis Gallorum vita quam legionarius miles periclitetur, simul ut magna multitudine **circumfusa** pro **tali** facinore stirps ac nomen civitatis tollatur. magnus undique numerus celeriter 30 convenit.

*The Sugambri cross the Rhine, but change their design and attack the camp of Cicero. Caesar arrives and repels the enemy.*

35. Haec in omnibus Eburonum partibus gerebantur, diesque appetebat septimus, quem ad diem Caesar ad impedimenta legionemque reverti constituerat. hic quantum in bello fortuna pos-  
 5 sit et quantos afferat casus, cognosci potuit. dissipatis ac perterritis hostibus, ut demonstravimus, manus erat nulla, quae  
 parvam modo causam timoris afferret. trans Rhenum ad Germanos pervenit fama, diripi Eburones atque ultro omnes ad  
 praedam evocari. cogunt equitum duo milia Sugambri, qui sunt  
 10 proximi Rheno, a quibus receptos ex fuga Tencteros atque Usipetes supra docuimus. transeunt Rhenum navibus ratibusque  
 triginta milibus passuum infra eum locum, ubi pons erat perfectus  
 praesidiumque ab Caesare relictum: primos Eburonum fines adeunt;  
 multos ex fuga dispersos excipiunt, magno pecoris numero, cuius  
 sunt cupidissimi barbari, potiuntur. invitati  
 15 praeda longius procedunt. non hos palus in bello atrociniisque  
 natos, non silvae morantur. quibus in locis sit Caesar, ex captivis  
 quaerunt; profectum longius reperiunt omnemque exercitum  
 discessisse cognoscunt. atque unus ex captivis, 'quid vos,' inquit,  
 'hanc miseram ac tenuem **sectamini** praedam, quibus licet  
 20 iam esse **fortunatissimis**? tribus horis Aduatucam venire potestis:  
 huc omnes suas fortunas exercitus Romanorum contulit: praesidii tantum  
 est, ut ne murus quidem cingi possit, neque quisquam egredi extra  
 munitiones audeat.' oblata spe Germani quam nacti erant praedam  
 in occulto relinquunt; ipsi  
 25 Aduatucam contendunt, usi eodem duce, cuius haec indicio  
 cognoverant.

36. Cicero, qui per omnes superiores dies praeceptis Caesaris summa diligentia milites in castris continuisset ac ne calonem quidem quemquam extra munitionem egredi passus esset, sep-



timo die diffidens de numero dierum Caesarem fidem servaturum, quod longius eum progressum audiebat, neque ulla de reditu eius fama afferebatur, simul eorum permotus vocibus, qui illius patientiam paene **obsessionem** appellabant, siquidem ex castris egredi non liceret, nullum eiusmodi casum exspectans, quo no- 5  
vem **oppositis** legionibus maximoque equitatu dispersis ac paene deletis hostibus in milibus passuum tribus offendi posset, quinque cohortes frumentatum in proximas **segetes** mittit, quas inter et eastra unus omnino collis intererat. complures erant in castris ex legionibus aegri relictī; ex quibus qui hoc spatio dierum 10  
**convulnerant**, eireiter CCC, sub vexillo una mittuntur; magna praeterea multitudo ealonum, magna vis iumentorum, quae in castris **subsederat**, facta potestate sequitur.

**37.** Hoc ipso tempore et casu Germani equites **interveniant** protinusque eodem illo, quo venerant, eursu ab decumana porta 15  
in eastra irrupere eonantur, nec prius sunt visi obiectis ab ea parte silvis, quam castris appropinquarent, usque eo, ut qui sub vallo tenderent mercatores recipiendi sui facultatem non haberent. inopinantes nostri re nova perturbantur, ac vix primum impetum eohors in statione sustinet. eireumfunduntur ex reli- 20  
quis hostes partibus, si quem aditum reperire possent. aegre portas nostri tuentur, reliquos aditus locus ipse per se munitioque defendit. totis trepidatur castris, atque alius ex alio eausam tumultus quaerit; neque quo signa ferantur, neque quam in partem quisque eonveniat, provident. alius iam castra eapta 25  
pronuntiat, alius deleto exereitu atque imperatore victores barbaros venisse eontendit; plerique novas sibi ex loeo religiones fingunt Cottaecque et Titurii ealamitatem, qui in eodem occiderint eastello, ante oculos ponunt. tali timore omnibus perterritis eonfirmatur opinio barbaris, ut ex eaptivo audierant, nullum esse 30  
intus praesidium. perrumpere nituntur seque ipsi adhortantur, ne tantam fortunam ex manibus dimittant.

38. Erat aeger in praesidio relictus Publius Sextius Baculus, qui primum pilum ad Caesarem duxerat, cuius **mentionem** superioribus proeliis fecimus, ac diem iam quintum cibo **caruerat**. hic diffusus suae atque omnium saluti incrimis ex tabernaculo  
 5 prodit : videt **imminere** hostes atque in summo rem esse **discrimine** : capit arma a proximis atque in porta consistit. consequuntur hunc centuriones eius cohortis, quae in statione erat : paulisper una proelium sustinent. relinquit animus Sextium gravibus acceptis vulneribus : aegre per manus tractus servatur. hoc  
 10 spatio interposito reliqui sese confirmant tantum, ut in munitionibus consistere audeant speciemque defensorum praebant.

39. Interim confecta **frumentatione** milites nostri clamorem exaudiunt : **praecurrunt** equites ; quanto sit res in periculo, cognoscunt. hic vero nulla munitio est, quae perterritos recipiat : modo conscripti atque usus militaris imperiti ad tribunal  
 15 militum centurionesque ora convertunt : quid ab his praecipiat, exspectant. nemo est tam fortis, quin rei novitate perturbetur. barbari signa procul conspicati oppugnatione desistunt : redisse primo legiones credunt, quas longius discessisse ex  
 20 captivis cognoverant ; postea despecta paucitate ex omnibus partibus impetum faciunt. calones in proximum tunulum procurrunt : hinc celeriter deiceti se in signa manipulosque coniciunt : eo magis timidos perterrent milites.

40. Alii, **cuneo** facto ut celeriter percurrant, censeant, quoniam  
 25 tam propinqua sint castra, et si pars aliqua circumventa ceciderit, at reliquos servari posse confidunt ; alii, ut in iugo consistent atque eundem omnes ferant easum. hoc veteres non probant milites, quos sub vexillo una profectos docuimus. itaque inter se cohortati, duce Gaio Trebonio, equite Romano, qui eis erat  
 30 praepositus, per medios hostes percurrunt incolunesque ad unum omnes in castra perveniunt. hos subsequuti calones equi-

tesque eodem impetu militum virtute servantur. at ii, qui in iugo constiterant, nullo etiam nunc usu rei militaris percepto neque in eo, quod probaverant, consilio permanere, ut se loco superiore defenderent, neque eam, quam **prodesse** aliis vim celeritatemque viderant, **imitari** potuerunt, sed se in castra recipere 5 conati iniquum in locum demiserunt. centuriones, quorum nonnulli ex inferioribus ordinibus reliquarum legionum virtutis causa in superiores erant ordines huius legionis traducti, ne autem partem rei militaris laudem amitterent, fortissime pugnantes conciderunt. militum pars horum virtute submotis hostibus 10 praeter spem incolumis in castra pervenit, pars a barbaris circumventa perit.

**41.** Germani desperata **expugnatione** castrorum, quod nostros iam constitisse in munitionibus videbant, cum ea praeda, quam in silvis deposuerant, trans Rhenum sese receperunt. ac tantus 15 fuit etiam post discessum hostium terror, ut ea nocte, cum Gaius Volusenus missus cum equitatu ad castra venisset, fidem non faceret adesse cum incolumi Caesarem exercitu. sic omnino animos timor **praeoccupaverat**, ut paene **alienata** mente deletis omnibus copiis equitatum tantum se ex fuga recepisse dicerent 20 neque incolumi exercitu Germanos castra oppugnatuos fuisse contenderent. quem timorem Caesaris adventus sustulit.

**42.** Reversus ille eventus belli non ignorans unum, quod cohortes ex statione et praesidio essent emissae, questus — ne minimo quidem casu locum relinquere debuisset — multum fortunam 25 in repentino hostium adventu potuisse iudicavit, multo etiam amplius, quod paene ab ipso vallo portisque castrorum barbaros avertisset. quarum omnium rerum maxime admirandum videbatur, quod Germani, qui eo consilio Rhenum transierant, ut Ambiorigis fines depopularentur, ad castra Romanorum 30 delati **optatissimum** Ambiorigi beneficium obtulerunt.

*A council is held respecting the conspiracy. Acco receives capital punishment. Caesar departs for Italy.*

43. Caesar rursus ad vexandos hostes profectus magno coacto numero ex finitimis civitatibus in omnes partes dimittit. omnes vici atque omnia aedificia, quae quisque conspexerat, incendebantur; praeda ex omnibus locis agebatur; frumenta non solum  
 5 a tanta multitudine iumentorum atque hominum consumebantur, sed etiam anni tempore atque imbribus procubuerant, ut, si qui etiam in praesentia se occultassent, tamen his deducto exercitu rerum omnium inopia pereundum videretur. ac saepe in eum locum ventum est tanto in omnis partis diviso equitatu, ut modo  
 10 visum ab se Ambiorigem in fuga circumspicerent captivi nec plane etiam abisse ex conspectu contenderent, ut spe consequendi illata atque infinito labore suscepto, qui se summam ab Caesare gratiam inituros putarent, paene naturam studio vincerent, semperque paulum ad summam felicitatem defuisse videre-  
 15 tur, atque ille latebris aut saltibus se eriperet et noctu occultatus alias regiones partesque peteret non maiore equitum praesidio quam quattuor, quibus solis vitam suam committere audebat.

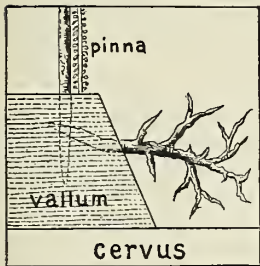
44. Tali modo vastatis regionibus exercitum Caesar duarum cohortium damno Durocortorum Remorum reducit concilioque  
 20 in eum locum Galliae indieto de coniuratione Senonum et Carnutum quaestionem habere instituit et de Accone, qui princeps eius consilii fuerat, graviore sententia pronuntiata more maiorum supplicium sumpsit. nonnulli iudicium veriti profugerunt. quibus cum aqua atque igni interdixisset, duas legiones ad fines  
 25 Treverorum, duas in Lingonibus, sex reliquas in Senonum finibus Agedinci in hibernis collocavit frumentoque exercitui proviso, ut instituerat, in Italiam ad conventus agendos profectus est.

C. IULII CAESARIS  
DE BELLO GALLICO

COMMENTARIUS SEPTIMUS.

1-90. WAR WITH VERGINGETORIX.

*The conspiracy of the Gallic nations for freedom.*



1. Quieta Gallia Caesar, ut constituerat, in Italiam ad conventus agendos proficiscitur. ibi cognoscit de **Clodii** caede senatusque consulto certior factus, ut omnes **iuuiores** Italiae coniurarent, 5 delectum tota provincia habere instituit. eae res in Galliam **Transalpinam** celeriter perferuntur. addunt ipsi et **affingunt** rumoribus Galli, quod res poscere

videbatur. retineri **urbano** motu Caesarem neque in tantis dis- 10 sensionibus ad exercitum venire posse. hac impulsu occasione, qui iam ante se populi Romani imperio subiectos dolerent, liberius atque audacius de bello consilia inire incipiunt. indictis inter se principes Galliae conciliis silvestribus ac remotis locis queruntur de **Acconis** morte; posse hunc casum ad ipsos **recidere** 15 demonstrant; miserantur communem Galliae fortunam; omnibus pollicitationibus ac praemiis **deposcunt**, qui belli initium faciant et sui capitis periculo Galliam in libertatem vindicent. in primis

rationem esse habendam dicunt, priusquam eorum **clandestina** consilia efferantur, ut Caesar ab exercitu intercludatur. id esse facile, quod neque legiones audeant absente imperatore ex hibernis egredi, neque imperator sine praesidio ad legiones pervenire  
 5 possit ; postremo in acie praestare interfici, quam non veterem belli gloriam libertatemque, quam a maioribus acceperint recuperare.

2. His rebus **agitatis** profitentur Carnutes se nullum periculum communis salutis causa recusare principesque ex omnibus bellum  
 10 facturos pollicentur et, quoniam in praesentia obsidibus cavere inter se non possint, ne res efferatur, ut iureiurando ac fide sanciantur, petunt, collatis militaribus signis, quo more eorum gravissima **caerimonia** continetur, ne facto initio belli ab reliquis deserantur. tum collaudatis Carnutibus dato iureiurando ab  
 15 omnibus, qui aderant, tempore eius rei constituto ab concilio disceditur.

3. Ubi ea dies venit, Carnutes **Gutruato** et **Conconnetodumno** ducibus, desperatis hominibus, **Cenabum** dato signo concurrunt **civesque** Romanos, qui **negotiandi** causa ibi constiterant, in his  
 20 Gaium **Fufium Citam**, honestum equitem Romanum, qui rei frumentariae **iussu** Caesaris praerat, interficiunt bonaque eorum diripiunt. celeriter ad omnes Galliae civitates fama perfertur. nam ubicumque maior atque illustrior incidit res, clamore per  
 25 proximis tradunt, ut tum accidit. nam quae Cenabi oriente sole gesta essent, ante primam confectam vigiliam in finibus Arvernorum audita sunt, quod spatium est milium circiter **CLX**.

4. Simili ratione ibi **Vercingetorix**, **Celtilli** filius, Arvernus, 30 summae potentiae adulescens, cuius pater principatum Galliae

totius obtinuerat et ob eam causam, quod regnum appetebat, ab civitate erat interfectus, convocatis suis clientibus facile incendit. cognito eius consilio ad arma concurritur. prohibetur ab **Gobannitione**, patruo suo, reliquisque principibus, qui hanc temptandam fortunam non existimabant, expellitur ex oppido 5 **Gergovia**; non destitit tamen atque in agris habet delectum egentium ac perditorum. hac coacta manu, quosecumque adit ex civitate, ad suam sententiam perducit; hortatur, ut communis libertatis causa arma capiant, magnisque coactis copiis **adversarios** suos, a quibus paulo ante erat eiectus, expellit ex civitate. 10 rex ab suis appellatur. dimittit **quoqueversus** legationes; **obtestatur**, ut in fide maneat. celeriter sibi Senones, Parisios, Pictones, **Cadurcos**, Turonos, Aulercos, **Lemovices**, **Andos** reliquosque omnes, qui Oceanum attingunt, adiungit; omnium consensu ad eum defertur imperium. qua oblata potestate om- 15 nibus his civitatibus obsides imperat, certum numerum militum ad se celeriter adduci iubet, armorum quantum quaeque civitas domi quodque ante tempus efficiat, constituit: in primis equitatu studet. summae diligentiae summam imperii **severitatem** addit: magnitudine supplicii dubitantes cogit. nam maiore 20 commisso **delicto** igni atque omnibus tormentis necat, levio de causa auribus **desectis** aut singulis **effossis** oculis domum remittit, ut sint reliquis **documento** et magnitudine poenae perterreant alios.

5. His suppliciis celeriter coacto exercitu **Luclerium** Cadurcum, 25 summae hominem audaciae, cum parte copiarum in Rutenos mittit; ipse in Bituriges proficiscitur. eius adventu Bituriges ad Haeduos, quorum erant in fide, legatos mittunt subsidium rogatum, quo facilius hostium copias sustinere possint. Haedui de consilio legatorum, quos Caesar ad exercitum reliquerat, eo- 30 copias equitatus peditatusque subsidio Biturigibus mittunt. qui cum ad flumen Ligerim venissent, quod Bituriges ab Haeduis

dividit, paucos dies ibi morati neque flumen transire ausi domum revertuntur legatisque nostris renuntiant se Biturigum perfidiam veritos revertisse, quibus id consilii fuisse cognoverint, ut, si flumen transissent, una ex parte ipsi, altera Arverni se  
 5 circumstiterent. id eane de eausa, quam legatis pronuntiarunt, an perfidia adducti fecerint, quod nihil nobis constat, non videtur pro certo esse proponendum. Bituriges eorum discessu statim eum Arvernis iunguntur.

*Caesar returns to Gaul. The Arverni are overcome. Caesar marches against Vercingetorix.*

6. His rebus in Italiam Caesari nuntiatis, cum iam ille urbanas  
 10 res virtute **Cn.** Pompei commodiorem in statum pervenisse intellexeret, in Transalpinam Galliam profectus est. eo eum venisset, magna difficultate afficiebatur, qua ratione ad exercitum pervenire posset. nam si legiones in provinciam accesserent, se absente in itinere proelio dimicaturas intellegebat; si ipse ad exercitum  
 15 contenderet, ne iis quidem eo tempore, qui quieti viderentur, suam salutem **recte** committi videbat.

7. Interim Lucretius Caecureus in Rutenos missus eam civitatem Arvernis conciliat. progressus in **Nitiobriges** et **Gabalos** ab utrisque obsides accipit et magna coacta manu in provinciam  
 20 Narbonem versus eruptionem facere contendit. qua re nuntiata, Caesar omnibus consiliis **antevertendum** existimavit, ut Narbonem proficisceretur. eo eum venisset, timentes confirmat, praesidia in Rutenis **provincialibus**, **Voleis** **Arecomieis**, **Tolosatis** circumque Narbonem, quae loca hostibus erant finitima, con-  
 25 stituit, partem copiarum ex provincia **supplementum**que, quod ex Italia adduxerat, in **Helvios**, qui fines Arvernorum contingunt, convenire iubet.



8. His rebus comparatis, represso iam Lucterio et remoto, quod intrare intra praesidia periculosum putabat, in Helvios proficiscitur. etsi mons **Cevenna**, qui Arvernos ab Helviis discludit, durissimo tempore anni altissima **nive** iter impediabat, tamen **discussa** nive sex in altitudinem pedum atque ita viis patefactis 5 summo militum **sudore** ad fines Arvernorum pervenit. quibus oppressis inopinantibus, quod se Cevenna ut muro munitos existimabant, ac ne singulari quidem umquam homini eo tempore anni semitae patuerant, equitibus imperat, ut quam latissime possint vagentur et quam maximum hostibus terrorem inferant. 10 celeriter haec fama ac nuntiis ad Vercingetorigem referuntur; quem perterriti omnes Arverni circumsistunt atque obsecrant, ut suis fortunis consulat, neve ab hostibus diripiantur, praesertim cum videat omne ad se bellum translatum. quorum ille precibus permotus castra ex Biturigibus movet in Arvernos versus. 15

9. At Caesar biduum in his locis moratus, quod haec de Vercingetorige usu ventura opinione praeceperat, per causam supplementi equitatusque cogendi ab exercitu discedit, Brutum adulescentem his copiis praeficit; hunc monet, ut in omnis partes equites quam latissime **pervagentur**: daturum se operam, 20 ne longius triduo ab castris absit. his constitutis rebus suis inopinantibus quam maximis potest itineribus **Viennam** pervenit. ibi nactus recentem equitatum, quem multis ante diebus eo praemiserat, neque diurno neque nocturno itinere intermisso per fines Haeduorum in Lingones contendit, ubi duae legiones 25 hiemabant, ut, si quid etiam de sua salute ab Haeduis iniretur consilii, celeritate praecurreret. eo cum pervenisset, ad reliquas legiones mittit priusque omnes in unum locum cogit, quam de eius adventu Arvernens nuntiari posset. hac re cognita Vercingetorix rursus in Bituriges exercitum rediit atque inde profectus 30 **Gorgobinam**, Boiorum oppidum, quos ibi **Helvetico** proelio victos Caesar collocaverat Haeduisque attribuerat, oppugnare instituit.

10. Magnam haec res Caesari difficultatem ad consilium capiendum afferebat, si reliquam partem hibernis uno loco legiones contineret, ne stipendiariis Haeduorum expugnatis cuncta Gallia deficeret, quod nullum amicis in eo praesidium videret positum esse; sin maturius ex hibernis educeret, ne ab re frumentaria duris **subvectionibus** laboraret. praestare visum est tamen omnes difficultates **perpeti**, quam tanta contumelia accepta omnium suorum voluntates alienare. itaque cohortatus Haeduos de supportando commeatu praemittit ad Boios, qui de suo adventu  
10 doceant hortenturque ut in fide maneant atque hostium impetum magno animo sustineant. duabus Agedinci legionibus atque impedimentis totius exercitus relictis ad Boios proficiscitur.

*Caesar takes Vellaunodunum and several other towns, and marches against Avaricum.*

11. Altero die cum ad oppidum Senonum **Vellaunodunum** venisset, ne quem post se hostem relinqueret, quo expeditiore re  
15 frumentaria uteretur, oppugnare instituit idque biduo **circumvallavit**; tertio die missis ex oppido legatis de deditioe arma conferri, iumenta produci, sexcentos obsides dari iubet. ea qui conficceret, Gaium Trebonium legatum relinquit. ipse, ut quam primum iter faceret, Cenabum Carnutum proficiscitur; qui tum  
20 primum allato nuntio de oppugnatione Vellaunoduni, cum longius eam rem ductum iri existimarent, praesidium Cenabi tuendi causa, quod eo mitterent, comparabant. huc biduo pervenit. castris ante oppidum positis dici tempore exclusus in posterum oppugnationem differt quaeque ad eam rem usui sint militibus  
25 imperat et, quod oppidum Cenabum pons fluminis Ligeris continebat, veritus, ne noctu ex oppido profugerent, duas legiones in armis **excubare** iubet. **Genabenses** paulo ante mediam noctem **silentio** ex oppido egressi flumen transire coeperunt. qua re per exploratores nuntiata Caesar legiones, quas expeditas esse

iusserat, portis incensis intromittit atque oppido potitur perpaucis ex hostium numero desideratis, quin cuncti vivi caperentur, quod pontis atque itinerum angustiae multitudinis fugam intercluserant. oppidum diripit atque incendit, praedam militibus donat, exercitum Ligerem traducit atque in Biturigum fines pervenit. 5

12. Vercingetorix, ubi de Caesaris adventu cognovit, oppugnatione destitit atque **obviam** Caesari proficiscitur. ille oppidum Biturigum, positum in via, Noviodunum oppugnare instituerat. quo ex oppido cum legati ad eum venissent oratum, ut sibi ignosceret suaeque vitae consuleret, ut celeritate reliquas res conficeret, qua pleraque erat consecutus, arma conferri, equos produci, obsides dari iubet. parte iam obsidum tradita, cum reliqua administrarentur, centurionibus et paucis militibus intromissis, qui arma iumentaue conquirerent, equitatus hostium procul visus est, qui agmen Vercingetorigis antecesserat. quem simul 15 atque oppidani conspexerunt atque in spem auxilii venerunt, clamore sublato arma capere, portas claudere, murum complere coeperunt. centuriones in oppido, cum ex significatione Gallorum novi aliquid ab iis iniri consilii intellexissent, gladiis dstrictis portas occupaverunt suosque omnes incolumes receperunt. 20

13. Caesar ex castris equitatum educi iubet proeliumque equestre committit: laborantibus iam suis Germanos equites circiter CCCC submittit, quos ab initio secum habere instituerat. eorum impetum Galli sustinere non potuerunt atque in fugam 25 coniecti multis amissis se ad agmen receperunt. quibus profligatis rursus oppidani perterriti comprehensos eos, quorum opera plebem concitatum existimabant, ad Caesarem perduxerunt seseque ei dederunt. quibus rebus confectis Caesar ad oppidum **Avaricum**, quod erat maximum munitissimumque in finibus Biturigum atque agri fertilissima regione, profectus est, quod eo

oppido recepto civitatem Biturigum se in potestatem redacturum confidebat.

14. Vereingetorix tot continuis incommotis Vellaunoduni, Cenabi, Novioduni acceptis suos ad concilium convocat. docet  
5 longe alia ratione esse bellum gerendum, atque antea sit gestum. omnibus modis huic rei studendum, ut pabulatione et comineatu Romani prohibeantur. id esse facile, quod equitatu ipsi **abundent** et quod anni tempore subleventur. pabulum **secari** non posse; necessario dispersos hostes ex aedificiis petere: hos  
10 omnes cotidie ab equitibus deleri posse. praeterea salutis causa rei familiaris commoda neglegenda: vios atque aedificia incendi oportere hoc spatio [a Boia] quoqueversus, quo pabulandi causa adire posse videantur. harum ipsis rerum copiam suppetere, quod, quorum in finibus bellum geratur, eorum opibus subleventur: Romanos aut inopiam non laturos aut magno cum periculo  
15 longius ab castris processuros; neque interesse, ipsosne interficiant, impedimentisque exuant, quibus amissis bellum geri non possit. praeterea oppida incendi oportere, quae non munitione et loci natura ab omni sint periculo tuta, nec suis sint ad **de-**  
20 **tractandam** militiam **receptacula** nec Romanis proposita ad copiam comineatus praedamque tollendam. haec si gravia aut **acerba** videantur, multo illa gravius aestimare, liberos, **coniuges** in servitatem abstrahi, ipsos interfici, quae sit necesse accidere vietis.

25 15. Omnium consensu hac sententia probata uno die amplius XX urbes Biturigum incenduntur. hoc idem fit in reliquis civitatibus. in omnibus partibus incendia conspiciuntur; quae etsi magno eum dolore omnes ferebant, tamen hoc sibi **solatii** proponebant, quod se prope explorata victoria celeriter amissa  
30 recuperaturos confidebant. deliberatur de Avarico in communi concilio, incendi placet, an defendi. procumbunt omnibus

Gallis ad pedes Bituriges, ne **pulcherrimam** prope totius Galliae urbem, quae et praesidio et ornamento sit civitati, suis manibus succendere cogentur; facile se loci natura defensuros dicunt, quod prope ex omnibus partibus flumine et palude circumdata unum habeat et **perangustum** aditum. datur petentibus venia, 5 **dissuadente** primo Vercingetorige, post concedente et precibus ipsorum et misericordia vulgi. defensores oppido idonei delinquantur.

16. Vercingetorix minoribus Caesarem itineribus subsequitur et locum castris deligit paludibus silisque munitum, ab Avarico 10 longe milia passuum XVI. ibi per certos exploratores in singula diei tempora, quae ad Avaricum agerentur, cognoscebat et, quid fieri vellet, imperabat. omnis nostras pabulationes frumentationesque observabat, dispersosque, cum longius necessario procederent, adoriebatur magnoque incommodo afficiebat, etsi, 15 quantum ratione provideri poterat, ab nostris occurrebatur, ut incertis temporibus diversisque itineribus iretur.

17. Castris ad eam partem oppidi positus Caesar, quae intermissa a flumine et a palude aditum, ut supra diximus, angustum habebat, aggerem **apparare**, vineas agere, turres duas constituere 20 coepit: nam circumvallare loci natura prohibebat. de re frumentaria Boios atque Haeduos adhortari non destitit; quorum alteri, quod nullo studio agebant, non multum adiuvabant, alteri non magnis facultatibus, quod civitas erat exigua et infirma, celeriter, quod habuerunt, consumpserunt. summa difficultate rei 25 frumentariae affecto exercitu **tenuitate** Boiorum, **indiligentia** Haeduorum, incendiis aedificiorum, usque eo ut complures dies milites frumento caruerint et pecore e longinquioribus vicis adacto, extremam famem sustentarent, nulla tamen vox est ab iis audita populi Romani **maiestate** et superioribus victoriis indigna. 30 quin etiam Caesar cum in opere singulas legiones appellaret et,

si acerbius inopiam ferrent, se dimissurum oppugnationem diceret, universi ab eo, ne id faceret, petebant: sic se complures annos illo imperante meruisse, ut nullam **ignominiam** acciperent, **nusquam infecta** re discederent: hoc se ignominiae  
 5 laturos loco, si inceptam oppugnationem reliquissent: praestare omnes perferre **acerbitates**, quam non civibus Romanis, qui Cenabi perfidia Gallorum interissent, **parentarent**. haec eadem centurionibus tribunisque militum mandabant, ut per eos ad Caesarem deferrentur.

10 **18.** Cum iam muro turres appropinquassent, ex captivis Caesar cognovit, Vercingetorigem consumpto pabulo castra movisse propius Avaricum atque ipsum cum equitatu expeditisque, qui inter equites proeliari consuessent, insidiarum causa eo profectum, quo nostros postero die pabulatum venturos arbitraretur. quibus rebus  
 15 cognitis media nocte silentio profectus ad hostium castra mane pervenit. illi celeriter per exploratores adventu Caesaris cognito carros impedimenta que sua in artiores silvas abdiderunt, copias omnis in loco edito atque aperto instruxerunt. qua re nuntiata Caesar celeriter sarcinas conferri, arma expediri iussit.

20 **19.** Collis erat leniter ab infimo acclivis. hunc ex omnibus fere partibus palus difficilis atque impedita cingebat non latior pedibus quinquaginta. hoc se colle **interruptis** pontibus Galli **fiducia** loci continebant generatimque distributi in civitates omnia vada ac \*saltus eius paludis\* obtinebant sic animo parati, ut,  
 25 si eam paludem Romani perrumpere conarentur, **haesitantes** premerent ex loco superiore, ut, qui propinquitatem loci videret, paratos prope aeque Marte ad dimicandum existimaret, qui iniquitatem conditionis perspiceret, inani simulatione sese ostentare cognosceret. **indignantibus** milites Caesar, quod conspectum suum  
 30 hostes ferre possent tantulo spatio interiecto, et signum proelii **exposcentes** edocet, quanto detrimento et **quot** virorum fortium

morte necesse sit constare victoriam; quos cum sic animo paratos videat, ut nullum pro sua laude periculum recusent, summæ se iniquitatis **condemnari** debere, nisi eorum vitam sua salute habeat cariorem. sic milites consolatus eodem die reducit in castra reliquaque, quæ ad oppugnationem pertinebant oppidi, 5 administrare instituit.

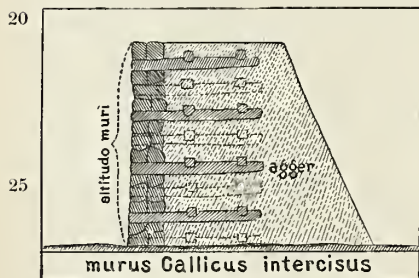
*Vercingetorix vindicates himself from the charge of treachery.*

20. Vercingetorix, cum ad suos redisset, **proditionis insimulatus**, quod castra propius Romanos movisset, quod cum omni equitatu discessisset, quod sine imperio tantas copias reliquisset, quod eius discessu Romani tanta opportunitate et celeritate 10 venissent: non hæc omnia **fortuito** aut sine consilio accidere potuisse; regnum illum Galliae malle Caesaris **concessu** quam ipsorum habere beneficio: tali modo accusatus ad hæc respondit: quod castra movisset, factum inopia pabuli etiam ipsis hortantibus; quod propius Romanos accessisset, persuasum loci 15 opportunitate, qui se ipse ut munitione defenderet: equitum vero operam neque in loco **palustri** desiderari debuisse et illic fuisse utilem, quo sint profecti: summam imperii se consulto nulli discedentem tradidisse, ne is multitudinis studio ad dimicandum impelleretur; cui rei propter animi **mollitiem** studere 20 omnes videret, quod diutius laborem ferre non possent. Romani si casu intervenerint, fortunæ, si alicuius indicio vocati, huic habendam gratiam, quod et paucitatem eorum ex loco superiore cognoscere, et virtutem despiciere potuerint, qui dimicare non ausi, turpiter se in castra receperint. imperium se ab Caesare 25 per proditionem nullum desiderare, quod habere victoria posset, quæ iam esset sibi atque omnibus Gallis explorata: quin etiam ipsis remittere, si sibi magis honorem tribuere, quam ab se salutem accipere videantur. ‘hæc ut intellegatis,’ inquit, ‘a me **sincere** pronuntiarī, audite Romanos milites.’ producit servos, 30 quos in pabulatione paucis ante diebus exceperat et fame vincu-

lisque exerueiaverat. hi iam ante edoeti, quae **interrogati** pronuntiarent, milites se esse legionarios dieunt; fame et inopia adductos elam ex castris exisse, si quid frumenti aut pecoris in agris reperire possent: simili omnem exercitum inopia premi, 5 nec iam vires **sufficere** eiusquam nec ferre operis laborem posse: itaque statuisset imperatorem, si nihil in oppugnatione oppidi profecissent, triduo exercitum deducere. 'haec,' inquit, 'a me,' Vereingetorix, 'beneficia habetis, quem prodicionis insimulatis, cuius opera sine **vestro sanguine** tantum exercitum victorem 10 fame consumptum videtis; quem turpiter se ex fuga recipientem ne qua civitas suis finibus recipiat, a me provisum est.'

21. Conelamat omnis multitudo et suo more armis **concrepat**, quod facere in eo consuerunt, cuius orationem **approbant**; summum esse Vereingetorigem duem, nec de eius fide dubitandum, 15 nec maiore ratione bellum administrari posse. statuunt, ut decem milia hominum deleta ex omnibus eopiis in oppidum mittantur, nec solis Biturigibus communem salutem committendam censent, quod paene in eo, si id oppidum retinuissent, summam victoriae constare intellegebant.

*The able defence of Avaricum.*

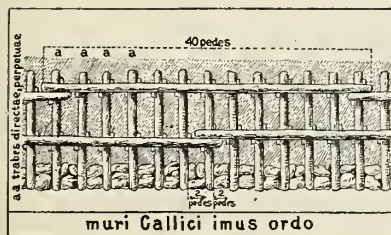


22. Singulari militum nostrorum virtuti consilia eiusque modi Gallorum oecurrebant, ut est summae genus **solertiae** atque ad omnia imitanda et efficienda, quae ab quoque traduntur, aptissimum. nam et **laqueis** falces avertabant, quas eum 30 eulis subtrahebant, eo **scientius**, quod apud eos magnae sunt

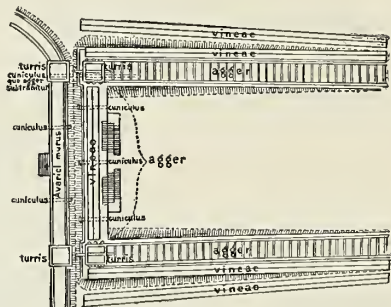


*ferrariae* atque omne genus cuniculorum notum atque *usitatum* est. totum autem murum ex omni parte turribus contabulaverant atque has *coriis intexerant*. tum crebris diurnis nocturnisque eruptionibus aut aggeri ignem inferebant aut milites occupatos in opere adoriebantur et nostrarum turrium altitudinem, quantum has cotidianus agger expresserat, commissis suarum turrium malis adaequabant, et apertos cuniculos praecusta et praecuta materia et *pice* fervefacta et maximi ponderis saxis morabantur moenibusque appropinquare prohibebant.

23. Muri autem omnes Gallici hac fere forma sunt. trabes 10 directae perpetuae in longitudinem paribus intervallis distantes inter se binos pedes, in solo collocantur. hae revinciuntur introrsus et multo aggere vestiuntur: ea autem, quae diximus, intervalla grandibus in fronte saxis *effarciuntur*. his collocatis et *coagmentatis* alius insuper ordo additur, ut idem illud intervallum 15 servetur, neque inter se contingant trabes, sed paribus intermissis spatiis singulae singulis saxis interiectis arte contineantur. sic deinceps omne opus contextitur, dum iusta muri altitudo *expleatur*. hoc cum in speciem varietatemque opus deformare non est, *alternis* trabibus ac saxis, quae rectis *lineis* 20 suos ordines servant, tum ad utilitatem et defensionem urbium summam habet opportunitatem, quod et ab incendio lapis et ab ariete materia defendit, quae perpetuis trabibus pedes quadragenos plerumque introrsus revincta neque perrumpi neque *distrahi* potest.



24. His tot rebus impedita oppugnatione milites, cum toto tempore frigore et assiduis imbris tardarentur, tamen eontinenti labore omnia haec superaverunt et diebus XXV aggerem \*latum pedes CCCXXX\*, altum pedes LXXX extruxerunt. cum is murum hostium paene eontingeret, et Caesar ad opns consuetudine excubaret militesque hortaretur, ne quod omnino tempus ab opere intermitteretur, paulo ante tertiam vigiliam est animadversum **fumare** aggerem, quem cuniculo hostes suecuderant, eodemque tempore toto muro elamore sublato duabus 10 portis ab utroque latere turrium eruptio fiebat: alii **faces** atque aridam **materiem** de muro in aggerem **eminus** iaciebant, picem reliquasque res, quibus ignis excitari potest, fundebant, ut, quo primum occurreretur aut eui rei ferretur auxilium, vix ratio iniri posset. tamen, quod instituto Caesaris semper duae 15 legiones pro castris exeubabant pluresque partitis temporibus erant in opere, celeriter factum est, ut alii eruptionibus resisterent, alii turres reduceent aggeremque interseinderent, omnis vero ex castris multitudo ad **restinguendum** concurreret.

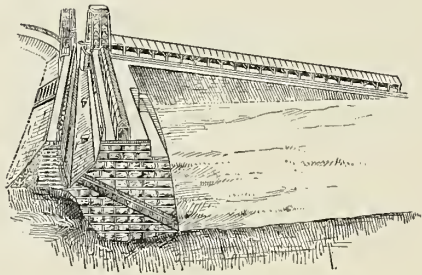


munimentorum forma

25. Cum in omnibus locis consumpta iam reliqua parte noctis pugnaretur, semperque hostibus spes victoriae redintegraretur, eo magis, quod **deustos pluteos** turrium videbant nec facile adire apertos ad auxiliandum animadvertabant, semperque ipsi recentes defessis succederent omnemque Galliae salutem in illo vestigio 5 temporis positam arbitrarentur, accidit **inspectantibus** nobis, quod **dignum** memoria visum praetereundum non existimavimus. quidam autem portam oppidi Gallus, qui per manus **sevi** ac picis traditas **glebas** in ignem e regione turris proiciebat: **scorpione** ab latere dextro traiectus exanimatusque concii- 10 dit. hunc ex proximis unus iacentem transgressus eodem illo munere **fungebatur**; eadem ratione ictu scorpionis exanimato alteri successit tertius et tertio quartus, nec prius ille est a **propugnatoribus** vacuus relictus locus, quam restincto aggere atque omni ex parte submotis hostibus finis est pugnandi 15 factus.

26. Omnia experti Galli, quod res nulla successerat, postero die consilium ceperunt ex oppido profugere hortante et iubente Vercingetorige. id silentio noctis conati non magna iactura suorum sese effecturos sperabant, propterea quod neque longe 20 ab oppido castra Vercingetorigis aberant, et palus, quae perpetua intercedebat, Romanos ad insequendum tardabat. iamque hoc facere noctu apparabant, cum matresfamiliae repente in publicum procurrerunt fleutesque proiectae ad pedes suorum omnibus precibus petierunt, ne se et communes liberos hostibus ad sup- 25 plicium dederent, quos ad capiendam fugam naturae et virium infirmitas impediret. ubi eos in sententia **perstare** viderunt, quod plerumque in summo periculo timor misericordiam non recipit, conclamare et significare de fuga Romanis coeperunt. quo timore perterriti Galli, ne ab equitatu Romanorum viae 30 praeoccuparentur, consilio destiterunt.

27. Postero die Caesar promotâ turri directisque operibus, quae facere instituerat, magno coorto imbree non inutilem hanc ad capicudum consilium tempestatem arbitratu est, quod paulo incautiua custodias in muro dispositas videbat, suosque languidiua  
 5 in opere versari iussit et, quid fieri vellet, ostendit. legionibusque intra vineas in occulto expeditis cohortatus, ut **aliquando** pro tantis laboribus fructum victoriae perciperent, iis, qui primi murum ascendissent, praemia proposuit militibusque signum dedit. illi subito ex omnibus partibus evolaverunt murumque  
 10 celeriter compleverunt.



munimenta intercisa oblique conspecta

*The capture of the town. The war continued by Vercingetorix.*

28. Hostes re nova perterriti muro turribusque deieci in foro ac locis patentioribus **cuneatim** constiterunt, hoc animo, ut, si qua ex parte obviam contra veniretur, acie instructa **depugnarent**. ubi neminem in aequum locum sese demittere,  
 15 sed toto undique muro circumfundi viderunt, veriti, ne omnino spes fugae tolleretur, abiectis armis ultimas oppidi partes continenti impetu pctiverunt, parsque ibi, cum angusto exitu portarum se ipsi premerent, a militibus, pars iam egressa portis ab equitibus est interfecta. nec fuit quisquam, qui praedae stude-  
 20 ret. sic et Cenabi caede et labore operis incitati non actate

confectis, non mulieribus, non **infantibus** pepercerunt. denique omni ex numero, qui fuit **circiter** milium XL, vix DCCC, qui primo clamore audito se ex oppido eiecerunt, incolumes ad Vercingetorigem pervenerunt. quos ille multa iam nocte silentio ex fuga exceptit veritus, ne qua in castris ex eorum concursu 5 et misericordia vulgi **seditio** oriretur, ut procul in via dispositis familiaribus suis principibusque civitatum **disparandos** deducendosque ad suos curaret, quae cuique civitati pars castrorum ab initio obvenerat.

29. Postero die concilio convocato consolatus cohortatusque 10 est, ne se admodum animo demitterent, ne perturbarentur incommodo. non virtute neque in acie vicisse Romanos, sed artificio quodam et scientia oppugnationis, cuius rei fuerint ipsi imperiti. errare, si qui in bello omnis secundos rerum proventus expectent: sibi numquam placuisse, Avaricum defendi, cuius 15 rei testes ipsos haberet; sed factum imprudentia Biturigum et **nimia obsequentia** reliquorum, uti hoc incommodum acciperetur. id tamen se celcriter maioribus commodis **sanaturum**. nam quae ab reliquis Gallis civitates dissentirent, has sua diligentia adiuncturum atque unum consilium totius Galliae effecturum, cuius 20 consensu ne orbis quidem terrarum possit **obsistere**; idque se prope iam effectum habere. interea aequum esse, ab iis communis salutis causa impetrari, ut castra munire instituerent, quo facilius repentinos hostium impetus sustinerent.

30. Fuit haec oratio non **ingrata** Gallis, et maxime, quod ipse 25 animo non defecerat tanto accepto incommodo, neque se in occultum abdiderat et conspectum multitudinis fugerat; plusque animo providere et praesentire existimabatur, quod re integra primo incendendum Avaricum, post deserendum censuerat. itaque ut reliquorum imperatorum res adversae auctoritatem minuunt, sic huius ex contrario dignitas incommodo accepto in dies

augebatur. simul in spem veniebant eius **affirmatione** de reliquis adiungendis civitatibus; primumque eo tempore Galli castra munire instituerunt et sic sunt animo **consternati**, homines insueti laboris, ut omnia, quae imperarentur, sibi patienda et  
5 perferenda existimarent.

**31.** Nec minus, quam est pollicitus, Vercingetorix animo laborabat, ut reliquas civitates adiungeret, atque eas **donis** pollicitationibusque alliciebat. huic rei idoneos homines deligebat, quorum quisque aut oratione **subdola** aut amicitia facillime  
10 capere posset. qui Avarico expugnato refugerant, armandos vestiendosque curat; simul ut deminutae copiae redintegrentur, imperat certum numerum militum civitatibus, quem et quam ante diem in castra adduci velit, sagittariosque omnes, quorum erat **permagnus** numerus in Gallia, conquiri et ad se mitti iubet.  
15 his rebus celeriter id, quod Avarici deperierat, expletur. interim **Teutomatus**, **Olloviconis** filius, rex Nitiobrigum, cuius pater ab senatu nostro amicus erat appellatus, cum magno equitum suorum numero et quos ex Aquitania conduxerat ad eum pervenit.

*Caesar quelling the commotions among the Haedui lays siege to Gergovia.*

20 **32.** Caesar Avarici complures dies commoratus summamque ibi copiam frumenti et reliqui commeatus nactus exercitum ex labore atque inopia refecit. iam prope hieme confecta cum ipso anni tempore ad gerendum bellum vocaretur et ad hostem proficisci constituisset, sive eum ex paludibus silvisque elieere sive  
25 obsidione premere posset, legati ad eum principes Haeduorum veniunt oratum, ut maxime necessario tempore civitati subveniat: summo esse in periculo rem, quod, cum singuli magistratus anti-  
quitus creari atque **regiam** potestatem annum obtinere consuessent,

duo magistratum gerant et se uterque eorum legibus creatum esse dicat. horum esse alterum **Convictolitavem**, florentem et illustrem adolescentem, alterum Cotum, antiquissima familia natum atque ipsum hominem summae potentiae et magnae cognitionis, cuius frater **Valetiacus** proximo anno eundem magistratum gesserit. civitatem omnem esse in armis; divisum senatum, divisum populum, suas cuiusque eorum clientelas. quod si diutius alatur controversia, fore, uti pars cum parte civitatis confligat. id ne accidat, positum in eius diligentia atque auctoritate.

10

**33.** Caesar, etsi a bello atque hoste discedere **detrimentosum** esse existimabat, tamen non ignorans, quanta ex dissensionibus incommoda oriri consuessent, ne tanta et tam coniuncta populo Romano civitas, quam ipse semper aluisset omnibusque rebus **ornasset**, ad vim atque ad arma descenderet, atque ea pars, quae minus sibi confideret, auxilia a Veriugetorige arcesseret, huic rei **praevertendum** existimavit et, quod legibus Haeduorum iis, qui summum magistratum obtinerent, excedere ex finibus non liceret, ne quid de iure aut de legibus eorum deminuisse videretur, ipse in Haeduos proficisci statuit senatumque omnem et quos inter controversia esset ad se **Decetiam** evocavit. cum prope omnis civitas eo convenisset, docereturque, paucis clam convocatis alio loco, alio tempore, atque oportuerit, fratrem a fratre renuntiatum, cum leges duo ex una familia vivo utroque non solum magistratus creari vetarent, sed etiam in senatu esse prohiberent, Cotum imperium deponere coegit, Convictolitavem, qui per **sacerdotes** more civitatis intermissis magistratibus esset creatus, potestatem obtinere iussit.

**34.** Hoc decreto interposito cohortatus Haeduos, ut controversiarum ac dissensionum obliviscerentur atque omnibus omissis rebus huic bello servirent eaque, quae meruissent, praemia ab se,

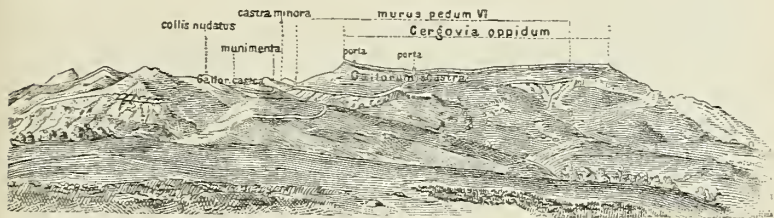
**devicta** Gallia, exspectarent, equitatumque omnem et peditum milia decem sibi celeriter mitterent, quae in praesidiis rei frumentariae causa diserneret, exercitum in duas partes divisit: quattuor legiones in Senones Parisiosque Labieno ducendas  
 5 dedit; sex ipse in Arvernos ad oppidum Gergoviam secundum flumen **Elaver** duxit; equitatus partem illi attribuit, partem sibi reliquit. qua re cognita Vercingetorix omnibus interruptis eius fluminis pontibus ab altera fluminis parte iter facere coepit.

**35.** Cum uterque utrinque exisset exercitus, in conspectu  
 10 fereque e regione castris castra ponebant, dispositis exploratoribus, **ne cubi** effecto ponte Romani copias traducerent. erat in magnis Caesaris difficultatibus res, ne maiorem aestatis partem flumine impediretur, quod non fere ante **autumnum** Elaver vado transiri solet. itaque, ne id accideret, silvestri loco castris posi-  
 15 tis e regione unius eorum pontium, quos Vercingetorix rescindendos curaverat, postero die cum duabus legionibus in occulto restitit; reliquas copias cum omnibus impedimentis, ut consueverat, misit, captis\* quibusdam cohortibus, uti numerus legionum constare videretur. his quam longissime possent progredi  
 20 iussis, cum iam ex diei tempore **coniecturam** ceperat in castra perventum, isdem sublicis, quarum pars inferior integra remanebat, pontem reficere coepit. celeriter effecto opere legionibusque traductis et loco castris idoneo delecto reliquas copias revocavit. Vercingetorix re cognita, ne contra suam voluntatem dimicare  
 25 cogere, magnis itineribus antecessit.

**36.** Caesar ex eo loco quintis castris Gergoviam pervenit equestrique proelio eo die levi facto, perspecto urbis situ, quae posita in altissimo monte omnis aditus difficiles habebat, de expugnatione desperavit, de obsessione non prius agendum constituit, quam rem frumentariam expedisset. at Vercingetorix  
 30 castris prope oppidum [in monte] positus mediocribus circum se



intervallis separatim singularum civitatum copias collocaverat, atque omnibus eius iugi collibus occupatis, qua despici poterat, **horribilem** speciem praebebat principesque earum civitatum, quos sibi ad consilium capiendum delegerat, prima luce cotidie ad se convenire iubebat, seu quid communicandum, seu quid 5 administrandum videretur, neque ullum fere diem intermittebat, quin equestri proelio interiectis sagittariis, quid in quoque esset animi ac virtutis suorum, periclitaretur. erat e regione oppidi collis sub ipsis radicibus montis, egregie munitus atque ex omni parte circumcisus; quem si tenerent nostri, et aquae magna parte 10 et pabulatione libera prohibitori hostes videbantur. sed is locus praesidio ab his non **nimis** firmo tenebatur. tamen silentio noctis Caesar ex castris egressus, priusquam subsidio ex oppido venire posset, deiecto praesidio potitus loco duas ibi legiones collocavit fossamque duplicem duodenum pedum a maioribus 15 castris ad minora perduxit, ut tuto ab repentino hostium **incursu** etiam singuli commeare possent.



Gergovia a castris minoribus conspecta

*New troubles among the Haedni. The Romans take possession of three of the enemy's camps, but, pressing the attack too impetuously, are repulsed.*

37. Dum haec ad Gergoviam geruntur, Convictolitavis Haedus, cui magistratum **adiudicatum** a Caesare demonstravimus, sollicitatus ab Arvernibus pecunia cum quibusdam adolescentibus 20

colloquitur; quorum erat princeps **Litavicus** atque eius fratres, amplissima familia nati adulescentes. cum his praemium communicat hortaturque, ut se liberos et imperio natos meminerint. unam esse Haeduum civitatem, quae certissimam Galliae victoriam detineat; eius auctoritate reliquas contineri; qua traducta locum consistendi Romanis in Gallia non fore. esse nonnullo se Caesaris beneficio affectum, sic tamen, ut iustissimam apud eum causam obtinuerit; sed plus communi libertati tribuere. cur enim potius Haedui de suo iure et de legibus ad Caesarem **dis-**  
**10 ceptatorem**, quam Romani ad Haeduos veniant? celeriter adulescentibus et oratione magistratus et praemio deductis, cum se vel principes eius consilii fore profiterentur, ratio perficiendi quaerebatur, quod civitatem temere ad suscipiendum bellum adduci posse non confidebant. placuit, ut Litavicus decem illis  
**15 milibus**, quae Caesari ad bellum mitterentur, praeficeretur atque ea ducenda curaret, fratresque eius ad Caesarem praecurrerent. reliqua qua ratione agi placeat, constituunt.

**38.** Litavicus accepto exercitu, cum milia passuum circiter XXX ab Gergovia abesset, convocatis subito militibus **iacrimans**,  
**20** ‘quo proficiscimur,’ inquit, ‘milites? omnis noster equitatus, omnis nobilitas interiit; principes civitatis, **Eporedorix** et **Viridomarus**, insimulati proditionis ab Romanis **indicta** causa interfecti sunt. haec ab ipsis cognoscite, qui ex ipsa caede fugerunt: nam ego fratribus atque omnibus meis propinquis interfectis  
**25** dolore prohibeor, quae gesta sunt, promuntiare.’ producuntur ii, quos ille edocuerat, quae dici vellet, atque eadem, quae Litavicus pronuntiaverat, multitudini exponunt: equites Haeduum interfectos, quod colloqui cum Arvernibus dicerentur; ipsos se inter multitudinem militum occultasse atque ex media caede  
**30** profugisse. conclamant Haedui et Litavicum obsecrant, ut sibi consulat. ‘quasi vero,’ inquit ille, ‘consilii sit res, ac non necesse sit nobis Gergoviam contendere et cum Arvernibus

nosmet coniungere. an dubitamus, quin **nefario** facinore admisso Romani iam ad nos interficiendos concurrant? proinde, si quid in nobis animi est, persequamur eorum mortem, qui indignissime interierunt atque hos latrones interficiamus.' ostendit cives Romanos, qui eius praesidii fiducia una erant: magnum numerum frumenti commeatusque diripit, ipsos crudeliter excruciatos interficit: nuntios tota civitate Haeduum dimittit, eodem **mendacio** de caede equitum et principum permovet; hortatur, ut simili ratione, atque ipse fecerit, suas iniurias persequantur.

10

39. Eporedorix Haeduus, summo loco natus adulescens et summae domi potentiae, et una Viridomarus, pari aetate et gratia, sed genere dispari, quem Caesar ab Divitiaco sibi traditum ex humili loco ad summam dignitatem perduxerat, in equitum numero convenerant nominatim ab eo evocati. his erat inter se de principatu contentio, et in illa magistratum controversia alter pro Convictolitavi, alter pro **Coto** summis opibus pugnaverant. ex his Eporedorix cognito Litavici consilio media fere nocte rem ad Caesarem defert; orat, ne patiat civitatem **pravis** adolescentium consiliis ab amicitia populi Romani deficere; quod futurum provideat, si se tot hominum milia cum hostibus coniunxerint, quorum salutem neque propinqui neglegere, neque civitas levi **momento** aestimare posset.

40. Magna affectus sollicitudine hoc nuntio Caesar, quod semper Haeduum civitati praecipue indulserat, nulla interposita dubitatione legiones expeditas quattuor equitatumque omnem ex castris educit, nec fuit spatium tali tempore ad contrahenda castra, quod res posita in celeritate videbatur; Gaium Fabium legatum cum legionibus duabus castris praesidio relinquit. fratres Litavici cum comprehendi iussisset, paulo ante reperit ad hostes fugisse. adhortatus milites, ne necessario tempore itineris labore

permoveantur, cupidissimis omnibus progressus milia passuum XXV, agmen Haeduum conspieatus immisso equitatu iter eorum moratur atque impedit interdicitque omnibus, ne quemquam interficiant. Eporedorigem et Viridomarum, quos illi interfectos existimabant, inter equites versari suosque appellare iubet. his cognitis et Litaviei fraude perspecta Haedui manus tendere, deditionem significare et proiecitis armis mortem depreari ineipiunt. Litavieus eum suis clientibus, quibus more Gallorum nefas est etiam in extrema fortuna deserere **patronos**, Gergoviam  
10 profugit.

**41.** Caesar nuntiis ad civitatem Haeduum missis, qui suo beneficio conservatos docerent, quos iure belli interficere potuisset, tribusque horis noctis exercitui ad quietem datis castra ad Gergoviam movit. medio fere itinere equites ab Fabio missi,  
15 quanto res in periculo fuerit, exponunt. summis eopiis castra oppugnata demonstrant, eum erebro integri defessis succederent nostrosque assiduo labore defatigarent, quibus propter magnitudinem castrorum perpetuo esset iisdem in vallo permanendum. multitudinem sagittarum atque omni genere telorum multos vulneratos ; ad haec sustinenda magno usui fuisse tormenta. Fabium  
20 discessu eorum duabus relictis portis obstruere ceteras pluteosque vallo addere et se in posterum diem similem ad casum parare. his rebus cognitis Caesar summo studio militum ante **ortum** solis in castra pervenit.

**42.** Dum haec ad Gergoviam geruntur, Haedui primis nuntiis ab Litavieo acceptis nullum sibi ad cognoscendum spatium relinquunt. impellit alios avaritia, alios iracundia et temeritas, quae maxime illi hominum generi est innata, ut levem auditionem habeant pro re comperta. bona civium Romanorum diripiunt,  
30 caedes faciunt, in servitatem abstrahunt. adjuvat rem **proclinetam** Convictolitavis plebemque ad furorem impellit, ut facinore





admisso ad sanitatem reverti **pudeat**. Marcum **Aristium**, tribu-  
num militum, iter ad legionem facientem fide data ex oppido  
**Cabillono** educunt: idem facere cogunt eos, qui negotiandi  
causa ibi constiterant. hos continuo in itinere adorti omnibus  
impedimentis exuunt; repugnantes diem noctemque obsident; 5  
multis utrimque interfectis maiorem multitudinem armatorum  
concitant.

**43.** Interim nuntio allato, omnes eorum milites in potestate  
Caesaris teneri, concurrunt ad **Aristium**, nihil publico factum con-  
silio demonstrant; quaestionem de bonis direptis decernunt, 10  
**Litavici** fratrumque bona publicant, legatos ad Caesarem sui pur-  
gandi gratia mittunt. haec faciunt recuperandorum suorum  
causa: sed **contaminati** facinore et capti **compendio** ex direptis  
bonis, quod ea res ad multos pertinebat, et timore poenae **ex-**  
**territi**, consilia clam de bello inire incipiunt civitatesque reliquas 15  
legationibus sollicitant. quae tametsi Caesar intellegebat, tamen  
quam **mitissime** potest legatos appellat: nihil se propter in-  
scientiam levitatemque vulgi gravius de civitate iudicare neque  
de sua in Haeduos benevolentia deminuere. ipse, maiorem Gal-  
liae motum exspectans, ne ab omnibus civitatibus circumsistere- 20  
tur, consilia inibat, quem ad modum ab Gergovia discederet ac  
rursus omnem exercitum contraheret, ne profectio nata ab timore  
defectionis similis fugae videretur.

**44.** Haec cogitanti accidere visa est facultas bene gerendae  
rei. nam cum in minora castra operis perspicendi causa venis- 25  
set, animadvertit collem, qui ab hostibus tenebatur, nudatum  
hominibus, qui superioribus diebus vix prae multitudine cerni  
poterat. admiratus quaerit ex perfugis causam, quorum magnus  
ad eum cotidie numerus **confluebat**. constabat inter omnes,  
quod iam ipse Caesar per exploratores cognoverat, **dorsum** esse 30  
eius iugi prope aequum, sed hunc silvestrem et angustum, qua

esset aditus ad alteram partem oppidi: vehementer huic loco illos timere nec iam aliter sentire uno colle ab Romanis occupato, si alterum amisissent, quin paene circumvallati atque omni exitu et pabulatione interclusi viderentur: ad hunc muniendum omnes  
5 a Vereingetorige evocatos.

45. Hac re cognita Caesar mittit complures equitum turmas eodem media nocte: imperat, ut paulo **tumultuosius** omnibus in locis vagarentur. prima luce magnum numerum impedimentorum ex castris **mulorumque** prodeci deque his stramenta detrahi **mulionesque** eum **cassidibus** equitum specie ac simulatione collibus **circumvehi** iubet. his paucos addit equites, qui latius **ostentationis** causa vagarentur. longo circuitu easdem omnes iubet petere regiones. haec procul ex oppido videbantur, ut erat a Gergovia despectus in castra, neque tanto spatio, certi quid esset, explorari poterat. legionem unam eodem iugo mittit et paulum progressam inferiore constituit loco silvisque occultat. augetur Gallis suspicio atque omnes illo munitionum copiae traducuntur. vacua castra hostium Caesar conspiciens tectis iusignibus suorum occultatisque signis militaribus raros milites, ne ex oppido  
20 animadverterentur, ex maioribus castris in minora traducit legatisque, quos singulis legionibus praefecerat, quid fieri vellet, ostendit: imprimis monet, ut contineant milites, ne studio pugnandi aut spe praedae longius progrediantur; quid iniquitas loci habeat incommodi, proponit: hoc una celeritate posse **mutari**:  
25 **tari**: occasionis esse rem, non proelii. his rebus expositis, signum dat et ab dextra parte alio ascensu eodem tempore Haeduos mittit.

46. Oppidi murus ab planitie atque initio ascensus recta regione, si nullus **amfractus** intreeederet, MCC passus aberat: **30** quidquid huc circuitus ad **mollendum clivum** accesserat, id spatium itineris augebat. a medio fere colle in longitudinem,



ut natura montis ferebat, ex grandibus saxis sex pedum murum, qui nostrorum impetum tardaret, **praeduxerant** Galli atque inferiore omni spatio vacuo relicto superiorem partem collis usque ad murum oppidi densissimis castris compleverant. milites dato signo celeriter ad munitionem perveniunt eamque trans- 5 gressi trinis castris potiuntur; ac tanta fuit in castris capiendis celeritas, ut Teutomatus, rex Nitiobrigum, subito in tabernaculo oppressus, ut meridie **conquieverat**, superiore corporis parte nudata vulnerato equo vix se ex manibus praedantium militum eriperet.

10

47. Consecutus id, quod animo proposuerat, Caesar receptui **cani** iussit legionisque decimae, quaecum erat, **contionatus** signa constituit; ac reliquarum milites legionum non exaudito tubae **sono**, quod satis magna valles intercedebat, tamen ab tribunis militum legatisque, ut erat a Caesare praeceptum, retinebantur. 15 sed elati spe celeris victoriae et hostium fuga superiorumque temporum secundis proeliis nihil adeo arduum sibi existimabant, quod non virtute consequi possent, neque finem prius sequendi fecerunt, quam muro oppidi portisque appropinquarunt. tum vero ex omnibus urbis partibus orto clamore qui longius aberant 20 repentino tumultu perterriti, cum hostem intra portas esse existimarent, sese ex oppido eiecerunt. matresfamiliae de muro **vestem** argentumque iactabant et **pectore** nudo **prominentes** passis manibus obtestabantur Romanos, ut sibi parcerent, ne, sicut Avarici fecissent, ne mulieribus quidem atque infantibus 25 abstinerent: nonnullae de muris per manus demissae sese militibus tradebant. Lucius Fabius, centurio legionis VIII, quem inter suos eo die dixisse constabat excitari se **Avaricensibus** praemiis neque commissurum, ut prius quisquam murum ascenderet, tres suos nactus **manipulares** atque ab iis sublevatus 30 murum ascendit: hos ipse rursus singulos **exceptans** in murum extulit.

48. Interim ii, qui ad alteram partem oppidi, ut supra demonstravimus, munitionis causa convenerant, primo exaudito clamore, inde etiam crebris nuntiis incitati, oppidum ab Romanis teneri, praemissis equitibus magno concursu eo contenderunt. 5 eorum ut quisque primus venerat, sub muro consistebat suorumque pugnantium numerum augebat. quorum cum magna multitudo convenisset, matresfamiliae, quae paulo ante Romanis de muro manus tendebant, suos obtestari et more Gallico passum capillum ostentare liberosque in conspectum **proferre** coeperunt. 10 erat Romanis nec loco nec numero aequa contentio: simul et cursu et spatio pugnae defatigati non facile recentes atque integros sustinebant.

49. Caesar, cum iniquo loco pugnari hostiumque augeri copias videret, **praemetuens** suis ad Titum Sextium legatum, quem 15 minoribus castris praesidio reliquerat, misit, ut cohortes ex castris celeriter educeret et sub infimo colle ab dextro latere hostium constitueret, ut, si nostros loco depulsos vidisset, quo minus libere hostes insequerentur, terreret. ipse paulum ex eo loco cum legione progressus, ubi constiterat, eventum pugnae ex- 20 spectabat.

50. Cum acerrime comminus pugnaretur, hostes loco et numero, nostri virtute confiderent, subito sunt Haedui visi ab latere nostris aperto, quos Caesar ab dextra parte alio ascensu manus distinendae causa miscrat. hi **similitudine** armorum vehementer 25 nostros perterruerunt, ac tametsi dextris **humeris exsertis** animadvertabantur, quod insigne pacatum esse consuerat, tamen id ipsum sui fallendi causa milites ab hostibus factum existimabant. eodem tempore Lucius Fabius centurio quique una murum ascenderant circumventi atque interfecti muro praecipitantur. Marcus 30 **Petronius**, eiusdem legionis centurio, cum portas **excidere** conatus esset, a multitudine oppressus ac sibi desperans multis iam

vulneribus acceptis, manipularibus suis, qui illum secuti erant, 'quoniam,' inquit, 'me una vobiscum servare non possum, vestrae quidem certe vitae prospiciam, quos cupiditate gloriae adductus in periculum deduxi. vos data facultate vobis consulite.' simul in medios hostis irrupit duobusque interfectis reliquos a porta 5 paulum summovit. conantibus auxiliari suis, 'frustra,' inquit, 'meae vitae subvenire conamini, quem iam sanguis viresque deficiunt: proinde abite, dum est facultas, vosque ad legionem recipite.' ita pugnans post paulum concidit ac suis saluti fuit.

**51.** Nostri, cum undique premerentur, XLVI centurionibus 10 amissi deiecti sunt loco. sed **intolerantius** Gallos insequentes legio X tardavit, quae pro subsidio paulo aequiore loco constiterat. hanc rursus XIII legionis cohortes exceperunt, quae ex castris minoribus eductae cum Tito Sextio legato locum ceperant superiorem. legiones, ubi primum planitiem attigerunt, infestis 15 contra hostes signis constiterunt. Vereingetorix ab radicibus collis suos intra munitiones reduxit. eo die milites sunt paulo minus septingenti desiderati.

*Caesar reproves the rashness of the soldiers.*

**52.** Postero die Caesar contione **advocata** temeritatem cupiditatemque militum reprehendit, quod sibi ipsi iudicavissent, quo 20 procedendum aut quid agendum videretur, neque signo recipiendi dato constitissent neque ab tribunis militum legatisque retineri potuissent. exposuit, quid iniquitas loci posset, quid ipse ad Avaricum sensisset, cum sine duce et sine equitatu deprehensis hostibus exploratam victoriam dimisisset, ne parvum modo 25 detrimentum in contentione propter iniquitatem loci accideret. quanto opere eorum animi magnitudinem admiraretur, quos non castrorum munitiones, non altitudo montis, non murus oppidi tardare potuisset, tanto opere **licentiam** arrogantiamque reprehen-

dere, quod plus se quam imperatorem de victoria atque exitu rerum sentire existimarent; nec minus se in milite **modestiani** et **continentiam** quam virtutem atque animi magnitudinem desiderare.

*Caesar raises the siege and removes his camp to the territories of the Haedui.*

5 **53.** Hac habita contione et ad extremam orationem confirmatis militibus, ne ob hanc causam animo permoverentur neu, quod iniquitas loci attulisset, id virtuti hostium tribuerent, eadem de profectioe cogitans, quae ante senserat, legiones ex castris eduxit aciemque idoneo loco constituit. cum Vercingetorix nihilo  
10 magis in aequum locum descenderet, levi facto equestri proelio atque eo secundo in castra exercitum reduxit. cum hoc idem postero die fecisset, satis ad Gallicam ostentationem minuendam militumque animos confirmandos factum existimans in Haeduos movit castra. ne tum quidem insecutis hostibus tertio  
15 die ad flumen Elaver pontes reficit atque exercitum traducit.

**54.** Ibi a Viridomaro atque Eporedorige Haeduis appellatus discit cum omni equitatu Litavicum ad sollicitandos Haeduos profectum: opus esse ipsos antecedere ad confirmandam civitatem. etsi multis iam rebus perfidiam Haeduorum perspectam  
20 habebat atque horum discessu **admatuari** defectionem civitatis existimabat, tamen eos retinendos non constituit, ne aut inferre iniuriam videretur aut dare timoris aliquam suspicionem. discedentibus his breviter sua in Haeduos merita exponit: quos et quam humiles accepisset, compulsos in oppida, **multatos** agris  
25 omnibus ereptis copiis, imposito stipendio, obsidibus summa cum contumelia **extortis**, et quam in fortunam quamque in amplitudinem deduxisset, ut non solum in pristinum statum redissent, sed omnium temporum dignitatem et gratiam antecessisse viderentur. his datis mandatis, eos ab se dimisit,

55. Noviodunum erat oppidum Haeduorum ad ripas Ligeris opportuno loco positum. huc Caesar omnes obsides Galliae, frumentum, pecuniam publicam, suorum atque exercitus impedimentorum magnam partem contulerat; huc magnum numerum equorum huius belli causa in Italia atque Hispania coemptum 5 miserat. eo cum Eporedorix Viridomarusque venissent et de statu civitatis cognovissent, Litavicum Bibracti ab Haeduis receptum, quod est oppidum apud eos maximae auctoritatis, Convictolitavim magistratum magnamque partem senatus ad eum convenisse, legatos ad Vercingetorigem de pace et amicitia con- 10 cilianda publice missos, non praetermittendum tantum commodum existimaverunt. itaque interfectis Novioduni custodibus quique eo negotiandi causa convenerant, pecuniam atque equos inter se partiti sunt; obsides civitatum Bibracte ad magistratum deducendos curaverunt; oppidum, quod a se teneri non posse 15 iudicabant, ne cui esset usui Romanis, incenderunt; frumenti quod subito potuerunt navibus **avexerunt**, reliquum flumine atque incendio **corruperunt**; ipsi ex finitimis regionibus copias cogere, praesidia custodiasque ad ripas Ligeris disponere equitatumque omnibus locis iniciendi timoris causa ostentare coeperunt, 20 si ab re frumentaria Romanos excludere aut adductos inopia in provinciam expellere possent. quam ad spem multum eos adiu- vabat, quod Liger ex nivibus creverat, ut omnino vado non posse transiri videretur.

56. Quibus rebus cognitis Caesar maturandum sibi censuit, si 25 esset in perficiendis pontibus periclitandum, ut prius, quam essent maiores eo coactae copiae, dimicaret. nam ne commutato consilio iter in provinciam converteret, ut nemo non tum quidem necessario faciendum existimabat, cum infamia atque indignitas rei et oppositus mons Cevenna viarumque difficultas 30 impediabat, tum maxime, quod **abiuncto** Labieno atque iis legionibus, quas una miserat, vehementer timebat. itaque admo-

dum magnis diurnis nocturnisque itineribus confectis contra omnium opinionem ad Ligerim venit vadoque per equites invento pro rei necessitate opportuno, ut brachia modo atque humeri ad sustinenda arma liberi ab aqua esse possent, disposito  
 5 equitatu, qui vim fluminis refringeret, atque hostibus primo aspectu perturbatis incolumem exercitum traduxit frumentumque in agris et pecoris copiam nactus, **repleto** his rebus exercitu iter in Senonas facere instituit.

**57.** Dum haec apud Caesarem geruntur, Labienus co  
 10 mento, quod nuper ex Italia venerat, relicto Agedinci, ut esset impedimentis praesidio, cum quattuor legionibus Lutetiam proficiscitur. id est oppidum Parisiorum, quod positum est in insula fluminis Sequanae. cuius adventu ab hostibus cognito  
 15 perii traditur **Camulogeno** Aulerco, qui prope confectus aetate tamen propter singularem scientiam rei militaris ad eum est honorem evocatus. is cum animadvertisset perpetuam esse paludem, quae influeret in Sequanam atque illum omnem locum magnopere impediret, hic consedit nostrosque transitu  
 20 instituit.

*The successes of Labienus.*

**58.** Labienus primo vineas agere, cratibus atque aggere paludem explere atque iter munire conabatur. postquam id difficiliter  
 confieri animadvertit, silentio e castris tertia vigilia egressus eodem, quo venerat, itinere **Melodunum** pervenit. id est oppi-  
 25 dum Senonum in insula Sequanae positum, ut paulo ante de Lutetia diximus. deprehensis navibus circiter quinquaginta celeriterque coniunctis atque eo militibus iniectis et rei novitate perterritis oppidanis, quorum magna pars erat ad bellum evocata, sine contentione oppido potitur. refecto ponte, quem superiori-

bus diebus hostes resciderant, exercitum traducit et secundo flumine ad Lutetiam iter facere coepit. hostes re cognita ab iis, qui a Meloduno fugerant, Lutetiam incendi pontesque eius oppidi rescindi iubent; ipsi profecti a palude ad ripas Sequanae e regione Lutetiae contra Labieni castra considunt. 5

59. Iam Caesar a Gergovia discessisse audiebatur, iam de Haeduum defectione et secundo Galliae motu rumores afferebantur, Gallique in colloquiis interclusum itinere et Ligeri Caesarem inopia frumenti coactum in provinciam contendisse confirmabant. Bellovaci autem defectione Haeduum cognita, 10 qui ante erant per se **infideles**, manus cogere atque aperte bellum parare coeperunt. tum Labienus tanta rerum commutatione longe aliud sibi capiendum consilium, atque antea senserat, intellegebat neque iam, ut aliquid **acquireret** proelioque hostes lacesseret, sed ut incolumem exercitum Agedincum reduceret, 15 cogitabat. namque altera ex parte Bellovaci, quae civitas in Gallia maximam habet opinionem virtutis, instabant, alteram Camulogenus parato atque instructo exercitu tenebat; tum legiones a praesidio atque impedimentis interclusas maximum flumen distinebat. tantis subito difficultatibus obiectis ab animi 20 virtute auxilium petendum videbat.

60. Itaque sub vesperum consilio convocato cohortatus, ut ea, quae imperasset, diligenter **industrieque** administrarent, naves, quas Meloduno deduxerat, singulas equitibus Romanis attribuit et prima confecta vigilia quattuor milia passuum secundo flumine silentio 25 progredi ibique se exspectari iubet. quinque cohortes, quas minime firmas ad dimicandum esse existimabat, castris praesidio relinquit; quinque eiusdem legionis reliquas de media nocte cum omnibus impedimentis adverso flumine magno tumultu proficisci imperat. conquirat etiam lintres: has, magno **sonitu** 30 remorum incitatas in eandem partem mittit. ipse post paulo

silentio egressus cum tribus legionibus eum locum petit, quo naves **appelli** iusserat.

**61.** Eo cum esset ventum, exploratores hostium, ut omni fluminis parte erant dispositi, inopinantes, quod magna subito  
 5 erat coorta tempestas, ab nostris opprimuntur: exercitus equitatusque equitibus Romanis administrantibus, quos ei negotio praefecerat, celeriter transmittitur. uno fere tempore sub lucem hostibus nuntiat in castris Romanorum praeter consuetudinem  
**tumultuari** et magnum ire agmen adverso flumine, sonitumque  
 10 remorum in eadem parte exaudiri et paulo infra milites navibus transportari. quibus rebus auditis, quod existimabant tribus locis transire legiones atque omnes perturbatos defectione Haeduum fugam parare, suas quoque copias in tres partes distribuerunt. nam praesidio e regione castrorum relicto et parva  
 15 manu Melodunum versus missa, quae tantum progrediatur, quantum naves processissent, reliquas copias contra Labienum duxerunt.

**62.** Prima luce et nostri omnes erant transportati, et hostium acies cernebatur. Labienus milites cohortatus, ut suae pristinae  
 20 virtutis et tot secundissimorum proeliorum retinerent memoriam atque ipsum Caesarem, cuius **ductu** saepenumero hostes superassent, praesentem adesse existimarent, dat signum proclii. primo concursu ab dextro cornu, ubi septima legio constiterat, hostes pelluntur atque in fugam coniciuntur; ab sinistro, quem  
 25 locum duodecima legio tenebat, cum primi ordines hostium transfixi pilis concidissent, tamen acerrime reliqui resistebant, nec dabat suspicionem fugae quisquam. ipse dux hostium Camulogenus suis aderat atque eos cohortabatur. incerto etiam nunc exitu victoriae, cum septimae legionis tribunis esset nuntiatum, quae in sinistro cornu gererentur, post tergum hostium legionem ostenderunt signaque intulerunt. ne eo quidem tempore



quisquam loco cessit, sed circumventi omnes interfectique sunt. eandem fortunam tulit Camulogenus. at ii, qui praesidio contra castra Labieni erant relictī, cum proelium commissum audissent, subsidio suis ierunt collemque ceperunt neque nostrorum militum victorum impetum sustinere potuerunt. sic cum suis fugien- 5 tibus **permixti**, quos non silvae montesque texerunt, ab equitatu sunt interfecti. hoc negotio confecto Labienus revertitur Agedincum, ubi impedimenta totius exercitus relictā erant: inde cum omnibus copiis ad Caesarem pervenit.

*All the Gauls join the Haedui. Vercingetorix is appointed commander. The Gauls attack Caesar, but are put to flight with great slaughter.*

63. Defectione Haeduorum cognita bellum augetur. legationes 10 iū omnes partes circummittuntur: quantum gratia, auctoritate, pecunia valent, ad sollicitandas civitates nituntur; nacti obsides, quos Caesar apud eos deposuerat, horum supplicio dubitantes territant. petunt a Vercingetorige Haedui, ad se veniat rationesque belli gerendi communicet. re impetrata contendunt, ut 15 ipsis summa imperii tradatur, et re in controversiam deducta totius Galliae concilium Bibracte indicitur. eodem conveniunt undique frequentes. multitudinis suffragiis res permittitur: ad unum omnes Vercingetorigem probant imperatorem. ab hoc concilio Remi, Lingones, Treveri afuerunt: illi, quod amicitiam 20 Romanorum sequebantur; Treveri, quod aberant longius et ab Germanis premebantur: quae fuit causa, quare toto abessent bello et neutris auxilia mitterent. magno dolore Haedui ferunt se deiectos principatu, queruntur fortunae commutationem et Caesaris in se **indulgentiam** requirunt; neque tamen suscepto 25 bello suum consilium ab reliquis separare audent. inviti summae spei adulescentes Eporedorix et Viridomarus Vercingetorigi parent.

64. Ipse imperat reliquis civitatibus obsides diemque huic rei constituit. omnes equites, XV milia numero, celeriter convenire iubet: peditatu, quem ante habuerat, se fore **contentum** dicit, neque fortunam temptaturum aut in acie dimicaturum; sed, 5 quoniam abundet equitatu, perfacile esse factu frumentationibus pabulationibusque Romanos prohibere, aequo modo animo sua ipsi frumenta corrumpant aedificiaque incendant, qua rei familiaris iactura perpetuum imperium libertatemque se consequi videant. his constitutis rebus Haeduis Segusiavisque, qui sunt finitimi 10 provinciae, decem milia peditum imperat: huc addit equites DCCC. his praeficit fratrem Eporedorigis bellumque inferre Allobrogibus iubet. altera ex parte Gabalos proximosque pagos Arvernorum in Helvios, item Rutenos Cadurcosque ad fines Volcarum **Are-comicorum** depopulandos mittit. nihilo minus clandestinis nun- 15 tiis legationibusque Allobrogas sollicitat, quorum mentes nondum ab superiore bello **resedissee** sperabat. horum principibus pecunias, civitati autem imperium totius provinciae pollicetur.

65. Ad hos omnes casus provisa erant praesidia cohortium duarum et viginti, quae ex ipsa provincia ab Lucio Caesare 20 legato ad omnes partes opponebantur. Helvii sua sponte cum finitimis proelio congressi pelluntur et Gaio Valerio **Donnotauro**, Caburi filio, principe civitatis, compluribusque aliis interfectis intra oppida murosque compelluntur. Allobroges crebris ad Rhodanum dispositis praesidiis magna cum cura et diligentia 25 suos tuentur. Caesar, quod hostes equitatu superiores esse intellegebat et interclusis omnibus itineribus, nulla re ex provincia atque Italia sublevari poterat, trans Rhenum in Germaniam mittit ad eas civitates, quas superioribus annis pacaverat, equitesque ab his arcessit et levis armaturae pedites, qui inter eos proeliari 30 consuerant. eorum adventu, quod minus idoneis equis utebantur, a tribunis militum reliquisque equitibus Romanis atque evocatis equos sumit Germanisque distribuit.

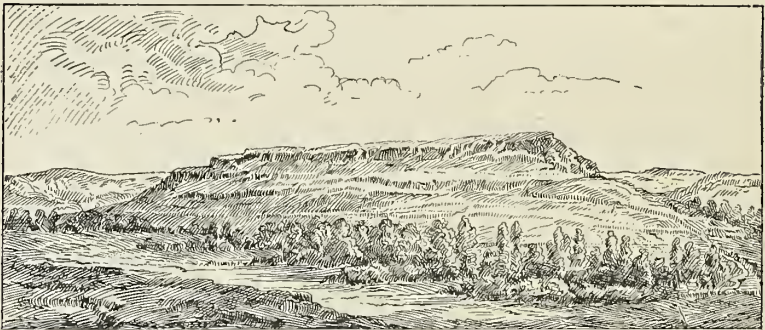
66. Interea, dum haec geruntur, hostium copiae ex Arvernīs equitesque, qui toti Galliae erant imperati, conveniunt. magno horum coacto numero, cum Caesar in Sequanos per extremos Lingonum fines iter faceret, quo facilius subsidium provinciae ferri posset, circiter milia passuum decem ab Romanis trinis cas- 5 tris Vercingetorix consedit convocatisque ad concilium praefectis equitum, venisse tempus victoriae demonstrat. fugere in provinciam Romanos Galliaque excedere. id sibi ad praesentem obtinendam libertatem satis esse; ad reliqui temporis pacem atque otium parum profici: maioribus enim coactis copiis reversuros 10 neque finem bellandi facturos. proinde agmine impeditos adorirentur. si pedites suis auxilium ferant atque in eo morentur, iter facere non posse; si, id quod magis futurum confidat, relictis impedimentis suae saluti consulant, et usu rerum necessariorum et dignitate spoliatum iri. nam de equitibus hostium, 15 quin nemo eorum progredi modo extra agmen audeat, et ipsos quidem non debere dubitare. id quo maiore faciant animo, copias se omnes pro castris habiturum et terrori hostibus futurum. conclamant equites, sanctissimo iureiurando confirmari oportere, ne tecto recipiatur, ne ad liberos, ne ad parentes, ne 20 ad uxorem aditum habeat, qui non bis per agmen hostium perequitasset.

67. Probata re atque omnibus iureiurando adactis postero die in tres partes distributo equitatu duae se acies ab duobus lateribus ostendunt, una a primo agmine iter impedire coepit. qua 25 re nuntiata Caesar suum quoque equitatum tripartito divisum contra hostem ire iubet. pugnatur una omnibus in partibus. consistit agmen; impedimenta intra legiones recipiuntur. si qua in parte nostri laborare aut gravius premi videbantur, eo signa inferri Caesar aciemque constitui iubebat; quae res et hostes 30 ad insequendum tardabat et nostros spe auxilii confirmabat. tandem Germani ab dextro latere summum iugum nacti hostes

loco depellunt; fugientes usque ad flumen, ubi Vercingetorix cum pedestribus copiis consederat, persequuntur compluresque interficiunt. qua re animadversa reliqui, ne circumvenirentur, veriti se fugae mandant. omnibus locis fit caedes. tres nobilissimi Haedui capti ad Caesarem perducuntur: Cotus, praefectus equitum, qui controversiam cum Convictolitavi proximis comitiis habuerat, et **Cavarillus**, qui post defectionem Litavici pedestribus copiis praefuerat, et Eporedorix, quo duce ante adventum Caesaris Haedui cum Sequanis bello contenderant.

*Vercingetorix withdraws to Alesia. Caesar lays siege to the town.*

10 68. Fugato omni equitatu Vercingetorix copias suas, ut pro castris collocaverat, reduxit protinusque **Alesiam**, quod est oppidum **Mandubiorum**, iter facere coepit celeriterque impedimenta



**Alesia a castris a Vercassivellauno oppressis conspecta.**

ex castris educi et se subsequi iussit. Caesar impedimentis in proximum collem deductis duabus legionibus praesidio relictis  
15 secutus, quantum diei tempus est passum, circiter tribus milibus hostium ex novissimo agmine interfectis altero die ad Alesiam





castra fecit. perspecto urbis situ perterritisque hostibus, quod equitatu, qua maxime parte exercitus confidebant, erant pulsī, adhortatus ad laborem milites Alesiam circumvallare instituit.

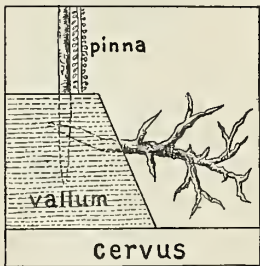
69. Ipsum erat oppidum in colle summo admodum edito loco, ut nisi obsidione expugnari non posse videretur; cuius collis 5 radices duo duabus ex partibus flumina **subluebant**. ante id oppidum planities circiter milia passuum tria in longitudinem patebat: reliquis ex omnibus partibus colles mediocri interiecto spatio pari altitudinis **fastigio** oppidum cingebant. sub muro, quae pars collis ad orientem solem spectabat, hunc omnem locum 10 copiae Gallorum compleverant fossamque et **maceriam** sex in altitudinem pedum praeduxerant. eius munitionis, quae ab Romanis instituebatur, circuitus XI milium passuum tenebat. castra opportunis locis erant posita ibique castella XXIII facta; quibus in castellis interdum stationes ponebantur, ne qua subito 15 eruptio fieret: haec eadem noctu **excubitoribus** ac firmis praesidiis tenebantur.

70. Opere instituto fit equestre proelium in ea planitie, quam intermissam collibus tria milia passuum in longitudinem patere supra demonstravimus. summa vi ab utrisque contenditur. la- 20 borantibus nostris Caesar Germanos summittit legionesque pro castris constituit, ne qua subito **irruptio** ab hostium peditatu fiat. praesidio legionum addito nostris animus augetur: hostes in fugam coniecti se ipsi multitudine impediunt atque angustioribus portis relictis coacervantur. Germani acrius usque ad 25 munitiones sequuntur. fit magna caedes: nonnulli relictis equis fossam transire et **maceriam** transcendere conantur. paulum legiones Caesar, quas pro vallo constituerat, promoveri iubet. non minus, qui intra munitiones erant, perturbantur Galli: veniri ad se confestim existimantes ad arma conclamant; nonnulli 30 perterriti in oppidum irrumpunt. Vercingetorix iubet portas

claudi, ne castra nudentur. multis interfectis, compluribus equis captis Germani sese recipiunt.

71. Vercingetorix, priusquam munitiones ab Romanis perficiantur, consilium capit, omnem ab se equitatum noctu dimittere. discedentibus mandat, ut suam quisque eorum civitatem adeat omnesque, qui per aetatem arma ferre possint, ad bellum cogant; sua in illos merita proponit obtestaturque, ut suae salutis rationem habeant neu se de communi libertate optime meritum hostibus in cruciatum dedant. quod si indiligentiores fuerint, milia hominum delecta LXXX una secum interitura demonstrat. ratione inita se exigue dierum XXX habere frumentum, sed paulo etiam longius tolerari posse parcendo. his datis mandatis, qua opus erat intermissum, secunda vigilia silentio equitatum mittit. frumentum omne ad se referri iubet; 15 capitis poenam iis, qui non paruerint, constituit: pecus, cuius magna erat copia ab Mandubiis compulsa, **viritim** distribuit; frumentum **parce** et paulatim metiri instituit; copias omnes, quas pro oppido collocaverat, in oppidum recipit. his rationibus auxilia Galliae exspectare et bellum administrare parat.

20 72. Quibus rebus cognitis ex perfugis et captivis Caesar haec genera munitionis instituit. fossam pedum XX directis lateribus duxit, ut eius fossae solum **tantundem** pateret, quantum summa labra distarent; reliquas omnes munitiones ab ea fossa pedes CCCC reduxit, id hoc consilio, quoniam tantum esset necessario spatium complexus, nec facile totum corpus corona militum cingeretur, ne de improvise aut

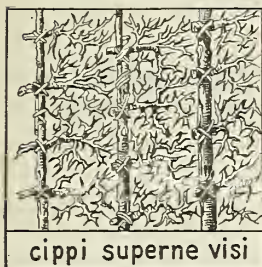


30 noctu ad munitiones hostium multitudo advolaret, aut interdum tela in nostros operi destinatos conicere possent. hoc intermisso

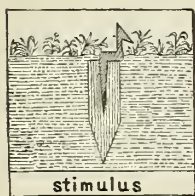


spatio duas fossas XV pedes latas eadem altitudine perduxit : quarum interiorem, **campestribus** ac demissis locis, aqua ex flumine **derivata** complevit. post eas aggerem ac vallum XII pedum extruxit ; huic loricam pinnasque adiecit grandibus **cervis eminentibus** ad **commissuras** pluteorum atque aggeris, qui ascensum hostium tardarent, et turres toto opere circumdedit, quae pedes LXXX inter se distarent.

**73.** Erat eodem tempore et **materiari** et frumentari et tantas munitiones fieri necesse deminutis nostris copiis, quae longius ab castris progrediebantur ; ac nonnumquam opera nostra Galli tentare atque eruptionem ex oppido pluribus portis summa vi facere conabantur. quare ad haec rursus opera addendum Caesar putavit, quo minore numero militum munitiones defendi possent. itaque truncis arborum admodum firmis ramis abscisis atque horum **delibratis** ac

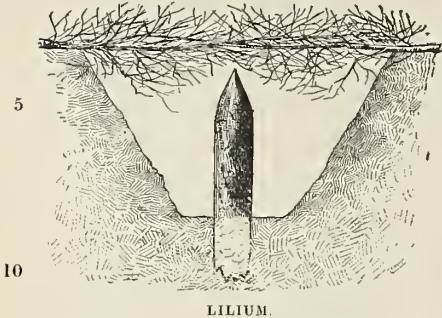


praeacutis **cacuminibus** perpetuae fossae quinos pedes altae ducebantur. huc illi **stipites** demissi et ab infimo revincti, ne revelli possent, ab ramis eminebant. quini erant ordines, coniuncti inter se atque **implicati** ; quo qui intraverant, se ipsi **acutissimis** vallis **induebant**. hos **cippos** appellabant. ante quos obliquis ordinibus in **quincuncem** dispositis **scrobes** trium in altitudinem pedum **fodiebantur** paulatim angustiore ad infimum fastigio. huc **teretes** stipites feminis crassitudine ab summo praeacuti et praeusti demittebantur, ita ut non amplius

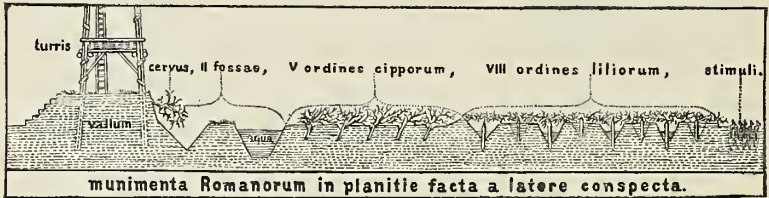


digitis quattuor ex terra eminent ; simul confirmandi et **stabiliendi** causa singuli ab infimo solo pedes terra **exculcabantur**, reliqua pars scrobis ad occultandas insidias viminibus ac

virgultis integebatur. huius generis octoni ordines ducti ternos inter se pedes distabant. id ex similitudine floris lilium appellabant. ante haec taleae pedem longae ferreis hamis infixis totae in terram infodiebantur mediocribusque intermissis spatiis omnibus locis diserebantur; quos stimulos nominabant.



74. His rebus perfectis regiones secutus quam potuit acquisimas pro loci natura quattuordecim milia passuum complexus



15 pares eiusdem generis munitiones, diversas ab his, contra exteriorem hostem perfecit, ut ne magna quidem multitudine, si ita accidat, eius discessu munitionum praesidia circumfundi possent, ac ne cum periculo ex castris egredi cogantur, dierum XXX pabulum frumentumque habere omnes convectum iubet.

*The Gauls try to relieve the besieged, but are defeated.*

20 75. Dum haec ad Alesiam geruntur, Galli concilio principum indicto non omnes eos, qui arma ferre possent, ut censuit Vercingetorix, convocandos statuunt, sed certum numerum cuique ex civitate imperandum; ne tanta multitudine confusa nec

moderari nec **discernere** suos nec frumentandi rationem habere possent. imperant Haeduis atque eorum clientibus, Segusiavis, **Ambuaretis**, Aulercis **Brannovicibus**, **Brannoviis**, milia XXXV; parem numerum Arvernīs, adiunctis **Eleuteris**, Cadurcis, Gabalis, **Vellaviis**, qui sub imperio Arvernorum esse consuerunt; Sequa- 5 nis, Senonibus, Biturigibus, Santonis, Rutenis, Carnutibus duodena milia; Bellovacis X; totidem Lemovicibus; octona Pictonibus et Turonis et Parisiis et Helvetiis; Senonibus, Ambianis, Mediomatricis, **Petrocoriis**, Nerviiis, Morinis, Nitio- 10 brigibus quina milia; Aulercis **Cenomanis** totidem; Atrebatibus IIII; Veliocassis, Lexoviis et Aulercis Ebuovicibus terna; Rauracis et Boiis . . . ; XXX universis civitatibus, quae Oceanum attingunt, quaeque eorum consuetudine Aremoricae appellantur, quo sunt in numero **Curiosolites**, Redones, **Ambibarii**, **Caletes**, Osismi, Lemovices, Veneti, Venelli. ex his Bellovaci suum 15 numerum non compleverunt, quod se suo nomine atque arbitrio cum Romanis bellum gesturos dicerent, neque cuiusquam imperio **obtemperaturos** : rogati tamen ab Commio pro eius hospitio duo milia una miserunt.

76. Huius opera Commii, ita ut antea demonstravimus, fidei 20 atque utili superioribus annis erat usus in Britannia Caesar; quibus ille pro meritis civitatem eius **immunem** esse iusserat, iura legesque reddiderat atque ipsi Morinos attribuerat. tamen tanta universae Galliae **consensio** fuit libertatis vindicandae et pristinae belli laudis recuperandae, ut neque beneficiis neque 25 amicitiae memoria moverentur, omnesque et animo et opibus in id bellum **incumberent**. coactis equitum VIII milibus et peditem circiter CCXL, haec in Haeduum finibus **recensebantur**, numerusque inibat, praefecti constituebantur: Commio Atre- 30 bati, Viridomaro et Eporedorigi Haeduis, **Vercassivellauno** Arverno, **consobrino** Vercingetorigis, summa imperii traditur. his delecti ex civitatibus attribuuntur, quorum consilio bellum

administraretur. omnes alacres et fiduciae pleni ad Alesiam proficiscuntur, neque erat omnium quisquam, qui aspectum modo tantae multitudinis sustineri posse arbitraretur, praesertim ancipiti proelio, cum ex oppido eruptione pugnaretur, **foris** tantae  
5 copiae equitatus peditatusque cernerentur.

*The distress in the town.*

77. At ii, qui Alesiae obsidebantur, praeterita die, qua auxilia suorum exspectaverant, consumpto omni frumento insecii, quid in Haeduis gereretur, concilio coacto de exitu fortunarum suarum consultabant. ac variis dictis sententiis, quarum pars deditio-  
10 nem, pars, dum vires suppeterent, eruptionem censebat, non praetereunda oratio **Critognati** videtur propter eius singularem ac nefariam crudelitatem. hic summo in Arvernus ortus loco et magnae habitus auctoritatis, 'nihil,' inquit, 'de eorum sententia dicturus sum, qui turpissimam servitutem deditio-  
15 nism, neque hos habendos civium loco neque ad consilium adhibendos censeo. cum his mihi res sit, qui eruptionem probant: quorum in consilio omnium vestrum consensu pristinae **residere** virtutis memoria videtur. animi est **ista mollitia**, non virtus, inopiam paulisper ferre non posse. qui se ultro morti  
20 offerant, facilius reperiuntur, quam qui dolorem **patienter** ferant. atque ego hanc sententiam probarem (tantum apud me dignitas potest), si nullam praeterquam vitae nostrae iacturam fieri viderem; sed in consilio capiendo omnem Galliam respiciamus, quam ad nostrum auxilium concitavimus. quid hominum milibus  
25 LXXX uno loco interfectis, propinquis consanguineisque nostris animi fore existimatis, si paene in ipsis cadaveribus proelio decertare cogentur? nolite hos vestro auxilio **exspoliare**, qui vestrae salutis causa sumum periculum neglexerunt, nec **stultitia** ac  
30 **sternere** et perpetuae servituti subicere. an, quod ad diem non

venerunt, de eorum fide constantiaque dubitatis? quid **ergo**? Romanos in illis ulterioribus munitionibus animine causa cotidie exerceri putatis? si illorum nuntiis confirmari non potestis omni aditu **praesepto**; his utimini testibus appropinquare eorum adventum; cuius rei timore exterriti diem noctemque 5 in opere versantur. quid ergo mei consilii est? facere, quod nostri maiores nequaquam pari bello Cimbrorum Teutonumque fecerunt; qui in oppida compulsi ac simili inopia **subacti** eorum corporibus, qui aetate inutiles ad bellum videbantur, vitam toleraverunt neque se hostibus tradiderunt. cuius rei si exem- 10 plum non haberemus, tamen libertatis causa institui et posteris prodi pulcherrimum iudicarem. nam quid illi simile bello fuit? depopulata Gallia Cimbri magnaue illata calamitate finibus quidem nostris aliquando excesserunt atque alias terras petierunt; iura, leges, agros, libertatem nobis reliquerunt. 15 Romani vero quid petunt aliud, aut quid volunt, nisi **invidia** adducti, quos fama nobiles potentesque bello cognoverunt, horum in agris civitatibusque considerare atque his **aeternam iniungere** servitatem? neque enim umquam alia condicione bella gesserunt. quod si ea, quae in longinquis nationibus 20 geruntur, ignoratis, respicite finitimam Galliam, quae in provinciam redacta, iure et legibus commutatis, **securibus** subiecta perpetua premitur servitute.'

*The Mandubii are compelled to leave their own city.*

**78.** Sententiis dictis constituunt, ut ii, qui valetudine aut aetate inutiles sunt bello, oppido excedant, atque omnia prius 25 experiantur, quam ad Critognati sententiam descendant: illo tamen potius utendum consilio, si res cogat atque auxilia morentur, quam aut deditiois aut pacis subeundam condicionem. Mandubii, qui eos oppido receperant, cum liberis atque uxoribus exire coguntur. hi, cum ad munitiones Romanorum accessis- 30

sent, flentes omnibus precibus orabant, ut se in servitatem receptos cibo iuarent. at Caesar dispositis in vallo custodiis recipi prohibebat.

*The Gauls make frequent attacks upon the Roman lines, but are driven back.*

79. Interea Commius et reliqui duces, quibus summa imperii  
5 permissa erat, cum omnibus copiis ad Alesiam perveniunt et  
colle exteriori occupato non longius mille passibus ab nostris  
munitionibus considunt. postero die equitatu ex castris educto  
omnem eam planitiem, quam in longitudinem tria milia passuum  
patere demonstravimus, complent pedestresque copias paulum ab  
10 eo loco abditas in locis superioribus constituunt. erat ex oppido  
Alesia despectus in campum. concurrunt his auxiliis visis; fit  
gratulatio inter eos atque omnium animi ad laetitiam excitantur.  
itaque productis copiis ante oppidum considunt et proximam  
fossam cratibus integunt atque aggere explent seque ad  
15 eruptionem atque omnes casus comparant.

80. Caesar omni exercitu ad utramque partem munitionum  
disposito, ut, si usus veniat, suum quisque locum teneat et no-  
verit, equitatum ex castris educi et proelium committi iubet.  
erat ex omnibus castris, quae summum undique ingum tenebant,  
20 despectus, atque omnes milites intenti pugnae proventum exspectabant.  
Galli inter equites raros sagittarios expeditosque levis  
armaturae interiecerant, qui suis cedentibus auxilio succurrerent  
et nostrorum equitum impetus sustinerent. ab his complures de  
improviso vulnerati proelio excedebant. cum suos pugna supe-  
25 riores esse Galli confiderent et nostros multitudine premi viderent,  
ex omnibus partibus et ii, qui munitionibus continebantur, et  
hi, qui ad auxilium convenerant, clamore et ululatu suorum  
animos confirmabant. quod in conspectu omnium res gerebatur  
neque recte ac turpiter factum celari poterat, utrosque et laudis

cupiditas et timor ignominiae ad virtutem excitabat. cum a meridie prope ad solis occasum dubia victoria pugnaretur, Germani una in parte confertis turmis in hostes impetum fecerunt eosque propulerunt, quibus in fugam coniectis sagittarii circumventi interfectique sunt. item ex reliquis partibus nostri cedentes 5 usque ad castra insecuti sui colligendi facultatem non dederunt. at ii, qui ab Alesia processerant, **maesti** prope victoria desperata se in oppidum receperunt.

**81.** Uno die intermisso Galli atque hoc spatio magno cratium, scalarum, **harpagonum** numero effecto, media nocte silentio ex 10 castris egressi ad campestris munitiones accedunt. subito clamore sublato, qua significatione qui in oppido obsidebantur de suo adventu cognoscere possent, crates proicere, fundis, sagittis, lapidibus nostros de vallo proturbare reliquaque, quae ad oppugnationem pertinent, parant administrare. eodem tempore clamore 15 exaudito dat tuba signum suis Vercingetorix atque ex oppido educit. nostri ut superioribus diebus, ut cuique locus erat attributus, ad munitiones accedunt; fundis, **librilibus** sudibusque, quas in opere disposerant, ac glandibus Gallos proterrent. prospectu **tenebris** adempto multa utrimque vulnera accipiuntur; 20 complura tormentis tela coniciuntur. at Marcus **Antonius** et Gaius Trebonius legati, quibus eae partes ad defendendum obvennerant, qua ex parte nostros premi intellexerant, his auxilio ex ulterioribus castellis deductos submittebant.

**82.** Dum longius ab munitione aberant Galli, plus multitudine 25 telorum proficiebant; posteaquam propius successerunt, aut se stimulis inopinantes induebant aut in scrobes delati **transfodiebantur** aut ex vallo ac turribus traieci pilis muralibus interiebant. multis undique vulneribus acceptis nulla munitione perrupta, cum lux appeteret, veriti, ne ab latere aperto ex supe- 30 rioribus castris eruptione circumvenirentur, se ad suos recepe-

runt. at interiores, dum ea, quae a Vercingetorige ad eruptionem praeparata erant, proferunt, priores fossas explent, diutius in his rebus administrandis morati prius suos discessisse cognoverunt, quam munitionibus appropinquarent. ita re infecta in  
5 oppidum reverterunt.

83. Bis magno cum detrimento repulsi Galli, quid agant, consulunt; locorum peritos adhibent: ex his superiorum castrorum situs munitionesque cognoscunt. erat a septentrionibus collis, quem propter magnitudinem circuitus opere **circumplecti**  
10 non potuerant nostri: necessario paene iniquo loco et leniter declivi castra fecerunt. haec Gaius Antistius Regius et Gaius **Caninius Rebilus** legati cum duabus legionibus obtinebant. cognitis per exploratores regionibus duces hostium LX milia ex omni numero deligunt earum civitatum, quae maximam virtutis  
15 opinionem habebant; quid quoque **pacto** agi placeat, occulte inter se constituunt; adeundi tempus **definiunt**, cum meridies esse videatur. his copiis Vercassivellaunum Arvernum, unum ex quattuor ducibus, propinquum Vercingetorigis, praeficiunt. ille ex castris prima vigilia egressus prope confecto sub lucem itinere,  
20 nere, post montem se occultavit militesque ex nocturno labore sese reficere iussit. cum iam meridies appropinquare videretur, ad ea castra, quae supra demonstravimus, contendit; eodemque tempore equitatus ad campestris munitiones accedere et reliquae copias pro castris sese ostendere coeperunt.

25 84. Vercingetorix ex arce Alesiae suos conspicatus ex oppido egreditur; cratis, longurios, **musculos**, falces reliquaque, quae eruptionis causa paraverat, profert. pugnatur uno tempore omnibus locis acriter atque omnia temptantur: quae minime  
30 visa pars firma est, huc concurritur. Romanorum manus tantis munitionibus distinetur nec facile pluribus locis occurrit. multum ad terrendos nostros valuit clamor, qui post tergum pug-



nantibus exstitit, quod suum periculum in aliena vident salute constare: omnia enim plerumque, quae absunt, vehementius hominum mentes perturbant.

85. Caesar idoneum locum nactus, quid quaque in parte geratur, cognoscit, laborantibus summittit. utrisque ad animum 5 occurrit, unum illud esse tempus, quo maxime contendere conveniat: Galli, nisi perfregerint munitiones, de omni salute desperant; Romani, si rem obtinuerint, finem laborum omnium exspectant. maxime ad superiores munitiones laboratur, quo Vercassivellaunum missum demonstravimus. iniquum loci ad 10 **declivitatem** fastigium magnum habet momentum. alii tela coniciunt, alii testudine facta subeunt; defatigatis in vicem integri succedunt. agger ab universis in munitionem coniectus et ascensum dat Gallis, et ea, quae in terra occultaverant Romani, **contegit**; nec iam arma nostris, nec vires suppetunt. 15

86. His rebus cognitis Caesar Labienum cum cohortibus sex subsidio laborantibus mittit: imperat, si sustinere non posset, deductis cohortibus eruptione pugnaret; id nisi necessario ne faciat. ipse adit reliquos, cohortatur, ne labori **succumbant**; omnium superiorum **dimicationum** fructum in eo die atque hora 20 docet consistere. interiores desperatis campestribus locis propter magnitudinem munitionum loca praerupta ex ascensu temptant: huc ea, quae paraverant, conferunt: multitudine telorum ex turribus propugnantes deturbant, aggere et cratibus fossas explent, [aditus expediunt]; falcibus vallum ac loriam rescindunt. 25

87. Mittit primo Brutum adolescentem cum cohortibus Caesar, post cum aliis Gaium Fabium legatum; postremo ipse, cum vehementius pugnarent, integros subsidio adducit. restituto proelio ac repulsis hostibus eo, quo Labienum miserat, contendit; cohortes quattuor ex proximo castello deducit, equitum partem 30

se sequi, partem circumire exteriores munitiones et ad tergo hostes adoriri iubet. Labienus, postquam neque aggeres neque fossae vim hostium sustinere poterant, coactis una XL cohortibus, quas ex proximis praesidiis deductas fors obtulit, Caesarem  
5 per uuntios facit certiore, quid faciendum existimet.

*The great slaughter of the Gauls. Alesia and Vercingetorix surrender. The Haedui and Arverni submit. The winter-quarters.*

**88. Accelerat** Caesar, ut proelio intersit. eius adventu ex colore vestitus cognito, quo insigni in proeliis uti consueverat, turmisque equitum et cohortibus visis, quae se sequi iusserat, ut de locis superioribus haec declivia et devexa cernebantur, nostri  
10 proelium committunt. utrimque clamore sublato excipit rursus ex vallo atque omnibus munitionibus clamor. nostri emissis pilis gladiis rem gerunt. repente post tergum equitatus cernitur; cohortes aliae appropinquant. hostes terga vertunt; fugientibus equites occurrunt: fit magna caedes. **Sedulius**, dux et  
15 princeps Lemovicum, occiditur; Vercassivellaunus Arvernus vivus in fuga comprehenditur; signa militaria LXXIII ad Caesarem referuntur: pauci ex tanto numero se incolumes in castra recipiunt. conspicati ex oppido caedem et fugam suorum desperata salute copias a munitionibus reducant. fit protinus hac re  
20 audita ex castris Gallorum fuga. quod nisi crebris subsidiis ac totius diei labore milites essent defessi, omnes hostium copiae deleri potuissent. de media nocte missus equitatus novissimum agmen consequitur: magnus numerus capitur atque interficitur, reliqui ex fuga in civitates discedunt.

25 **89.** Postero die Vercingetorix concilio convocato id se bellum suscepisse non suarum necessitatum, sed communis libertatis causa demonstrat, et quoniam sit fortunae cedendum, ad utramque

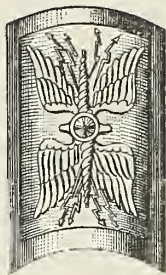
rem se illis offerre, seu morte sua Romanis satisfacere seu vivum tradere velint. mittuntur de his rebus ad Caesarem legati. iubet arma tradi, principes produci. ipse in munitione pro castris con-sedit: eo duces producuntur. Vercingetorix deditur, arma proi-ciuntur. reservatis Haeduis atque Arvernīs, si per eos civitates 5 recuperare posset, ex reliquis captivis toto exercitui capita singula praedae nomine distribuit.

90. His rebus confectis in Haeduos proficiscitur; civitatem recipit. eo legati ab Arvernīs missi, quae imperaret se facturos pollicentur. imperat magnum numerum obsidum. legiones in 10 hiberna mittit. captivorum circiter viginti milia Haeduis Arvernisque reddit. Titum Labienum duabus cum legionibus et equitatu in Sequanos proficisci iubet: huic Marcum **Sempronium Rutilum** attribuit: Gaium Fabium et Lucium Minucium Basilum cum duabus legionibus in Remis collocat, ne quam ab finitimis 15 Bellovacis calamitatem accipiant. Gaium Antistium Regium in Ambilaretos, Titum Sextium in Bituriges, Gaium Caninium Rebilum in Rutenos cum singulis legionibus mittit. Quintum Tullium Cicronem et Publium **Sulpicium Cabilloni** et **Matiscone** in Haeduis ad Ararim rei frumentariae causa collocat. ipse 20 Bibracte hiemare constituit. his \*litteris\* cognitīs Romae dierum viginti supplicatio redditur.

A. HIRTII  
DE BELLO GALLICO

COMMENTARIUS OCTAVUS.

*Letter of Hirtius to Balbus.*



5  
10  
15  
20

Coactus assiduis tuis vocibus, **Balbe**, cum cotidiana mea **recusatio** non difficultatis excusationem, sed **inertiae** videretur **deprecationem** habere, rem difficillimam suscepi. Caesaris nostri **commentarios** rerum gestarum Galliae non **cohaerentibus** superioribus atque insequentibus eius scriptis contexui novissimumque imperfectum ab rebus gestis **Alexandriae** confeci usque ad exitum non quidem civilis  
10 dissensionis, cuius finem nullum videmus, sed vitae Caesaris. quos utinam qui **legent** scire possint quam invitus susceperim scribendos, quo facilius caream stultitiae atque arrogantiae **crimine**, qui me mediis interposuerim Caesaris scriptis. constat enim inter omnes nihil tam **operose** ab aliis esse perfectum,  
15 quod non horum **elegantia** commentariorum superetur. qui sunt editi, ne scientia tantarum rerum **scriptoribus** deesset, adcoque probantur omnium iudicio, ut **praerepta**, non praebita facultas scriptoribus videatur. cuius tamen rei maior nostra quam reliquorum est **admiratio**: ceteri enim, quam bene atque **emendate**,  
20 nos etiam, quam facile atque celeriter eos perfecerit, scimus. erat autem in Caesare cum facultas atque elegantia summa

scribendi, tum verissima scientia suorum consiliorum **explicando-  
rum**. mihi ne illud quidem accidit, ut **Alexandrino** atque  
**Africano** bello interessem; quae bella **quamquam** ex parte nobis  
Caesaris sermone sunt nota, tamen aliter audimus ea, quae rerum  
novitate aut admiratione nos capiunt, aliter, quae pro testimonio 5  
sumus dicturi. sed ego minime, dum omnes excusationis causas  
colligo, ne cum Caesare conferar, hoc ipsum crimen arrogantiae  
subeo, quod me iudicio cuiusquam existimem posse cum Caesare  
comparari. vale.

*Commotions in Gaul.*

**1.** Omni Gallia devicta Caesar cum a superiore aestate nullum 10  
bellandi tempus intermisisset militesque hibernorum quiete re-  
ficere a tantis laboribus vellet, complures eodem tempore civi-  
tates renovare belli consilia nuntiabantur coniurationesque facere.  
cuius rei verisimilis causa afferebatur, quod Gallis omnibus  
cognitum esset neque ulla multitudine in unum locum coacta 15  
resisti posse Romanis, nec, si diversa bella complures eodem  
tempore intulissent civitates, satis auxilii aut spatii aut copiarum  
habiturum exercitum populi Romani ad omnia persequenda; non  
esse autem alicui civitati sortem incommodi recusandam, si tali  
mora reliquae possent se vindicare in libertatem. 20

**2.** Quae ne opinio Gallorum confirmaretur, Caesar Marcum  
Antonium quaestorem suis praefecit hibernis; ipse equitum  
praesidio pridie Kal. Ianuarias ab oppido Bibracte proficiscitur  
ad legionem XIII, quam non longe a finibus Haeduum col-  
locaverat in finibus Biturigum, eique adiungit legionem XI, 25  
quae proxima fuerat. bis cohortibus ad impedimenta tuenda  
relictis reliquum exercitum in copiosissimos agros Biturigum  
indueit, qui, cum latos fines et complura oppida haberent, unius  
legionis hibernis non potuerint contineri, quin bellum pararent  
coniurationesque facerent. 30

*Caesar receives hostages from the Bituriges and proceeds against the Carnutes.*

3. Repentino adventu Caesaris accidit, quod imparatis disiectaque accidere fuit necesse, ut sine timore ullo **rura** colentes prius ab equitatu opprimerentur, quam confugere in oppida possent. namque etiam illud **vulgare** incursionis hostium signum, quod incendiis aedificiorum intellegi consuevit, Caesaris erat interdicto sublatum, ne aut copia pabuli frumentique, si longius progredi vellet, deficeretur, aut hostes incendiis terrentur. multis hominum milibus captis perterriti Bituriges, qui primum adventum potuerant effugere Romanorum, in finitimas civitates aut privatis hospitiiis confisi aut societate consiliorum confugerant. frustra: nam Caesar magnis itineribus omnibus locis occurrit nec dat ulli civitati spatium de aliena potius quam de domestica salute cogitandi; qua celeritate et fideles amicos retinebat et dubitantes terrore ad condiciones pacis adducebat. 15 tali condicione proposita Bituriges, cum sibi viderent clementia Caesaris reditum patere in eius amicitiam finitimasque civitates sine ulla poena dedisse obsides atque in fidem receptas esse, idem fecerunt.

4. Caesar militibus pro tanto labore ac **patientia**, qui **brumalibus** 20 **bus** diebus itineribus difficillimis, frigoribus **intolerandis** studiosissime permauserant in labore, **ducenos sestertios**, centurionibus \*tot milia\* nummum praedae nomine condonanda pollicetur legionibusque in hiberna remissis ipse se recipit die XXXX Bibracte. ibi cum ius diceret, Bituriges ad eum legatos mittunt 25 auxilium petitum contra Carnutes, quos intulisse bellum sibi querebantur. qua re cognita, cum dies non amplius decem et octo in hibernis esset moratus, legiones XIII et VI ex hibernis ab Arare educit, quas ibi collocatas explicandae rei frumentariae

causa superiore commentario demonstratum est: ita cum duabus legionibus ad persequendos Carnutes proficiscitur.

5. Cum fama exercitus ad hostes esset perlata, calamitate ceterorum ducti Carnutes desertis vicis oppidisque, quae tolerandae hiemis causa constitutis repente exiguis ad necessitatem 5 aedificiis incolebant (nuper enim devicti complura oppida dimiserant), dispersi profugiunt. Caesar erumpentes eo maxime tempore **acerrimas** tempestates cum subire milites nollet, in oppido Carnutum Cenabo castra ponit atque in tecta partim Gallorum, partim quae coniectis celeriter stramentis **tentiorum** integendorum 10 gratia erant **inaedificata**, milites **compegit**. equites tamen et auxiliarios pedites in omnes partes mittit, quascumque petisse dicebantur hostes; nec frustra: nam plerumque magna praeda potiti nostri revertuntur. oppressi Carnutes hiemis difficultate, terrore periculi, cum tectis expulsi nullo loco diutius consistere 15 auderent nec silvarum praesidio tempestatibus durissimis tegi possent, dispersi magna parte amissa suorum dissipantur in finitimas civitates.

6. Caesar tempore anni difficillimo, cum satis haberet convenientes manus dissipare, ne quod initium belli nasceretur, quantumque 20 in ratione esset, exploratum haberet sub tempus aestivorum nullum summum bellum posse **conflari**, Gaium Trebonium cum duabus legionibus, quas secum habebat, in hibernis Cenabi collocavit; ipse, cum crebris legationibus Remorum certior fieret Bellovacos, qui belli gloria Gallos omnes Belgasque praestabant, 25 finitimasque his civitates duce **Correo** Bellovaco et Commio Atrabate exercitus comparare atque in unum locum cogere, ut omni multitudine in fines Suessionum, qui Remis erant attributi, facerent **impressionem**, pertinere autem non tantum ad dignitatem, sed etiam ad salutem suam iudicaret nullam calamitatem socios 30 optime de republica meritos accipere, legionem ex hibernis evocat

rursus undecimam, litteras autem ad Gaium Fabium mittit, ut in fines Suessionum legiones duas, quas habebat, adduceret, alteramque ex duabus ab Labieno arcessit. ita, quantum hibernorum opportunitas bellique ratio postulabat, perpetuo suo labore  
5 in vicem legionibus expeditionum onus iniungebat.

*Caesar marches against the Bellocaci, who are compelled to retreat.*

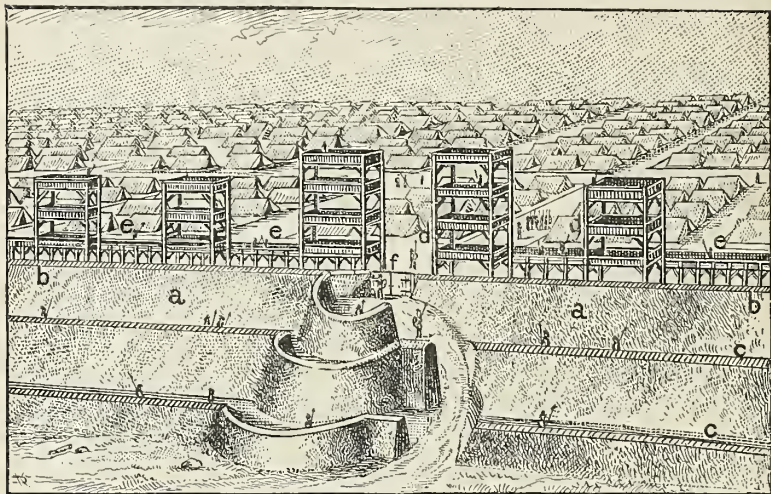
7. His copiis eoactis ad Bellovaeos proficiscitur castrisque in eorum finibus positis equitum turmas dimittit in omnes partes ad aliquos excipiendos, ex quibus hostium consilia cognosceret. equites officio funeti renuntiant paucos in aedificiis esse inventos, atque hos, non qui agrorum colendorum causa remansissent (namque esse undique diligenter demigratum), sed qui speulandi causa essent remissi. a quibus eum quaereret Caesar, quo loco multitudo esset Bellovacorum quodve esset consilium eorum, inveniebat: Bellovacos omnes, qui arma ferre possent, in unum  
15 locum convenisse, itemque Ambianos, Aulereos, Caletos, Vellioeassis, Atrebatas; locum castris exelsum in silva circumdata palude delegisse, impedimenta omnia in ultiores silvas contulisse. complures esse principes belli auctores, sed multitudinem maxime Correo obtemperare, quod ei summo esse odio  
20 nomen populi Romani intellexissent. paucis ante diebus ex his castris Atrebatem Commium discessisse ad auxilia Germanorum adducenda; quorum et vicinitas propinqua et multitudo esset infinita. constituisse autem Bellovaeos omnium principum consensu, summa plebis cupiditate, si, ut dicebatur, Caesar cum  
25 tribus legionibus veniret, offerre se ad dimicandum, ne miseriore ac duriore postea conditione cum toto exercitu deertare cogentur; si maiores copias adduceret, in eo loco permanere, quem delegissent, pabulatione autem, quae propter anni tempus eum exigua tum disiecta esset, et frumentatione et reliquo comaeatu  
30 ex insidiis prohibere Romanos.



8. Quae Caesar consentientibus pluribus cum cognosset atque ea, quae proponerentur, consilia plena prudentiae longeque a temeritate barbarorum remota esse iudicaret, omnibus rebus **inserviendum** statuit, quo celerius hostis contempta sua paucitate prodiret in aciem. singularis enim virtutis veterimas 5 legiones VII, VIII, VIII habebat, summae spei delectaeque iuventutis XI, quae octavo iam stipendio tamen in **collatione** reliquarum nondum eandem **vetustatis** ac virtutis ceperat opinionem. itaque concilio advocato rebus iis, quae ad se essent delatae, omnibus expositis animos multitudinis confirmat. si 10 forte hostes trium legionum numero posset elicere ad dimicandum, agminis ordinem ita constituit, ut legio septima, octava, nona ante omnia irent impedimenta, deinde omnium impedimentorum agmen, quod tamen erat mediocre, ut in expeditionibus esse consuevit, cogeret undecima, ne maioris multitudinis species 15 accidere hostibus posset, quam ipsi depoposissent. hac ratione paene **quadrato** agmine instructo in conspectum hostium celerius opinione eorum exercitum adducit.

9. Cum repente instructas velut in acie certo **gradu** legiones accedere Galli viderent, quorum erant ad Caesarem plena fiduciae 20 consilia perlata, sive certaminis periculo sive subito adventu sive **expectatione** nostri consilii copias instruunt pro castris nec loco superiore decedunt. Caesar, etsi dimicare **optaverat**, tamen admiratus tantam multitudinem hostium valle intermissa magis in altitudinem **depressa** quam late patente castra castris hostium 25 confert. haec imperat vallo pedum XII muniri, loriculam per **aggerationem** eius altitudini inaedificari; fossam duplicem pedum denum quinque lateribus deprimi directis; turris excitari crebras in altitudinem trium tabulatorum, pontibus traiectis constratisque coniungi, quorum frontes **viminea** loricula munirentur: ut 30 ab hostibus duplici fossa, duplici propugnatorum ordine defenderentur, quorum alter ex pontibus, quo tutior altitudine esset,

hoc audacius longiusque permetteret tela, alter, qui propior hostem in ipso vallo collocatus esset, ponte ab incidentibus telis tegetur. portis fores altioresque turres imposuit.



a. vallum ped. XII. b. loricula. c. fossa duplex. d. turres. e. pontes. f. porta.

10. Huius munitionis duplex erat consilium. namque et  
 5 operum magnitudinem et timorem suum sperabat fiduciam barbaris allaturum, et cum pabulatum frumentatumque longius esset proficiscendum, parvis copiis castra munitione ipsa videbat posse defendi. interim **crebro** paucis utrimque procurrentibus inter bina castra palude interiecta eontendebatur; quam tamen  
 10 paludem nonnumquam aut nostra auxilia Gallorum Germanorumque transibant acriusque hostes insequabantur, aut **vicissim** hostes eadem transgressi nostros longius submovebant. accidebat autem cotidianis pabulationibus (id quod accidere erat necesse, cum raris disiectisque ex aedificiis pabulum conquiretetur), ut  
 15 impeditis locis dispersi pabulatores circumvenirentur; quae res, etsi mediocre detrimentum iumentorum ac servorum nostris

afferebat, tamen **stultas cogitationes** incitabat barbarorum, atque eo magis, quod Commius, quem profectum ad auxilia Germanorum arcessenda docui, cum equitibus venerat; qui tametsi numero non amplius erant quingenti, tamen Germanorum adventu barbari nitebantur. 5

**11.** Caesar, cum animadverteret hostem complures dies castris palude et loci natura munitis se tenere neque oppugnari castra eorum sine dimicatione **perniciosa** nec locum munitionibus claudi nisi a maiore exereitu posse, litteras ad Trebonium mittit, ut quam celerrime posset legionem XIII, quae cum T. Sextio 10 legato in Biturigibus hiemabat, arcesseret atque ita cum tribus legionibus magnis itineribus ad se veniret; ipse equites in vicem Remorum ae Lingonum reliquarumque civitatum, quorum magnum numerum evocaverat, praesidio pabulationibus mittit, qui subitas hostium incursiones sustinerent. 15

**12.** Quod cum cotidie fieret, ac iam consuetudine diligentia minuèretur, quod plerumque accidit diuturnitate, Bellovacii delecta manu peditum cognitis stationibus eotidianis equitum nostrorum silvestribus locis insidias disponunt eodemque equites postero die mittunt, qui primum elicerent nostros, deinde circumventos aggre- 20 derentur. cuius mali sors incidit Remis, quibus ille dies fungeudi muneris obvenerat. namque hi, cum repente hostium equites animadvertissent ac numero superiores paucitatem contempsissent, cupidius insecuti peditibus undique sunt circumdati. quo facto perturbati celerius, quam consuetudo fert equestris 25 proelii, se receperunt amisso **Vertisco**, principe civitatis, praefecto equitum; qui cum vix equo propter aetatem posset uti, tamen consuetudine Gallorum neque aetatis excusatione in suscipienda **praefectura** usus erat neque dimicari sine se voluerat. **inflantur** atque incitantur hostium animi secundo proelio, principe 30 et praefecto Remorum interfecto, nostrique detrimento admonentur

diligentius exploratis locis stationes disponere ac moderatius cedentem insequi hostem.

**13.** Non intermittunt interim cotidiana proelia in conspectu utrorumque castrorum, quae ad vada transitusque fiebant paludis. 5 qua contentione Germani, quos propterea Caesar traduxerat Rhenum, ut equitibus interpositi proeliarentur, cum constantius universi paludem transissent paucisque resistentibus interfectis **pertinacius** reliquam multitudinem essent insecuti, perterriti non solum ii, qui aut comminus opprimebantur aut eminus vulnera- 10 bantur, sed etiam, qui longius **subsidiari** consueverant, turpiter refugerunt nec prius finem fugae fecerunt saepe amissis superioribus locis, quam se aut in castra suorum reciperent, aut nonnulli pudore coacti longius profugerent. quorum periculo sic omnes copiae sunt perturbatae, ut vix iudicari posset, utrum 15 secundis minimisque rebus **insolentiores**, an adverso mediocri casu timidiores essent.

**14.** Compluribus diebus iisdem in castris consumptis, cum propius accessisse legiones et Gaium Trebonium legatum cognos- sent, duces Bellovacorum veriti similem obsessionem Alesiae noctu 20 dimittunt eos, quos aut aetate aut viribus inferiores aut inermes habebant, unaque reliqua impedimenta. quorum perturbatum et confusum dum explicant agmen (magna enim multitudo carrorum etiam expeditos sequi Gallos consuevit), oppressi luce copias armatorum pro suis instruunt castris, ne prius Romani per- 25 sequi se inciperent, quam longius agmen impedimentorum suorum processisset. at Caesar neque resistentes aggrediundos tanto collis ascensu iudicabat, neque non usque eo legiones ad- movendas, ut discedere ex eo loco sine periculo barbari militi- bus instantibus non possent. ita, cum palude impedita a castris 30 castra dividi videret, quae transeundi difficultas celeritatem inse- quendi tardare posset, atque id iugum, quod trans paludem paene

ad hostium castra pertineret, mediocri valle a castris eorum **intercisum** animum adverteret, pontibus palude constrata legiones traducit celeriterque in summam planitiem iugi pervenit, quae declivi fastigio duobus ab lateribus munebatur. ibi legionibus instructis ad ultimum iugum pervenit aciemque eo loco con- 5 stituit, unde tormento missa tela in hostium cuneos conici possent.

**15.** Barbari confisi loci natura, cum dimicare non recusarent, si forte Romani subire collem conarentur, paulatim copias distributas dimittere non possent, ne dispersi perturbarentur, in acie 10 permauserunt. quorum pertinacia cognita Caesar XX cohortibus instructis castrisque eo loco metatis muniri iubet castra. **absolutis** operibus pro vallo legiones instructas collocat, equites **frenatis** equis in statione disponit. Bellovaci, cum Romanos ad insequendum paratos viderent neque **pernoctare** aut diutius per- 15 manere sine periculo eodem loco possent, tale consilium sui recipiendi ceperunt. **fascēs**, ut consueverant [namque in acie **sedere** Gallos consuesse superioribus commentariis Caesaris declaratum est], per manus stramentorum ac virgultorum, quorum summa erat in castris copia, inter se traditos ante aciem colloca- 20 runt extremoque tempore diei signo prouuntiato uno tempore incenderunt. ita continens flamma copias omnes repente a conspectu texit Romanorum.

**16.** Quod nbi accidit, barbari vehementissimo cursu refugerunt. Caesar, etsi discessum hostium animadvertere non poterat 25 incendiis oppositis, tamen id consilium cum fugae causa initum suspicaretur, legiones promovet, turmas mittit ad insequendum; ipse veritus insidias, ne forte in eodem loco subsistere hostis atque elicere nostros in locum conaretur iniquum, tardius procedit. equites cum intrare summum iugum et flammam densis- 30 simam timerent ac, si qui cupidius intraverant, vix suorum ipsi

priores partes animadverterent equorum, insidias veriti liberam facultatem sui recipiendi Bellovacis dederunt. ita fuga timoris simul **calliditatis**que plena sine ullo detrimento milia non amplius decem progressi hostes loco munitissimo castra posuerunt. 5 inde cum saepe in insidiis equites peditesque disponderent, magna detrimenta Romanis in pabulationibus inferebant.

**17.** Quod cum crebrius accideret, ex captivo quodam eomperit Caesar Correum, Bellovacorum ducem, fortissimorum milia sex peditum delegisse equitesque ex omni numero mille, quos in 10 insidiis eo loco collocaret, quem in locum propter copiam frumenti ac pabuli Romanos missuros suspicaretur. quo cognito consilio legiones plures, quam solebat, educit equitatumque, qua consuetudine pabulatoribus mittere praesidio consuerat, praemittit : huic interponit auxilia levis armaturae ; ipse cum legionibus 15 quam potest maxime appropinquat.

*The Gauls are placed in ambush. Their defeat. Commius sought by treachery.*

**18.** Hostes in insidiis dispositi, cum sibi delegissent campum ad rem gerendam non amplius patentem in omnes partes passibus mille, silvis undique aut impeditissimo flumine munitum, velut **indagine** hunc insidiis circumdederunt. explorato hostium 20 consilio nostri ad proeliandum animo atque armis parati, cum subsequenter legibus nullam dimicationem recusarent, **turmatim** in eum locum devenerunt. quorum adventu cum sibi Correas oblatam occasionem rei gerendae existimaret, primum cum paucis se ostendit atque in proximas turmas impetum fecit. 25 nostri constanter incursum sustinent insidiatorum neque plures in unum locum conveniunt ; quod plerumque equestribus proeliis cum propter aliquem timorem accidit, tum multitudine ipsorum detrimentum accipitur.

19. Cum dispositis turmis in vicem rari proeliarentur neque ab lateribus circumveniri suos paterentur, erumpunt ceteri Correo proeliante ex silvis. fit magna contentione diversum proelium. quod cum diutius pari Marte iniretur, paulatim ex silvis instructa multitudo procedit peditum, quae nostros coegit cedere 5 equites. quibus celeriter subveniunt levis armaturae pedites, quos ante legiones missos docui, turmisque nostrorum interpositi constanter proeliantur. pugnatur aliquamdiu pari contentione; deinde, ut ratio postulabat proelii, qui sustinuerant primos impetus insidiarum, hoc ipso fiunt superiores, quod nullum ab insi- 10 dantibus imprudentes acceperant detrimentum. accedunt propius interim legiones, crebrique eodem tempore et nostris et hostibus nuntii afferuntur, imperatorem instructis copiis adesse. qua re cognita praesidio cohortium confisi nostri acerrime proeliantur, ne, si tardius rem gessissent, victoriae gloriam communicasse 15 cum legionibus viderentur; hostes concidunt animis atque itinibus diversis fugam quaerunt. nequiquam: nam quibus difficultatibus locorum Romanos claudere voluerant, iis ipsi tenebantur. victi tamen **perculsi**que maiore parte amissa consternati profugiunt partim silvis petitis, partim flumine (qui tamen in fuga a 20 nostris acriter insequentibus conficiuntur), cum interim nulla calamitate victus Correas excedere proelio silvasque petere aut invitantibus nostris ad deditionem potuit adduci, quin fortissime proeliando compluresque vulnerando cogeret elatos iracundia victores in se tela conicere. 25

20. Tali modo re gesta recentibus proelii vestigiis ingressus Caesar, cum victos tanta calamitate existimaret hostes nuntio accepto locum castrorum relicturos, quae non longius ab ea caede abessè plus minus octo milibus dicebantur, tametsi flumine impeditum transitum videbat, tamen exercitu traducto progre- 30 ditur. at Bellovacum reliquaeque civitates repente ex fuga paucis atque his vulneratis receptis, qui silvarum beneficio casum

**evitaverant**, omnibus adversis, \*cognita calamitate,\* interfecto Correo, amisso equitatu et fortissimis peditibus, cum **adventare** Romanos existimarent, concilio repente **cantu** turbarum convocato conclamant, legati obsidesque ad Caesarem mittantur.

5 **21.** Hoc omnibus probato consilio Commius Atrebas ad eos confugit Germanos, a quibus ad id bellum auxilia mutuatus erat. ceteri e vestigio mittunt ad Caesarem legatos petuntque, ut ea poena sit contentus hostium, quam si sine dimicatione inferre integris posset, pro sua clementia atque humanitate nunquam  
10 **profecto** esset illaturus. afflictas opes equestri proelio Bellovacorum esse; delectorum peditum multa milia interisse, vix refugisse nuntios caedis. tamen magnum ut in tanta calamitate Bellovacos eo proelio commodum esse consecutos, quod Correas, auctor belli, **concitator** multitudinis, esset interfectus. nunquam enim  
15 senatum tantum in civitate illo vivo quantum imperitam plebem potuisse.

**22.** Haec orantibus legatis commemorat Caesar: eodem tempore superiore anno Bellovacos ceterasque Galliae civitates suscepisse bellum; pertinacissime hos ex omnibus in sententia  
20 permanisse neque ad sanitatem reliquorum deditione esse perductos. scire atque intellegere se causam peccati facillime mortuis delegari. neminem vero tantum **pollere**, ut invitis principibus, resistente senatu, omnibus bonis repugnantibus infirma manu plebis bellum concitare et gerere posset. sed tamen se contentum  
25 fore ea poena, quam sibi ipsi contraxissent.

**23.** Nocte insequenti legati responsa ad suos referunt, obsides conficiunt. concurrunt reliquarum civitatum legati, quae Bellovacorum speculabantur eventum; obsides dant, imperata faciunt excepto Commio, quem timor prohibebat cuiusquam fidei suam  
30 committere salutem. nam superiore anno Titus Labienus Caesare



in Gallia citeriore ius dicente, cum Commium comperisset sollicitare civitates et coniurationem contra Caesarem facere, **infidelitatem** eius sine ulla perfidia iudicavit **comprimi** posse. quem **quia** non arbitrabatur vocatum in castra venturum, ne tentando **cautio**rem faceret, Gaium Volusenum Quadratum misit, qui eum 5 per simulationem colloqui curaret interficiendum. ad eam rem delectos idoneos ei tradit centuriones. cum in colloquium ventum esset, et, ut convenerat, manum Commii Volusenus arripuisset, centurio vel insueta re permotus vel celeriter a familiaribus prohibitus Commii conficere hominem non potuit; graviter tamen 10 primo ictu gladio caput percussit. cum utrinque gladii dstricti essent, non tam pugnandi quam diffugiendi fuit utrorumque consilium: nostrorum, quod mortifero vulnere Commium credebant affectum; Gallorum, quod insidiis cognitis plura, quam videbant, extimescebant. quo factò statuisset Commius dicebatur numquam 15 in conspectum cuiusquam Romani venire.

*Caesar lays waste the country of Ambiorix. Labienus is sent against the Treveri.*

**24.** Bellicosissimis gentibus devictis Caesar, cum videret nullam iam esse civitatem, quae bellum pararet, quo sibi resisteret, sed nonnullos ex oppidis demigrare, ex agris diffugere ad praesens imperium evitandum, pluris in partes exercitum dimittere con- 20 stituit. M. Antonium quaestorem cum legione duodecima sibi coniungit. C. Fabium legatum cum cohortibus XXV mittit in diversissimam partem Galliae, quod ibi quasdam civitates in armis esse audiebat neque C. Caninium Rebilum legatum, qui in illis regionibus erat, satis firmas duas legiones habere existimabat. 25 Titum Labienum ad se evocat; legionem autem XV, quae cum eo fuerat in hibernis, in **togatam** Galliam mittit ad colonias civium Romanorum tuendas, ne quod simile incommodum accideret **decursione** barbarorum, ac superiore aestate **Tergestinis**

acciderat, qui repentino latrocinio atque impetu illorum erant oppressi. ipse ad vastandos depopulandosque fines Ambiorigis proficiscitur; quem perterritum ac fugientem cum redigi posse in suam potestatem desperasset, proximum suae dignitatis esse  
 5 ducebat, adeo fines eius vastare civibus, aedificiis, pecore, ut odio suorum Ambiorix, si quos fortuna reliquos fecisset, nullum reditum propter tantas calamitates haberet in civitatem.

25. Cum in omnes partes finium Ambiorigis aut legiones aut auxilia dimisisset atque omnia caedibus, incendiis, rapinis vastasset, magno numero hominum interfecto aut capto Labienum cum duabus legionibus in Treveros mittit; quorum civitas propter Germaniae vicinitatem cotidianis exercitata bellis cultu et **feritate** non multum a Germanis differebat neque imperata unquam nisi exercitu coacta faciebat.

*Dumnacus while attacking Lemonum is defeated.*

15 26. Interim Gaius Caninius legatus, cum magnam multitudinem convenisse hostium in fines Pictonum litteris nuntiisque **Durati** cognosceret, qui perpetuo in amicitia manserat Romanorum, cum pars quaedam civitatis eius defecisset, ad oppidum **Lemonum** contendit. quo cum adventaret atque ex captivis certius cognos-  
 20 ceret multis hominum milibus a **Dumnaco**, duce Andium, **Duratum** clausum Lemoni oppugnari neque infirmas legiones hostibus committere auderet, castra posuit loco munito. Dumnacus, cum appropinquare Caninium cognosset, copiis omnibus ad legiones conversis castra Romanorum oppugnare instituit. cum complures  
 25 dies in oppugnatione consumpsisset et magno suorum detrimento nullam partem munitionum **convellere** potuisset, rursus ad **obsidendum** Lemonum redit.

27. Eodem tempore C. Fabius legatus complures civitates in fidem recipit, obsidibus firmat litterisque Gai Canini Rebili fit

certior, quae in Pictonibus gerantur. quibus rebus cognitis proficiscitur ad auxilium Duratio ferendum. at Dumniacus adventu Fabii cognito desperata salute, si tempore eodem coactus esset et Romanum externum sustinere hostem et respicere ac timere oppidanos, repente ex eo loco cum copiis recedit nec se satis tutum fore arbitratur, nisi flumine Ligeri, quod erat ponte propter magnitudinem transeundum, copias traduxisset. Fabius, etsi nondum in conspectum venerat hostibus neque se Caninio coniunxerat, tamen doctus ab iis, qui locorum noverant naturam, potissimum credidit hostes perterritos eum locum, quem petebant, petituros. itaque cum copiis ad eundem pontem contendit equitatuque tantum procedere ante agmen imperat legionum, quantum cum processisset, sine defatigatione equorum in eadem se reciperet castra. consequuntur equites nostri, ut erat praeceptum, **invadunt**que Dumniaci agmen et fugientes perterritosque sub sarcinis in itinere aggressi magna praeda multis interfectis potiuntur. ita re bene gesta se recipiunt in castra.

**28.** Insequenti nocte Fabius equites praemittit sic paratos, ut confligerent atque omne agmen morarentur, dum consequeretur ipse. cuius praeceptis ut res gereretur, **Quintus Atius Varus**, praefectus equitum, singularis et animi et prudentiae vir, suos hortatur agmenque hostium consecutus turmas partim idoneis locis disponit, parte equitum proelium committit. configit audacius equitatus hostium succedentibus sibi peditibus; qui toto agmine subsistentes equitibus suis contra nostros ferunt auxilium. fit proelium acri certamine. namque nostri contemptis pridie superatis hostibus, cum subsequi legiones meminissent, et pudore cedendi et cupiditate per se conficiendi proelii fortissime contra pedites proeliantur, hostesque nihil amplius copiarum accessurum credentes, ut pridie cognoverant, delendi equitatus nostri nacti occasionem videbantur.

29. Cum aliquamdiu summa contentione dimicaretur, Dumna-  
 cus instruit aciem, quae suis esset equitibus in vicem praesidio:  
 cum repente confertae legiones in conspectum hostium veniunt.  
 quibus visis percussae barbarorum turmae ac perterritae acies  
 5 hostium perturbato impedimentorum agmine magno clamore  
**discursu**que passim fugae se mandant. at nostri equites, qui  
 paulo ante cum resistantibus fortissime conflixerant, laetitia victo-  
 riae elati magno undique clamore sublato cedentibus circum-  
 fusi, quantum equorum vires ad persequendum dextraeque ad  
 10 caedendum valent, tantum eo proelio interficiunt. itaque amplius  
 milibus XII aut armatorum aut eorum, qui eo timore arma pro-  
 iecerant, interfectis omnis multitudo capitur impedimentorum.

*Fabius subduces the Carnutes. Caninius besieges Uxellodunum.*

30. Qua ex fuga cum constaret **Drappetem** Senonem, qui, ut  
 primum defecerat Gallia, collectis undique perditis hominibus,  
 15 servis ad libertatem vocatis, exulibus omnium civitatum **ascitis**,  
 receptis latronibus impedimenta et comneatus Romanorum inter-  
 ceperat, non amplius hominum milibus ex fuga quinque collectis  
 provinciam petere unaque consilium cum co Lucterium Cadurcum  
 cepisse, quem superiore commentario prima defectione Galliae  
 20 facere in provinciam voluisse impetum cognitum est, Caninius  
 legatus cum legionibus duabus ad eos persequendos contendit,  
 ne detrimento aut timore provinciae magna infamia perditorum  
 hominum latrocinii caperetur. -

31. Gaius Fabius cum reliquo exercitu in Carnutes ceterasque  
 25 proficiscitur civitates, quarum eo proelio, quod cum Dunnaco  
 fecerat, copias esse accisas sciebat. non enim dubitabat, quin  
 recenti calamitate **summissiores** essent futurae, dato vero spatio  
 ac tempore eodem instigante Dunnaco possent concitari. qua in  
 re summa felicitas celeritasque in recipiendis civitatibus Fabium

consequitur. nam Carnutes, qui saepe vexati numquam pacis fecerant mentionem, datis obsidibus veniunt in deditiōem, ceteraeque civitates positae in ultimis Galliae finibus, Oceano coniunctae, quae Aremoricae appellantur, auctoritate adductae Carnutum adventu Fabii legionumque imperata sine mora fa- 5  
ciunt. Dumnaeus suis finibus expulsus errans *latitans*que solus extremas Galliae regiones petere est coactus.

32. At Drappes unaque Lueterius, cum legiones Caniniumque adesse cognoscerent nec se sine certa pernicie persequente exercitu putarent provinciae fines intrare posse nec iam libere vagandi 10



UXELLODUNUM AD OCCIDENTEM SPECTANS.

latrociniorumque faciendorum facultatem haberent, in finibus consistunt Cadurcorum. ibi cum Lueterius apud suos cives *quondam* integris rebus multum potuisset, semperque auctor novorum consiliorum magnam apud barbaros auctoritatem haberet, oppidum *Uxellodunum*, quod in clientela fuerat eius, egregie 15  
natura loci munitum, occupat suis et Drappetis copiis oppidanosque sibi coniungit.

33. Quo cum confestim Gaius Caninius venisset animadverteretque omnes oppidi partes prae-ruptissimis saxis esse munitas, quo defendente nullo tamen armatis ascendere esset difficile, 20  
magna autem impedimenta oppidanorum videret, quae si clandestina fuga subtrahere conarentur, effugere non modo equitatum, sed ne legiones quidem possent, tripartito cohortibus divisus tria

excelsissimo loco castra fecit; a quibus paulatim, quantum copiae patiebantur, vallum in oppidi circuitum ducere instituit.

34. Quod cum animadverterent oppidani miserrimaque Alesiae memoria **solliciti** similem casum obsessionis vererentur, maxime-  
 5 que ex omnibus Lucretius, qui fortunae illius periculum fecerat, moneret frumenti rationem esse habendam, constituunt omnium consensu parte ibi relicta copiarum ipsi cum expeditis ad importandum frumentum proficisci. eo consilio probato proxima nocte duobus milibus armatorum relictis reliquos ex oppido Drappes  
 10 et Lucretius educunt. hi paucos dies morati ex finibus Cadurcorum, qui partim re frumentaria sublevare eos cupiebant, partim prohibere, quo minus sumerent, non poterant, magnum numerum frumenti comparant, nonnumquam autem expeditionibus nocturnis castella nostrorum adoriuntur. quam ob causam Gaius  
 15 Caninius toto oppido munitiones circumdare moratur, ne aut opus effectum tueri non possit aut plurimis in locis infirma disponat praesidia.

35. Magna copia frumenti comparata considunt Drappes et Lucretius non longius ab oppido X milibus, unde paulatim fru-  
 20 mentum in oppidum supportarent. ipsi inter se provincias partiuntur: Drappes castris praesidio cum parte copiarum restitit; Lucretius agmen iumentorum ad oppidum ducit. dispositis ibi praesidiis hora noctis circiter decima silvestribus angustisque itineribus frumentum importare in oppidum instituit. quorum  
 25 strepitum **vigiles** castrorum cum sensissent, exploratoresque missi, quae gererentur, renuntiassent, Caninius celeriter cum cohortibus armatis ex proximis castellis in frumentarios sub ipsam lucem impetum fecit. ii repentino malo perterriti **diffugiunt** ad sua praesidia; quae nostri ut viderunt, acrius contra armatos incitati  
 30 neminem ex eo numero vivum capi patiuntur. profugit inde cum paucis Lucretius nec se recipit in castra.

*Drappes is taken prisoner.*

**36.** Re bene gesta Caninius ex captivis comperit partem copiarum cum Drappete esse in castris a milibus longe non amplius XII. qua re ex compluribus cognita, cum intellexeret fugato duce altero perterritos reliquos facile opprimi posse, magnae felicitatis esse arbitrabatur neminem ex caede refugisse in castra, 5 qui de accepta calamitate nuntium Drappeti perferret. sed in experiundo cum periculum nullum videret, equitatum omnem Germanosque pedites, summae velocitatis homines, ad castra hostium praemittit; ipse legionem unam in trina castra distribuit, alteram secum expeditam ducit. cum propius hostis accessisset, 10 ab exploratoribus, quos praemiserat, cognoscit castra eorum, ut barbarorum fere consuetudo est, relictis locis superioribus ad ripas fluminis esse demissa; at Germanos equitesque imprudentibus omnibus de improvise advolasse proeliumque commisisse. qua re cognita legionem armatam instructamque adducit. ita 15 repente omnibus ex partibus signo dato loca superiora capiuntur. quod ubi accidit, Germani equitesque signis legionis visis vehementissime proeliantur. confestim cohortes undique impetum faciunt omnibusque aut interfectis aut captis magna praeda potiuntur. capitur ipse eo proelio Drappes. 20

**37.** Caninius felicissime re gesta sine ullo pacis militis vulnere ad obsidendos oppidanos revertitur externoque hoste deleto, cuius timore antea dividere praesidia et munitione oppidanos circumdare prohibitus erat, opera undique imperat administrari. venit eodem cum suis copiis postero die Gaius Fabius partemque 25 oppidi sumit ad obsidendum.

*Caesar puts to death Gutruatus.*

**38.** Caesar interim M. Antonium quaestorem cum cohortibus XV in Bellovacis relinquit, ne qua rursus novorum consiliorum

capiendorum Belgis facultas daretur. ipse reliquas civitates adit, obsides plures imperat, timentes omnium animos **consolatione** sanat. cum in Carnutes venisset, quorum in civitate superiore commentario Caesar exposuit initium belli esse ortum, quod  
 5 praecipue eos propter conscientiam facti timere animadvertibat, quo celerius civitatem timore liberaret, principem sceleris illius et concitatorem belli, Gutruatum, ad supplicium depoposcit. qui etsi ne civibus quidem suis se committebat, tamen celeriter omnium cura quaesitus in castra perducitur. cogitur in eius sup-  
 10 plicium Caesar contra suam naturam concursu maximo militum, qui omnia pericula et detrimenta belli Gutruato accepta referebant, adeo ut **verberibus** exanimatum corpus securi **feriretur**.

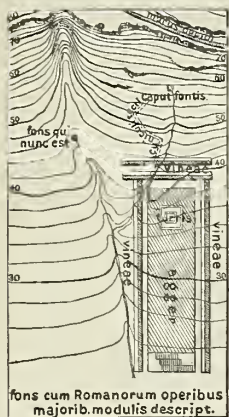
*Uxellodunum. The capture of the town.*

**39.** Ibi crebris litteris Caninii fit certior, quae de Drappete et Lucterio gesta essent, quoque in consilio permanerent oppidani.  
 15 quorum etsi paucitatem contemnebat, tamen pertinaciam magna poena esse afficiendam iudicabat, ne universa Gallia non sibi vires defuisse ad resistendum Romanis, sed constantiam putaret, neve hoc exemplo ceterae civitates locorum opportunitate fretae se vindicarent in libertatem, cum omnibus Gallis notum esse sciret  
 20 reliquam esse unam aestatem suae provinciae, quam si sustinere potuissent, nullum ultra periculum vererentur. itaque Q. **Cale-**  
**num** legatum cum legionibus reliquit, qui iustis itineribus subsequeretur; ipse cum omni equitatu quam potest celerrime ad Caninium contendit.

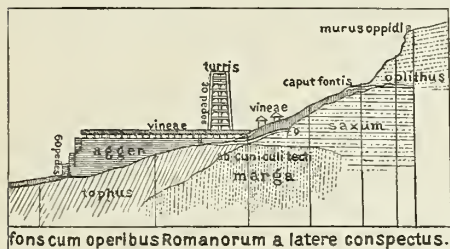
**40.** Cum contra expectationem omnium Caesar Uxellodunum venisset oppidumque operibus clausum animadverteret neque ab oppugatione recedi videret ulla condicione posse, magna autem copia frumenti abundare oppidanos ex perfugis cognosset, aqua prohibere hostem temptare coepit. flumen infunam vallem



dividebat, quae totum paene montem cingebat, in quo positum erat praeruptum undique oppidum Uxellodunum. hoc avertere loci natura prohibebat: in infimis enim sic radicibus montis ferebatur, ut nullam in 5 partem depressis fossis derivari posset. erat autem oppidanis difficilis et praeruptus eo descensus, ut prohibentibus nostris sine vulneribus ac periculo vitae neque adire flumen neque 10 arduo se recipere possent ascensu. qua difficultate eorum cognita Caesar sagittariis funditoribusque dispositis, tormentis etiam quibusdam locis contra facillimos descensus collocatis aqua fluminis prohibebat oppidanos. 15



41. Quorum omnis postea multitudo aquatorum unum in locum conveniebat sub ipsius oppidi murum, ubi magnus



fons aquae prorumpere ab ea parte, quae fere pedum CCC in 20 tervallo fluminis circuitu vacabat. hoc fonte prohiberi posse oppidanos cum optarent reliqui, Caesar unus videret, e 25

regione eius vineas agere adversus montem et aggerem instruere coepit magno cum labore et continua dimicatione. oppidani enim loco superiore decurrunt et eminus sine periculo proeliantur multosque pertinaciter succedentes vulnerant; non deferrentur tamen milites nostri vineas proferre et labore atque operibus locorum 30 vincere difficultates. eodem tempore euniculos tectos ab vineis agunt ad caput fontis; quod genus operis sine ullo periculo,

sine suspicione hostium facere licebat. **exstruitur** agger in altitudinem pedum sexaginta, collocatur in eo turris decem tabulatorum, non quidem quae moenibus aequaret (id enim nullis operibus effici poterat), sed quae superare fontis fastigium posset. 5 ex ea cum tela tormentis iacerentur ad fontis aditum, nec sine periculo possent **aquari** oppidani, non tantum pecora atque iumenta, sed etiam magna hostium multitudo siti consumebatur.

**42.** Quo malo perterriti oppidani **cupas** sevo, pice, **scandulis** complent; eas ardentes in opera **provolvunt** eodemque tempore 10 acerrime proeliantur, ut ab incendio restinguendo dimicationis periculo deterreant Romanos. magna repente in ipsis operibus flamma exstitit. quaecumque enim per locum praecipitem missa erant, ea vineis et aggere **suppressa** comprehendebant id ipsum, quod morabatur. milites contra nostri, quamquam periculoso 15 genere proelii locoque iniquo premebantur, tamen omnia fortissimo sustinebant animo. res enim gerebatur et excelso loco et in conspectu exercitus nostri, magnusque utrimque clamor oriebatur. ita quisque, ut erat maxime insignis, quo notior **testatior**que virtus esset eius, telis hostium flammaeque se 20 offerebat.

**43.** Caesar cum complures suos vulnerari videret, ex omnibus oppidi partibus cohortes montem ascendere et simulatione moenium occupandorum clamorem undique iubet tollere. quo facto perterriti oppidani, cum, quid ageretur in locis reliquis, essent 25 **suspensi**, revocant ab impugnandis operibus armatos in murisque disponunt. ita nostri sine proelii facto celeriter opera flamma comprehensa partim restinguunt, partim interscindunt. cum pertinaciter resisterent oppidani, magna etiam parte amissa siti suorum in sententia permanerent, ad postremum cuniculis 30 **venae** fontis intercisae sunt atque aversae. quo facto repente **perennis exaruit** fons tantamque attulit oppidanis salutis despe-

rationem, ut id non hominum consilio, sed deorum voluntate factum putarent. itaque se necessitate coacti tradiderunt.

44. Caesar, cum suam lenitatem cognitam omnibus sciret neque vereretur, ne quid crudelitate naturae videretur asperius fecisse, neque exitum consiliorum suorum animadverteret, si tali 5 ratione diversis in locis plures consilia inissent, exemplo supplicii deterrendos reliquos existimavit. itaque omnibus, qui arma tulerant, manus **praecidit** vitamque concessit, quo testatior esset poena improborum. Drappes, quem captum esse a Caninio docui, sive indignitate et dolore vinculorum sive timore gravioris sup- 10 plicii paucis diebus cibo se abstinuit atque ita interiit. eodem tempore Lucterius, quem profugisse ex proelio scripsi, cum in potestatem venisset **Epasnacti** Arverni (crebro enim mutandis locis multorum fidei se committebat, quod nusquam diutius sine periculo commoraturus videbatur, cum sibi conscius esset, quam 15 inimicum deberet Caesarem habere), hunc Epasnactus Arvernus, amicissimus populi Romani, sine dubitatione ulla vincitum ad Caesarem deduxit.

*The Treveri subdued by Labienus. Commius surrenders to M. Antonius.*

45. Labienus interim in Treveris equestre proelium facit secundum compluribusque Treveris interfectis et Germanis, qui nullis 20 adversus Romanos auxilia denegabant, principes eorum vivos redigit in suam potestatem atque in his **Surum** Haeduum, qui et virtutis et generis summam nobilitatem habebat solusque ex Haeduis ad id tempus permanserat in armis.

46. Ea re cognita Caesar, cum in omnibus partibus Galliae 25 bene res geri videret iudicaretque superioribus aestivis Galliam devictam subactamque esse, Aquitaniam numquam adisset, per Publium Crassum quadam ex parte devicisset, cum duabus

legionibus in eam partem Galliae est profectus, ut ibi extremum tempus consumeret aestivorum. quam rem sicuti cetera eeleriter feliciterque confecit. namque omnes Aquitaniae eivitates legatos ad Caesarem miserunt obsidesque ei dederunt. quibus rebus  
 5 gestis ipse equitum praesidio Narbonem profectus est, exereitum per legatos in hiberna deduxit: quattuor legiones in Belgio colloavit cum M. Antonio et C. Trebonio et P. **Vatinio** legatis, duas legiones in Haeduos deduxit, quorum in omni Gallia summam esse auctoritatem seiebat, duas in Turonis ad fines Car-  
 10 nutum posuit, quae omnem illam regionem eoniunetam Oceano eontinerent, duas reliquas in Lemovicum finibus non longe ab Arvernīs, ne qua pars Galliae vacua ab exercitu esset. pauēos dies ipse in provincia moratus, cum eeleriter omnes eonventus percueurrisset, publicas eontroversias cognosset, bene meritis prae-  
 15 mia tribuisset (cognoscendi enim maximam faultatem habebat, quali quisque fuisset animo in totius Galliae defectione, quam sustinuerat fidelitate atque auxiliis provinciae illius), his confectis rebus ad legiones in Belgium se recipit **hibernatque Nemetocennae.**

20 **47.** Ibi eognoscit Commium Atrebatem proelio cum equitatu suo eontendisse. nam eum Antonius in hiberna venisset, civitasque Atrebatum in officio esset, Commius, qui post illam **vulnerationem**, quam supra commemoravi, semper ad omnes motus paratus suis eivibus esse consuisset, ne consilia belli quae-  
 25 rentibus auctor armorum duxque deesset, parente Romanis eivitate eum suis equitibus latroeiniis se suosque alebat infestisque itinēribus comneatus eomplures, qui eomportabantur in hiberna Romanorum, intereipiebat.

**48.** Erat attributus Antonio praefectus equitum C. Volusenus  
 30 Quadratus, qui cum eo hibernaret. hunc Antonius ad persequendum equitatum hostium mittit. Volusenus ad eam virtutem,

quae singularis erat in eo, magnum odium Commii adiungebat, quo libentius id faceret, quod imperabatur. itaque dispositis insidiis saepius equites eius aggressus secunda proelia faciebat. novissime, cum vehementius contenderetur, ac Volusenus ipsius intercipiendi Commii cupiditate pertinacius eum cum paucis in- 5  
 secutus esset, ille autem fuga vehementi Volusenum produxisset longius, inimicus homini suorum **invocat** fidem atque auxilium, ne sua vulnera per fidem imposita paterentur **impunita**, conversoque equo se a ceteris incautius permittit in praefectum. faciunt hoc idem omnes eius equites paucosque nostros convertunt atque 10  
 insequuntur. Commius incensum **calcaribus** equum coniungit equo Quadrati **lanceaque** infesta magnis viribus medium femur traicit Voluseni. praefecto vulnerato non dubitant nostri resistere et conversis equis hostem pellere. quod ubi accidit, complures hostium magno nostrorum impetu percussi vulnerantur ac partim 15  
 in fuga **proteruntur**, partim intercipiuntur; quod malum dux equi velocitate evitavit: ac sic proelio secundo graviter ab eo vulneratus praefectus, ut vitae periculum aditurus videretur, refertur in castra. Commius autem sive expiato suo dolore sive magna parte amissa suorum legatos ad Antonium mittit seque 20  
 et ibi futurum, ubi praescripserit, et ea facturum, quae imperarit, obsidibus firmat; unum illud orat, ut timori suo concedatur, ne in conspectum veniat cuiusquam Romani. cuius **postulationem** Antonius cum iudicaret ab iusto nasci timore, veniam petenti dedit, obsides accepit. 25

*Preface of Hirtius.*

Scio Caesarem singulorum annorum singulos commentarios confecisse; quod ego non existimavi mihi esse faciendum, propterea quod insequens annus, L. Paulo, C. Marcello consulibus, nullas habet magnopere Galliae res gestas. ne quis tamen ignoraret, quibus in locis Caesar exercitusque eo tempore fuissent, 30  
 pauca esse scribenda coniungendaque huic commentario statui.

*Caesar treats the Gauls with clemency. His honors in Italy.*

49. Caesars in Belgio cum hiemaret, unum illud propositum habebat, continere in amicitia civitates, nulli spem aut causam dare armorum. nihil enim minus volebat, quam sub decessu suo necessitatem sibi aliquam imponi belli gerendi, ne, cum exercitum deducturus esset, bellum aliquod relinqueretur, quod omnis Gallia libenter sine praesenti periculo susciperet. itaque honorifice civitates appellando, principes maximis praemiis afficiendo, nulla onera iniungendo defessam tot adversis procliis Galliam condicione parcendi meliore facile in pace continuit.

10 50. Ipse hibernis peractis contra consuetudinem in Italiam quam maximis itineribus est profectus, ut municipia et colonias appellaret, quibus M. Antonii, quaestoris sui, commendaverat **sacerdotii petitionem**. contendebat enim gratia cum libenter pro homine sibi coniunctissimo, quem paulo ante praemiserat ad petitionem, 15 tum acriter contra factionem et potentiam paucorum, qui M. Antoni repulsa Caesaris decedentis gratiam convellere cupiebant. hunc etsi **augurem** prius factum, quam Italiam attingeret, in itinere audierat, tamen non minus iustam sibi causam municipia et colonias adeundi existimavit, ut iis gratias ageret, quod **fre-** 20 **quentiam** atque officium suum Antonio praestitissent, simulque se et honorem suum sequentis anni commendaret, propterea quod insolenter adversarii sui gloriarentur L. **Lentulum** et C. **Marcellum** consules creatos, qui omnem honorem et dignitatem Caesaris spoliarent, creptum Ser. Galbae consulatum, cum is multo plus 25 gratia suffragiisque valuisset, quod sibi coniunctus et familiaritate et consuetudine legationis esset.

51. Exceptus est Caesaris adventus ab omnibus municipiis et coloniis incredibili honore atque amore. tum primum enim veniebat ab illo universae Galliae bello. nihil relinquebatur, quod ad

ornatum portarum, itinerum, locorum omnium, qua Caesar iturus erat, excogitari poterat. cum liberis omnis multitudo obviam procedebat, **hostiae** omnibus locis immolabantur, **tricliniis stratis** fora **templaque** occupabantur, ut vel **spectatissimi triumphi** laetitia praecipui posset. tanta erat magnificentia apud **opulen-** 5  
**tiores**, cupiditas apud humiliores.

*Labienuis is made Governor of Gaul.*

52. Cum omnes regiones Galliae togatae Caesar percucurrisset, summa celeritate ad exercitum Nemetocennam rediit legionibusque ex omnibus hibernis ad fines Treverorum evocatis eo profectus est ibique exercitum lustravit. T. Labienum Galliae 10 togatae praefecit, quo maiore **commendatione** conciliaretur ad consulatus petitionem. ipse tantum itinerum faciebat, quantum satis esse ad mutationem locorum propter **salubritatem** existimabat. ibi quamquam crebro audiebat Labienum ab inimicis suis sollicitari certiorque fiebat id agi paucorum consiliis, ut inter- 15 posita senatus auctoritate aliqua parte exercitus spoliaretur, tamen neque de Labieno credidit quicquam neque, contra senatus auctoritatem ut aliquid faceret, potuit adduci. iudicabat enim liberis sentiis patrum conscriptorum causam suam facile obtineri. nam C. **Curio**, tribunus plebis, cum Caesaris causam digni- 20 nitatemque defendendam suscepisset, saepe erat senatui pollicitus, si quem timor armorum Caesaris laederet, quoniam Pompei **dominatio** atque arma non minimum terrorem foro inferrent, discederet uterque ab armis exercitusque dimitteret: fore eo facto liberam et sui iuris civitatem. neque hoc tantum pollici- 25 tus est, sed etiam per se **discensionem** facere coepit; quod ne fieret, consules amicique Pompei iusserunt, at *reliqui tamen omnes eo* discesserunt.

*Caesar suspects the design of his enemies. The beginnings of the civil war.*

53. Magnum hoc testimonium senatus erat universi conveniensque superiori facto. nam Marcellus proximo anno, cum impugnaret Caesaris dignitatem, contra legem Pompei et Crassi retulerat ante tempus ad senatum de Caesaris provinciis, sententiisque dictis discessionem faciente Marcello, qui sibi omnem dignitatem ex Caesaris invidia quaerebat, senatus frequens in alia omnia transiit. quibus non frangebantur animi inimicorum Caesaris, sed admonebantur, quo maiores pararent necessitates, quibus cogi posset senatus id probare, quod ipsi constituissent.

10 54. Fit deinde senatusconsultum, ut ad bellum Parthicum legio una a Cn. Pompeio, altera a C. Caesare mitteretur; neque **obscure** duae legiones uni detrahuntur. nam Cu. Pompeius legionem primam, quam ad Caesarem miserat, confectam ex delectu provinciae Caesaris, eam **tamquam** ex suo numero dedit.

15 Caesar tamen, cum de voluntate minime dubium esset adversariorum suorum, Pompeio legionem remisit et suo nomine quintam decimam, quam in Gallia citeriore habuerat, ex senatusconsulto iubet tradi. in eius locum tertiam decimam legionem in Italiam mittit, quae praesidia tueretur, ex quibus praesidiis quinta decima

20 deducebatur. ipse exercitui distribuit hiberna: C. Trebonium cum legionibus quattuor in Belgio collocat, C. Fabium cum totidem in Haeduos deducit. sic enim existimabat tutissimam fore Galliam, si Belgae, quorum maxima virtus, Haedui, quorum auctoritas summa esset, exercitibus continerentur. ipse in Italiam

25 profectus est.

55. Quo cum venisset, cognoscit per C. Marcellum consulem legiones duas ab se remissas, quae ex senatusconsulto deberent



ad **Parthicum** bellum duci, Cn. Pompeio traditas atque in Italia retentas esse. hoc facto quamquam nulli erat dubium, quidnam contra Caesarem pararetur, tamen Caesar omnia patienda esse statuit, quoad sibi spes aliqua relinqueretur iure potius **disceptandi** quam belli gerundi. contendit . . .

# BIBLIOGRAPHY.

---

## CAESAR.

- Trollope; the Commentaries of Caesar. Phil., 1880.  
Mommisen; History of Rome, Vol. IV.  
Duruy; History of Rome, Vol. III.  
Merivale; Roman Empire, Vols. I., II.  
Arnold; Later Roman Commonwealth.  
Cuttwell; Roman Literature.  
Napoleon III.; Histoire de Jules César.  
Shakspeare; Julius Caesar.  
Macmillan's Magazine (F. D. Maurice); Vol. 12, p. 23.  
Blackwood's Magazine (T. De Quincey); Vol. 32, p. 531.  
Fraser's Magazine; Vol. 76, p. 1.  
Character of Caesar. Dublin Review; Vol. 80, p. 127.  
Fall of Caesar. American Monthly Magazine; Vol. 4, p. 347.  
Caesar and Cicero. Dublin University Magazine; Vol. 94, p. 202.  
A Sketch of Caesar (J. A. Froude). Edinburgh Review; Vol. 150, p. 498.  
Froude on Caesar (W. F. Allen). Nation; Vol. 29, p. 161.  
Caesar in Gaul. Westminster Review; Vol. 77, p. 399.  
Landing in Britain. Archaeologia; Vol. 34, p. 230.  
Passage over the Thames (S. Gale). Archaeologia; Vol. 1, p. 183.  
Recent Histories of Caesar (G. F. Holmes).  
Warfare and Writings of Caesar. Atlantic Monthly; Vol. 44, p. 273.

## THE GALLIC WAR.

- Kraner. Berlin. Nipperdey. Leipzig.  
Dobereuz. Leipzig. Reinhard; with plans. Stuttgart.  
Holder. Tübingen. Long. London.  
Meusel; Lexicon Caesarianum. Completed as far as *hostis*.  
Göler; Caesars gallischer Krieg, 2 Anfl., 2 Bde. Tübingen.  
Kerviler; Caesar et les Vénètes; Questions controversées de l'histoire. Paris, Société bibliographique, p. 21.  
Maissiat; Jules César en Gaule. Paris, Didot, p. 377.  
Braumann; die Principes d. Gallier u. Germanen. Berlin (Weber).  
Ranchenstien; der Feldzug Cäsars gegen die Helvetier.  
Zeus; Grammatica Celtica. Leipzig.  
Wagler; Hilfsbüchlein zu Caesars Bellum Gallicum. Berlin.  
Rüstow; Heerwesen und Kriegführung Caesars. Nordhausen

# I D I O M S.

## PREPOSITIONAL

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>a dextro cornu, <i>on the right wing.</i><br/> a fronte, <i>in front.</i><br/> a pueris, <i>from boyhood.</i><br/> a sinistro cornu, <i>on the left wing.</i><br/> ab armis discedere, <i>to lay down the arms.</i><br/> ab signis discedere, <i>to leave the ranks.</i><br/> ab officio discedere, <i>to fail in one's duty</i><br/> ab cohortatione, <i>after exhorting.</i><br/> ab eis defendere, <i>to defend against them.</i><br/> ab milibus passuum octo, <i>eight miles off.</i><br/> ab re frumentaria laborare, <i>to suffer in respect to provisions.</i><br/> ad equum rescribere, <i>to enroll in the cavalry.</i><br/> ad Caesarem deferre, <i>to lay before Caesar.</i><br/> ad extremum, <i>at last.</i><br/> ad hunc modum, <i>in this way.</i><br/> ad milia decim, <i>about ten thousand.</i><br/> ad speciem, <i>for show.</i><br/> ad unum, <i>to a man.</i><br/> ad urbem, <i>near the city.</i><br/> ad urbem pervenit, <i>he arrived at the city.</i><br/> ad Alpes pertinent, <i>extend as far as the Alps.</i><br/> apud Caesarem, <i>in the presence of Caesar.</i><br/> de ea causa, <i>for this reason.</i><br/> de improviso, <i>suddenly.</i></p> | <p>ex aqua mensurae, <i>measures by the water-clocks.</i><br/> ex itinere, <i>on the march.</i><br/> ex navi egredi, <i>to disembark.</i><br/> ex usu Galliae, <i>of advantage to Gaul.</i><br/> ex vestigio, <i>on the spot.</i><br/> e vinculis, <i>in chains.</i><br/> soror ex matre, <i>sister on the mother's side.</i><br/> unus e filiis, <i>one of the sons.</i><br/> in Caesaris fidem venire, <i>to put one's self under the protection of Caesar</i><br/> in dies, <i>daily.</i><br/> in flumine pontem facere, <i>to build a bridge across the river.</i><br/> in fugam dare, <i>to put to flight.</i><br/> in itinere, <i>on the march</i><br/> in perpetuum, <i>forever.</i><br/> in praesentia, <i>for the present.</i><br/> in reliquum tempus, <i>for the future.</i><br/> in vicem, <i>in turn.</i><br/> habere in animo, <i>to intend.</i><br/> inter se cohortati, <i>exhorting one another</i><br/> inter se dare, <i>to exchange.</i><br/> inter se differunt, <i>they differ from one another.</i><br/> pro beneficiis, <i>in return for favors</i><br/> pro multitudine, <i>in proportion to the large body.</i><br/> pro perfuga, <i>as a deserter.</i><br/> sub corona vendere, <i>to sell as slaves.</i></p> |
|---|--|

## ADJECTIVAL.

ad extremum, at last.	extremo oppido, at the end of the town.
adverso colle, up the hill.	in arido, on dry land.
adverso flumine, up-stream.	in perpetuum, forever.
aequo animo, with contented mind.	loco suo, in a favorable place.
alienum aes, debt.	medio in colle, on the middle of the hill.
alienum tempus, an unfavorable time.	multa lingua Gallica uti, to speak the Gallic language fluently.
alii aliam in partem, some in one direc- tion, others in another	multa nocte, late at night.
aversi ab hosti circumventi, surround- ed by the enemy on the rear.	multo die, late in the day.
certiorem eum facere, to inform him.	primo vere, at the beginning of spring.
certior fieri, to be informed.	quisque nobilissimus, all the nobles.
de improviso, suddenly.	rari pugnabant, here and there men were fighting.

## ADVERBIAL.

alias — alias, at one time — at another.	largiter posse, to have great influence.
contra atque, different than.	multum valere, to have great power.
cum primum, as soon as.	quam maximus, the greatest possible.
graviter ferre, to be annoyed.	quam primum, as soon as.

## PARTICIPIAL.

ante exactam hiemem, before the win- ter had passed.	confectus vulneribus, weakened by sol oriens, the East. [wounds.]
---	--

## VERBAL.

accedit ut, moreover.	dare manus, to yield.
afficere supplicio, to punish.	dare operam, to take pains.
affici beneficio, to receive favors.	defendere bellum, to ward off war.
agere gratias, to thank.	ducere bellum, to prolong a war.
capere consilium, to form a plan.	ducere uxorem, to marry.
capere portum, to reach a harbor.	facere iter, to march.
castra movere, to break camp.	ferre signa, to advance.
castra ponere, to pitch camp.	gerere bellum, to wage war.
causam dicere, to plead a case.	gratiam habere, to be grateful.
causam inferre, to allege a reason.	gratias referre, to requite.
collocare nuptum, to give in marriage.	habere eodem loco, to consider in the same light.
consciscere sibi mortem, to commit suicide.	habere id compertum, to have learned.
consilium inire, to form a plan.	habere sibi persuasum, to be per- suaded.
convertere signa, to face about.	

*inferre bellum, to make war.*  
*inferre signa conversa, to face about*  
*and charge.*  
*laxare manipulos, to open the ranks.*  
*memoriam deponere, to forget.*  
*naves armare, to fit out ships.*  
*naves deducere, to launch ships.*  
*naves solvere, to weigh anchor*  
*naves subducere, to beach, to draw up*  
*ships.*

*praestare virtutem, to show courage.*  
*recusare mortem, to shrink from death.*  
*referre pedem, to retreat.*  
*repetere poenas, to inflict punishment.*  
*sententia desistere, to give up a plan.*  
*sumere supplicium de eo, to punish*  
*him.*  
*vertere terga, to flee.*  
*vim facere, to use violence.*

## NOMINAL.

*aliquid consilii, some new plan.*  
*Caesare consule, in the consulship of*  
*Caesar.*  
*celerius opinione, sooner than any one*  
*supposed.*  
*inita aestate, at the beginning of sum-*  
*mer.*

*minus dubitationis, less doubt.*  
*nihil reliqui, nothing left.*  
*nihil vini, no wine.*  
*plus doloris, more pain.*  
*quantum boni, how much advantage.*  
*quid negotii, what business.*  
*quod navium, what ships.*



# NOTES.

---

## BOOK I.

### CHAPTER I.

**omnis**, except the Roman province. See Geographical Index. *Gaul as a whole is divided into three parts.*

**aliam**, another.

**tertiam, qui — appellantur**, (those inhabit) *the third, who in their own language are called Celts: in ours, Gauls.* The full expression would be, (ii) **qui appellantur** *Celtae ipsorum lingua, Galli nostra (lingua, incolunt) tertiam (partem).*

**lingua, institutis, legibus.** Observe the Latin usage in regard to the conjunction. The conjunction is either omitted entirely, as here, or connects each individual word; e. g. **lingua et institutis et legibus.**

**inter se**, *from one another; literally, among themselves.*

**flumen.** Supply **dividit.** **Matrona et Sequana** take the singular verb **dividit**, since the two rivers make only one boundary.

**cultu**, *civilization*, as shown by manner of life. **humanitate**, *refinement*, i. e., mental culture.

**minime saepe commeant**, *very seldom penetrate; literally, least often go back and forth.*

**ad effeminandos animos**, *toward the weakening of their minds.*

**qui trans Rhenum incolunt.** The verb is here used intransitively. Compare chap. 5, **Boiosque, qui trans Rhenum incoluerunt**; also chap. 54, **qui proximi Rhenum incolunt.** Usually the verb governs a direct object; e. g., **unam incolunt** above.

**quoque**, *also*, always follows the emphatic word, *because they* (just as the Belgians)  *dwell near the Germans.*

**reliquos**, *the rest of.* Observe the Latin idiom; cf. i. 24, **in colle medio**, *on the middle of the hill.* It was not until a later period that the adjective, becoming hardened into a nenter substantive, admitted of a partitive genitive, e. g., **in medio urbis** (Tac. An.). The adjectival construction is the classical one; and the student must bear this in mind, especially in translating English into Latin.

*qua de causa, and for this reason.* The relative in both English and Latin is equivalent to a conjunction and a demonstrative. The Romans, being fond of connecting their sentences together like the links of a chain, often used a relative at the beginning of a sentence where in English we usually have the demonstrative alone.

**fere cotidianis proeliis cum Germanis contendunt**, *they contend in almost daily battles with the Germans.* The ablative of accompaniment regularly takes the preposition **cum**, both in a friendly and in a hostile sense.

**eorum** refers back to **hi omnes**, the people being put for the country, — *one part of these, which it has been said the Gauls occupy.* What word is translated occupy? Note that this word is not translated by its English derivative.

**continentur**, *it is bounded; literally, it is held together.*

**ab Sequanis**, *on the side of the Sequani and Helvetii.*

**vergit**, *it tends, inclines, or slopes toward the north.*

**ab extremis Galliae finibus**, *from the extreme frontier of Gaul (i. e. Celtic Gaul).*

**spectat inter**, etc. Translate by one compound English word all that follows **spectat** in this sentence.

## CHAPTER II.

**perfacile esse**, (saying) *that it was very easy, since they excelled all in valor, to get the power of the whole of Gaul.* What is the subject of **esse**?

**id hoc facilius eis persuasit**, *he persuaded them the more easily to this; literally, he persuaded this to them, — hoc*, ablative of cause, referring to the clause beginning with **quod**.

**loci natura Helvetii continentur**, *are confined by the character of the country.*

**flumine Rheno, qui**. The relative is in agreement with **Rheno**.

**his rebus fiebat**, *from these circumstances it happened.* The subject of **fiebat** is the clause **ut — possent**.

**pro multitudine**, *considering the number of inhabitants; literally, in proportion to.* Cf. chap. 29, where the estimate of the Helvetians is given.

**milia passuum**. The **passus** was 4 feet 10 inches; hence a thousand paces or the Roman mile was 4,854 feet. How many feet less than our mile? The English word "mile" is derived from this expression, the **passuum** having dropped out.

## CHAPTER III.

**his rebus adducti**, *induced by these considerations.*

**comparare — confirmare**, infinitives after **constituerunt**, *to buy as great a number as possible of beasts of burden and wagons, to make as extensive sowings as possible.*



**in tertium annum**, etc , *they fix their departure by decree for the third year is — suscepit*, *he took on himself the embassy.*

**amicos**. Distinguished honor given by the Roman Senate.

**ut — occuparet**. A secondary tense, because **persuadet** is historical present.

**perfacile factu esse**, *he proves to them that to accomplish their attempts was a very easy thing to do*. The student meets for the first time the so-called supine. This term is a comparatively recent one to apply to this formation alone. In the Latin grammarians the word included both "gerunds" and "supines." The student should bear in mind that the supine is nothing more than a verbal noun. The work done by this can be done by verbal nouns of any declension. The cases in common use are the accusative and ablative, although the dative appears rarely ; e. g. *istaec lepida sunt memoratui* (Plautus, Bacchides, l. 60). Like other verbal nouns, it may have an active or passive notion ; e. g. *factu*, *to do or be done*. To say that the form in **u** is passive only is erroneous, as shown from Varro, *De Re Rustica*, 2, 2, *cum redierunt ad stabula a pastu*, and Cato, *R. R.* v, *primus cubitu surgat*.

**Galliae potiri**, *to obtain possession of Gaul*. The genitive after this verb is best explained as a genitive depending on the noun idea contained in **potior** ; **potior = dominus sum**. In the same way *βασιλεύω* in Greek admits of the genitive construction. This genitive is called adnominal genitive.

#### CHAPTER IV

**ea res — enuntiata**, *when this design was disclosed*. No word in Latin admits of such a variety of meanings as **res**. The student must always determine by the context the most suitable word to employ in translating. By what words has it already been translated in these notes ? Why is *design* more appropriate in this place than either of the other words would have been ?

**ex vinculis causam dicere**, *to plead his cause in chains* ; literally, *out of his chains*. A Latin idiom suggesting the direction from which the action proceeds. Cf. chap. 43, *ex equis ut colloquerentur*.

**damnatum — cremaretur**. **poenam** is the subject of **sequi**, and **Orgetorigem**, supplied from the preceding sentence, its object ; the whole clause of which **sequi** is the verb, is the subject of the impersonal verb **oportebat** (cf. *fiebat ut — possent*, chap. 3), and the clause **ut — cremaretur** is in apposition with **poenam**. With what must **damnatum** agree ? Give the exact literal translation of the sentence, following the above suggestions. Now express the idea of this awkward literal sentence in good English. The English sentence *United, we stand* more fully stated means *If united or if we are united, we stand*. Use this hint in translating **damnatum**. What idea is, then, often conveyed by a participle both in English and Latin ? This was the usual method of punishing traitors among the Gauls and other barbarous peoples.

**omnem suam familiam**, *all his vassals*, i. e., all employed in his private affairs.

**ad — decem.** *ad* with numerals denotes an approach to the number, *to the number of*; hence *about*. It is sometimes used as a preposition in this way, and sometimes as an adverb. Here one cannot tell, for **milia** may be either the accusative after *ad*, or in apposition with **familiam**. A good example, however, of *ad* having the noun independent is in ii 33, **occisis ad millibus quattuor**.

**quin ipse — consciverit**, *that he determined on death for himself*. Observe that *ipse* is in agreement with the subject.

## CHAPTER V.

**eius = Orgetorigis.** The clause *ut — exeant* is in apposition with *id. facere*, cf. **eos — conari**, chap. 7.

**oppida sua omnia.** Plutarch refers to this incident (Vit. Caes., c. 18). The **oppida** are strongholds, while the **vici** are groups of houses. **vicus** is the word for the street of a city, referring to the rows of houses on either side.

**ad duodecim.** See chap. 4, **ad milia**.

**numero**, ablative of specification.

**reliqua aedificia.** See chap. 1, **reliquos Gallos**.

**incendunt**, *set fire to*. **comburunt**, *burn*

**domum reditionis**, *hope of a return home*. **domum** is the accusative of limit of motion after the verbal noun **reditionis**. These nouns in **tio** in early Latin governed a direct object through the influence of the verbal notion; e. g. **quid tibi hunc receptio ad test meum virum?** (Pl. Asin. 919); **manus** (probably accusative) **iniectio esto**. (Laws of Twelve Tables, III.) The “gerund” and “supine” are simple verbal nouns. There is no difference between **reditionis spe** and **redeundi spe**.

**vicisque exustis.** The Latin language was deficient in a perfect active participle. The means employed to compensate for this part of the verb are: (1) The perfect participle of a deponent verb; e. g. **eodem usi concilio**. (2) The ablative absolute, as here (3) A temporal clause

**Boios.** This tribe gave its name to the modern Bohemia and Bavaria. See Geographical Index. Of what is this word the object, and what words limit it?

## CHAPTER VI.

**omnino**, *in all*. **quibus itineribus**, *by which ways*. The antecedent is repeated for the sake of clearness. What part of speech is **quibus?**

**unum** and **alterum** are in partitive apposition with **itineribus**.

**singuli carri**, *wagons one by one, in single file*.

**ducerentur.** Relative clause of characteristic, the relative adverb *qua* being equivalent to the conjunction *ut* and the demonstrative adverb *ibi*; cf. note on *qua de causa*, chap. 1.

**transitur** = *transiri potest*, *it can be crossed by means of a ford.*

**Allobrogum.** They had been subdued by C. Pomptinus, 61 B. C. See Geographical Index.

**Allobrogibus – viderentur, vel – paterentur.** Indirect discourse after *existimabant*. Observe the omission of the object after *coacturos*. Cf. vii. 81, *dat tuba signum suis atque ex oppido educit*; v. 17, *nostri, in eos impetu facto, repulerunt*.

**bono animo**, *of a friendly mind*, i. e. well disposed.

**a. d. v. Kal. Apr.**, = *die quinto ante Kalendas Apriles*, *on the fifth day before the Kalends of April*. The Kalends being the first day of the month, this date would correspond to the 28th of March. The stereotyped expression, *ante diem quintum Kalendas Apriles*, arose from the conversion of *die* into the accusative through the influence of the preposition. The phrase perhaps originally was as given above, *die quinto ante*, etc.; and when *ante* was put first, — *ante die quinto Kalendas*, — the fact that it governed *Kalendas* was lost sight of. Its influence was then extended to *die*, which became the accusative, thus leaving *Kalendas* with no grammatical construction. What part of speech is *Apriles*?

## CHAPTER VII.

**eos – conari**, in apposition with *id*. What other clauses have been already used as nouns in the text?

**ab urbe**, i. e. Rome, which was called by way of distinction “the city.” So the Athenians often designated their city, Athens, by *ἄστυ* alone.

**quam – itineribus**, *by as long marches as possible*. For the force of *quam*, see on *quam maximum*, chap. 3. The Greek paraphrast has *ὡς ἠδύνατο τάχιστα*.

**in Galliam ulteriorem**, *into farther Gaul*. For the location of Farther Gaul, see map. Remember that the Alps form a great natural boundary line, and that a Roman is here writing. To him the Gaul here referred to is *farther* than what? Nearer Gaul or *Gallia citerior* is nearer than what? In what modern country is the latter?

**ad Genavam pervenit**, *into the vicinity of Geneva*. Cf. vii. 41, *castra ad Gergoviam movit*. According to Plutarch, Caes., c. 17, he reached the Rhone in eight days.

**provinciae toti**, etc., *he orders as great a number of soldiers as possible from the whole province*; literally, *he imposes upon the whole province a demand for as great a number*, etc.

**pontem – iubet rescindi**. Observe the omission of the conjunction. For a like case of asyndeton, cf. i. 20, *Dumnorigem ad se vocat, fratrem adhibet*.

**pontem.** The bridge across the Rhone.

**ad Genavam.** For meaning, cf. *ad Hispaniam*, chap. 1.

**certiores facti sunt**, *were informed*. What is the literal meaning?

**cuius legationis = quorum.** The *legatio*, comprehends the *legatos* preceding.

**qui dicerent**, a relative clause of purpose, literally, *who should say*, i. e., *to say*.

**sibi esse in animo**, *that they intended*; literally, *it was to them in mind*.

**quod — nullum.** Observe the emphatic position of *nullum*. Cf. i. 18, *quod illo licente contra liceri audeat nemo*.

**rogare.** The subject *se* is omitted; in same construction with *esse* above.

**occisum**, sc. *esse*; and so also after *pulsum*, *missum*, and *concedendum*. This defeat occurred in the vicinity of Lake Geneva, 107 B. C.

**sub iugum.** Under this yoke the conquered were compelled to pass without arms, as a sign of complete submission. The *iugum* consisted of two spears set upright in the ground, and a third one placed across them at the top (Livy, 3, 28, *tribus hastis iugum fit, humi fixis duabus, superque eas transversa una deligata*).

**concedendum**, sc. *id*, referring to *iter per provinciam facere*.

**data facultate**, *if an opportunity were to be given them*.

**temperaturos**, sc. *esse*, *would refrain from injury and mischief*.

**dum — convenirent**, *until the soldiers, whom he had ordered, should assemble*. *dum* (*until*) with the subjunctive refers to an event expected and purposed.

**imperaverat.** Cf. *provinciae toti — imperat*.

**ad Id. Apr.** See on a. d. v. *Kal. Apr.*, chap. 6

**reverterentur.** In the direct discourse the imperative was used; what was the form of the conditional sentence, *si quid vellent*?

## CHAPTER VIII.

**ea legione militibusque.** Ablative of means.

**qui — influit.** Caesar imagined that the lake flowed into the river. He had in view the point at which the river made its egress from the lake, and where a portion of the waters would flow into the river. Some editors have changed the text to *quem in flumen Rhodanus influit*, "into which the river Rhone flows;" but this is unsatisfactory and artificial. Cf. vii. 57, *perpetuam esse paludem, quae influeret in Sequanam*.

**in altitudinem.** For translation, cf. *in latitudinem*, chap. 2.

**pedum.** Partitive genitive.

**castella communit**, *he strongly fortifies the redoubts*. The force of *com* is intensive, *he fortifies completely*.

**se invito**, *against his will*; literally, *he (being) unwilling*.

**si conarentur — possit.** The historical present is here followed by both the imperfect and present. Cf. chap. 7, **quod aliud iter haberent nullum rogare, ut eius voluntate id sibi facere liceat.**

**negat se more — dare,** *he says that he cannot; literally, he denies that he can give, etc.*

**prohibiturum, sc. se.** Notice the omission of the object **eos**. Cf. chap. 6, **vel vi coacturos**

**ea spe deiecti,** *disappointed in this hope; literally, cast down from this hope.*

**si — possent.** Indirect question introduced by **si**. Cf. ii. 9, **si nostri transirent, expectabant.**

## CHAPTER IX.

**una — via,** *only the way.* **qua,** cf. chap. 6, **vix qua singuli.**

**sua sponte,** *by their own means, = per se.* Cf. v. 28, **sua sponte populo Romano bellum facere.**

**eo deprecatore,** *by his mediation; literally, he (being) an intercessor.*

**gratia — plurimum poterat,** *on account of his popularity and liberality, had very great influence with the Sequani; literally, was able very much.*

**novis — studebat,** *was aiming at a revolution; literally, was eager for new things.*

**in matrimonium duxerat,** *had married.* The husband conducted his wife to his own house as a part of the marriage ceremony; hence the phrase **uxorem ducere**. The expression **nubere viro,** (for **nubere se viro**), “to veil herself for a husband,” is used in speaking of the woman.

**suo beneficio habere obstrictas,** *to have attached to him by reason of his kindness.* This use of **habere** is an anticipation of the part the verb “to have” was to hold in verbal conjugation. The student will observe that **habere obstrictas** differs from **obstrinxisse** in the fact that the notion contained in the participle is looked upon as a possession. The transition is shown more clearly in chap. 15, **quem ex omni provincia — coactum habebat** (nearly = **coegerat**).

## CHAPTER X.

**renuntiatur,** *word is brought back, i e. messengers who had been sent returned with the tidings.*

**Helvetiis esse in animo.** See note on **sibi esse in animo**, chap. 7.

**quae civitas,** *which state; referring to the Tolosates.* The antecedent is inserted in the relative clause, — a common Latin idiom.

**id si fieret — futurum,** *if this be done, he saw that it would be attended with great danger to the province that it should have, etc.* The subject of **futurum** is the clause **ut haberet**, and the subject of **haberet** is **provincia**, to be supplied,

**locis patentibus**, *in open places*.

**maximeque frumentariis**. Adjectives in *us* preceded by a vowel form their comparison by means of the adverbs *magis* and *maxime*. Violations of this rule were undoubtedly common in the popular language. On one (sepulchral) inscription from Rome we read, *alvmo : pientissimorum : piissimo : et : dvlcissimo*. Cicero in one of his *Philippics* speaks of the superlative of *pius*.

**Titum Labienum**. See Historical Index.

*in Italiam, into Italy*, i. e. Cisalpine Gaul.

**magis itineribus**, *by forced marches*; literally, *by great journeys*. Cf. chap. 7, *quam maximis potest itineribus*.

**Aquileiam**. See Geographical Index.

**qua proximum iter**, *where the route was shortest*; literally, *where the route was nearest*.

**compluribus – pulsis**. In these four words the student has an ablative absolute and an ablative of means limited by an adjective. In translating remember the context.

**extremum**, sc. *oppidum*.

## CHAPTER XI.

**per angustias**. Cf. chap. 6, *angustum et difficile, inter montem Iuram et flumen Rhodanum*; and chap. 9, *propter angustias*.

**se suaque**, literally, *themselves and their possessions*; *sua* being the neuter plural.

**rogatum**. This so-called supine is a simple verbal noun in the accusative, to express limit of motion; cf. *factu*, chap. 3. The future passive infinitive is built up by means of this verbal noun; e. g. *milites occisum iri dicit* *iri* is the impersonal use of *eo*, "to go"; *occisum*, the limit of motion; *milites*, the object of *occisum*, which can govern an accusative as other verbal nouns. Cf. note on *reditionis*, chap. 5.

**ita se – meritos esse**, *that they had at all times so deserved of the Roman people that*, etc. Indirect discourse after the idea of saying contained in *rogatum*.

**agri debuerint**, *their fields ought not to have been laid waste*, etc. Since the English verb *ought* has no past tense while the Latin *debeo* has, the force of the tense in *debuerint* is thus brought out. *debeo* implies a legal or moral obligation. In Lucretius, however, the word often is synonymous with *oportet* and *necesse est*; e. g. *De Re Nat.*, i. 433, *esse aliquid debebit id ipsum*.

**solum**. Noun; except the soil of their land.

**reliqui**. Depends on *nihil*.

**non expectandum esse**, *he must not wait*; literally, *it must not be waited*. *sibi* is the so-called dative of agent. This dative is nothing more than the simple dative of possession. The gerund being a verbal noun, the origin of this construction may have been as follows: *legendum mihi est*, "a reading is to me," *legendum* being subject of *est* (cf. Lucretius, *De Re Nat.*, i. 110, *poenas in*

**morte timendum est**), i. e. "I have a reading;" hence "I must read." The gerundive construction is perhaps a conversion of the verbal noun into a verbal adjective; c. g. **librum legendum mihi est**, "reading a book is to me," becoming **liber legendus mihi est**, "a book to which the quality of reading belongs is to me;" hence "I must read a book." (Cf. the influence of **ante** in Roman Calendar, note on a. d. v. Kal., chap. 6.) Whether the gerundive originally had a passive signification is uncertain. Cf. **secundus**, = "following;" hence "second."

## CHAPTER XII.

**quod**. The antecedent is **flumen**.

**incredibili lenitate**, *with wonderful smoothness*.

**partes — flumen — traduxisse**. **partes** is object of **duxisse**, and the preposition governs **flumen**.

**cum legionibus**. Ablative of accompaniment. For **cum** in hostile sense, see **cum Germanis**, chap. 1.

**eos — aggressus — partem eorum concidit**. An object used with both participle and verb. Cf. chap. 54, **hos adorti, magnum eorum numerum interficiunt**; also ii. 10, **hostes — nostri — aggressi magnum eorum numerum occiderunt**. On use of these participles, cf. note on **viciis exustis**, chap. 5.

**mandarunt = mandaverunt**. This contract form shows that there must have been a time in Latin when the accent went farther back than the penult, even if that was long. If the word had always been accented **mandavérunt**, the contraction would never have taken place, since it is the accented syllable of a word that is permanent.

**hic pagus unus**. Cf. chap. 13, **unum pagum adortus esset**.

**quae pars — ea — persolvit = ea pars — quae — intulerat — persolvit**.

**princeps persolvit**, *was the first to pay the penalty*.

**quod — interfecerant**, *because in the same battle in which they had slain Cassius, they had slain also his lieutenant Lucius*. **Cassium**, object of **interfecerant**, to be supplied.

## CHAPTER XIII.

**pontem — faciendum curat**, literally, *cares for a bridge to be built, cares for the building of a bridge*. Cf. note on gerundive, chap. 11. Observe the idiom in **Arare**, "over the Arar;" **trans** could not be used.

**cum — intelligenter**, *when they perceived that he had done in one day that which they themselves had accomplished with the greatest difficulty in twenty days, namely, the crossing of the river*. **ut flumen transirent** is in apposition with **id**, the object of **fecisse**. Cf. chap. 5, **id facere — ut — exeant**.

**bello Cassiano**, *in the Cassian war*, i. e., in the war with Cassius

**si pacem**, etc. Indirect discourse to end of chapter. In the direct narrative **faceret** would be future; **ituros**, future; **constituisset**, future perfect. Cf. A. & G. 339, for the direct form of the whole chapter.

**sin perseveraret**, sc. Caesar.

**reminisceretur**. Subjunctive for the imperative. Cf. **tribueret**.

**despiceret, committeret**. Why in the imperfect tense?

**ne ob eam rem — tribueret**, *on that account; literally, on account of that thing, he should not ascribe it (i. e. the victory) too much to his own valor.*

**didicisse**, *they had so learned, i. e., been trained.*

#### CHAPTER XIV

**his**, *to them, i. e., the legati*. Cf. chap. 34, **ei legationi respondit**. For the neuter see chap. 36, **ad haec Ariovistus respondit**.

**eo sibi minus dubitationis dari**, *less doubt was given him on this account*. The clause **quod teneret** gives the reason.

**eo gravius ferre — accidissent**, *and he felt the more indignant in proportion as it had happened without the desert of the Roman people.*

**qui si — fuisset** (the antecedent of **qui** is **populus Romanus**), *if they had been conscious to themselves of having done any injury, etc.*

**cavere**. Subject of **fuisse**.

**deceptum**, sc. **se esse**.

**quare timeret**. **quare** = **propter quod**, the antecedent of the **quod** being the omitted subject of **commissum**.

**quod — vellet**, *but if he should consent to forget their former insult.*

**eo invito**. Cf. **se invito**, chap. 8.

**quod — gloriarentur**, *the fact that they boasted so insolently of their victory.*

**eodem pertinere**, *amount to the same thing; literally, tend to the same place*. The subject of **pertinere** is the preceding clauses.

**quo — doleant**, *that men may grieve the more heavily from a change of circumstances.*

**quos — velint**. The relative clause is put first. The antecedent of **quos** is **his** in line below.

**facturos (esse)**, sc. **eos** as subject.

**Haeduis** (dative after **satisfaciant**), *literally, do enough for them, i. e., satisfy.*

**eius rei**. See note on **ea res — enuntiata**, chap. 4.

#### CHAPTER XV.

**movent**, sc. **Helvetii**.

**quem — coactum habebat**. See note on **habere obstructas**, chap. 9.

**qui videant**. The antecedent of **qui** is the collective idea contained in **equitatum**, as if **equites** had been used. Cf. chap. 2, **civitati persuasit, ut — exirent**.



**quas — faciant.** Indirect question.

**cupidius, too eagerly.** **novissimum agmen,** the part of the line that is "newest," i. e. the rear.

**alieno loco = iniquo loco,** *in an unfavorable place*; literally, *in a place belonging to another*; in contrast with **suo loco,** *in a favorable place.*

**pauci de nostris,** *few of our soldiers.* **de nostris, = nostrorum.** This use of the preposition is an anticipation of the part **de** was to play in vowel inflection in the Romance languages. This preposition, we may say, exerted the strongest influence for the breakdown of the inflectional system.

**in praesentia,** *for the present.*

**nostrum primum,** sc. **agmen,** *our first line,* i. e., van.

## CHAPTER XVI.

**flagitare.** The historical infinitive. In what case is its subject? **flagito** is to demand with earnestness and importunity.

**essent polliciti.** Subjunctive. The clause is represented as being the statement of another, — *which* (as Caesar said) *they had promised,* hence it is a subordinate clause in indirect discourse. Or the subjunctive may be used because the clause is used to describe or characterize **frumentum** as well as to state that they had promised it. (Subjunctive of characteristic.)

**frigora,** *the cold weather.*

**ut ante dictum est.** Chap. 1.

**diem ex die ducere Haedui,** *the Haedui were putting him off from day to day, and were saying,* etc. For omission of the object, cf. chap. 6, **coacturos.** **ducere** and **dicere** are historical infinitives; cf. **flagitare.** These infinitives are as if the writer did not stop to concern himself about the proper mood and tense, but hurried on, leaving the verb indefinite.

**metiri.** See Introduction; Roman Art of War.

**qui summo magistratui praeerat,** *who held the chief magistracy.*

**necessario tempore,** *at so critical a time.*

**quod — sublevetur.** The cause on the authority of another; i. e. the subject of **accusat.** Cf. **quod sit destitutus.**

## CHAPTER XVII.

**privatim plus possint,** *have more influence in a private capacity.*

**ne conferant.** Plural, because of the collective idea in **multitudinem.**

**si iam — praeferre,** *if they cannot any longer hold the leadership of Gaul, they prefer the dominion of the Gauls to that of the Romans.*

**superaverint.** For the future perfect of the direct discourse.

**Haeduis.** The dative for the ablative of separation. This dative, which occurs with certain compounds of **ab**, **de**, **ex**, is best explained as the dative of disadvantage, going with the whole idea of the sentence, and not merely with the verb; i. e., *as far as the Haedui were concerned, their freedom would be wrested away from them.*

**ab iisdem**, *by these same persons*, i. e., the **nonnullos** above.

**a se**, *by himself*; as chief magistrate.

**quin etiam**, *nay even, moreover.*

**quam diu potuerit**, *as long as he could.*

## CHAPTER XVIII.

**quod — nolebat**, *because he was unwilling that these matters should be discussed in the presence of several.* **iactari**, frequentative of **iacto**.

**Liscum retinet** (observe the asyndeton; cf. note on **iubet rescindi**, chap. 7), *but detains Liscus.*

**ex solo**, *from him in private.*

**summa audacia**, sc. **virum**, *a man of the highest daring*, or better, *greatest daring.*

**portoria** (**porto**, “to carry”), *duties on exports and imports.*

**vectigalia** (**veho**, “to bring”), *whatever is brought in.* A name for taxes in general; revenues from any source, as from the public pastures, products of the land, etc.

**vectigalia — redempta habere**, *he had the purchased revenues, he had purchased the revenues*, etc. What single word with almost the same meaning as **redempta habere** might have been used? Cf. **quem coactum habebat**. The **publicani**, or farmers of the revenues, bought them of the government and collected them.

**pretio**, *at a small cost.* Ablative of price.

**audeat nemo**. Cf. note on **nullum**, chap. 7.

**illo licente**, (from **liceor**), *when he was bidding.* This is the first present participle which has been used in the text with its proper verbal force. About how many perfect passive participles have been used? In the English sentence, *The Centrones, seizing the higher places, try to keep the army from the march*, how is the English present participle *seizing* translated into Latin? Cf. the Latin for this sentence in chap. 10. Why is the tense of the Latin participle **occupatis** more accurate than that of the English *seizing*? How is the English present participle *crossing* translated in *they were crossing*? Cf. the translation in chap. 12. Give two reasons why the present participle is more common in English than in Latin.

**comparasse**, for **comparavisse**. See note on **mandarunt**, chap. 12.

**domi**, *at home.*

**ex Helvetiis uxorem habere**. Cf. chap. 3, **eique filiam suam in matrimonium dat**.

**nuptum collocasse**, *had given in marriage*. **nuptum**, see note on **in matrimonium duxerat**, chap. 9.

**favere** — **Helvetiis**, *he favored and wished well to the Helvetians*.

**suo nomine**, *on his own account; literally, in his own name*, — an expression derived from mercantile life.

**quod proelium equestre adversum** — **initium eius fugae factum**, *as to the fact that an unsuccessful engagement of cavalry had taken place*. **quod** may be treated as a conjunction, cf. chap. 13, **quod adortus esset**; or it can be regarded as a relative, **proelium** — **adversum** being attracted into the relative clause, and its place being taken in the antecedent clause by **eius fugae**, — i. e., *the beginning of the flight in the unsuccessful cavalry battle, which battle, etc.*

## CHAPTER XIX.

**certissimae res accederent**, *most undoubted facts were added*.

**quod** — **traduxisset**, **quod** — **curasset**, **quod** — **fecisset**. These clauses are in apposition with **res**. Cf. for the facts here stated chap. 9, **ut per fines suos Helvetios ire patiantur, obsidesque uti dent, perficit**.

**dandos**, sc. **esse**.

**iniussu suo et civitatis**, *without his authority or that of the state*. What in the Latin is translated *without*?

**inscientibus ipsis**, *even without their knowledge*. **ipsis** refers to the Haedui.

**in eum animadverteret**, *why he should either punish him himself; literally, direct his attention against him*.

**unum**, *one consideration*. Explained by **quod**.

**quod** — **cognoverat**. The present **cognosco** is inceptive, *begin to know*; hence **cognovi** = *I have learned*, i. e., *I know*.

**voluntatem**, = *good will*; here used with meaning of **benevolentia**.

**cotidianis** — **remotis**, *when the ordinary interpreters had been withdrawn*.

**cui** — **fidem habebat**, *in whom he was accustomed to repose the highest confidence in all matters*. What is it literally?

**apud se**, *in his presence*, i. e., *Caesar's*.

## CHAPTER XX.

**multis cum lacrimis**. **cum** with the ablative of manner conveys the notion of addition or unexpectedness. Cf. Introduction, "Inductive Studies," under the Ablative.

**obsecrare coepit**. The student will find this passage discussed in the "Inductive Studies," under Indirect Discourse.

**quid gravius**, *anything too severe*, i. e. *no severe measure*.

**plus doloris**. Be careful to make good English of this Latin idiom.

**opibus ac nervis**, and *this power and strength he used*. **nervis** = **potentia**. Cic. Phil., 15. 12, **experietur senatus nervos atque vires**.

**si quid — accidisset**, *if anything very severe should happen to him from Caesar*. **accidisset** = the future perfect indicative of the direct discourse.

**futurum uti — averterentur**, *it would happen that, etc.* The periphrastic form **futurum esse** with the subjunctive is used for the future infinitive of verbs which have no "supine stem," also for the future passive infinitive, which rarely occurs; and frequently with verbs which have a future infinitive.

**tanti — ostendit**, *shows him that his influence with him [Caesar] is so great*. Illustrate by the use of the pronouns **eius** and **se** in this sentence the rule for the antecedents of these pronouns

**vocat, adhibet**. For the asyndeton, see note on chap. 18, **Liscum retinet**.

**praeterita**, *things bygone*, i. e., the past.

## CHAPTER XXI.

**qualis esset**, (indirect question after **cognoscerent**), *what was the nature of the mountain*. Part of speech and exact meaning of **qualis**?

**qui cognoscerent**, *to ascertain*.

**pro praetore**, *in-place-of a praetor, with praetorian powers*. Cf. primitive meaning of **pro** in chap. 48 and its meaning in chaps. 2 and 26.

**quid consilii sui sit**, *what his plan is*, = **quid decreverit**. Cf. vi. 7, **quid sui sit concilii**; and vii. 77, **quid ergo mei consilii est**?

## CHAPTER XXII.

**summus mons**. See note on **reliquos**, chap. 1.

**equo admisso**, (*his horse having been let go toward (his destination), at full speed* (with loose reins). **Mittere** often means *to let go*, as in the skipper's order **mitte rudentem**, *let go the rope*, and the colloquial **mitte me, let me alone**. The Greek paraphrast has ἰδρῶντι τῷ ἵππῳ.

**accurrit, dicit**. Observe the omission of the conjunction. Cf. chap. 20.

**insignibus**. The decorations of the Gallic armor; i. e., devices on the helmets, etc. See Introduction; Description of Gaul; Illustrations in the text.

**erat ei praeceptum**. The subject is **ne — committeret**, etc.

**multo die**, *late in the day*. What literally? Cf. **prima luce**, *at daybreak*.

**quo consuerat intervallo**. Cf. chap. 15, **uti inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum primum non amplius quinque aut senis milibus interesset**.

## CHAPTER XXIII.

**postridie eius diei**, *on the next day*.

**metiri**. See Introduction; Roman Art of War.

**prospiciendum**, sc. esse. Cf. note on **expectandum**, chap. 11.

**fugitivos**, *fugitive slaves, runaways*. The word is used in contempt for trans-fugae, the regular word for deserters. Cf. chap. 27, **obsides**, **arma**, **servos**, qui ad eos profugissent.

**quod** — **confiderent Romanos**, the subject of **discedere** preceding, is also the subject of **pose** (**intercludi**).

## CHAPTER XXIV.

**id animum advertit**, *when he observes this*. **animum advertit** = **animad-vertit**.

**in colle medio**, *on the middle of the hill*. See note on **reliquos**, chap. 1.

**triplicem aciem**. See Introduction; Roman Art of War.

**in summo iugo**, *on the very summit*.

**confertissima acie**. Cf. Livy, x. 29, 6, **cum Galli structis ante se scutis conferti starent**.

## CHAPTER XXV.

**suo**, sc. **equo remoto**, *having removed first his own horse, then those of all*. Plut. Caes., chap. 18: *ὡς ἵππος αὐτῷ προσήχθη τούτῳ μὲν, ἔφη, νικήσας χρήσομαι πρὸς τῆν δίωξιν, νῦν δ' ἴωμεν ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους, καὶ πεζὸς ὀρμήσας ἐνέβαλε*.

**impedimento**, *it was a great hindrance to the Gauls*. What literally? Cf. ii. 25, **ad pugnam esse impedimento vidit**.

**multi ut praeoptarent**, *so that not a few chose*. Notice the emphatic position of **multi**.

**nudo**, *naked*, i. e., without a shield

**pedem referre**, *to give way*. What literally?

**agmen hostium claudebant**, *closed the line of the enemy*, i. e., brought up the rear.

**Romani conversa signa intulerunt**, *the Romans, having faced about, advanced in two divisions*; literally, *bore in their standards reversed*.

## CHAPTER XXVI.

**ancipiti proelio**, *in a doubtful battle*, = **dubio Marte**; or *in a double battle*, referring to the two different fronts on which the battle was fought.

**ab hora septima**, *from the seventh hour*, i. e., about one o'clock. The Romans divided the day into twelve hours, beginning at sunrise.

**aversum hostem**, *the back of an enemy*; literally, *an enemy turned away*.

**ad multam noctem**, *till late at night*. Cf. **multo die**, chap. 22.

**pro vallo**, as a rampart.

**captus est.** Agrees with the nearest subject, **unus**. Plutarch (Vit. Caes., chap. 18) says that on this occasion even the women and children fought till they were cut down.

**qui si iuvisent**, for if they should aid them.

**eodem — habiturum**, would regard them in the same light as the *Helvetii*.  
**eodem loco — habere**, cf. chap. 28, in *hostium numero habuit*.

## CHAPTER XXVII.

**qui cum — convenissent.** Note that **qui** stands first in its sentence because it is the word most closely connected with the preceding sentence. Cf. note on **qua de causa**, chap. 1. **convenissent** is usually intransitive in Caesar, but here transitive.

**ad pedes**, at his feet. Observe that the idiom faithful to the idea of motion.

**iussisset**, sc. Caesar as subject.

**ea**, neuter. This includes the *obsides* and *servos* as well as the *arma*.

**nocte intermissa**, a night having intervened.

**occultari — existimarent**, they supposed their flight could either be concealed or be entirely unnoticed.

**prima nocte**, in the early part of the night. How does the context show that this cannot mean in the first night?

## CHAPTER XXVIII.

**resciit**, discovered. **Resciscere**, according to Aulus Gellius, 2, 19, refers to knowledge in regard to anything which is unexpected or hidden.

**quorum.** The antecedent is his below.

**sibi purgati**, blameless in his sight. Cf. iv. 13, 5, *sui purgandi causa*; Cic. Fam., 12, 15, *quod te mihi purgas*. Derivation of *purgare*? Cf. "Purge me with hyssop, and I shall be clean," Ps. li. 7.

**reductos — habuit**, he treated them, when brought back, as enemies; i. e., they were put to death or sold as slaves.

**quos incenderant**, i. e., the particular towns in chap. 5; hence the indicative, expressing a fact stated by Caesar.

**vacare**, to be empty; cf. **patere**, to lie open, chap. 2; **licere**, to be permitted, chap. 7; **cavere**, to be on one's guard, chap. 14; **tacere**, to be silent, chap. 17. Do these verbs assert action or state? Are they transitive or intransitive? How many English words must be used to express the meaning of each one?

**Boios.** Object of *collocarent*. **petentibus Haeduis**, dative after *concessit*.

**parem atque ipsi erant**, same terms of freedom as they themselves had; literally, same terms and they themselves were (on the same terms).

## CHAPTER XXIX.

*tabulae, tablets.* The word is applied to any flat substance used for writing, usually wood covered with wax.

*litteris Graecis confectae, made out in Greek characters.* Some hold that *litteris Graecis* implies the Greek language, although such an interpretation is not necessary. The general opinion is that the Helvetii used the Greek alphabet merely, having become acquainted with it from the Greek colony at Marseilles, in the south of Gaul. Cf. v. 48, *hanc Graecis conscriptam litteris mittit*; and vi. 14, *Graecis litteris utantur*. See Introduction; Description of Gaul.

*ratio.* Introducing the indirect question.

*capitum, souls, i. e. Helvetii.* Cf. English "head of cattle."

*ad milia.* See note on *ad milia*, chap. 4, near end.

*fuerunt.* Agreeing with the predicate noun *milia*.

*ad* is an adverb, and does not influence the construction. Cf. note on *ad milia*.

## CHAPTER XXX.

*totius fere Galliae, i. e. Celtic Gaul, the third of the three divisions.* See chap. i. Cf. chap. 31, *Galliae totius factiones esse duas*.

*Helvetiorum iniuriis populi Romani* (two genitives; *Helvetiorum* is subjective, *populi Romani* objective), *injuries of the Helvetians toward the Romans.* Cf. vii. 26, *universae Galliae consensio libertatis vindicandae*.

*ex usu terrae Galliae, to the advantage of the land of Gaul.* *terrae* takes *Galliae* in apposition with it for *terrae Gallicae*. Cf. iii. 7, *mare Oceanum*; Bell. Afr., chap. 3, *terrae Africae*, Tac. Annal., i. 9, *mari Oceano*; Livy, 35, 7, *terra Italia*; Sallust, Fragm. Hist., 4, *duae Galliae mulieres*

*ex magna copia, out of a great abundance.*

*ex consensu, in accordance with the common consent.*

*nisi quibus, i. e. nisi ii quibus, unless those (disclose it) to whom this duty should be assigned by the common council.*

## CHAPTER XXXI.

*idem = iidem.*

*qui ante fuerant, ad Caesarem, who had before been (to him), returned to Caesar.* With *fuerant*, sc. *apud eum*.

*secreto in occulto, apart from others in a secret place.* This is the reading of the common text. Some regard *in occulto* as a gloss, and reject it. Oudendorp defends the text by making *secreto* mean "without witnesses," and *occulto*, "in a secret place."

*Caesari ad pedes proiecerunt, threw themselves at Caesar's feet.* The dative taken with the whole idea of the clause, instead of the genitive in close union with *pedes*.

**non minus — contendere**, *they no less strove and labored.*

**Galliae totius factiones esse duas** (cf. vi. 12, **alterius factionis principes erant Haedui, alterius Sequani**), *there were two parties in the whole of Gaul.* **factiones** refers to the two political parties of Gaul. **factio** originally contained no bad notion like that in the English word "faction," but, according to Festus, is "**honestum vocabulum.**"

**principatum tenere**, *hold the leadership.*

**factum esse**, *it came to pass.*

**adamassent**, for **adamavissent**. See note on **mandarunt**, chap. 12.

**clientes**, *dependents*, i. e. the subject states. Cf. vi. 12, **summa auctoritas erat in Haeduis magnaue eorum erant clientelae.**

**senatum**. Cf. ii. 5, **omnem senatum ad se convenire**

**populi Romani hospitio**, *by the hospitality of the Roman people.* The relation of hospitality existed between states as well as between individuals. It was this **hospitium** on the part of the Roman people that gave to the Haedui their power in Gaul. Cf. vi. 5, **cum his esse hospitium Ambiorigi sciebat**; also vii. 75, **pro eius hospitio duo milia una miserunt.**

**ad senatum — postulatam**, *had gone to Rome to the senate to ask for aid.* Notice that after a verb of motion both nouns are in the accusative. This should be remembered, especially in translating English into Latin. In English we say "came to the senate at Rome." He did not succeed in his effort. Cf. vi. 12, **Romam ad senatum profectus imperfecta re redierat.**

**peius accidisse**. So far as form is concerned, what two parts of speech are possible for **peius**?

**paucis mensibus ante**, *a few months before.*

**quibus — pararentur**, *for whom a place of abode was to be provided.* Subjunctive of purpose, = *that a place of abode might be provided for them.*

**futurum esse uti**, *it would result that.* See note on **futurum uti — avertentur**, chap. 20.

**conferendum esse**, *was not to be compared (in respect to fertility) with the German land.*

**in eos — edere**, *inflicted upon them all kinds of torments*; **exempla cruciatumque**, *all examples and torments*, being put by hendiadys for *all kinds of tortures.*

**hominem — temerarium**, *that he was a savage, quick-tempered, and rash man.*

**nisi si**. With same force as **nisi** alone. Cf. Cic. ad Fam., 14, 2, **nisi si quis ad me plura scripsit.**

**idem**. In apposition with **ut** — **emigrent.**

**quin — sumat**, *that he would inflict the severest punishment upon.*

## CHAPTER XXXII.

**oratione habita**. What means *to make or deliver a speech*?

**respondere**. Historical infinitive. See note on **ducere Haedui**, chap. 16.



*absentis, even when absent.*

**horrent**, with a direct object. The old signification of the word was to *bristle* or *become erect*; then the feeling derived from such action — e. g. in Lucretius, **horror** refers to the grating sound of a saw. It is connected with English *frost*. In Latin the word applies always to disagreeable sensations, as fear, dread, etc., although the root originally admitted the idea of both pleasure and pain.

**Sequanis**. Dative of agent, with **essent perferendi**; for the literal translation of which, cf. note (on geruudive).

### CHAPTER XXXIII.

**sibi eam rem curae futuram**, *he would attend to the matter*; literally, *the matter would be for a care to him*.

**beneficio suo**, *by his kindness*, i. e. by the kindness Caesar had done Ariovistus; referring to the title “**kiug**” and “**friend**” which had been given him. Cf. chap. 35, **cum in consulatu suo rex atque amicus a senatu appellatus**.

**secundum**, *in harmony with*; literally, *following (sequor)*. Cf. note on **secundus**, chap. 11. What part of speech here?

**quare putaret**, *by which thing he should think*, i. e. to think.

**fratres consanguineosque**. Cf. chap. 11, **necessarii et consanguinei**.

**Germanos consuescere** and **magnam — multitudinem venire** are the subjects of **esse** to be supplied. **periculosum** is in agreement with the two clauses.

**sibi temperaturos — quin**, *would restrain themselves from going forth into the province*. **ut — fecissent**, subjunctive, because in the indirect discourse. What two meanings has **ut** as a conjunction and with what difference of mode? Cf. **ut — arbitrantur**, chap. 4, and **ut — essent**, chap. 5.

**Teutonique**, — in vii. 77 the plural nominative is **Teutones**, as shown from the genitive.

**quibus — occurrendum**, *and these things he thought he ought to meet as speedily as possible*.

**tantos sibi spiritus — sumpserat**. The Greek paraphrast has  $\delta \gamma\alpha\rho \text{ 'A}\rho\iota\beta\text{ιστος } \omicron\upsilon\tau\omega\varsigma \text{ } \upsilon\pi\epsilon\rho\epsilon\phi\acute{\rho}\nu\epsilon\iota$ . How does the English *to put on airs* illustrate the meaning of **spiritus** in this passage? How does **summere** differ in meaning from **capere**? Cf. English *assumption*.

### CHAPTER XXXIV.

**qui ab eo postularent**, *to demand of him*.

**colloquio**, *for a conference*. **locum medium utriusque**, *midway between both*. **utriusque** is the genitive with the adjective **medium**.

**de re publica — agere**, *to treat on the public weal*, i. e. public matters. **summis utriusque rebus**, *matters of the highest importance to both of them*.

**si quid se — velit**, *if he wanted anything of him*. **velle** takes two accusatives, after the analogy of a verb of asking. Cf. Ter. Phorm., i. 2, 101, **numquid aliud me vis**.

**negotii** (partitive genitive with **quid**), *what business*.

## CHAPTER XXXV.

**tanto — affectus**, *treated with so great kindness by himself and the Roman people*. Cf. chap. 33, **suo beneficio**. By what clause might the participle **affectus** be translated here? For use of participle with meaning of clause, see **damnatum**, chap. 4.

**hauc gratiam referret**, *made such a return as this*.

**trans Rhenum traduceret**. Observe the repetition of the preposition.

**quos illi — illis**. The antecedent of **quos** is the omitted object of **reddere**. What is the antecedent of **illi** and **illis**?

**fecisset, impetraret**. What moods and tenses would these verbs have been in if this were the direct discourse?

**quod commodo — facere posset**, *so far as he could do so consistently with the interests of the state*. **commodo**, ablative of specification.

## CHAPTER XXXVI.

**ut — imperarent**, *that those who had conquered should rule those whom they had conquered in whatever way they chose*. **viissent** for the future perfect of the direct discourse.

**alterius praescriptum**, *dictation of any one else*.

**in suo iure impediri**, *ought not to be obstructed in his right*.

**sibi**. Construe with **stipendiarios**.

**qui — faceret**, *because he was making his revenues less*.

**quod convenisset**, *which had been agreed upon*. Cf. ii. 19, **quod tempus inter eos convenerat**.

**longe — afuturum**, *name of brothers would not help them; literally, be a great way from them*. Cf. Verg. Aen. xii. 52, **longe illi dea mater erit**.

**invicti Germani**, *invincible Germans; literally unconquered*, hence not liable to be.

## CHAPTER XXXVII.

**eodem tempore — et**, *at the same time — that*. See note on **parem — atque**, chap. 28.

**questum**. Sc. **veniebant**.

**quod — popularentur**. The reason of the complaint, stated on authority of the **Haedui**, — hence in indirect discourse when stated by Caesar, as it is here.

**obsidibus datis**, *even by giving hostages.*

**pacem redimere potuisse**, *able to purchase peace.* Cf. chap. 44, **amicitiam — redimere posset.**

**resisti posset**, sc. **Ariovisto**, impersonal construction, (**Ariovistus**) *might be less easily withstood.*

## CHAPTER XXXVIII.

**cum tridui viam processisset**, *when he had proceeded three days' journey.*

**quod.** The relative refers to **Vesontionem**, but agrees with **oppidum.** Cf. ii. 1, **omnes Belgas, quam tertiam esse Galliae partem dixeramus.**

**magnopere sibi praecavendum (esse)**, *that he ought to take the greatest precautions.*

**summa — facultas**, *an abundant supply.* Cf. Cic., *De Offic.*, 1, 3, **facultates rerum.**

**pedum.** **amplius** may not influence the construction, since the comparatives **plus, amplius, minus**, etc., are often used in this way. The origin of this use is perhaps in the addition of a modifying statement, as if the writer had said, "which is of six hundred feet, — not more any way;" or the construction can be explained by supplying **spatio.** **ut circino**, *as by a pair of compasses.* Give the two uses of **ut** already noted. As the distance actually measures sixteen hundred feet, it is possible that an **m.** before the **dc.** has tumbled out through the carelessness of the copyist.

## CHAPTER XXXIX.

**ne — oculorum.** Show from the root meaning of **acies** how it may be used both of *a line of battle* and *the flash* of the eyes.

**non mediocriter**, *in no slight degree.*

**alius alia causa illata** (observe the idiom), *and assigning, some one reason, some another.*

**quam — diceret**, *which they said was a necessary one for their departure.*

**vultum fingere**, *compose their faces*, i. e., look brave.

**qui volebant.** The antecedent is **ii**, to be supplied as subject of **dicebant.**

**rem frumentariam** (for **res frumentaria**, as subject of **posset**; the accusative of anticipation), *they feared, in regard to the supplies, that they could not be brought in readily.* Cf. *Ter. Eun.*, v. 9, 5, **scin' me, in quibus sim gaudiis.** *Cic. Fam.*, viii. 10, 3, **nosti Marcellum quam tardus sit.** *Luke iv. 34, οἶδά σε τῆς ἐλ,* "I know thee who thou art."

**dicto audientes**, *attentive or obedient to the word (of command).*

**signa laturos**, *advance.* What means *to retreat, to bring up the rear, to charge, to wheel about, to join or begin battle, to draw the sword* (see chap. 26), *to march.*

## CHAPTER XL.

**omniumque ordinum**, *of all ranks.*

**sibi quaerendum – putarent**, *thought that it belonged to them to inquire or consider.* **putarent**, why in the subjunctive?

**Ariovistum**, etc. The indirect discourse depends on the idea of saying implied in **incusavit**. Explain the modes and the tenses to end of chapter.

**se consule**. Antecedent of **se**?

**cur – quisquam – iudicaret**, *why should any one judge.*

**sibi persuaderi**, *that he was persuaded.* Observe that **persuadeo** in the passive must be used impersonally. Why? Sometimes Latin writers use the passive of intransitive verbs personally, as if to bring an innovation into the language; e.g., **animus auditoris persuasus esse videtur** (Corn. i. 6). But such use is exceedingly unclassical, since the conception of an intransitive verb cannot admit of such a construction.

**quid tamen**, *what, pray.*

**de ipsius diligentia**. **ipsius** used for **sua**, referring to Caesar, to avoid confusion with **sua virtute**, which points to the subject of **desperarent**.

**factum (esse) periculum**, *trial had been made.*

**cum – videbatur**. See Introduction; Inductive Studies, under **cum**. This is the only case in the Gallic War of an imperfect indicative after **cum**. At this time we may say that the use of **cum** with the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive had become fixed as a habit. The real cause which thrust the verb into the subjunctive had almost been lost sight of. Of course it was inevitable that the Romans should think there was something in the **cum** itself that required the subjunctive. A good example of this tendency is the use of **quamquam** among later writers. In Cicero **quamquam** never takes the subjunctive unless there be some outside reason, but Tacitus employs the word as if by its own influence it required the subjunctive.

**quantum – boni constantia**, *how much advantage resolution has.*

**neque – fecisset**, *nor had he given them an opportunity to fight with him; literally, no chance at him.*

**desperantes**, sc. Gallos.

**cui rationi – posse** (**rationi** is attracted into the relative clause), *by a stratagem, for which there had been room against savage and unskilled men, — by this stratagem (I say) not even he expected that our armies could be entrapped; literally, hac (ratione), cui rationi, by this stratagem, for which stratagem, etc.*

**qui**. The antecedent is **eos**, to be supplied as subject of **facere**.

**in rei – simulationem**, *to a pretended anxiety about provisions.*

**de – desperare**, *to despair of the commander's doing his duty.*

**quod – dicantur**, *as to the report that they would not be obedient to orders nor advance.* **signa laturo**, cf chap. 39, **signa laturos**.

## CHAPTER XLI.

**cum tribunis** — egerunt, *arranged with the tribunes.*

**se** — existimavisse. Indirect discourse after the idea of saying implied in **satisfacerent**. Cf. note on **Ariovistum**, etc., chap. 40.

**summa belli**, *conduct of the war.*

**suum** — **imperatoris**. Predicate after **esse** understood.

**satisfactione**, *excuse.*

**ut** — **duceret** (a result clause after the ablative absolute **itinere exquisito**), *the road having been reconnoitred and found to be such that it would lead, etc.*

**locis apertis**, *through an open country.*

## CHAPTER XLII.

**per se**, *with his consent.*

**petenti**, *to his request; literally, to him asking it.*

**ultra polliceretur**, *he actually promised.*

**pro suis** — **beneficiis**. Cf. chap. 33, **beneficio suo**.

**fore uti desisteret**, *that he would desist.*

**ultra citroque**, *hither and thither.*

**alia ratione**, *on any other terms.*

**eo imponere**, *upon them, = in eos*. Cf. chap. 53, **eo mulieres imposuerant**.

**si quid** — **esset**, *if there should be any need of action.*

**ad equum rescribere**, *he was transferring them to the cavalry.*

## CHAPTER XLIII.

**tumulus terrenus**, *hill free from rocks*. Cf. Sall. Jug., 92, 5, **mons saxeus**.

**aequo spatio aberat**, *was at nearly an equal distance*. Cf. chap. 41, **Ariovisti** — **xx abesse**.

**ex equis**, *on horseback*. Cf. note on **ex vinculis**, chap. 4.

**pro officiis**, *in return for great services.*

**aditum**, *access*. Cf. v. 41, **aliquem sermonis aditum causamque**.

**quam veteres** — **appetissent**. Cf. chaps. 11 and 31.

**sui nihil**, *nothing of their own.*

**at**, *at least.*

**amplius**. See note on **pedum**, chap. 38.

## CHAPTER XLIV.

**rogatum et accessitum**. Agreeing with **sese**.

**Gallis**. The Arverni and Sequani.

**ipsis**. Sc. Gallis.

**ac contra se castra habuisse**, *had encamped against him.*

uno proelio. Cf. chap. 31.

paratum esse decertare. Notice that the infinitive is used with paratum. Cf. ii. 3, paratosque esse et obsides dare. In chap. 5 paratus took the gerundive construction with ad: paratiores ad omnia pericula subeunda.

pace uti velint, *wish to enjoy peace.*

amicitiam — esse. Subject of oportere.

idque, not eamque, because it refers to the idea contained in amicitiam, admitting of a more general meaning, — *that relation.*

defenderit (sc. bellum as object), *had warded it off.* Cf. ii. 29, alias illatum defenderent; also Civil War, ii. 2, ignem defendere.

nisi rogatus, *without being asked.*

hanc Galliam, *this part of Gaul; literally, this Gaul.*

ut oporteret, *as it would not be proper to pardon him if, etc.* Why is concedi in the impersonal construction?

imperitum rerum, *ignorant of affairs.*

debere — habere, *that he had a right to suspect that Caesar, inasmuch as he had an army in Gaul, kept it there, although under the pretence of friendship, for the sake of crushing him.* How does debere differ from oportere? See note on debuerint, chap. 11.

id compertum habere, *had ascertained.* See note on obstrictas habere, chap. 9.

#### CHAPTER XLV.

in eam sententiam, *to this effect; for the purpose of showing;* followed by quare, *why.* This use of the preposition is an anticipation of the force in was to have in the post-Ciceronian writers to denote result or purpose; e.g., in libertatem pugnare, Livy, xxiv. 2, 4. The phrase in memoriam, which has such a vogue among us to-day, makes the use of in to denote purpose seem by no means strange; but such a notion in the preposition is entirely unclassical.

Galliam = Celticam Galliam.

populus — ignovisset, *the Roman people had pardoned.*

#### CHAPTER XLVI.

propius tumulum accedere, *were approaching nearer the mound.* tumulum is the accusative with the adverb propius, after the analogy of the preposition prope. Cf. Sall. Jug. 49, ipse propior montem suos conlocat; also iii. 7, proximus mare — hiemarat.

periculo legionis, *danger to the legion.* Objective genitive.

committendum — posset, *he did not think that he ought to allow it to be said.* The subject of committendum (esse) is ut — posset.

omni Gallia — interdixisset, *had forbidden the Romans all Gaul.*

## CHAPTER XLVII.

**biduo post**, *two days after.*

**quae — coeptae — perfectae**, *which had begun to be discussed, but were not yet finished.* **coepae essent**, the passive of **coepi** is regularly used with a passive infinitive.

**retineri quin — conicerent**, *be kept from hurling.*

**civitate donatus erat**, *had been presented with citizenship.*

**qua multa — utebatur**, *which he spoke freely.*

**in — esset**, *the Germans would have no reason for doing wrong in his case.*

## CHAPTER XLVIII.

**qui supportaretur**, *which were being conveyed to him from the Sequani and Haedui.*

**ei — deesset**, *an opportunity might not be wanting to him.*

**hoc erat**, *was as follows.*

**si quo — recipiendum**, *if it was necessary to advance to any place farther than usual or to retreat more quickly.*

**cursum adaequarent**, *equalled their speed.*

## CHAPTER XLIX.

**castris idoneum**, *fitted for a camp.*

**castra munire**, *to fortify the camp.*

**hominum milia expedita**, *for hominum milia expeditorum* (cf. ii. 4, *armata milia centum*), *(sixteen) thousand light-armed troops.*

**quae copiae — perterrerent**, *that this force might terrify our men.*

## CHAPTER L.

**instituto suo**, *in accordance with his custom.* Cf. chap. 48, **ex eo die — aciem instructam habuit.**

**tum demum**, *then at length.*

**acriter — pugnatum est.** Diodorus (38, 48) says that Ariovistus almost succeeded in taking the camp of Caesar, and being elated, neglected the prophecies of the women to meet Caesar in battle.

**solis occasu**, *at sunset.* Cf. chap. 1, **inter occasum solis.**

**matres familiae.** Tacitus (Ger., chap. 8) states that the women among the Germans were supposed to have prophetic power.

**sortibus et vaticinationibus**, *from lots and divination.*

**ex usu**, *advantageous.*

## CHAPTER LI.

**alarios**, *the auxiliaries*. So called because stationed on the *alae* or wings of the army.

**minus — valebat**, *was not strong in the number of legionary soldiers in comparison with the enemy*.

**ad speciem**, *for show*.

**eo mulieres imposuerunt**. See note on **eo imponere**, chap. 42.

**passis manibus**, *with outstretched hands*; **passis** being here from **pando**, not **pateor**. Cf. ii. 13, **passis manibus suo more**; and vii. 47, **passis manibus obtestabantur**.

## CHAPTER LII.

**singulis — quaestorem**, *lieutenants and a quaestor over each legion*.

**a dextro cornu**, *on the right wing*.

**minime firmam**, *weakest*.

**pila**. The object of the *gerrud*, **conciendi**.

**phalange facta**. Cf. chap. 24, **reiecto nostro equitatu phalange facta**.

**complures nostri milites**, *very many of our soldiers*.

**in phalangas**, *upon the phalanxes*. For the Greek form of accusative, cf. **Allobrogas**, chap. 14.

**a sinistro cornu**. See **a dextro cornu** above.

**expeditior erat**, *was more disengaged*.

## CHAPTER LIII.

**viribus confisi**, *relying on their strength*.

**duae uxores**. The Germans usually had one wife; but their nobles had more, as we learn from Tacitus (Ger. 18), **prope soli barbarorum singulis uxoribus contenti sunt, exceptis admodum paucis, qui — ob nobilitatem plurimis nuptiis ambiuntur**. See Introduction, no. 85.

**duxerat**, *had married*. See note on **in matrimonium duxerat**, chap. 9.

**trinis catenis**, *a triple chain*.

**in ipsum Caesarem — incidit**, *fell into the hands of Caesar himself*.

**ter sortibus**. Probably three was a sacred and mystical number with the Germans, as it was among several other ancient nations. We know from Tacitus (Ger. 10, **ter singulos tollit**) that they consulted the lot three times.

## CHAPTER LIV.

**perterritos insecuti magnum ex iis numerum occiderunt**. For the object with the participle and verb, see note on **eos impeditos — aggressus — partem — concidit**, chap. 12.



in hiberna in Sequanos, *into winter-quarters among the Sequani*. Why could not Sequanos be in the ablative? See note on Romam ad senatum, chap. 31.

ad conventus agendos, *to hold courts*. The Roman governors of provinces held these conventus for regulating taxes and administrating of justice.

## B O O K I I.

### CHAPTER I.

in hibernis. Caesar perhaps had with him a small force, which had gone into winter quarters in Cisalpine Gaul.

crebri — afferebantur, *frequent reports were brought to him*. The imperfect denotes the repeated action suggested by crebri.

quam tertiam For the attraction of the antecedent, see note on i. 38, Vesontionem, quod est oppidum.

dixeramus. See chap. 1.

omni pacata Gallia, *after (Celtic) Gaul was subdued*. pacata, cf. i. 6, qui nuper pacati erant.

partim qui — partim qui, *a part of whom — others of whom*. What is the literal translation?

inveterascere, *to settle, to gain a footing*.

novis imperiis, *a revolution*. Cf. novis rebus.

imperio nostro, *under our dominion*.

### CHAPTER II.

inita aestate, *at the beginning of the summer*.

qui deduceret, *to conduct them*.

cum primum, *as soon as*.

dat negotium, *he employs*.

dubitandum — quin, *to hesitate to march*. The construction of quin with the subjunctive, after dubitare in this sense, is rare. Cf. Cic. pro Sull, chap. 2, non dubitasse, quin defenderet. The infinitive is the regular construction.

### CHAPTER III.

de improvise, *unexpectedly; literally, from the unforeseen*.

celeriusque omni opinione, *and sooner than any one expected*.

proximi ex Belgis, *the nearest of the Belgae*.

se suaque omnia permittere, *surrender themselves and all their possessions.*  
For the omission of the subject of *permittere*, cf. ii. 31, *se suaque omnia eorum potestati permittere.*

*in fidem*, *to the protection.*

*paratos esse dare.* Cf. i. 44, *paratum esse decertare.*

*oppidis recipere*, *to receive him into their towns.*

*cis Rhenum*, *on this side the Rhine.*

*utantur — habeant.* Observe the omission of the conjunction.

*quin — consentirent*, *from uniting with these.*

#### CHAPTER IV.

*ab his*, *from these*, i. e., the *legati*.

*plerosque Belgas*, *the greater part of the Belgians.*

*Teutonos Cimbroque.* Cf. i. 33, *ut ante Cimabri Teutonique fecissent.*

*ingredi prohibuerint.* *prohibere* always takes the infinitive in Caesar; but what is the usual construction after verbs of hindering?

*magnosque spiritus.* Cf. i. 33, *tantos sibi spiritus.*

*omnia explorata.* See note on *habere obstrictas*, i. 9.

*quantam quisque*, *how great a number each one had promised.*

*armata milia centum*, *one hundred thousand armed men.*

*electa*, *picked men.* For gender, cf. i. 49, *sedecim milia expedita.*

*cum — tum*, *not only — but also.*

*belli summam*, *direction of the war.*

#### CHAPTER V.

*liberaliter prosecutus*, *having addressed kindly.* Cf. iv. 18, *liberaliter respondit.*

*ad diem*, *promptly to the day.* Cf. v. 1, *ad certam diem.*

*quanto opere — intersit*, *how much it concerns the state and their common interest, that, etc.*

*distineri*, *be kept apart.* *manus — distineri*, subject of *intersit*.

*quae res — muniebat*, *this position fortified, etc.*

*post — essent*, *the rear.* Literally, *what was behind him.*

#### CHAPTER VI.

*ex itinere.* Cf. i. 25, *ex itinere nostros aggressi.*

*aegre — sustentatum est*, *the attack was sustained with difficulty on that day.*

Observe the impersonal construction. Cf. v. 39, *aegre is dies sustentatur.*

*oppugnatio*, *mode of besieging.*

*totis moenibus*, ablative of place, *along the whole of the fortifications.* Cf. vii.

72, *turres toto opere circumdedit.*

*summa nobilitate*, *of the highest rank.* Cf. i. 18, *summa audacia.*

## CHAPTER VII.

**isdem ducibus usus**, *using the same persons as guides.*

**potiundi oppidi.** Cf. iii. 6, **potiundorum castrorum.**

**vicis aedificiisque incensis**, *when they had set fire to all the villages and buildings.* Cf. i. 5, **vicos — aedificia — incendunt.**

**ab milibus — duobus**, *less than two miles off.* For **amplius milibus**, cf. i. 15, **non amplius quinis — milibus.** **ab** is used adverbially, cf. ii. 30, **ab tanto spatio.**

## CHAPTER VIII.

**eximiam opinionem virtutis**, *their uncommon reputation for courage.* Cf. ii. 24, **virtutis opinio est singularis.**

**quid — auderent, periclitabatur**, *he strove to ascertain what the enemy could do by their valor and what our men dared (to do).*

**tantum — quantum loci**, *spread over so much space as.*

**ex utraque parte**, *on each side.*

**et frontem — redibat**, *and gently sloping in front sank down gradually to the plain.* **frontem** is the acc. of spec. with **fastigatus.**

## CHAPTER IX.

**hanc si nostri transirent, hostes exspectabant**, *the enemy were waiting to see if our men would cross this.* For **si**, cf. i. 8, **si perrumpere possent, conati.**

**ut — aggredierentur, parati**, *they stood ready (for battle), in order to attack them.* **ut — aggredierentur** is not dependent upon **parati.**

**secundiore — nostris**, *the engagement of the cavalry being more favorable for our soldiers.* For the ablative absolute, cf. chap. 8, **loco — opportuno.**

**demonstratum est.** See chap. 5.

**si possent — si minus potuissent.** Observe the distinction of tense.

## CHAPTER X.

**hostes impeditos nostri in flumine aggressi, magnum eorum numerum occiderunt.** For object with participle and verb, cf. i. 12, **eos impeditos aggressus — partem — concidit**, and i. 54, **perterritos insecuti — numerum occiderunt.**

**neque nostros — viderunt**, *and did not see our men advance to worse ground for the purpose of fighting.*

**optimum esse**, *that it was best.*

**his persuaderi — non poterat**, *was not possible to persuade these to stay longer, etc.* Why must the impersonal construction be used with the passive of **persuadeo**?

## CHAPTER XI.

**cum sibi — peteret**, *since each was seeking for himself the first place in the journey.*

**speculatores**, *spies.*

**his**, i. e., **equitibus**, which is suggested by **omnem equitatum**. Cf. i. 2, **civitati persuasit, ut — exirent.**

**novissimos adorti**, *attacking the rear.*

**cum — consistenter**, *while those in the rear, to whom our men had come up, were standing firm.*

**priores**, sc. **et**, *and those in advance.*

**quantum — spatium**, *as the length of the day allowed.*

**sub occasum**, *about sunset.* The same difference that **in** has with the accusative and ablative is observed by **sub**. With the accusative **sub** has a vagueness of meaning, e. g., Livy, xxi. 16, **sub idem tempus**, *about that same time* (either before or after). In Livy, xxi. 18, **sub hanc orationem**, **sub** = *after*; but in xxi. 57, **sub lucem**, **sub** = *before*.

## CHAPTER XII.

**ex terrore ac fuga recipere**, *recovered from their terror and flight.*

**ex itinere**, *on his march.* Cf. i. 25, **ex itinere nostros — aggressi**; and chap. 6, **id ex itinere — Belgae oppugnare coeperunt.**

**paucis defendentibus**, *though few were defending it.*

**ex fuga.** See Inductive Studies, under Ablative. The order of words is the same as in vii. 24, **omnis ex castris multitudo concurreret.**

## CHAPTER XIII.

**obsidibus acceptis primis**, *having received as hostages the first men of the state.*

**sese in eius fidem — venire.** Cf. vi. 3, **in deditionem venire.**

**passis manibus.** Cf. i. 51, **passis manibus fientes implorabant.**

## CHAPTER XIV.

**pro his — facit verba**, *Divitiacus speaks for these.*

**in fide — fuisse**, *have been on (terms of) confidence and friendship.*

**civitatis Haeduae**, *with the Haeduan state.* Objective genitive.

**qui — fuissent**, *those who had been the movers of that plot.* The antecedent of **qui** is **eos** to be supplied as subject of **profugisse**.

**consilii principes** = **consilii auctores**. Cf. v. 54, **principes belli inferendi**, vi. 4, **qui princeps eius consilii fuerat**; vii. 37, **vel principes eius consilii fore profiterentur**.

**sua clementia**, *his* (accustomed) *clemency*.

**quorum — consuerint**, *by whose aid and resources they have been accustomed to sustain themselves, whatever wars occurred*. **sustentare**, in sense of **sustentatum** est, chap. 6, without object; or with object **bella** taken out of **si qua bella** **inciderint**.

## CHAPTER XV.

**honoris causa**, *out of respect to*.

**magna — auctoritate**, *of great influence*. For the distinction between genitive and ablative of quality, see Inductive Studies.

**nullum — mercatoribus**, *merchants had no access to them*.

**nihil pati vini**, *they suffered no wine, etc.*

**homines feros magnaeque virtutis**, *savage men and of great bravery*. The genitive of quality limiting **homines** in conjunction with the adjective, **feros**. Cf. v. 35, **Balventio, viro forti et magnae auctoritatis**; and v. 54, **civitas imprimis firma et magnae — auctoritatis**.

## CHAPTER XVI.

**consedissee**, *had encamped*.

**cum Atrebatis**. Elsewhere this word is treated as a noun of the third declension, e. g. **Atrebatas**, chap. 4 and 23; **Atrebas**, iii. 27 and 35; **Atrebatibus**, iv. 21; **Atrebatum**, v. 46; **Atrebatem**, v. 22, vi. 6; **Atrebatibus**, vii. 75; **Atrebatii**, vii. 76.

## CHAPTER XVII.

**eorum dierum — exercitus perspecta**, *having perceived our army's mode of marching in those days*. **eorum dierum** limits **itineris**. For the accumulation of genitives, cf. vii. 76, **universae Galliae consensio libertatis vindicandae et pristinae belli laudis recuperandae**.

**inter singulas legiones**, *between the several legions*.

**magnum numerum**, *a great quantity*.

**neque — negotii**, *and there would be no difficulty*.

**quod Nervii**, etc., subject of **adiuvabat**.

**teneris arboribus — posset**, *by cutting into and bending down young trees and (allowing) their numerous branches to shoot forth laterally (in latitudinem enatis), and by placing among them brambles and thorns, they had caused these hedges to present a fortification like a wall, so (dense) that it was impossible either to go into it or even to see through it*. **enatis**, from **enascor**. **quo** = **ut eo**, and introduces a result clause.

## CHAPTER XVIII.

**haec, as follows.** Cf. i. 48, **genus hoc erat pugnae.**  
**quem locum.** Cf. i. 16, **quibus itineribus.**  
**aequaliter declivis,** *with even slope.*  
**adversus huic et contrarius,** etc., *facing this and opposite, clear at its base for about two hundred paces.*  
**secundum flumen,** etc., *along the river a few pickets of cavalry were seen.*

## CHAPTER XIX.

**aliter se habebat ac,** *was otherwise than.*  
**consuetudine sua.** Cf. chap. 17, **consuetudine itineris — perspecta.**  
**legiones expeditas,** *unencumbered, i. e., without the hindrance of baggage.*  
**proxume conscriptae,** *which had been last levied.* The MSS. give both spellings, **proxime** and **proxume.** In Cicero's time scholars were in doubt whether to write **imus** or **umus.** A character † was invented in the time of Claudius and employed for a short season to represent the intermediate sound between **i** and **u.** Cicero preferred **umus,** Caesar **imus;** and **imus** became the fixed form for the superlative.  
**in silvas.** The plural denotes the different portions of the forest.  
**quem ad finem = ad finem ad quem.**  
**quod tempus — convenerat,** *which had been agreed on.* Cf. i. 36, **quod convenisset.**  
**adverso colle,** *up the hill.* What is the literal translation? Is the expression an ablative of place or an ablative absolute; and where does the idea of *up* come in?

## CHAPTER XX.

**paulo longius,** *a little too far.*  
**aggeris petendi causa,** *for the purpose of seeking (material for) the rampart.*  
**successus,** *approach.*  
**his difficultatibus — subsidio,** *two things were of advantage under these difficulties.*  
**scientia atque usus.** Cf. iv. 1, **ratio atque usus.**

## CHAPTER XXI.

**quam partem — obtulit,** *whatever division chance presented to him.* What is the translation of the reading **quam in partem?**  
**milites — quam uti,** etc., *having encouraged the soldiers in a speech not longer than (was required to bid them) remember, etc.*  
**quam quo telum adici posset,** *than (the distance) to which a missile could be cast.* Cf. iii. 13, **neque propter altitudinem facile telum adiciebatur.**

## CHAPTER XXII.

**cum diversis legionibus** — *resisterent, since the legions were separated, and some were resisting the enemy in one place, and others in another.*  
**in tanta rerum iniquitate,** *in such an unfavorable state of affairs.*

## CHAPTER XXIII.

**cursu ac lassitudine exanimatos,** *out of breath from running and weariness, i. e., from their exhausting run.*  
**diversae duae legiones.** Cf. chap. 22, *diversis legionibus.*  
**conantes insecuti,** *sc. eos, i. e., Atrebatas.*  
**nudatis castris,** *sc. defensoribus.*

## CHAPTER XXIV.

**adversis** — *occurrerant, met the enemy face to face.*  
**qui cum impedimentis veniebant.** Cf. chap. 19, *impedimenta collocarat.*  
**aliquae aliam in partem,** *some one way, others another.*  
**virtutis opinio.** Cf. chap. 8, *propter eximiam opinionem virtutis.*

## CHAPTER XXV.

**Caesar,** *subject of processit.*  
**ab decimae legionis cohortatione** (*after encouraging the tenth legion*) = *ab decima legione, quam cohortatus erat.*  
**signisque** — *collatis, and since the standards were collected together.* Cf. Caesar's Civil War, i. 71, *quod collatis in unum locum signis neque ordines neque signa servarent.*  
**ad pugnam impedimento.** Cf. i. 25, *magno ad pugnam erat impedimento.*  
**signo amisso.** The loss of the standard was considered a great disgrace.  
**proelio excedere.** Cf. v. 36, *pugna ut excedant*; iv. 12, *proelio excesserat*; vii. 80, *proelio excedebant*; viii. 19, *excedere proelio*; but iii. 4, *ex pugna excedendi*; iv. 33, *ex proelio excedunt.*  
**signa inferre,** *to charge.*  
**manipulos laxare.** The pupil will find an excellent translation of part of this chapter, as well as several interesting comments upon Caesar's life, in Longfellow's "Courtship of Miles Standish."

## CHAPTER XXVI.

**urgeri ab hoste,** *was hard pressed by the enemy.*  
**aversi,** (*while*) *turned away, i. e., in their rear.*  
**cursu incitato,** *having quickened their pace.* Cf. chap. 11, *exaudito clamore* — *in fuga sibi praesidium ponerent.*  
**nilhil** — *fecerunt, made all the haste they could.* What is the literal translation?

## CHAPTER XXVII.

quo — praeferrent, *in order that they might surpass the legionary soldiers.*

in extrema spe salutis. Cf. chap. 25, in extremis suis rebus.

virtutem praestiterunt, *displayed courage.*

ut ex tumulo, *as from a mound.*

non nequiquam, *not in vain.*

quae facilia — redegerat = quae facilia — reddiderat. Cf. iv. 3, multo humiliores infirmioresque redegerunt.

## CHAPTER XXVIII.

quos — dixeramus. Cf. chap. 16, mulieres — in eum locum coniecisse.

nihil impeditum, *nothing was a hindrance.*

vix ad quingentos, *to scarcely five hundred.*

ut — videretur. videretur in the sense of the true passive of video, not *seem*, but *be seen*. *In order that it might appear that Caesar used compassion toward, etc.*

## CHAPTER XXIX.

de quibus supra scripsimus. Cf. chap. 16.

ex itinere. Cf. i. 25, ex itinere nostros — aggressi.

ex omnibus in circuitu partibus, *on all sides round about.*

ducentorum pedum qualifles aditus.

ex Cimbris Teutonisque. Cf. chap. 4.

prognati occurs rarely outside of the poets. Caesar uses the word again in vi. 18, ab Dite patre prognatos. Before this it occurs only in a letter of Coelius in Cic. Fam., 8, 15, 2 (Kr.).

agere ac portare, *drive and convey*. The regular expression for plunder is agere et ferre; cf. Greek ἀγείρω καὶ φέρειω.

alias — alias, *at one time — at another.*

illatum defenderent, *warded it off when brought against them.*

## CHAPTER XXX.

ab tanto spatio, *so far away*. Cf. chap. 7, ab milibus passuum minus duobus castra posuerunt.

Gallis contemptui, *contemptible to the Gauls.*

## CHAPTER XXXI.

existimare, sc. se.

se suaque — permittere, sc. se as subject. Cf. chap. 3, se suaque omnia in fidem — permittere.

sibi praestare, *it was better for them.*



## CHAPTER XXXII.

in *Nerviis*, *in the case of*. Cf. i. 47, *in eo peccandi causa non esset. ne quam* — *inferrent*, *not to inflict any injury.*  
*pace usi sunt*, *they enjoyed peace.*

## CHAPTER XXXIII.

*sub vesperum*, *about evening*. See note on *sub occasum*, chap. 11.  
*deducturos*, *would lead off*.  
*pellibus induxerant*, *had covered with skins*.  
*eo concursum est*, *they rushed thither*.  
*in extrema spe salutis*. Cf. chap. 25, and chap. 27, *in extremis suis rebus*.

## CHAPTER XXXIV.

*cum legione una*, i. e., the seventh. Cf. iii. 7, *cum legione septima*.  
*in dicionem potestatemque*. Cf. i. 31, *dicione atque imperio*.

## CHAPTER XXXV.

*quae incolerent*. *incolere* without object. Cf. i. 1, *qui trans Rhenum incolunt*.  
*imperata facere*. Cf. chap. 3, *obsides dare et imperata facere*.  
*inita proxima aestate*, *at the beginning of the following summer*. Cf. chap. 2, *et inita aestate*.  
*quod* — *accidit nulli*, *an honor which before that time had fallen to the lot of no one*. *quod* refers to the idea contained in the clause *dies — decreta est*. Observe the emphatic position of *nulli*. Note that *accidit* is used in a good sense, although the verb usually implies misfortune. Cf. *contigisse*, i. 43, and *peius accidisse*, i. 31.

## B O O K III.

## CHAPTER I.

*mittendi*. Cf. *hiemandi* below, and ii. 1, *coniurandi*.  
*magno cum periculo*. Observe the position of *cum* here and in *magnis cum portoriis*. Cf. i. 10.  
*iter*, accusative. Subject of *pateferi*, which depends on *volebat*.  
*ipse*. Agrees with *Galba*, the subject of *constituit* to be supplied  
*cum*. Causal.

## CHAPTER II.

**id.** Explained by the clause **ut — caperent.**

**aliquot de causis.** Particularized by (1) **primum**, *first*; (2) **tum etiam**, *secondly* (then also); (3) **accedebat**, *in the third place, finally* (it was added).

**accedebat.** The subject is **quod — habebant.**

**sibi persuasum habebant**, *they were persuaded*; literally, *they had it persuaded to themselves.*

**persuasum** agrees with the clause **Romanos — adiungere.**

## CHAPTER III.

**de frumento reliquoque commeatu.** Cf. i. 39, first part of the chapter.

**satis esse provisum.** Impersonal use; literally, *had been sufficiently provided*, i. e., sufficient provision had been made.

**neque subsidio veniri (posset)**, *neither could aid be brought*; literally, *neither could it be come for aid.*

**ad extremum = ad extremum casum.** Cf. chap. 5, also **summo**, ii. 18; **angusto**, ii. 25. In these cases we have the substantive use of the adjective.

## CHAPTER IV.

**iis rebus collocandis atque administrandis.** The dative of the gerundive construction to denote purpose.

**decurrere (et) conicere.** Asyndeton. These verbs are historical infinitives. Others are **repugnare**, **mittere**, **occurrere**, **ferre**, **superari**.

**ut**, *as often as.*

**hoc.** Explained by the rest of the sentence, **quod** etc.

**non modo = non modo non.** The order is **ac non modo facultas (non) dabatur defesso** etc.

**relinquendi** agrees with **loci.**

## CHAPTER V.

**cum.** Temporal. Explain the difference in tense in **deficerent** and **coepissent.**

**milites certiores facit**, *he directs or commands.* The meaning here is stronger than in "he informs his soldiers." Cf. Civil War, i. 64, **ut certior fieret, ne labori suo parceret.**

## CHAPTER VI.

**cognoscendi.** The gerund depends on **facultatem** and has **quid fieret** for its object.

**sui colligendi**, *to recover themselves.* **sui** is best taken, not as the genitive of the personal pronoun, but as the neuter of the possessive adjective **suus.** **suum = one's own, one's interest, one's self.** This is shown by the fact that the same stereo-

typed expression is employed irrespective of gender. Or *sui* may be explained as the genitive of the reflexive pronoun limiting *colligendi*, *recovering of themselves*. The genitive dependent on the gerund we meet with rarely in Latin; e. g. *poenarum sit-solvendi tempus*; Lucretius, v. 1225 (the only example in his works), *eius videndi*, "of seeing her;" Ter. Hec., 372. The former theory, as remarked above, seems more reasonable.

**circumventos interficiunt = circumveniunt et interficiunt.**

**fusus** and **exutis** are both in agreement with **copiis**. **armis** depends on **exutis**. **saepius**, *too often*. The meaning of the clauses which immediately follow is that he had encountered things different from his expectation when he set out.

## CHAPTER VII.

**atque ita**, *and accordingly*.

**profectus esset**. **cum** is to be taken as belonging to this clause as well as to the preceding; hence the subjunctive.

**mare Oceanum**, i. e. the Atlantic. The Mediterranean was **mare internum**, and by way of distinction this is called **mare Oceanum**. Cf. i. 30.

## CHAPTER VIII.

**et in magno impetu**. etc. The meaning is, that by reason of the great and unbroken violence of the sea, only a few harbors being on the coast and these held by the **Veneti**, they are naturally the masters of all who trade in that part of the world.

**retinendi**, *of detaining*, i. e., by detaining. Others follow their example.

**quos dedissent**. See ii. 34.

**ut sunt**, etc., *since or because*. The **ut** is causal and explanatory.

**acturos — laturos**, sc. **se** as subject.

**suos**, *his*.

**sibi**, *to them*.

**remittat**. In direct discourse what mood was used?

## CHAPTER IX.

**longius**, *too far*. Where was Caesar? See beginning of chap. 7.

**naves longas**, *ships of war*.

**in se**, *against themselves*.

**legatos — retentos — coniectos**. In apposition with **facinus**.

**hoc**, *with the greater hope on this account, or this (they do) with greater hope, because etc.*

**pedestria itinera esse concisa** and **navigationem impeditam**. Objects of **sciebant**.

**nostros exercitus — posse.** Object of *confidebant*.

**diutius,** *very long.*

**iam ut,** *even though.*

**longe aliam — atque,** *far different from.*

**naves — quam plurimas possunt,** *as many ships as possible.* Cf. i. 7, **quam maximis potest itineribus.**

#### CHAPTER X.

**multa.** Its appositives are *iniuriae, rebellio, defectio, coniuratio*, and the clause *ne — arbitrentur*.

**retentorum equitum,** *in the detention of the knights.* The participle *retentorum* conveys the leading idea. This thrusting into a participle of the main idea of the clause obtained a great vogue in later Latin, e. g., **cum occisus Caesar — facinus videretur;** Tac. Ann., i. 8, “when the murder of Caesar seemed,” etc.; **augebat metum gnarus Romanae seditionis et — invasurus hostis;** Tac. Ann., i. 36, “the fact that the enemy were acquainted with the sedition among the Romans and the fact that they would invade, etc., increased the fear.”

**equitum** refers to *Silvius, Velanius*, and others, mentioned in chap. 8.

#### CHAPTER XI.

**adeat.** Observe the omission of *ut*.

**qui curet,** *to see to it.*

**eo,** i. e., among the *Veneti*.

#### CHAPTER XII.

**posita.** In agreement with *oppida* implied in *situs oppidorum*.

**cum,** *as often as.*

**pedibus,** *on foot*, i. e., by land.

**se incitavisset,** *had come in*; literally, *had roused itself*.

**navibus,** *by ships*, i. e., by sea.

**afflictarentur,** *stranded*

**his** refers to *aggere et mollibus*.

**cuius rei = quarum,** i. e., *navium*.

**eo,** *for this reason*; referring to *quod — navigandi*.

#### CHAPTER XIII.

**factae et armatae,** *were built and equipped.*

**planiores,** *flatter*

**excipere,** *to meet, to encounter.*

**contumeliam**, *violence, buffeting.*

**quamvis**. In agreement with **vim** and **contumeliam**.

**transtra**, etc., *cross-beams (made) of timber (trabibus) a foot in thickness (altitudinem) were joined together (confixa) by iron bolts of the thickness (crassitudine) of a thumb (digiti pollicis).*

**pro**, *instead of.*

**alutae tenuiter confectae**, *thinly dressed leather.*

**posse**. Its subjects are **tempestates**, **impetus**, **onera**. It has two complementary verbs, **sustineri** to be read with the first two subjects, and **regi** to be read with **onera**. All depend on **arbitrabantur**.

**praestaret**, sc. **classis** as subject.

**reliqua**, *all other things.*

**pro**, *considering.* See i. 2, last sentence.

**illis** refers to the Gauls.

**nostrae**, sc. **naves**.

**his** and **iis** refer to the ships of the Gauls.

**copulis**, *by grappling hooks.*

**accedebat**. The subject is **ut** — **timerent**.

**cum** governs the verbs **coepissent**, **dedissent**. The next three verbs depend on **ut**.

#### CHAPTER XIV.

**frustra**, *without result*; explained by the rest of the sentence.

**neque iis noceri posse**, *nor could they be injured.* What is the literal translation?

**quae**. Subject of **convenit** and **visa est**; its antecedent is **classem**.

**paratissimae**, *thoroughly equipped.*

**ornatissimae**, *finely provided.*

**nostris**, sc. **navibus**.

**adversae**. In agreement with **naves**.

**neque satis Bruto** — **constabat**, *nor was it sufficiently clear to Brutus.* The subject of **constabat** is **quid agerent** — **insisterent**.

**noceri non posse**, *no injury could be inflicted.*

**has**, i. e., the **turres**.

**neque** — **et**. Cf. ii. 25.

**missa**, sc. **tela**.

**gravius**, *with more disastrous effect.*

**falces**. In apposition with **una res**.

**falcium**. Governed by **absimili**.

**his**, i. e., mural hooks.

**cum**, *as often as*. Used here with the indicative; but cf. chap. 12, first sentence.

**atque eo magis**. Cf. i. 47, **et eo magis**.

**nullum** — **factum**, *no unusually brave deed*, literally, *no deed a little braver*.

## CHAPTER XV.

**cum**, *as often as*. Cf. chaps. 12, 14.

**binæ ac ternæ naves**, *ships by twos and threes*.

**singulas**, *one by one*.

**quod**. Subject of **fieri** and refers to last part of previous sentence.

**ferebat**, *was bearing, was blowing*.

**malacia ac tranquillitas**, *calm and stillness*.

**exstitit**, *stood out, prevailed*.

**quæ res**, *this circumstance, i. e., the calm*.

**cum**, *since*; explanatory of **noctis interventu**.

## CHAPTER XVI.

**cum — tum**, *not only — but also*. Cf. ii. 4, near the end.

**navium quod ubique fuerat**, *whatever vessels they had anywhere, literally, what of vessels had been anywhere*.

**quibus**, *these, i. e., the vessels*.

**vindicandum (esse)**, etc. The meaning is, Caesar thought that the more severe punishment ought to be inflicted on these for this reason, that, etc.

**sub corona**, *under the crown, i. e. as slaves*. Prisoners of war, when about to be sold into slavery, were crowned with chaplets. So it has been said, but the real origin of the expression is unknown.

## CHAPTER XVII.

**quas — acceperat**. See chap. 11.

**auctores**, *authors, i. e., to sanction the war*. What is the etymological meaning of the English word "author"? Cf. **augeo**.

**idoneo** agrees with **loco** and determines case of **castris**.

**cum**. Concessive. Cf. i. 14, **cum ea ita sint**.

**pugnandi potestatem faceret**. Cf. i. 40, near middle.

**non solum — sed etiam**. Cf. chap. 16, **cum — tum**.

**in contemptionem veniret**. Cf. i. 18, **in spem venire**.

**opinionem**, *impression*.

**ea causa**. Explained by rest of the sentence.

**eo**, *i. e., Caesar*.

## CHAPTER XVIII.

**quid fieri velit**. Object of **edocet**.

**pro perfuga**, *as if he were a deserter*.

**quibus — proficiscatur**. Object of **docet**.

**neque longius abesse quin**, *it is not further off than the next night that Sabinus, etc.*

**quod**, *this*, i. e., the information given above.  
**amittendam esse — oportere**. Asyudeton.  
**ad castra iri oportere**, *they ought to go to the camp*; literally, *it ought to be gone to the camp*.

**res**. Its appositives are **cunctatio**, **confirmatio**, **inopia**, **spes**, and **quod — credunt**.

**superiorum dierum Sabini**. Double genitive. Cf. ii. 17, **eorum dierum**.  
**prius**, with **quam** following, *before*.

**ut explorata victoria**, *as if victory were sure*. Cf. v. 43, **sicuti parta iam atque explorata victoria**.

## CHAPTER XIX.

**imo**. See note on **extremum**, chap. 3.

**ac terga verterent**, *but turned their backs*, i. e., fled. **ac** after a negative clause is best rendered by *but*. See note on **non potuerunt ac terga**, iv. 35.

**quos**, *these fugitives*. Notice how frequently Caesar uses the relative at the beginning of a sentence where we use the demonstrative.

**paucos**, *but few*. Object of **reliquerunt**.

**Sabinus**, sc. **certior factus est**.

**animus**, *disposition*.

**mens**, *mind*.

## CHAPTER XX.

**ex tertia parte**, *as a third part*.

**finitimae**. In agreement with **civitates**.

**paucis annis**. Nothing is known of Valerius. The defeat of Mallius is usually assigned to 78 B. C. during the Sertorian war, in which some of the Gauls participated.

**non mediocrem diligentiam**. Cf. i. 39, **non mediocriter**.

**quo plurimum valebant**, *in which they were very powerful*. Cf. ii. 17, **nihil possent and pedestribus valent copiis**.

## CHAPTER XXI.

**nostri**. Subject of **cuperent**.

**perspici**. The subject is the clause **quid — possent**

**vertere**. The short form of the third person plural of the perfect, which is rarely used in Caesar (Civil War, i. 51, iii. 63).

**alias — alias**, *now — again, at one time — at another*. Cf. ii. 29.

**aerariae structurae**, *copper mines*.

## CHAPTER XXII.

**condicio**, *manner of living*.

**amicitiae**. Indirect object of **dediderint**.

**qui**. Subject of **recusaret**.

**condicione**, *terms*.

## CHAPTER XXIII.

**oppidum.** Subject of **expugnatum esse.**

**ventum erat,** *they had come.* Impersonal construction.

**quoqueversum,** *in every direction.*

**finitimae.** In agreement with **quae.** *Which belong to (are of) hither Spain, nearest to Aquitania.*

**cum** after **magna.** Note its position. See note on iii. 1.

**quod.** Explained by the clause **suas — augeri.**

**animadvertit.** Its object is **quod,** which is explained by **copias diduci; hostem vagari, obsidere, relinquere; frumentum commeatumque supportari; numerum augeri.**

**in dies,** *daily.*

## CHAPTER XXIV.

**prima luce.** See i. 22.

**esse.** Its subject is **potiri.**

**infirmiore animo.** This ablative of quality is equivalent to an adjective. Cf. Afr. War, 78, **integros recentioribusque viribus equites.** For a like adjective phrase, see note on **ex essedis,** iv. 33.

**expectari — iretur,** *they should hesitate no longer to go to the camp.*

## CHAPTER XXV.

**cum — cum.** The first **cum** determines the mood of **complerent, depellerent,** and **praeberent;** the second **cum,** the mood of **pugnaretur** and **acciderent.**

**ad pugnam,** *for fighting.*

**pugnaretur.** Impersonal.

## CHAPTER XXVI.

**quid fieri velit.** Object of **ostendit.**

**erat imperatum.** Impersonal.

**intritae,** from **in,** negative and **terere,** *to rub.* Explain the use of this word; that of the Eng. *trite.*

**prius — quam,** *before.*

**videri.** Complement of **possent** understood.

**quid — gereretur.** Subject of **posset.**

**multa nocte,** *late at night.* Cf. **multo die,** i. 22.

## CHAPTER XXVII.

**ultro,** *besides.*



## CHAPTER XXVIII.

**longe ac — Galli**, in a far different way from the rest of the Gauls.  
**continentes silvas**, unbroken forests. Explain the exact force of **continentes** from its composition.  
**longius**, too far.

## CHAPTER XXIX.

**deinceps** = almost an adjective **continuis**, successively, one after another. Cf. v. 40, **reliquis deinceps diebus**, and Civil War, iii. 56, **omnibus deinceps diebus**. The adverb is inserted between the adjective and the noun as if in imitation of the Greek idiom *οἱ τότε ἄνθρωποι*, the men of that time. For this adjective force of the adverb in an English derivative, see the word *peninsula* (*pæne* + *insula*). **paeninsula** occurs first in Latin in poem XXXI. of Catullus.  
**materiam**, timber.  
**ab latere**, on the flank.  
**sub pellibus**, under skins, i. e., in tents which were covered with skins.

## BOOK IV.

## CHAPTER I.

**qui fuit — consulibus**. This clause establishes the date. Pompey and Crassus entered upon their consulship on the first of January in the year 55 B. C.  
**Gneo — Crasso**. Observe the omission of the conjunction, as in i. 35, **M. Mesala — consulibus**.  
**magna cum multitudine**. For the position of the preposition, cf. i. 10, **magno cum periculo**.  
**exagitati**, having been harassed. Cf. ii. 29, **a finitimis exagitati**.  
**anno post**, the year after.  
**ratio atque usus belli**, the art and practice of war. Cf. ii. 20, **scientia atque usus militum**.  
**longius anno** = **diutius anno**, longer than one year. Cf. vii. 9, **longius triduo**. Does **longe** usually refer to place or time? Cf. **longe** and **longius** iii. 28, **longius** i. 22, **longissime** i. 1.  
**maximam partem**, for the most part.  
**lacte atque pecore vivunt** Cf. v. 14, **lacte et carne vivunt**.  
**sunt in venationibus**. Cf. vi. 21, **vita omnis in venationibus — consistit**.  
**quae res**, and this fact.

**nullo officio** — **assuefacti**, *having been accustomed to no service nor discipline.*  
**locis frigidissimis**, *though their country is very cold.*  
**vestitus**, *partitive genitive with quicquam.*

## CHAPTER II.

**ut, quae** — **habeant**, *so that they have (persons) to whom they may sell those things which they have taken in war.*

**quam quo** — **desiderent**, *than because they desire, etc.*

**impenso parant pretio**, *procure at a great price.* Exact meaning of **impenso** ?

**haec** — **efficiunt**, *by daily exercise they make these capable of great labor.*

**cum usus est**, *when there is need.* For this meaning of **usus**, cf. vi. 15, **hi, cum est usus atque aliquod bellum incidit, omnes in bello versantur.**

**vinum** — **arbitrantur.** Cf. ii. 15, **nihil pati vini** — **inferri.**

## CHAPTER III.

**publice** — **laudem**, *they consider it the greatest praise as a community.* Cf. vi. 23, **civitatibus maxima laus est, quam, etc.**

**una** — **a Suebis**, *in one direction from the Suebi.*

**ut est captus Germanorum**, *as is the capacity (captus being a noun) of the Germans, considering the mode of life among the Germans.*

**redegerunt** = **reddiderunt.** Cf. ii. 27, **magnitudo redegerat.**

## CHAPTER IV.

**in eadem causa**, *in the same condition.*

**ad extremum tamen**, *at last however.*

**ad utramque ripam**, *on each bank.*

**transire prohibebant.** For the construction with **prohibere** in this sense, cf. ii. 4, **ingredi prohibuerint.**

## CHAPTER V.

**infirmi** **infirmi**, *fickleness.*

**nihil his committendum existimavit**, *thought that no confidence should be placed in them.*

**est** — **consuetudinis**, *this belongs to Gallic custom, i. e., is a Gallic custom.*

**vulgus circumscissat** — **cogant.** Notice the change in number caused by the collective idea in **vulgus.** Cf. i. 2, **civitati persuasit, ut** — **exirent.**

**his rebus** — **permoti.** Cf. i. 37, **quibus rebus** — **commotus.**

**quorum** — **necesse est**, *of which they must repent on the spot.* Cf. iv. 2.

**rumoribus serviant**, *are slaves to idle reports.* Cf. vii. 34, **bello servire.**

## CHAPTER VI.

**ne graviori — occurreret**, *that he might not encounter too serious a war.*

**occurreret**. Cf. iii. 6, **in bellum incideret**.

**uti — discederent**, *to withdraw from the Rhine, i. e., to go farther into Gaul.*

**qua spe adducti**, *influenced by the hope of this; literally, by which hope.* **qua spe** = **huius rei spe**, as in i. 9, **ea civitate** = **ex eorum civitate**, and i. 10, **quae civitas** = **quorum civitas**, and v. 19, **hoc metu** = **huius rei metu**.

**constituit**, *made known his resolve.*

## CHAPTER VII.

**quibus in locis**. Cf. i. 6, **quibus itineribus**.

**a quibus** refers to **ea loca**.

**resistere**, sc. **iis** as antecedent of **quicumque**.

**posse**, sc. **se**.

**possederint**, *come into possession of*. For **possidere** in sense of **potiri**, cf. **aer omne necessesit — possidat inane**, Lucret. i. 386.

**concedere**, *are inferior*.

**neminem**. Observe the emphatic position. Cf. i. 3, **quod aliud iter — nullum**.

## CHAPTER VIII.

**quae visum est**, *what seemed proper*. **quae** object of **respondere** to be supplied.

**verum**, *reasonable, just*. Cf. Cic. Tusc. 3, 29, 73, **rectum et verum est, ut amemus**.

## CHAPTER IX.

**post diem tertium**, *the third day after*.

**ne propius — moveret**, *that he should not advance nearer them*.

**hos — equites**, *they were waiting for this cavalry; literally, this cavalry was being waited for*.

## CHAPTER X.

**ex monte Vosego** = **ex ea parte montis**; **monte** means here a long mountain-chain; see map. This reference is not in point considering the whole context in chap. 1.

**parte quadam**, *a tributary*.

**neque longius milibus**. Cf. i. 15, **amplius — senis milibus**; also i. 22, **non longius — quingentis passibus**.

**citatus**, *with a rapid current*.

**sunt qui**, *there are some who*.

**existimantur**, not the subjunctive, because **sunt qui** is simply equivalent to **nonnulli**.

**capitibus**, *mouths*; elsewhere the word usually signifies *sources*.

## CHAPTER XI.

ut — constitutum. See chap. 9. Cf. i. 22, ut erat praeceptum.

in itinere congressi = congressi cum eo, qui in itinere erat.

praemitteret, *to send on*. Observe the omission of the object.

sibi — faceret, *that he would grant them permission*.

fecisset. For two subjects with singular verb, cf. ii. 26, quantoque in periculo et castra et legiones et imperator versaretur. Many editions have fecissent. In the MSS. the nasal was indicated by a curved mark over the vowel; hence confusions were very easy; e. g. FECISSET and FECISSÊT.

eodem illo pertinere. Cf. i. 14, eodem pertinere.

## CHAPTER XII.

ubi primum = cum primum or simul ac.

amplius — equites, *more than eight hundred cavalry*. What other construction after amplius? See chap. 10.

rursus resistentibus, *while our men in their turn made a stand*. Supply nostris.

subfossis, from subfodere, *stabbed underneath*.

ita perterritos egerunt. Note the force of per in perterritos. Cf. v. 17, praecipites hostes egerunt.

amicus — appellatus. Cf. i. 3, a senatu — amicus appellatus.

## CHAPTER XIII.

per dolum atque insidias. Cf. i. 42, ne per insidias — circumveniretur.

expectare; subject of esse.

cognita — infirmitate, *knowing the fickleness of the Gauls*. For this meaning of infirmitas, cf. chap. 5, et infirmitatem Gallorum.

postridie eius diei. Cf. i. 23.

Germani frequentes. Cf. chap. 1, magna cum multitudine.

sui purgandi causa, *to acquit themselves*. For the construction sui purgandi, see note on sui colligendi, iii. 6.

contra atque esset dictum, *contrary to what had been said*.

de induitiis — impetrarent, *might obtain their request for a truce by deceiving (him)*. Cf. v. 36, de sua ac militum salute impetrari posse.

## CHAPTER XIV.

quid ageretur, *what was going on*.

discessu suorum, *by the absence of their chiefs*.

perturbantur. The word is used in a pregnant sense. It is equivalent to *they are so confounded as to be in doubt*.

**praestaret.** Impersonal.

**quo loco,** *in this place.*

**ad quos consecrandos,** *to pursue them.* Caesar's conduct in this matter is a specimen of the barbarity of his age. It shows the little value set upon human life when ambition was to be gratified. Plutarch tells us that this act was severely censured at Rome.

## CHAPTER XV.

**clamore audito,** *hearing the outcry,* i. e. of their women and children, who were being slain.

**suos interfici,** *that their own families were being massacred.*

**ad confluentem,** *at the confluence.* The word is properly a participle, agreeing originally with some word which has dropped out. Cf. **continens** (terra), continent.

**ad unum omnes,** *all to the last man.*

**ex timore,** *after the alarm.*

**capitum.** Cf. i. 29, **capitum Helvetiorum.**

## CHAPTER XVI.

**Germanico — confecto.** Cf. i. 30, **bello Helvetiorum confecto.**

**quarum illa fuit iustissima.** *of these the following was the most important.*

**suis quoque — voluit,** *he desired that they should fear for their own possessions.*

**accessit — quod,** *moreover; literally, it was added also that, etc.*

**supra commemoravi.** See chap. 9, **magnam — missam.**

**eos — dederent,** *to surrender those who, etc.* Observe the omission of **ut.** Cf. iii. 5, **certiores facit, paulisper intermitterent,** etc.

**cur — postularet,** *why did he claim that anything beyond the Rhine was under his sway or power?*

**occupationibus reipublicae,** *by the business of the state.*

**opinionem,** *reputation.*

## CHAPTER XVII.

**neque — statuebat,** *nor considered that it was consistent with his own dignity or that of the Roman people.*

**proponebatur,** *was manifest; literally, was presented to him.*

**rationem — instituit,** *he determined upon this plan of a bridge.*

**tigna,** *posts or piles.* **bina,** *in pairs.* **sesquipedalia,** *a foot and a half thick.* **ab imo praeacuta,** *sharpened at the lower end.* **dimensa ad altitudinem,** *proportioned to the depth.*

**haec cum machinationibus — adegerat,** *when he had sunk (immissa) these into the river by means of engines and secured them there (defixerat), and had then driven them down (adegerat) with rammers.*

**sublicae modo**, *like a pile.*

**ut — procumberent**, *so as to incline according to the current.*

**contra — conversa**, *turned against the force and current of the river.*

**haec utraque — distinebantur**, *these (two) pairs were kept apart by timbers, two feet thick, laid on above (for two feet was the distance between the piles) with two ties at each end.*

**quibus — revinctis**, *these being kept apart and secured at opposite ends.*

**hoc artius**, *so much the more closely.*

**haec contexebantur**, *these were covered with timbers laid over them lengthwise.*

**ac nihilo secius**, *and besides all this.*

*et, also.*

**pro ariete**, *as a buttress.*

**aliae**, *sc. sublicae.*

**deiciendi operis**, *for the purpose of throwing down the work.* The genitive expresses purpose as if *causa* or *gratia* had been employed. Such a genitive of the gerundive is best explained as the genitive of quality. This construction is especially common in late Latin. Cf. Tac. Ann. ii. 59, *Aegyptum proficiscitur cognoscendae antiquitatis.*

#### CHAPTER XVIII.

**diebus decem, quibus**, *within ten days.* Cf. iii. 23, **paucis diebus, quibus.**

**firmiter praesidio**, *strong guard.* Cf. i. 3, **per tres — firmissimos populos.**

**liberaliter respondit.** Cf. ii. 5, **liberaliterque oratione prosecutus.**

**institutum coeptus est.** Why is *coeptus* passive ?

#### CHAPTER XIX.

**vicis aedificiisque.** Cf. i. 5, **vicos — aedificia incendunt.**

**hunc esse — medium**, *this had been selected near the centre.* *medium* agrees directly with *hunc.* Cf. vi. 13, **regio totius Galliae media.**

*rebus* is explained by the clauses **ut — iniceret, ut — ulcisceretur, etc.**

#### CHAPTER XX.

**exigua — reliqua.** Ablative absolute. Cf. iii. 29, **reliquis item civitatibus.**

**tamen in Britanniam — contendit.** See description of Britain in Introduction.

**omnibus — intellegebat**, *because he discovered that help had been furnished to our enemy from that country in nearly all the wars with the Gauls.*

**si tempus — tamen**, *even if time should fail, yet, etc.*

**Gallis — incognita**, *i. e. except the Veneti.* Cf. iii. 8, **Veneti in Britanniam navigare consuerunt.** According to ii. 4, Divitiacus once had the government, — **tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtinuerit.**

**iis ipsis**, i. e. mercatoribus.

**contra Gallias**, *opposite to Gaul*. The plural refers to the several divisions. **quem usum**, *what skill*.

## CHAPTER XXI.

**Volusenum**. See iii. 5; vi. 41; viii. 48.

**idoneum**, *a suitable person*.

**navi longa**, *war-ship*.

**ad Veneticum bellum**. See iii. 9.

**qui polliceantur** — **dare**. The present infinitive for the future **se daturos esse** is a rare construction after **polliceor**. In chap. 22 the regular tense is employed, **facturos pollicerentur**.

**Atrebatibus superatis**, i. e. in the battle of the Sambre. See ii. 23.

**ibi** = *apud Atrebatas*.

**magni habebatur**, *was estimated highly*.

**fidem sequantur**, *to embrace the alliance*. Cf. v. 20, **secutos fidem**.

**seque** — **venturum**, *that he (Caesar) would come*. For **se** referring to subject of **imperat**, cf. ii. 35, **ab nationibus** — **mitterentur** — **qui se** — **imperata facturas pollicerentur**.

## CHAPTER XXII.

**superioris temporis consilio**, *for their former (hostile) purpose*.

**anni tempus**. Cf. chap. 20, **si tempus anni**.

**has tantularum rerum occupationes**, *attention to such trifling matters as these*. Cf. chap. 16, **occupationibus rei publicae**.

**navium longarum**. See chap. 21. Cf. Greek *μακρὰ πλοῖα*.

**ducendum dedit**, *gave to lead*. **ducendum** is in agreement with **exercitum**. This use of the gerundive to express purpose is common. An early construction, and perhaps the original (cf. note on i. 11), is the gerund as direct object of a verb and itself taking a direct object; e. g. on an old Latin inscription, **portas, turreis, moiros, turreisque aequas qum moiro faciendum coiraverunt**.

## CHAPTER XXIII.

**solvit**, *sets sail*. Supply **naves**. For the omission of this object, cf. chap. 28, **naves (nom.)** — **leni vento solverunt**. In chap. 35 the object is expressed, **ipse** — **naves solvit**.

**hora quarta**, about 8.30 o'clock in the morning. Cf. iii. 15.

**dum** — **convenirent**, *until the rest of the ships should come there*.

**ut** — **administrarentur**, *as military science and especially the management of ships require (since these have a rapid and uncertain movement) that all things should be performed by them promptly*. Note the omission of **ut** with **administrarentur**,

and that *postularent* following *ut, as*, would be the indicative in direct discourse. Cf. *ut — ratio — postulabat* ii. 22.

*sublatis ancoris*, *the anchors having been weighed.*

## CHAPTER XXIV.

*quo genere = quibus.*

*egredi prohibebant.* See note on *suos ingredi prohibuerint*, ii. 4. Notice the force of the imperfect.

*ignotis locis.* Cf. *locis frigidissimis*, chap. 1.

*militibus — desiliendum*, *the soldiers had to leap down.*

*simul et — et — et*, etc. Observe the repetition of the conjunctions (Polysyndeton).

*insuefactos*, *trained to this.*

## CHAPTER XXV.

*motus — expeditior.* Cf. iii. 13, *ut una celeritate et pulsu remorum praestaret.*

*naves — removeri*, *to be withdrawn a little.* Obj. of *iussit.*

*quae res*, *this manœuvre.*

*atque*, *and now.*

*qui — aquilam ferebat = aquilifer.* The omitted antecedent of *qui* is the subject of *inquit.*

*contestatus*, *calling upon.*

*ea res*, *his act*, i. e., what he was about to do.

*praestitero*, *I shall have discharged.* The future perfect expresses here the promptness of the action.

*cohortati inter se*, *exhorting one another.* For *inter se* taking the place of the direct object, cf. vi. 8, *cum Galli cohortati inter se*; and vi. 40, *itaque inter se cohortati.*

*ex proximis — navibus = ii, qui in proximis navibus erant, ex iis* (i. e. *navibus*) *cum conspexissent.* The subject of *appropinquarent* is *ii* implied in *ex proximis*, (*those*) *from the nearest.*

## CHAPTER XXVI.

*ab utrisque*, *on both sides*; literally, *by those on both sides.*

*ordines servare*, *keep their ranks.*

*alius alia ex navi*, *one from one vessel, another from another.*

*quibus signis — se aggregabat*, *assembled about whatever standards he met. singulares, one by one.*

*in universos*, *upon our collected forces.* See *universi — desiluerunt*, chap. 25.

*scaphas longarum navium*, *the boats belonging to the ships of war.*

*simul = simul atque*, *as soon as.*

*in arido.* Cf. chap. 24, *aut ex arido.*



## CHAPTER XXVII.

**simul atque** — **receperunt**. Cf. ii. 12, **priusquam** — **reciperent**.  
**miserunt** — **polliciti sunt**. Notice the asyndeton.  
**supra demonstraveram**. See chap. 21.  
**oratoris modo**, *in the character of ambassador*.  
**ut ignosceretur**, *that pardon might be granted*.  
**in continentem**. See note on **confluentem**, chap. 16.  
**remigrare in agros**, *to retire to their country*.

## CHAPTER XXVIII.

**supra demonstratum est**. See chaps. 22 and 23.  
**ex superiore portu**. Cf. chap. 23, **in ulteriorem portum**.  
**solverunt**. See note on **solvit**, chap. 23.  
**aliae** — **aliae**, *some — others*.  
**quae** — **solis occasum**. Note the use of the adverb **propius** and the meaning of **solis occasum**. For the latter, cf. i. 1.

## CHAPTER XXIX.

**luna plena**. Astronomical calculation fixes this time of full moon on the night of the 30th of August, 55 B. C.  
**qui dies**, *which period* (of full moon). Cf. chap. 36, **die aequinoctii**.  
**aestus maximos**, *spring tides*.  
**transportandum curaverat**. See note on **ducendum dedit**, chap. 22.  
**id quod**, *a thing which*. **id** is in apposition with the clause **magna — facta**.  
**quod omnibus constabat**, *because it was evident to all*.

## CHAPTER XXX.

**principes**, subject of **duxerunt**.  
**convenerant**. See chap. 27, **principesque undique convenire** — **coeperunt**.  
**quae hoc** — **angustiora**, *which was smaller on this account*. See below  
**factu**. See note on **perfacile factu**, i. 3.  
**ex** — **discedere**. Cf. chap. 27, **remigrare in agros**.

## CHAPTER XXXI.

**ex eventu navium**, *from the fate of the ships*. Cf. viii. 23, **quae Bellovacorum speculabantur eventum**.  
**ex eo quod**, *from the fact that*.  
**ad omnes casus**, *against every emergency*.  
**quae** — **naves**, **earum**, *of those ships which, etc.*  
**quae** — **usui**, *whatever was of use*.  
**reliquis ut** — **effecit**, *he brought it about that the voyage could be made well enough with the rest*.

## CHAPTER XXXII.

**frumentatum**, supine.

**neque ulla -- interposita**, *no suspicion of war having arisen as yet.*

**hominum**, i. e., the Britons.

**ventitaret**, *kept coming again and again.* Note that the tense and the derivative ending combine to make this a double imperfect.

**quam consuetudo ferret**, *than usual*; literally, *than custom brought.*

**id, quod erat**, *that which was really the case.*

**aliquid -- consilii.** In apposition with **id.**

**armari**, *to arm themselves.* The verb has a middle or reflexive force. The passive voice is a development of the middle, denoting the action upon the subject. A verb of this kind shows the easy transition to the passive. A survival of the middle voice is met with in the deponent verbs **utor**, **fruor**, etc., and the ablative after them is explained as an ablative of means; e. g. **vescor carne**, *I eat meat*; literally, *I support myself by means of meat.*

**aegre sustinere**, *to stand their ground with difficulty.* For **sustinere** used absolutely, cf. ii. 6, **sustinere non posse**, and chap. 11, at end.

## CHAPTER XXXIII.

**genus hoc -- pugnae**, *their method of fighting from chariots is as follows.* **ex essedis** is a prepositional phrase which is taken with **pugnae** almost in the sense of an adjective. **ex essedis pugnae**, *chariot fighting.* Cf. v. 13, **omnes ex Gallia naves = omnes Gallicae naves.**

**cum se -- insinuaverunt**, *when they have worked themselves in among the troops of cavalry.*

**ita mobilitatem -- praestant**, *thus they display the speed of horse and the firmness of foot in battles.*

**per temonem percurrere**, *run along the pole.*

## CHAPTER XXXIV.

**eius adventu.** Cf. iii. 23, **quorum adventu.**

**hostes constiterunt, nostri -- receperunt.** For the asyndeton, cf. i. 18, **concilium dimittit, Liscum retinet.**

**ad lacessendum.** Observe the omission of the object.

**alienum tempus**, *an unfavorable time.*

**quae -- prohiberent**, *so as to keep our men in camp and hinder the enemy from fighting.*

**sui liberandi**, *of freeing themselves.* What part of speech is **sui**? See note on **sui colligendi**, iii. 6.

**quanta -- daretur.** Indirect question after **demonstraverunt.**

## CHAPTER XXXV.

**idem** — fore, *the same thing would occur which*, etc.

**ut** — **effugerent**. In apposition with **idem**.

**de quo ante dictum est**. See chap. 21.

**ferre non potuerunt ac terga verterunt**, *were not able to bear, but turned their backs*. For this use of **ac**, **et**, and **que** after a negative clause, cf. chap. 36, **non potuerunt et paulo infra delatae sunt**; also iii. 19, **ne unum quidem nostrorum impetum ferrent ac statim terga verterent**; and vii. 4, **non destitit tamen atque in agris habet delectum**. Our idiom requires the adversative conjunction.

**tanto spatio** — **quantum**, *as far as*; literally, *over as much space as*.

## CHAPTER XXXVI.

**legati** — **de pace venerunt**. Cf. i. 27, **Helvetii** — **legatos de deditione** — **miserunt**; ii. 6, **qui legati de pace** — **venerant**; chap. 27, **legatos de pace miserunt**. **die aequinoctii**, *the time of the equinox*.

**hiemi navigationem subiciendam**, *that the voyage should be exposed to foul weather*.

**portus capere**, *to reach the port*. Cf. chap. 26, **cursum tenere atque insulam capere**

**et** — **delatae sunt**. See note on **ac**, chap. 35, **ac terga verterunt**.

## CHAPTER XXXVII.

**quibus ex navibus**, i. e. the two transports mentioned in chap. 36, **onerariae duae**.

**non ita magno**, *not very large*.

**circumsteterunt**, *surrounded them*. For the omission of an object, cf. i. 48, **si qui** — **deciderat**, **circumsistebant**.

**ad clamorem**, *at the cry*.

**postea** — **quam** = **posteaquam** by tmesis. A fragment of Ennius shows an excessive case of tmesis which is a curiosity, — **saxo cere comminuit brum** = **saxo cerebrum comminuit**, *he crushed his head with a stone*.

## CHAPTER XXXVIII.

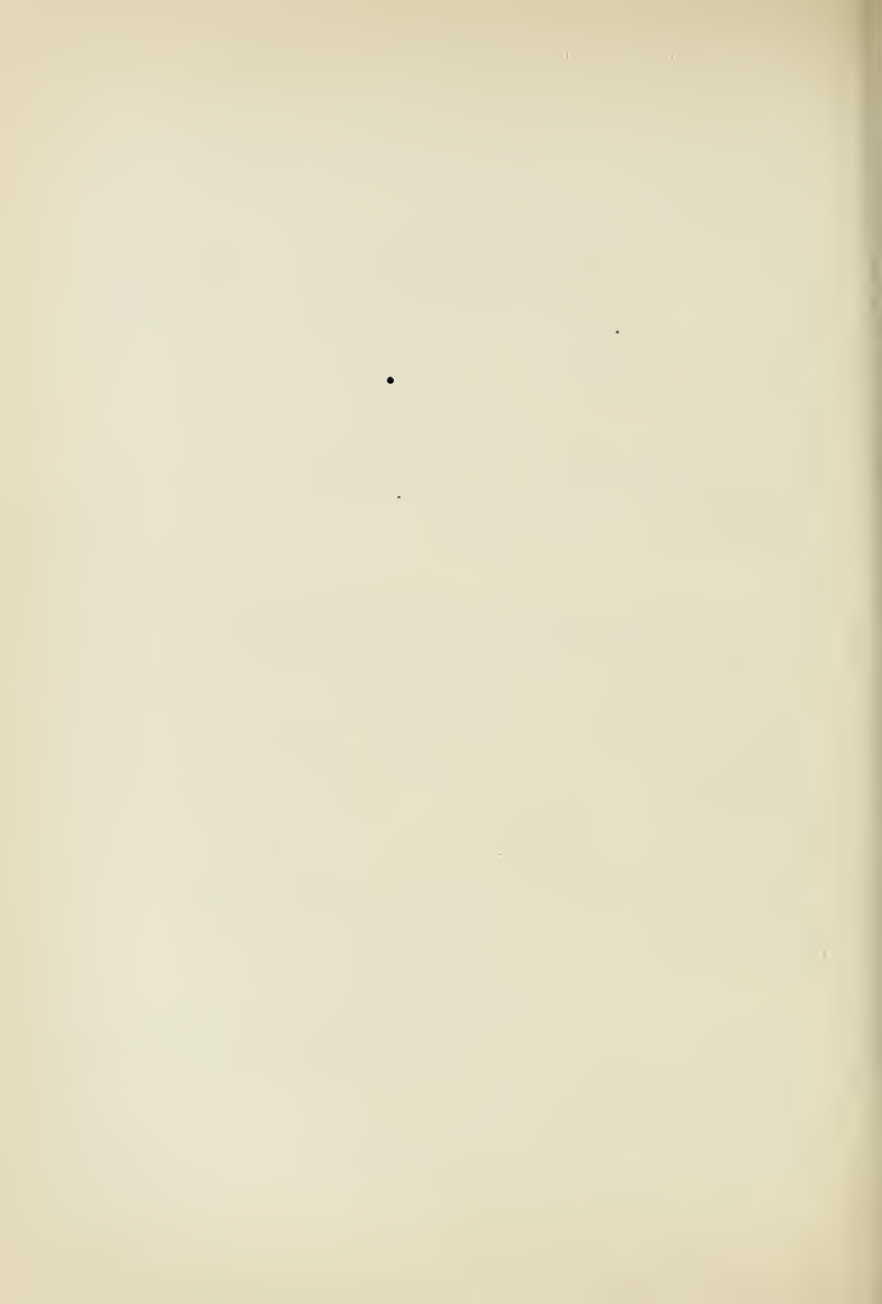
**qui cum**, *since they*.

**siccitates**. The plural of the abstract noun is explained by the plural **paludum**. Cf. vi. 30, **silvarum ac fluminum petunt propinquitates**.

**superiore anno**. See iii. 28 and 29.

**quo** — **reciperent**, *whither they could betake themselves*.

**supplicatio**. Cf. ii. 35, **dies quindecim supplicatio**.



## EXERCISES IN LATIN COMPOSITION.

---

The numerals indicate the chapters in the Text upon which the Vocabulary of the Exercise is based.

---

### I. 2.

A. & G. 255; G. 408; H. 431, 4. A. & G. 245, *b*; G. 407, R. 1; H. 416, N. 1. A. & G. 253; G. 398, H. 424. A. & G. 249; G. 405; H. 421, 1. A. & G. 286; G. 510; H. 491.

OF the Helvetians, Orgetorix was by far the most wealthy. When Messala was consul, the nobility was incited by his desire for sovereignty to form a conspiracy. He persuades the state to go forth from the territory. <sup>1</sup>“Will it not be very easy, O Helvetians, since you excel all in valor, to get the power of the whole of Gaul? To this I can persuade you the more easily, because the character of the country confines you on every side; on the one side, the Rhine, a very deep river, separates our land from the Germans; on the other side Mt. Jura is between us and the Sequani.” These circumstances caused the Helvetians to range less widely and less easily make war upon all persons. Hence it resulted that the men were affected with great sorrow, since they were fond of war. In the consulship of Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso these Helvetians thought that considering their renown for bravery their territory was too narrow, although it extends 240 miles.

<sup>1</sup> Introduce by **nonne**.

### I. 3.

A. & G. 300; G. 433; H. 542, III. A. & G. 317; G. 545, 1; H. 497, II. A. & G. 296; G. 428; H. 544, 1. A. & G. 303, R.; G. 437; H. 547, N. 1.

By these facts Orgetorix induced them to provide such things as were necessary for their departure. <sup>1</sup>It was necessary that they should buy up as great a number

<sup>1</sup> **oportere**.

as possible of heasts of burden, make as large sowings as possible, in order that plenty of grain might be on hand, and establish peace with their neighbors. Two years are sufficient to execute their designs. The third year was fixed by them for their departure. Orgetorix,<sup>2</sup> having taken upon himself the embassy to the states, persuades Casticus to seize the power in his own state. Dumnorix was much beloved by the people, and attempts the same, since the daughter of Orgetorix had been given him in marriage. It was a very easy thing for the Helvetians to accomplish their attempts, because Orgetorix could obtain the sovereignty of his own state, and there was no doubt that they were the most powerful of Gaul. "I assure you,"<sup>3</sup> says Orgetorix, "that I shall get the power with my own army." The Helvetians, incited by this speech, and<sup>2</sup> giving a pledge to one another, hope that they can get possession of the whole of Gaul.

<sup>2</sup> Ablative absolute.

<sup>3</sup> inquit.

### I. 5, 6.

A. & G. 250; G. 400; H. 417, 2. A. & G. 258; G. 410; H. 380, II, 2. A. & G. 317; G. 545, 1; H. 497, II. A. & G. 320; G. 633; H. 503, I. A. & G. 376; G. app.; H. 642-644.

After the death of Orgetorix the Helvetians attempted to do that which had been resolved upon, namely, to go forth from their territory. Thinking that they were ready for this undertaking, they set fire to their towns, about twelve in number. All the grain is burned, except what can be carried with them. The Helvetians take away the hope of a return home, and are ready to undergo all dangers. <sup>1</sup> Each one should carry forth from home for himself provisions for three months. <sup>2</sup> The Rauraci are persuaded to adopt the same plan. <sup>3</sup> And so the Rauraci burn down their towns and set out with the Helvetians, who had united to themselves the Boii, dwelling on the other side of the Rhine. Of the two routes by which it was possible to go forth from the country, one was so narrow that scarcely the wagons could be drawn in single file, over which a very high mountain hangs. <sup>4</sup> Hence they fear that a very few might hinder them; the other was much easier, and the Helvetians thought that they could persuade the Allohoges to allow them to pass through their territory. A day was appointed on which they all should meet at the Rhone. This day was not the 15th of April, but <sup>5</sup> without doubt they must meet on the 25th of March.

<sup>1</sup> cuique cibaria efferenda.

<sup>2</sup> Rauracis persuadetur.

<sup>3</sup> itaque.

<sup>4</sup> hac de causa vereri ne.

<sup>5</sup> sine dubio.

## I. 9, 10.

A. & G. 325; G. 586; H. 521, II, 2. A. & G. 227; G. 345; H. 385. A. & G. 336; G. 653, H. 524. A. & G. 228; G. 346; H. 386.

If the Sequani were unwilling, the Helvetians could not pass by the way which was left. They send Dumnorix to persuade them, since his popularity had great influence among the Sequani, and since Dumnorix himself was anxious for a revolution and wished to have as many states as possible attached to him. Therefore, <sup>1</sup>having undertaken the affair, he persuaded the Sequani not to hinder the Helvetians in their march, but allow them to pass without harm. When it was reported to Caesar that the Helvetians were intending to march through the territory of the Sequani, he saw that it would be attended with great danger to have warlike men in an open country. For these reasons Titus Labienus is appointed to the command of the fortifications <sup>2</sup>which had been made. By forced marches Caesar proceeded to Italy in order to levy two legions and march with them by the nearest route across the Alps into Further Gaul. After having routed the Centrones, who attempted to hinder his army on the march, and <sup>3</sup>having arrived in the territory of the Vocontii, he led his army among the Segusiani, who were the first beyond the Province.

<sup>1</sup> Ablative absolute.

<sup>2</sup> Participle.

<sup>3</sup> Introduce by a *cum* clause.

## I. 12.

A. & G. 334; G. 469; H. 529, II. A. & G. 319; G. 554; H. 500, II. A. & G. 191; G. 324, R. 6; H. 443, N. 1. A. & G. 286; G. 510, H. 491.

The Saône flows through the territories of the Haedui with such incredible slowness that the eye cannot determine in which direction it flows. When spies informed Caesar that the Helvetians were crossing this river by rafts joined together, he sets out from the camp with three legions about the third watch, and comes up with a part of their forces, because all of them had not yet crossed the stream. This division <sup>1</sup>was encumbered with baggage and did not expect that Caesar would attack them. A great part of them was cut to pieces; the rest <sup>2</sup>betaking themselves to flight concealed themselves in the nearest woods. Of the four cantons into which the Helvetian state is divided, this one is called Tigurinus, <sup>3</sup>a canton which having left their home, and <sup>4</sup>having slain Lucius Cassius the

<sup>1</sup> Participle.

<sup>2</sup> Introduce by *cum* clause.

<sup>3</sup> Omit.

<sup>4</sup> Ablative absolute.

consul, sent the Roman army under the yoke. Caesar <sup>5</sup>was uncertain whether <sup>6</sup>it happened by the design of the immortal gods <sup>5</sup>or not that the part of the Helvetian state which had brought calamity upon the Roman people was the first to pay the penalty. Because Lucius Piso had been slain by the Tiguriui, Caesar could avenge not only the public but also his private wrongs.

<sup>5</sup> nescire utrum — necne.

<sup>6</sup> fieri.

### I. 14.

A. & G. 216; G. 370; H. 397, 3. A. & G. 210, 6; G. 458; H. 351, 1, N. 3  
A. & G. 219; G. 375; H. 533, III. A. & G. 129; G. 243; H. 234. A. & G. 232;  
G. 353; H. 388. A. & G. 308; G. 599; H. 507, III.

“I feel less hesitation,” <sup>1</sup>says Caesar, “because I remember those things which you have mentioned; and I feel the more indignant in proportion as they have happened to us undeservedly. We are not conscious of having done any wrong, for if we were conscious, it would not be difficult to be on guard. But we are not aware that we have done anything on account of which we should fear; and <sup>2</sup>should we fear without cause? But even if I were willing to forget your former wrongs, can I also lay aside the remembrance of recent outrages? You attempted a march through the Province against my will, and you molested the Haedui. <sup>3</sup>Do you insolently boast of your victory and wonder that you have committed wrongs for so long a time with impunity? But remember that the gods are wont to grant to persons a greater prosperity in order that they may suffer the more severely from a reverse of circumstances. Although these things are so, yet, if you give hostages to me in order that I may know that you will do what you <sup>4</sup>promise, I will make peace with you.”

<sup>1</sup> inquit.

<sup>2</sup> Introduce by **num**, implying what answer?

<sup>3</sup> Introduce by **ne** enclitic.

<sup>4</sup> Future perfect.

### I. 18.

A. & G. 251; G. 402; H. 419, II. A. & G. 258; G. 212, R. I; H. 426, 2. A. & G.  
302; G. 436; H. 546, I. A. & G. 233; G. 350; H. 390, II.

Dumnorix, the brother of Divitiacus, was indicated by the speech of Liscus. But very many were present, and Caesar, <sup>1</sup>being unwilling that these matters should be discussed, <sup>2</sup>dismissing the council, detained Liscus. When Caesar inquired from him about those things which he had said, Liscus spoke boldly.

<sup>1</sup> Introduce by a **quod** clause.

<sup>2</sup> Ablative absolute or a temporal clause.



“Dumnorix, O Caesar, is a man of great favor with the people on account of his liberality, and there is no <sup>3</sup>doubt that he is eager for a revolution. For many years no one dared to bid against him when he bid. By these means he increased his own property in order that he might maintain constantly, at his own expense, a great number of cavalry. This man Dumnorix had great influence at home and among the neighbouring states, <sup>4</sup>for he had given his mother in marriage to a most noble man among the Bituriges, and himself had taken a wife from the Helvetians, <sup>5</sup>having given his sister in marriage into other states. Since he favors the Helvetians on account of this connection, he hates the Romans, O Caesar, because by their arrival they <sup>6</sup>caused his power to become weak, and restored his brother, Divitiacus, to his former position of influence. If anything happens to the Romans, he will entertain the highest hope of gaining the power, but under the rule of the Romans he will despair of royalty.”

<sup>3</sup> *dubium quin.*

<sup>4</sup> *namque.*

<sup>5</sup> Ablative absolute or a temporal clause.

<sup>6</sup> *facere ut.*

I. 22, 23.

A. & G. 193; G. 287, R.; H. 440, 2, N. 1. A. & G. 247; G. 399; H. 417. A. & G. 325; G. 586; H. 521, II, 2. A. & G. 257; G. 335, 2; H. 379. A. & G. 214, *g*; G. 371, R. 4; H. 398, 5.

At day-break, when Labienus had possession of the summit of the mountain, and the enemy's camp was not farther off than a mile and a half, nor had the enemy discovered the arrival of Labienus, Considius at full speed comes up to him. “The mountain,” he says, “which you, O Caesar, wished should be seized by Labienus, is in possession of the enemy.” Caesar, <sup>1</sup>leading his forces to the next hill, draws them up in line of battle. He had ordered Labienus not to engage in battle unless he saw his forces near the enemy's camp, in order that they might make the attack upon the enemy at the same time; but, having taken possession of the mountain, to wait for our men, and refrain from battle. Late in the day Caesar learns that our men have possession of the mountain, and following the enemy, he pitches his camp three miles from theirs. On the next day he was not more than eighteen miles from Bibracte, the largest town of the Haedni, and since he must serve out grain to his army within two days, he advances to Bibracte in order to provide for a supply of grain. Caesar does not know <sup>2</sup>whether the Helvetians thought that he, filled with terror, was retreating, or believed that they could cut him off from provisions.

<sup>1</sup> Introduce by a temporal clause Why cannot the present participle be used?

<sup>2</sup> *utrum — an.*

## I. 26.

A. & G. 146, *c*; G. 199, r. 1; H. 301 A. & G. 326; G. 588; H. 515, III. A. & G. 256; G. 337; H. 379.

The battle was fought vigorously. When the Helvetians could not withstand the attack of the Romans, they betook themselves, the one party to the mountain, the other to the baggage. Although no one could see a retreating enemy, yet <sup>1</sup>the battle had lasted until evening. The Helvetians fought also at the baggage till late at night, because their wagons had been placed as a rampart. The Romans were wounded by the weapons thrown from the higher ground against them. Late at night <sup>2</sup>they got possession of the camp of the Helvetians and captured the daughter of Orgetorix. After that battle the enemy marched during the whole of the night, and arriving in the territory of the Lingones delayed there. Caesar had to send messengers to the Lingones because our men were not able to follow them on account of the wounds of the soldiers. If the Lingones had assisted them with grain, Caesar would have regarded them in the same light as the Helvetians.

<sup>1</sup> Impersonal construction.

<sup>2</sup> Sink into a participial construction.

## I. 31.

A. & G. 317, *b*; G. 545, 2; H. 497, II, 2. A. & G. 320, *b*; G. 633; H. 503, II, 1. A. & G. 302; G. 436; H. 546. A. & G. 256; G. 392; H. 429.

There are two parties in Gaul, the power of which the Haedni and Arverni hold. The Arverni and the Sequani call upon the Germans, because these two parties have been struggling with one another for many years. The Germans, about 15,000, having crossed the Rhine, fell in love with the refinement of the Gauls. The Haedni, broken by engagements and calamities, were compelled to give as hostages to the Sequani the nobles of their state. They <sup>1</sup>promised that they would not demand hostages in return, nor refuse to be under their rule. Divitiacus fled from his state and came to the senate <sup>2</sup>at Rome to ask aid. Ariovistus, the king of the Germans, has settled among the Sequani, and has seized upon a portion of their land, and is providing room and settlement for the Harudes, who have come a few months before. In a few years all the Germans will cross the Rhine, for the land of Gaul must not be compared with the land of the Germans. Moreover, Ariovistus, having defeated the forces of the Gauls, demands hostages; for he is a savage and his commands ought not to be borne. Unless

<sup>1</sup> *polliceri*.

<sup>2</sup> *Roman*; why?

there be some aid in Caesar, the Gauls must seek another dwelling-place, remote from the Germans. Divitiacus does not doubt that if these things should be disclosed to Ariovistus, he would punish all the hostages. Moreover, Caesar himself, either by his own influence or the recent victory, can prevent a greater number of Germans from being brought over the Rhine.

## I. 35, 36.

A. & G. 320, *e*; G. 636; H. 517. A. & G. 307; G. 598; H. 507, II. A. & G. 308; G. 599; H. 507, III. A. & G. 306; G. 597; II. 507, I.

If Ariovistus had been treated with great kindness by Caesar, <sup>1</sup> why should he make this return? If he should be invited to a conference, he would not think that he ought to say anything in regard to the common interests. Caesar demands of him that he should not bring any body of men across the Rhine. He <sup>2</sup> commands him to restore the hostages which he has from the Haedui. The Roman people will entertain a feeling of friendship toward him, if he will do this. But if Caesar does not obtain these desires, he will not overlook the wrongs of the Haedui, because the senate had decreed that whoever should hold the province of Gaul, as far as it could be done in the interest of the republic, should defend the friends of the Roman people. But it is the right of war that if the Germans had conquered the Haedui they should govern them in whatever manner they pleased. Because Ariovistus did not dictate to the Roman people as to the manner in which they should use their right, he ought not to be obstructed by the Romans in his right. The Haedui <sup>3</sup> have tried the fortune of war, have engaged in arms, and have been conquered. Caesar is doing a great wrong, because he is making the revenues of Ariovistus less valuable to him. Ariovistus said that no one ever came into an encounter with him without ruin to himself. If Caesar should come into an engagement with him, he would know what the invincible Germans could achieve, for they are trained to arms above all others.

<sup>1</sup> *cur*.<sup>2</sup> *iubeo*.<sup>3</sup> Use only one principal clause.

## I. 40.

A. & G. 341, *d*; G. 630; H. 516, II. A. & G. 230; G. 208; H. 384, II, 5. A. & G. 233; G. 350; H. 390, I. A. & G. 211; G. 460; H. 353.

It is not the duty of centurions to inquire in what direction Caesar is marching. Why <sup>1</sup> should any one judge that Ariovistus, having sought the friendship

<sup>1</sup> Present subjunctive, deliberative question.

of the Romans in the consulship of Caesar, would depart from his duty? Caesar is persuaded that he will not reject the favor of the Roman people. If the Romans should have to make war upon him, since he is driven on by madness, they ought not to despair of their own valor because they have made a trial of the same enemy within the memory of their fathers. These same men the Helvetians conquered, and in the unsuccessful battle of the Gauls Ariovistus fell upon them tired out by the long duration of the war; for he gave them no <sup>2</sup>opportunity for an encounter, but gained the victory more by stratagem than valor. What, therefore, should the Romans fear? It is Caesar's concern that the Sequani furnish grain in order that they who ascribe their fear to a pretence in regard to provisions may not distrust him. If the soldiers were not obedient to the command of their general, Caesar would go with only the tenth legion.

<sup>2</sup> *sui potestatem.*

#### II. 4.

A. & G. 319; G. 588, 3; H. 501, I, 1. A. & G. 336; G. 653; H. 524. A. & G. 196; G. 295; H. 449, I.

The Belgae are sprung from the Germans, and having crossed the Rhine at an early date settled there, and <sup>1</sup>have driven out the Gauls who inhabited that region. They are the only people who prevented the Teutones from entering their territory. The result is that from the remembrance of those events they assume great haughtiness. The Remi say that they have known everything regarding their number, because they are united to them by alliances; <sup>2</sup>and therefore they know what number each state of the Belgae has promised for that war. The Bellovaci are the most powerful of them in valor. These promised <sup>3</sup>to muster 100,000 armed men, demanding the command of the war. The Suessiones are their neighbors, who possess a very fertile country. Divitiacus, who was their king, is the most powerful man of all Gaul, and held the government of a great part of Britain. But their king now is Galba, upon whom they have conferred the direction of the whole war.

<sup>1</sup> Ablative absolute.

<sup>2</sup> *quam ob rem.*

<sup>3</sup> Future infinitive.

#### II. 19, 20.

A. & G. 156, *a*; G. 646; H. 554, I, 2, *n*. A. & G. 336; G. 653; H. 524. A. & G. 339; G. 655; H. 523, III.

Caesar, having sent on his cavalry, follows with all his forces. The plan of march is different from that which the Belgae had reported. The enemy from

time to time betaking themselves into the woods, and again making an attack upon the Romans, <sup>1</sup>caused them to <sup>2</sup>fear to follow them in their retreat. The six legions having arrived measured out the work in order to fortify the camp. Having seen the first part of the baggage-train of the Romans, after they had arranged their line of battle and encouraged one another, rushing out suddenly with all their troops, they make an attack upon our cavalry. Caesar tells us that he had to do everything at one time; that he <sup>3</sup>gave orders to his soldiers that they should display the standard which is the sign when it is necessary to run to arms; that the signal had to be given by the trumpet; that the soldiers had to be summoned who had proceeded some distance in order to seek materials for the rampart; that the line of battle had to be formed; that he had to encourage the soldiers; that the watchword had to be given. The sudden approach of the enemy prevented a great part of these arrangements, but Caesar said let the soldiers wait for no command from him, but do whatever seemed proper.

<sup>1</sup> *facere ut.*

<sup>2</sup> *vereri ne.*

<sup>3</sup> *impero.*

### III. 9, 10.

A. & G. 334; G. 469; H. 529, I. A. & G. 342; G. 631; H. 529, II. A. & G. 320, G. 633; H. 503, I.

Caesar says that he was informed of these things by Crassus, although he was far away. He orders ships of war to be built, and sailors to be provided for them. These are matters which can be quickly executed. Caesar hastens to the army as soon as the season of the year permitted. The Veneti, because they knew they had committed a great crime in that they had thrown into prison the ambassadors, a name which among all nations had always been sacred, prepared for war. They relied greatly on the character of their country, for they knew that the marches by land were cut off by estuaries. The Romans are not acquainted with the harbors of those localities where they would carry on the war, for navigation is very different in a narrow sea from what it is in the open ocean. Caesar is informed that they are fortifying their towns and conveying grain from the country. There is <sup>1</sup>no doubt that many things were urging Caesar to that war, for if he should overlook this part, the other nations would think that the same thing was permitted them. He thought that he ought to divide his army in order that more states might not unite in the conspiracy.

<sup>1</sup> *non dubium quin.*

## III. 24, 25, 26.

A. &amp; G. 336-339; G. 651-664; H. 523-531.

*Put in indirect discourse after Crassus dicit :*

At the break of day he drew up all his forces and marshalled them in a double line. The auxiliaries he stationed in the centre, and waited to see what plan the enemy would adopt. Although they supposed they might fight safely, yet they thought it safer to gain the victory without a wound by cutting off the provisions. If the Romans should begin to retreat, they intended to attack them, since they would be encumbered in their march. They approved of this plan, and although the leaders led forth the Romans, yet they kept themselves in their camp. When Crassus observed this, he marched to the camp of the enemy to the great satisfaction of all his soldiers, for the enemy by their delay had made the Roman soldiers more eager for fight, who thought that delay ought to be made no longer in going to the camp. Some fill the ditch, and others throwing many darts drive the defenders from the fortifications. Crassus did not rely much on the auxiliaries, yet they were supplying stones and presented the appearance of men engaged in battle. The weapons of the enemy did not fall upon the Romans without effect, because they were fighting from their higher position. The cavalry went around the camp of the enemy and reported to Crassus that it had an easy approach at the decuman gate. Crassus urges the commanders of the cavalry to arouse the men with promises of reward, and shows what he desires to be done. <sup>1</sup>They were commanded to lead forth the cohorts, which had been left as a guard for the camp, by a longer way, in order that the enemy might see them. With these cohorts which I have mentioned they arrived at the fortifications. The Romans hearing a shout began to fight more vigorously. The enemy were surrounded on all sides, and tried to seek safety in flight. The cavalry pursued these, and returned to the camp late at night.

<sup>1</sup> *impero*, impersonal construction. Why?

## IV. 13, 14, 15.

A. &amp; G. 285-287; G. 510-519; H. 491-496.

*Put in indirect discourse after Caesar dixit :*

After this battle Caesar thought that he ought not to hear the ambassadors nor accept conditions from those who had sued for peace and made war by treachery. The forces of the enemy will be increased, and the cavalry will return. Would it not be the greatest madness to wait? Caesar knows the fickleness of the Gauls,

and feels how much influence the enemy have gained among them. A very opportune event occurred, namely, that a large body of Germans came to the camp practising the same treachery, but as they pretended, <sup>1</sup>for the sake of acquitting themselves for having engaged in battle the day before. Caesar was glad that they had come into his power and detains them. Leading all his forces out of the camp, he commanded the cavalry to follow the line which was in a state of fear in consequence of the late battle. Having completed a march of eight miles, he arrived at the camp of the enemy before the Germans could perceive what was taking place. By all these circumstances they are alarmed and are perplexed as to whether it would be better to defend the camp or seek safety by flight. The soldiers burst into the camp, aroused by the treachery of the preceding day. Those of the enemy who could get their arms withstood the Romans and engaged in battle among the wagons. The women and boys who had departed from home and crossed the Rhine began to flee in all directions. Caesar sent his cavalry to pursue these. The Germans, hearing the noise behind them, saw that their own families were being killed, and throwing away their arms fled out of camp. When they arrived at the Rhine, they despaired of future escape, because a great number of them had been killed. Accordingly they threw themselves into the river and perished, for they were overcome by the violence of the stream. The Roman soldiers returned to the camp all safe to a man, and with very few wounded. Caesar gave an opportunity of departing to those whom he had detained in the camp. But they feared torture from the Gauls, and expressed a desire to remain with Caesar.

<sup>1</sup> *sui purgandi causa.* What part of speech is *sui* ?

#### IV. 33, 34.

*The student should be especially careful to avoid a wrong use of the present participle in this lesson.*

The Britons have the following mode of fighting with the chariots. First, after having ridden in all directions, they throw their weapons in order that they may disturb the ranks of the enemy, for oftentimes the very fear of their horses is able to do this. Then after they have worked them in between the troops of cavalry, leaping from their horses, they fight on foot. The charioteers, having withdrawn a little distance, so place the chariots that, if the Britons be overcome by the enemy, they may have an easy retreat. They have acquired so much skill by daily practice that they can check their horses even on a steep place, and are accustomed to guide them at full speed. Running along the pole they quickly return to their chariots. The Romans were disturbed by these circumstances, and Caesar brought

aid to them at a seasonable time, for although the enemy were provoking them, they would not engage in battle. Caesar thinking that he ought to hold his soldiers in his own quarter led back the legions to the camp, after a little time had intervened. The rest of the Britons departed. For many days in succession storms confined our men to the camp, but did not prevent the enemy from sending messengers to all parts <sup>1</sup>to report how good an opportunity was afforded of freeing themselves forever, if the Romans could be driven from the camp. Collecting a great force of cavalry they came upon the Roman camp.

<sup>1</sup> Relative clause of purpose.

## VII. 20.

Vercingetorix is accused of treason, because he <sup>1</sup>moved his camp nearer the Romans, because he went away with all the cavalry, because he left so great forces under no command, because the Romans came with such haste after his departure. All these circumstances could not happen by chance. He preferred to hold the sovereignty of Gaul by the permission of Caesar rather than by their favor. Vercingetorix, being accused in such a way, replies as follows to these charges: "I moved the camp on account of a want of provisions, and you yourselves urged me to do this. I approached nearer the Romans because I was persuaded by the favorable location which could defend us. Moreover, the service of the cavalry will be more useful than in marshy ground. When I departed I gave the command to no one designedly, lest he should be driven by the desire of the multitude to an engagement with the Romans. You should give thanks to fortune, if the Romans have come by chance, and if any one has invited them, you should feel grateful to him, because you can see the smallness of their number. I do not desire power from Caesar, because I can have it by victory, for victory is assured to us. Listen to the Roman soldiers in order that you may know that I speak these words truly." Some slaves are brought forward whom Vercingetorix, having captured while they were on a foraging expedition, had tortured by hunger, in order that they might say that they, being legionary soldiers, had gone forth from camp to find some grain in the fields, that the whole army did not have strength to bear the labor of work, and that the general had decided to lead off his army. "These are the benefits," says Vercingetorix, "that you receive from me." He said moreover that he had made provision that no state should receive the army in its flight within its territory.

<sup>1</sup> Subjunctive. Why?



## DE BELLO CIVILI, III. 41.

As soon as Caesar knew that Pompey was at Asparagium, setting out <sup>1</sup>for that place with his army, and having captured the town of the Parthinians on his march, in which Pompey had a <sup>2</sup>garrison, he <sup>3</sup>reached Pompey on the third day, and pitched his camp near him. On the next day, leading forth all his forces, he gave Pompey an opportunity of an engagement. But when he perceived that he <sup>4</sup>kept within <sup>5</sup>his own quarter, leading back his army he thought that he must adopt some other plan. And so on the next day he set out with all his troops through a narrow road to Dyrrachium, <sup>6</sup>hoping that Pompey would be compelled to go to Dyrrachium. It happened that Pompey was <sup>7</sup>cut off from communication with that town, because he thought Caesar was compelled to depart through the scarcity of provisions. When he was informed by scouts in regard to the plan of Caesar, he moved his camp, hoping <sup>8</sup>to meet him <sup>9</sup>by taking a shorter road. Caesar, suspecting that this might happen, arrived in <sup>10</sup>the morning at Dyrrachium and encamped there.

- <sup>1</sup> eodem.    <sup>2</sup> praesidium.    <sup>3</sup> pervenire ad.    <sup>4</sup> tenere se.    <sup>5</sup> suis locis.  
<sup>6</sup> sperare.    <sup>7</sup> intercludi ab.    <sup>8</sup> occurrere posse.    <sup>9</sup> breviorē itinere.  
<sup>10</sup> mane.



## WORD LISTS.

---

### I. — *Verbs which occur over 100 times.*

- |              |              |            |
|--------------|--------------|------------|
| 1. cognosco. | 5. iubeo.    | 9. sum.    |
| 2. dico.     | 6. mitto.    | 10. venio. |
| 3. facio.    | 7. possum.   | 11. video. |
| 4. habeo.    | 8. relinquo. |            |

### II. — *Verbs which occur from 75-100 times.*

- |                |                  |              |
|----------------|------------------|--------------|
| 12. constituo. | 15. existimo.    | 18. recipio. |
| 13. contendo.  | 16. interficio.  |              |
| 14. do.        | 17. proficiscor. |              |

### III. — *Verbs which occur from 50-75 times.*

- |               |               |              |
|---------------|---------------|--------------|
| 19. accipio.  | 25. discedo.  | 31. pugno.   |
| 20. capio.    | 26. fero.     | 32. teneo.   |
| 21. coepei.   | 27. gero.     | 33. transeo. |
| 22. cogo.     | 28. impero.   | 34. volo.    |
| 23. contineo. | 29. pervenio. | 35. utor.    |
| 24. convenio. | 30. peto.     |              |

### IV. — *Verbs which occur from 40-50 times.*

- |               |               |                |
|---------------|---------------|----------------|
| 36. absum.    | 40. conficio. | 44. intellego. |
| 37. accido.   | 41. consisto. | 45. pono.      |
| 38. adduco.   | 42. infero.   | 46. prohibeo.  |
| 39. arbitror. | 43. instituo. |                |

### V. — *Verbs which occur from 30-40 times.*

- |               |                |                 |
|---------------|----------------|-----------------|
| 47. ago.      | 55. consuesco. | 63. intermitto. |
| 48. appello.  | 56. deduco.    | 64. munio.      |
| 49. audio.    | 57. demonstrō. | 65. paro.       |
| 50. committo. | 58. dimitto.   | 66. perterreo.  |
| 51. confirmo. | 59. duco.      | 67. revertō.    |
| 52. conicio.  | 60. efficio.   | 68. sequor.     |
| 53. conloco.  | 61. expecto.   | 69. traduco.    |
| 54. conor.    | 62. impedio.   |                 |

VI. — *Verbs which occur from 20–30 times.*

70. accedo.	86. despero.	102. perspicio.
71. adeo.	87. educo.	103. persuadeo.
72. administro.	88. egredior.	104. pertineo.
73. amitto.	89. eo.	105. polliceor.
74. animadverto.	90. incendio.	106. postulo.
75. audeo.	91. ineo.	107. praeficio.
76. circumvenio.	92. moror.	108. praesum.
77. cohortor.	93. nascor.	109. premo.
78. comparo	94. nuntio.	110. progredior
79. compleo.	95. occupo.	111. puto.
80. confero.	96. oppugno.	112. reduco.
81. confido.	97. obtineo.	113. reperio.
82. consido.	98. orior.	114. resisto.
83. defendo.	99. ostendo.	115. tollo.
84. defero.	100. pello.	116. trado.
85. deligo.	101. perfero.	117. vereor.

VII. — *Verbs which occur from 10–20 times.*

118. abdo.	144. convoco.	170. fugio.
119. affero.	145. curo.	171. hiemo.
120. afficio.	146. debeo.	172. hortor.
121. adiungo.	147. dedo.	173. impetro.
122. adorior.	148. deficio.	174. incito.
123. appropinquo.	149. deicio.	175. incolo.
124. adsum.	150. desero.	176. inquit.
125. arcesso.	151. desisto.	177. insequor.
126. armo.	152. desum.	178. instruo.
127. attingo.	153. dimico.	179. intercludo.
128. augeo.	154. diripio.	180. iudico.
129. cedo.	155. dispono.	181. laboro.
130. circumsisito.	156. distribuo.	182. lacesso.
131. cogito.	157. divido.	183. licet.
132. communico.	158. dubito.	184. maneo.
133. concedo.	159. eripio.	185. moveo.
134. concurro.	160. evoco.	186. nanciscor
135. coniungo.	161. excedo.	187. neglego.
136. colloquor.	162. excipio.	188. noceo.
137. comprehendo.	163. excito.	189. nosco.
138. consequor.	164. exeo.	190. occido.
139. conspicio.	165. expedio.	191. occulto.
140. conspicio.	166. expello.	192. occurro.
141. consto.	167. experior.	193. offero.
142. consulo.	168. exploro.	194. oportet.
143. consumo.	169. expugno.	195. opprimo.

196. oro.	212. pronuntio.	228. scio.
197. pateo.	213. propono.	229. sentio.
198. patior.	214. provideo.	230. servo.
199. perduco.	215. quaero.	231. spero.
200. perficio.	216. queror.	232. statuo.
201. permaneo.	217. reddo.	233. studeo.
202. permitto.	218. redeo.	234. subsequor.
203. permoveo	219. redigo.	235. succedo.
204. perturbo.	220. refero.	236. tempto.
205. potior	221. reficio.	237. timeo.
206. praemitto.	222. remaneo.	238. transporto.
207. proba.	223. remitto.	239. valeo.
208. procedo.	224. renuntio.	240. vasto.
209. produco.	225. repello.	241. verso.
210. profugio.	226. respondeo.	242. vulnero.
211. proicio.	227. retineo.	

VIII. — *Nouns which occur over 100 times.*

1. bellum.	9. equitatus.	17. miles.
2. castra.	10. exercitus.	18. navis.
3. causa.	11. finis.	19. numerus.
4. civitas.	12. flumen.	20. oppidum.
5. consilium.	13. hostis.	21. pars.
6. copia.	14. legatus.	22. proelium.
7. dies.	15. legio.	23. res.
8. eques.	16. locus.	24. tempus.

IX. — *Nouns which occur from 75-100 times.*

25. arma.	27. multitudo.	28. populus.
26. homo.		

X. — *Nouns which occur from 50-75 times.*

29. ager.	34. fuga.	39. periculum.
30. animus.	35. imperium.	40. praesidium.
31. annus.	36. munitio.	41. princeps.
32. auxilium.	37. obses.	42. silva.
33. frumentum.	38. passus.	43. spes.

XI. — *Nouns which occur from 40-50 times.*

44. acies.	50. manus.	56. provincia.
45. adventus.	51. murus.	57. ratio.
46. cohors.	52. nihil.	58. regio.
47. hiberna.	53. nox.	59. salus.
48. impedimentum.	54. opus.	60. signum.
49. impetus.	55. pes.	

XII. — *Nouns which occur from 30-40 times.*

61. agmen.	68. fides.	75. nuntius.
62. amicitia.	69. fortuna.	76. pons.
63. barbarus.	70. iniuria.	77. porta.
64. collis.	71. ius.	78. pugna.
65. concilium.	72. labor.	79. victoria.
66. consuetudo.	73. mons.	80. usus.
67. domus.	74. natura.	

XIII. — *Nouns which occur from 20-30 times.*

81. aditus.	93. eruptio.	105. opinio.
82. agger.	94. explorator.	106. oratio.
83. altitudo.	95. facultas.	107. ordo.
84. auctoritas.	96. fossa.	108. palus.
85. captivus.	97. frater.	109. pax.
86. casus.	98. inopia.	110. potestas.
87. celeritas.	99. latus.	111. senatus.
88. centurio.	100. littera.	112. subsidium.
89. clamor.	101. magistratus.	113. tribunus.
90. commeatus.	102. magnitudo.	114. turris.
91. dux.	103. modus.	115. via.
92. equus.	104. mors.	116. vulnus.

XIV. — *Nouns which occur from 10-20 times.*

117. adulescens	137. difficultas.	157. mare.
118. aedificium.	138. diligentia.	158. mercator.
119. aestas.	139. discessus.	159. mos.
120. aestus.	140. dolor.	160. motus.
121. aetas.	141. essedarii.	161. natio.
122. amicus.	142. fama.	162. noctu.
123. aqua.	143. filius.	163. nomen.
124. beneficium.	144. gladium.	164. oceanus.
125. caedes.	145. hiemps.	165. officium.
126. calamitas.	146. hora.	166. opera.
127. caput.	147. ignis.	167. oppugnatio.
128. castellum.	148. imperator.	168. pagus.
129. circuitus.	149. incommodum.	169. pater.
130. cliens.	150. intervallum.	170. pecunia.
131. condicio.	151. iugum.	171. pecus.
132. colloquium.	152. laus.	172. pedes.
133. conspectus.	153. legatio.	173. peditatus.
134. controversia.	154. liberi.	174. pilum.
135. cursus.	155. libertas.	175. poena.
136. defectio.	156. longitudo.	176. portus.

177. <i>praeda.</i>	187. <i>silentium.</i>	197. <i>tergum.</i>
178. <i>praemium.</i>	188. <i>socius.</i>	198. <i>terra.</i>
179. <i>principatus.</i>	189. <i>sol.</i>	199. <i>triduum.</i>
180. <i>profectio.</i>	190. <i>species.</i>	200. <i>vadum.</i>
181. <i>regnum.</i>	191. <i>statio.</i>	201. <i>ventus.</i>
182. <i>rex.</i>	192. <i>studium.</i>	202. <i>vigilia.</i>
183. <i>ripa.</i>	193. <i>summa.</i>	203. <i>vir.</i>
184. <i>scutum.</i>	194. <i>supplicium.</i>	204. <i>vita.</i>
185. <i>sententia.</i>	195. <i>suspicio.</i>	205. <i>voluntas.</i>
186. <i>servitus.</i>	196. <i>tempestas.</i>	206. <i>vox.</i>

## TRANSLATION.

## I. — Verbs which occur over 100 times.

1. <i>know.</i>	5. <i>command.</i>	9. <i>be.</i>
2. <i>say.</i>	6. <i>send.</i>	10. <i>come.</i>
3. <i>do.</i>	7. <i>be able.</i>	11. <i>see.</i>
4. <i>have.</i>	8. <i>leave.</i>	

## II. — Verbs which occur from 75-100 times.

12. <i>arrange.</i>	15. <i>suppose.</i>	13. <i>recover.</i>
13. <i>strain.</i>	16. <i>kill.</i>	
14. <i>give.</i>	17. <i>set out.</i>	

## III. — Verbs which occur from 50-75 times.

19. <i>receive.</i>	25. <i>depart.</i>	31. <i>fight.</i>
20. <i>take.</i>	26. <i>bear.</i>	32. <i>hold.</i>
21. <i>begin.</i>	27. <i>carry.</i>	33. <i>go across.</i>
22. <i>compel.</i>	28. <i>command.</i>	34. <i>wish.</i>
23. <i>hold together.</i>	29. <i>arrive.</i>	35. <i>use.</i>
24. <i>come together.</i>	30. <i>seek.</i>	

## IV. — Verbs which occur from 40-50 times.

36. <i>be away.</i>	40. <i>accomplish.</i>	44. <i>know.</i>
37. <i>fall upon.</i>	41. <i>take a stand.</i>	45. <i>place.</i>
38. <i>lead to.</i>	42. <i>bring in.</i>	46. <i>hold off.</i>
39. <i>think.</i>	43. <i>set in order.</i>	

## V. — Verbs which occur from 30-40 times.

47. <i>drive.</i>	50. <i>join together.</i>	53. <i>place together.</i>
48. <i>call.</i>	51. <i>strengthen.</i>	54. <i>attempt.</i>
49. <i>hear.</i>	52. <i>throw together.</i>	55. <i>become accustomed.</i>

- |                         |                      |                         |
|-------------------------|----------------------|-------------------------|
| 56. <i>lead down.</i>   | 61. <i>wait for.</i> | 66. <i>terrify.</i>     |
| 57. <i>show.</i>        | 62. <i>entangle.</i> | 67. <i>return.</i>      |
| 58. <i>let go away.</i> | 63. <i>stop.</i>     | 68. <i>follow.</i>      |
| 59. <i>lead.</i>        | 64. <i>fortify.</i>  | 69. <i>lead across.</i> |
| 60. <i>make out.</i>    | 65. <i>prepare.</i>  |                         |

## VI. — Verbs which occur from 20–30 times.

- |                            |                            |                          |
|----------------------------|----------------------------|--------------------------|
| 70. <i>approach.</i>       | 86. <i>despair.</i>        | 102. <i>see through.</i> |
| 71. <i>go to.</i>          | 87. <i>lead out.</i>       | 103. <i>persuade.</i>    |
| 72. <i>perform.</i>        | 88. <i>march out.</i>      | 104. <i>tend.</i>        |
| 73. <i>let slip.</i>       | 89. <i>go.</i>             | 105. <i>promise.</i>     |
| 74. <i>attend to.</i>      | 90. <i>burn.</i>           | 106. <i>demand.</i>      |
| 75. <i>dare.</i>           | 91. <i>go in.</i>          | 107. <i>put before.</i>  |
| 76. <i>surround.</i>       | 92. <i>delay.</i>          | 108. <i>be before.</i>   |
| 77. <i>encourage.</i>      | 93. <i>be born.</i>        | 109. <i>press.</i>       |
| 78. <i>get ready.</i>      | 94. <i>report.</i>         | 110. <i>advance.</i>     |
| 79. <i>fill.</i>           | 95. <i>seize.</i>          | 111. <i>think.</i>       |
| 80. <i>bring together.</i> | 96. <i>attack.</i>         | 112. <i>lead back.</i>   |
| 81. <i>trust.</i>          | 97. <i>hold.</i>           | 113. <i>find.</i>        |
| 82. <i>settle.</i>         | 98. <i>arise.</i>          | 114. <i>resist.</i>      |
| 83. <i>defend.</i>         | 99. <i>show.</i>           | 115. <i>raise.</i>       |
| 84. <i>carry down.</i>     | 100. <i>drive.</i>         | 116. <i>hand over.</i>   |
| 85. <i>select.</i>         | 101. <i>carry through.</i> | 117. <i>fear.</i>        |

## VII. — Verbs which occur from 10–20 times.

- |                             |                             |                              |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|------------------------------|
| 118. <i>put away.</i>       | 138. <i>follow.</i>         | 158. <i>doubt.</i>           |
| 119. <i>bring to.</i>       | 139. <i>espionage.</i>      | 159. <i>snatch away.</i>     |
| 120. <i>affect.</i>         | 140. <i>see.</i>            | 160. <i>call out.</i>        |
| 121. <i>join to.</i>        | 141. <i>stand together.</i> | 161. <i>go out.</i>          |
| 122. <i>assail.</i>         | 142. <i>take counsel.</i>   | 162. <i>take out.</i>        |
| 123. <i>approach.</i>       | 143. <i>destroy.</i>        | 163. <i>rouse.</i>           |
| 124. <i>be near.</i>        | 144. <i>call together.</i>  | 164. <i>go out.</i>          |
| 125. <i>summon.</i>         | 145. <i>take care.</i>      | 165. <i>disentangle.</i>     |
| 126. <i>equip.</i>          | 146. <i>owe.</i>            | 166. <i>drive out.</i>       |
| 127. <i>touch upon.</i>     | 147. <i>give over.</i>      | 167. <i>experience.</i>      |
| 128. <i>increase.</i>       | 148. <i>fail.</i>           | 168. <i>examine.</i>         |
| 129. <i>make way.</i>       | 149. <i>cast down.</i>      | 169. <i>attack.</i>          |
| 130. <i>stand around.</i>   | 150. <i>abandon.</i>        | 170. <i>fly.</i>             |
| 131. <i>consider.</i>       | 151. <i>stand off.</i>      | 171. <i>pass the winter.</i> |
| 132. <i>communicate.</i>    | 152. <i>be lacking.</i>     | 172. <i>encourage.</i>       |
| 133. <i>allow.</i>          | 153. <i>fight.</i>          | 173. <i>obtain.</i>          |
| 134. <i>run together.</i>   | 154. <i>seize.</i>          | 174. <i>urge on.</i>         |
| 135. <i>join together.</i>  | 155. <i>place about.</i>    | 175. <i>dwell.</i>           |
| 136. <i>speak together.</i> | 156. <i>assign.</i>         | 176. <i>say.</i>             |
| 137. <i>grasp together.</i> | 157. <i>divide.</i>         | 177. <i>follow up.</i>       |



- |                            |                               |                           |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 178. <i>fit up.</i>        | 200. <i>complete.</i>         | 222. <i>remain behind</i> |
| 179. <i>cut off.</i>       | 201. <i>remain.</i>           | 223. <i>send back.</i>    |
| 180. <i>decide.</i>        | 202. <i>grant.</i>            | 224. <i>report.</i>       |
| 181. <i>tool.</i>          | 203. <i>influence.</i>        | 225. <i>drive back.</i>   |
| 182. <i>provoke.</i>       | 204. <i>disturb.</i>          | 226. <i>reply.</i>        |
| 183. <i>it is allowed.</i> | 205. <i>become master of.</i> | 227. <i>hold back.</i>    |
| 184. <i>remain.</i>        | 206. <i>send forward.</i>     | 228. <i>know.</i>         |
| 185. <i>move.</i>          | 207. <i>approve.</i>          | 229. <i>perceive.</i>     |
| 186. <i>get.</i>           | 208. <i>go forward.</i>       | 230. <i>guard.</i>        |
| 187. <i>disregard.</i>     | 209. <i>lead forward.</i>     | 231. <i>hope.</i>         |
| 188. <i>injure.</i>        | 210. <i>flee forth.</i>       | 232. <i>establish.</i>    |
| 189. <i>learn</i>          | 211. <i>cast forth.</i>       | 233. <i>be eager for.</i> |
| 190. <i>kill.</i>          | 212. <i>publish forth.</i>    | 234. <i>follow on.</i>    |
| 191. <i>conceal.</i>       | 213. <i>place before.</i>     | 235. <i>come up.</i>      |
| 192. <i>run to.</i>        | 214. <i>foresee.</i>          | 236. <i>try.</i>          |
| 193. <i>offer.</i>         | 215. <i>search for.</i>       | 237. <i>fear.</i>         |
| 194. <i>it behooves.</i>   | 216. <i>complain.</i>         | 238. <i>bring over.</i>   |
| 195. <i>overwhelm.</i>     | 217. <i>give back.</i>        | 239. <i>be strong.</i>    |
| 196. <i>pray.</i>          | 218. <i>go back.</i>          | 240. <i>lay waste.</i>    |
| 197. <i>lie open.</i>      | 219. <i>reduce.</i>           | 241. <i>turn.</i>         |
| 198. <i>suffer.</i>        | 220. <i>bring back.</i>       | 242. <i>wound.</i>        |
| 199. <i>lead through.</i>  | 221. <i>repair.</i>           |                           |

## VIII. — Nouns which occur over 100 times.

- |                         |                        |                        |
|-------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. <i>war.</i>          | 9. <i>cavalry.</i>     | 17. <i>soldier.</i>    |
| 2. <i>camp.</i>         | 10. <i>army.</i>       | 18. <i>ship.</i>       |
| 3. <i>cause.</i>        | 11. <i>end.</i>        | 19. <i>number.</i>     |
| 4. <i>citizenship.</i>  | 12. <i>river.</i>      | 20. <i>stronghold.</i> |
| 5. <i>deliberation.</i> | 13. <i>enemy.</i>      | 21. <i>part.</i>       |
| 6. <i>abundance.</i>    | 14. <i>ambassador.</i> | 22. <i>battle.</i>     |
| 7. <i>day.</i>          | 15. <i>legion.</i>     | 23. <i>thing.</i>      |
| 8. <i>horseman.</i>     | 16. <i>place.</i>      | 24. <i>time.</i>       |

## IX. — Nouns which occur from 75-100 times.

- |                         |                       |                    |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------|
| 25. <i>arms.</i>        | 27. <i>multitude.</i> | 28. <i>people.</i> |
| 26. <i>human being.</i> |                       |                    |

## X. — Nouns which occur from 50-75 times.

- |                    |                           |                      |
|--------------------|---------------------------|----------------------|
| 29. <i>land.</i>   | 34. <i>flight.</i>        | 39. <i>danger.</i>   |
| 30. <i>spirit.</i> | 35. <i>command.</i>       | 40. <i>garrison.</i> |
| 31. <i>year.</i>   | 36. <i>fortification.</i> | 41. <i>chief.</i>    |
| 32. <i>aid.</i>    | 37. <i>hostage.</i>       | 42. <i>forest.</i>   |
| 33. <i>grain.</i>  | 38. <i>pace.</i>          | 43. <i>hope.</i>     |

## XI. — Nouns which occur from 40-50 times.

44. <i>line.</i>	50. <i>hand.</i>	56. <i>province.</i>
45. <i>arrival.</i>	51. <i>wall.</i>	57. <i>reckoning.</i>
46. <i>cohort.</i>	52. <i>nothing.</i>	58. <i>direction.</i>
47. <i>winter quarters.</i>	53. <i>night.</i>	59. <i>health.</i>
48. <i>hindrance.</i>	54. <i>work.</i>	60. <i>sign.</i>
49. <i>attack.</i>	55. <i>foot.</i>	

## XII. — Nouns which occur from 30-40 times.

61. <i>army.</i>	68. <i>faith.</i>	75. <i>messenger.</i>
62. <i>friendship.</i>	69. <i>fortune.</i>	76. <i>bridge.</i>
63. <i>foreigner.</i>	70. <i>injustice.</i>	77. <i>gate.</i>
64. <i>hill.</i>	71. <i>justice.</i>	78. <i>fight.</i>
65. <i>meeting.</i>	72. <i>toil.</i>	79. <i>victory.</i>
66. <i>custom.</i>	73. <i>mountain.</i>	80. <i>use.</i>
67. <i>house.</i>	74. <i>nature.</i>	

## XIII. — Nouns which occur from 20-30 times.

81. <i>approach.</i>	93. <i>sally.</i>	105. <i>notion.</i>
82. <i>mound.</i>	94. <i>scout.</i>	106. <i>speech.</i>
83. <i>height.</i>	95. <i>ease.</i>	107. <i>series.</i>
84. <i>prestige.</i>	96. <i>ditch.</i>	108. <i>marsh.</i>
85. <i>captive.</i>	97. <i>brother.</i>	109. <i>peace.</i>
86. <i>accident.</i>	98. <i>want.</i>	110. <i>power.</i>
87. <i>swiftness.</i>	99. <i>side.</i>	111. <i>senate.</i>
88. <i>centurion.</i>	100. <i>letter.</i>	112. <i>reserve.</i>
89. <i>shout.</i>	101. <i>magistracy.</i>	113. <i>tribune.</i>
90. <i>passage.</i>	102. <i>greatness.</i>	114. <i>tower.</i>
91. <i>leader.</i>	103. <i>measure.</i>	115. <i>way.</i>
92. <i>horse.</i>	104. <i>death.</i>	116. <i>wound.</i>

## XIV. — Nouns which occur from 10-20 times.

117. <i>youth.</i>	129. <i>circuit</i>	141. <i>charioteers.</i>
118. <i>building.</i>	130. <i>vassal.</i>	142. <i>report.</i>
119. <i>summer.</i>	131. <i>condition.</i>	143. <i>son.</i>
120. <i>heat.</i>	132. <i>conference.</i>	144. <i>sword.</i>
121. <i>age</i>	133. <i>sight.</i>	145. <i>winter.</i>
122. <i>friend.</i>	134. <i>dispute.</i>	146. <i>hour.</i>
123. <i>water</i>	135. <i>running.</i>	147. <i>fire.</i>
124. <i>well-doing.</i>	136. <i>defection.</i>	148. <i>commander.</i>
125. <i>massacre.</i>	137. <i>difficulty.</i>	149. <i>disadvantage.</i>
126. <i>disaster.</i>	138. <i>care.</i>	150. <i>interval.</i>
127. <i>head.</i>	139. <i>departure.</i>	151. <i>yoke.</i>
128. <i>fortress.</i>	140. <i>pain.</i>	152. <i>praise.</i>

153. <i>embassy.</i>	171. <i>cattle.</i>	189. <i>sun.</i>
154. <i>children.</i>	172. <i>footman.</i>	190. <i>appearance.</i>
155. <i>freedom.</i>	173. <i>infantry.</i>	191. <i>position.</i>
156. <i>length.</i>	174. <i>javelin.</i>	192. <i>zeal.</i>
157. <i>sea.</i>	175. <i>penalty.</i>	193. <i>sum.</i>
158. <i>trader.</i>	176. <i>harbor.</i>	194. <i>punishment</i>
159. <i>custom.</i>	177. <i>booty.</i>	195. <i>suspicion.</i>
160. <i>movement.</i>	178. <i>reward.</i>	196. <i>season.</i>
161. <i>race.</i>	179. <i>first place.</i>	197. <i>back.</i>
162. <i>at night.</i>	180. <i>departure.</i>	198. <i>earth.</i>
163. <i>name.</i>	181. <i>kingdom.</i>	199. <i>three days.</i>
164. <i>ocean.</i>	182. <i>king.</i>	200. <i>ford.</i>
165. <i>service.</i>	183. <i>bank.</i>	201. <i>wind.</i>
166. <i>work.</i>	184. <i>shield.</i>	202. <i>watch.</i>
167. <i>siege.</i>	185. <i>opinion.</i>	203. <i>man.</i>
168. <i>district.</i>	186. <i>slavery.</i>	204. <i>life.</i>
169. <i>father.</i>	187. <i>silence.</i>	205. <i>willingness.</i>
170. <i>money.</i>	188. <i>companion.</i>	206. <i>voice.</i>

---

## CLASSIFICATION OF WORDS.

### VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

1. <i>abundo.</i>	19. <i>afficto.</i>	37. <i>circumvallo</i>
2. <i>accelero.</i>	20. <i>aggrego.</i>	38. <i>clamito.</i>
3. <i>accommodo.</i>	21. <i>agito.</i>	39. <i>clamo.</i>
4. <i>accuso.</i>	22. <i>alieno.</i>	40. <i>coacervo.</i>
5. <i>adaequo.</i>	23. <i>amplifico.</i>	41. <i>coagmento.</i>
6. <i>adamo.</i>	24. <i>apparo</i>	42. <i>coarcto.</i>
7. <i>adequito.</i>	25. <i>appello.</i>	43. <i>cogito.</i>
8. <i>adhortor.</i>	26. <i>applico.</i>	44. <i>cohortor.</i>
9. <i>adiudico.</i>	27. <i>apporto.</i>	45. <i>collaudo.</i>
10. <i>adiuvo.</i>	28. <i>approbo.</i>	46. <i>colligo.</i>
11. <i>admaturo.</i>	29. <i>appropinquo.</i>	47. <i>colloco.</i>
12. <i>administro.</i>	30. <i>arbitror.</i>	48. <i>comitor.</i>
13. <i>admiror.</i>	31. <i>armo.</i>	49. <i>commemoro.</i>
14. <i>advoco.</i>	32. <i>castigo.</i>	50. <i>commendo.</i>
15. <i>advolo.</i>	33. <i>celo.</i>	51. <i>commeo.</i>
16. <i>aedificio.</i>	34. <i>certo.</i>	52. <i>commoror.</i>
17. <i>aequo.</i>	35. <i>circumdo.</i>	53. <i>communico.</i>
18. <i>aestimo.</i>	36. <i>circumsto.</i>	54. <i>commuto.</i>

55. comparo.	100. denuncio.	145. examino.
56. comperto.	101. depopular.	146. excepto.
57. comprobo.	102. deporto.	147. excito.
58. concerto.	103. depravo.	148. excogito.
59. concilio.	104. deprecor.	149. excrucio.
60. contionor.	105. depugno.	150. excubo.
61. concito.	106. derivo.	151. exculco.
62. conclamo.	107. derogo.	152. excuso.
63. concrepo.	108. deseco.	153. exercito.
64. concurso.	109. desidero.	154. existimo.
65. condemno.	110. designo.	155. expio.
66. condono.	111. despero.	156. exploro.
67. confirmo.	112. destino.	157. expugno.
68. conflagro.	113. despolio.	158. expecto.
69. confictio.	114. detestor.	159. exsto.
70. coniuro.	115. detracto.	160. fastigo.
71. conor.	116. deturbo.	161. firmo.
72. consecro.	117. devoco.	162. flagito.
73. consector.	118. dico.	163. flo.
74. conservo.	119. diudico.	164. fraudo.
75. consolor.	120. dimico.	165. frumentor
76. conspicor.	121. discepto.	166. fugo.
77. conspiro.	122. disparo.	167. fumo.
78. consterno.	123. disputo.	168. glorior.
79. constipo.	124. dissimulo.	169. gratulor.
80. consto.	125. dissipo.	170. gravo.
81. consulto.	126. disto.	171. gusto.
82. contabulo.	127. disturbo.	172. hábito.
83. convoco.	128. divulgo.	173. haesito.
84. cremo.	129. do.	174. hiemo.
85. creo.	130. dominor.	175. hortor.
86. cunctor.	131. dono.	176. ignoro.
87. curo.	132. dubito.	177. imitor.
88. damno.	133. duplico.	178. immolo.
89. decerto.	134. duro.	179. impero.
90. declaro.	135. effemino.	180. impetro.
91. defatigo.	136. emigro.	181. implico.
92. delecto.	137. enumero.	182. imploro.
93. delibero.	138. enuntio.	183. importo.
94. delibro.	139. errp.	184. impugno.
95. deligo.	140. evoco.	185. incito.
96. demigro.	141. evolo.	186. increpito.
97. demonstro.	142. exaequo.	187. increpo.
98. demoror.	143. exagito.	188. incuso.
99. denego.	144. exanimo.	189. indico.

190. indignor.	235. obtestor.	280. recito.
191. insidiar.	236. occulto.	281. reclino
192. insimulo.	237. occupo.	282. recupero.
193. insinuo.	238. occurso.	283. recuso.
194. inspecto.	239. onero.	284. redintegro.
195. instigo.	240. oppugno.	285. regno.
196. insto.	241. orno.	286. relego.
197. interpello.	242. oro.	287. remigo.
198. interpretor.	243. ostento.	288. remigro.
199. interrogo.	244. paco.	289. remunero.
200. intro.	245. papular.	290. renuntio.
201. invito.	246. parento.	291. reporto.
202. iacto.	247. paro.	292. repudio.
203. iudico.	248. pecco.	293. repugno.
204. iuro.	249. perequito.	294. reservo.
205. iuvo.	250. periclitor.	295. revoco.
206. laboro.	251. persevero.	296. rogo.
207. lacrimo.	252. persto.	297. sano.
208. laudo.	253. perturbo.	298. seco.
209. lavo.	254. pervagor.	299. sector.
210. laxo.	255. placo.	300. separo.
211. levo.	256. popular.	301. servo.
212. libero.	257. porto.	302. sevoco.
213. mando.	258. postulo.	303. significo.
214. materior.	259. praecipito.	304. simulo.
215. maturo.	260. praecor.	305. sollicito
216. minor.	261. praedico.	306. sono.
217. miror.	262. praedor.	307. specto.
218. miseror.	263. praeoccupo.	308. specular
219. moderor.	264. praeopto.	309. spero.
220. moror.	265. praeparo.	310. spolio
221. multo.	266. probo.	311. sto.
222. navigo.	267. proclino	312. sublevo.
223. navo.	268. procuro.	313. subministro.
224. neco.	269. proelior.	314. supero.
225. nego.	270. profligo.	315. supporto
226. negotior.	271. pronuntio.	316. suspicor.
227. nomino.	272. propero.	317. sustento.
228. nudo	273. propulso.	318. tempero.
229. nuntio.	274. proturbo.	319. tento.
230. nuncupo.	275. provolo.	320. territo
231. obsecro.	276. publico.	321. tolero.
232. observo.	277. pugno.	322. transnato
233. obsigno	278. purgo.	323. transporto.
234. obtempero.	279. puto.	324. trepido.

325. tumultuo.	330. verso.	335. violo.
326. vaco.	331. versor.	336. vito.
327. vagor.	332. veto.	337. voco.
328. vasto.	333. vexo.	338. vulgo.
329. ventito.	334. vindico.	339. vulnero.

## VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

1. abstineo.	36. fleo.	71. posthabeo.
2. adaugeo.	37. gaudeo.	72. praebeo.
3. adhibeo.	38. habeo.	73. praecaveo.
4. adiaceo.	39. horreo.	74. profiteor.
5. admoneo.	40. impendo.	75. prohibeo.
6. ardeo.	41. indigeo.	76. promineo.
7. audeo.	42. indulgeo.	77. promoveo.
8. augeo.	43. intueor.	78. proterreo.
9. careo.	44. invideo.	79. provideo.
10. caveo.	45. irrideo.	80. pudet.
11. censeo.	46. iaceo.	81. recenseo.
12. coerceo.	47. iubeo.	82. remaneo.
13. commoveo.	48. lateo.	83. removeo.
14. compleo.	49. liceor.	84. repleo.
15. confiteor.	50. maneo.	85. resideo.
16. contineo.	51. medeor.	86. respondeo.
17. debeo.	52. mereor.	87. retineo.
18. deīeo.	53. moneo.	88. soleo.
19. demoveo.	54. moveo.	89. studeo.
20. deterreo.	55. noceo.	90. submoveo
21. detineo.	56. obsideo.	91. subsideo.
22. devoveo.	57. obtineo.	92. supersedeo
23. dissuadeo.	58. oportet	93. sustineo
24. distineo.	59. pareo.	94. taceo
25. doceo.	60. pateo	95. teneo.
26. doleo	61. permaneo	96. terreo.
27. edoceo.	62. permisceo.	97. timeo.
28. egeo.	63. permoveo.	98. torreo.
29. emineo	64. persuadeo	99. tueor.
30. exerceo.	65. perterreo.	100. urgeo.
31. expleo.	66. pertineo.	101. valeo.
32. exterreo.	67. placeo.	102. vereor.
33. extorqueo.	68. paenitet	103. video.
34. faveo.	69. polliceor.	104. voveo
35. ferveo.	70. possideo.	

## VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

1. abdo.	43. arcesso	85. concido.
2. abduco.	44. ascendo.	86. concido.
3. abicio.	45. ascisco.	87. concipio.
4. abiungo.	46. assisto.	88. concludo.
5. abripio.	47. assuefacio.	89. concurro.
6. abscido.	48. assuesco.	90. conduco.
7. abscindo.	49. attexo.	91. conficio.
8. absisto.	50. attingo.	92. confido.
9. abstraho.	51. attribuo.	93. configo.
10. accedo.	52. avertio.	94. configo.
11. accido.	53. caedo.	95. confiuo.
12. accido.	54. cano.	96. confugio.
13. accipio.	55. capio.	97. confundo.
14. accurro.	56. carpo.	98. congero.
15. acquiro.	57. cedo.	99. congridior.
16. addico.	58. cerno.	100. conicio.
17. addo.	59. cingo.	101. coniungo.
18. adduco.	60. circumcido.	102. conquiesco.
19. adhaerescio.	61. circumcludo.	103. conquiro.
20. adicio.	62. circumduco.	104. conscendo.
21. adigo.	63. circumfundo.	105. conscisco.
22. adimo.	64. circumicio.	106. conscribo.
23. adipiscor.	65. circummitto.	107. consequor.
24. adiungo.	66. circumplector.	108. consido.
25. admitto.	67. circumsisto.	109. consisto.
26. adoleasco.	68. circumspicio.	110. conspicio.
27. adverto.	69. circumvenio.	111. consterno.
28. afficio.	70. claudio.	112. constituo.
29. affigo.	71. coemo.	113. consuesco.
30. affingo.	72. cognosco.	114. consulo.
31. affligo.	73. cogo.	115. consumo.
32. ago.	74. colligo.	116. consurgo.
33. allicio.	75. colloquor.	117. contigo.
34. alligo.	76. colo.	118. contemno.
35. alo.	77. comburo.	119. contendo.
36. amitto.	78. committo.	120. contexo.
37. animadverto.	79. commonefacio.	121. contingo.
38. antecedo.	80. compello.	122. contraho.
39. antepono.	81. complector.	123. convalesco.
40. antevertio.	82. compono.	124. conveho.
41. appello.	83. comprehendo.	125. converto.
42. appeto.	84. concedo.	126. corripio.

127. corrumpo.	172. diffluo.	217. exsero.
128. credo.	173. diffundo.	218. exsisto.
129. cresco.	174. diligo.	219. exstinguo.
130. cupio.	175. diminuo.	220. exstruo.
131. curro.	176. dimitto.	221. extendo.
132. decedo	177. dirigo.	222. extimesco.
133. decerno.	178. dirimo.	223. extollo.
134. decido.	179. diripio.	224. extraho.
135. decipio	180. discedo.	225. extrudo.
136. decurro.	181. discerno.	226. exuo.
137. dedo.	182. edico.	227. exuro.
138. deduco.	183. edisco.	228. facio.
139. defendo.	184. edo.	229. fallo.
140. deficio.	185. educo.	230. fingo.
141. defigo.	186. efficio.	231. fio.
142. defugio.	187. effodio.	232. flecto.
143. deicio.	188. effugio.	233. fodio.
144. deligo.	189. effundo.	234. frango.
145. delitescio.	190. egredior.	235. fruor.
146. demeto.	191. eicio.	236. fugio.
147. deminuo.	192. elicio.	237. fundo.
148. demitto.	193. eligo	238. fungor.
149. demo.	194. eloquor.	239. gero.
150. depello.	195. emitto.	240. ignosco.
151. dependo.	196. emo.	241. immitto.
152. deperdo.	197. enitor.	242. impello.
153. depono.	198. erigo.	243. impono.
154. depono.	199. eripio.	244. incedo.
155. deprehendo.	200. erumpo.	245. incido.
156. deprimio.	201. evado.	246. incido.
157. derelinquo.	202. evello.	247. incipio.
158. derivio.	203. evinco.	248. includo.
159. descendo.	204. exardesco.	249. incolo.
160. desino.	205. excedo.	250. incumbo.
161. desisto	206. excello.	251. indico.
162. despicio.	207. excido.	252. induco.
163. destituo.	208. excipio.	253. induo.
164. destringo.	209. excludo.	254. inficio.
165. detraho.	210. exigo.	255. infigo.
166. deuro.	211. expello.	256. inflecto.
167. deveho.	212. expono.	257. influo.
168. devinco.	213. exposco.	258. infodio.
169. dico.	214. exprimo.	259. ingredior.
170. diduco.	215. exquiro.	260. inicio.
171. diffido.	216. exsequor.	261. iniungo.



262. innascor.	307. nitor.	352. persolvo.
263. innitor.	308. nosco.	353. perspicio.
264. insequor.	309. nubo.	354. perveho.
265. insero.	310. obduco.	355. peto.
266. insisto.	311. obicio.	356. pono.
267. instituo.	312. obliviscor.	357. porrigo.
268. instruo.	313. obsisto.	358. posco.
269. insuefacio.	314. obstringo.	359. postpono.
270. intego.	315. obstruo.	360. praecedo.
271. intelligo.	316. occido.	361. praecipio.
272. intendo.	317. occido.	362. praecludo.
273. intercedo.	318. occurro.	363. praecurro.
274. intercipio.	319. offendo.	364. praeduco.
275. intercludo.	320. omitto.	365. praeficio.
276. interdico.	321. oppono.	366. praefigo.
277. interficio.	322. opprimo.	367. praemetuo.
278. intericio.	323. ostendo.	368. praemitto.
279. intermitto.	324. pando.	369. praepono.
280. interpono.	325. parco.	370. praerumpo.
281. interrumpo.	326. pario.	371. praescribo.
282. interscindo.	327. pasco.	372. praetermitto.
283. intexo.	328. patefacio.	373. praeterveho.
284. introduco.	329. patefio.	374. praeuro.
285. intromitto.	330. patior.	375. praevertio.
286. introrumpo.	331. pello.	376. prehendio.
287. invado.	332. pendo.	377. premo.
288. inveterasco.	333. perago.	378. procedo.
289. irrumpo.	334. percipio.	379. procumbo.
290. iacio.	335. percurro.	380. procurro.
291. iungo.	336. percutio.	381. prodo.
292. labor.	337. perdisco.	382. produco.
293. laesso.	338. perdo.	383. proficio.
294. laedo.	339. perduco.	384. proficiscor.
295. lego.	340. perficio.	385. profluo.
296. loquor.	341. perfringo.	386. profugio.
297. mansuefio.	342. perfugio.	387. profundo.
298. matureasco.	343. pergo.	388. progredior.
299. meto.	344. perlego.	389. proicio.
300. minuo.	345. perluo.	390. promitto.
301. mitto.	346. permitto.	391. propello.
302. molo.	347. perpetior.	392. propono.
303. morior.	348. perquiro.	393. proripio.
304. nanciscor.	349. perrumpo.	394. proruo.
305. nascor.	350. perscribo.	395. prosequor.
306. negligo.	351. persequor.	396. prospicio.

397. prosterno.	430. residuo.	462. succedo.
398. protego.	431. resisto.	463. succendo.
399. proveho.	432. respicio.	464. succumbo.
400. quaero.	433. respuo.	465. succurro.
401. queror.	434. restinguo.	466. sufficio.
402. rado.	435. restituo.	467. suffodio.
403. recedo.	436. retraho.	468. sumo.
404. recido.	437. revello.	469. suppeto.
405. recipio.	438. reverto.	470. suscipio.
406. reddo.	439. sapio.	471. suspicio.
407. redigo.	440. satisfacio.	472. sustollo.
408. redimo.	441. scindo.	473. tango.
409. reduco.	442. scribo.	474. tego.
410. reficio.	443. secludo.	475. tendo.
411. refringo.	444. sequor.	476. tollo.
412. refugio.	445. sero.	477. trado.
413. rego.	446. sino.	478. traho.
414. regredior.	447. solvo.	479. traicio.
415. reicio.	448. statuo.	480. transcendo.
416. relanguesco.	449. stringo.	481. transfigo.
417. relinquo.	450. struo.	482. transfodio.
418. reminiscor.	451. subduco.	483. transgredior.
419. remitto.	452. subigo.	484. transicio.
420. remollesco.	453. subicio.	485. transmitto.
421. repello.	454. subluo.	486. transveho.
422. repeto.	455. submitto.	487. tribuo.
423. reposco.	456. subruo.	488. ulciscor.
424. reprehendo.	457. subsequor.	489. vendo.
425. reprimo.	458. subsido.	490. vergo.
426. requiro.	459. subsisto.	491. verto.
427. rescindo.	460. subtraho.	492. vinco.
428. rescisco.	461. subveho.	493. vivo.
429. rescribo.		

## VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

1. adior.	9. coorior.	17. exaudio.
2. aperio.	10. definio.	18. exorior.
3. audio.	11. desilio.	19. expedio.
4. circumvenio.	12. devenio.	20. experior.
5. communico.	13. devincio.	21. finio.
6. comperio.	14. dimetior.	22. impedio.
7. consentio.	15. dissentio.	23. insilio.
8. convenio.	16. evenio.	24. intervenio.

25. invenio.	33. pervenio.	41. sancio.
26. largior.	34. potior.	42. sarcio.
27. metior.	35. praesentio.	43. scio.
28. mollio.	36. praesepio.	44. sentio.
29. munio.	37. provenio.	45. servio
30. obvenio.	38. reperio.	46. subvenio.
31. orior.	39. revincio.	47. venio.
32. patior.	40. saevio.	48. vestio.

## IRREGULAR VERBS.

(sum, fero, volo, fio, eo, and their compounds.)

1. abeo.	14. eo.	27. pereo.
2. absum.	15. exeo.	28. perfero.
3. adeo.	16. fero.	29. possum.
4. adsum.	17. fio.	30. praetereo.
5. affero.	18. ineo.	31. prodeo.
6. antefero.	19. infero.	32. profero.
7. circumeeo.	20. intereo.	33. prosum.
8. coeo.	21. intersum.	34. redeo.
9. confero.	22. introeo.	35. refero.
10. defero.	23. malo.	36. subeo.
11. desum.	24. nolo.	37. transfero.
12. differo.	25. offero.	38. volo.
13. effero.	26. patefio.	

## FORMATION.

## VERBAL DERIVATIVES.

*Nouns derived from Verbs*, with the terminations **or**, **ium**, **tio**, **tus**, **tura**, forming abstracts; **men** and **mentum** expressing the means or subject of an action; **tor** denoting the agent.

1. aditus.	8. antecursor.	15. auxilium.
2. adiutor.	9. aquatio.	16. beneficium.
3. adventus.	10. armamentum.	17. certamen.
4. aedificium.	11. armatura.	18. circuitus.
5. aestimatio.	12. aspectus.	19. clamor
6. agmen.	13. auctor.	20. cogitatio
7. amfractus.	14. auditio.	21. cognatio.

- |                   |                   |                    |
|-------------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| 22. cohortatio.   | 67. discensio     | 112. machinatio.   |
| 23. colloquium.   | 68. documentum    | 113. malefċium     |
| 24. comitium.     | 69. dominatio.    | 114. mentio.       |
| 25. commeatus.    | 70. dubitatio.    | 115. mercator.     |
| 26. commissura.   | 71. ductus.       | 116. mercatura.    |
| 27. commutatio    | 72. egressus.     | 117. molumentum    |
| 28. compendium.   | 73. eruptio.      | 118. momentum.     |
| 29. complexus.    | 74. eventus.      | 119. motus.        |
| 30. concessus.    | 75. excursio.     | 120. munimentum    |
| 31. concursus.    | 76. excusatio.    | 121. munitio.      |
| 32. conditio.     | 77. exercitatio   | 122. natura.       |
| 33. confirmatio.  | 78. exercitus     | 123. navigatio.    |
| 34. coniectura.   | 79. existimatio.  | 124. navigium.     |
| 35. coniuratio.   | 80. exitus.       | 125. negotium.     |
| 36. consensio     | 81. explorator.   | 126. nomen.        |
| 37. consensus.    | 82. expugnatio.   | 127. numen.        |
| 38. conspectus.   | 83. factio.       | 128. obitus.       |
| 39. contabulatio. | 84. flumen.       | 129. obsessio.     |
| 40. contemptio.   | 85. fremitus.     | 130. occasio.      |
| 41. contemptus.   | 86. frumentatio.  | 131. occasus.      |
| 42. contentio.    | 87. frumentum.    | 132. occultatio.   |
| 43. continuatio.  | 88. gratulatio    | 133. occupatio.    |
| 44. conventus.    | 89. gubernator.   | 134. officio.      |
| 45. cruciatus.    | 90. impedimentum. | 135. officium.     |
| 46. cultus.       | 91. imperator.    | 136. oppugnatio.   |
| 47. cunctatio.    | 92. imperium.     | 137. oratio.       |
| 48. cursus.       | 93. impulsus.     | 138. ornamentum.   |
| 49. decessus.     | 94. incendium.    | 139. ostentatio    |
| 50. deditio       | 95. incursio.     | 140. pabulatio.    |
| 51. defatigatio.  | 96. incursus.     | 141. pabulator.    |
| 52. defectio.     | 97. initium.      | 142. perfugium.    |
| 53. defensio.     | 98. instrumentum. | 143. perturbatio.  |
| 54. deiectus.     | 99. interitus.    | 144. pollicitatio. |
| 55. delectus.     | 100. interventus  | 145. populatio.    |
| 56. deprecator.   | 101. introitus.   | 146. possessio.    |
| 57. despectus.    | 102. inventor.    | 147. procurator.   |
| 58. desperatio.   | 103. irruptio.    | 148. proditio      |
| 59. detrimentum.  | 104. iactura.     | 149. proditor.     |
| 60. devexus.      | 105. iunctura.    | 150. profectio.    |
| 61. dictio.       | 106. laetatio.    | 151. propugnator.  |
| 62. dimicatio.    | 107. languor.     | 152. prospectus.   |
| 63. disceptator   | 108. largitio.    | 153. proventus.    |
| 64. discessus.    | 109. legatio.     | 154. pudor.        |
| 65. discrimen.    | 110. lignatio.    | 155. quaestio      |
| 66. disputatio    | 111. lignator.    | 156. quaestor.     |

157. quaestus.	172. statura.	186. tegimentum
158. questus.	173. status.	187. testamentum.
159. ratio.	174. stramentum.	188. timor.
160. receptus.	175. subductio.	189. tormentum.
161. recessus.	176. subsidium.	190. tractus.
162. reditio.	177. subvectio.	191. transiectus.
163. reditus.	178. successus.	192. transmissus.
164. remedium.	179. sudor.	193. ululatus.
165. satisfactio.	180. suffragium.	194. usus.
166. sectio.	181. suggestus.	195. vacatio.
167. seditio.	182. sumptus.	196. vaticinatio.
168. sepultura.	183. supplementum.	197. venatio.
169. significatio.	184. supplicatio.	198. venator.
170. simulatio.	185. tabulatio.	199. vultus.
171. statio.		

## ADJECTIVAL DERIVATIVES.

*Nouns derived from Adjectives*, with the terminations **itas** (etas, No. 90; tas, No. 30), **ia** (itia, No. 9; ities, No. 91), **itudo** (udo, No. 22), **itus**, denoting the quality possessed by the adjective.

1. acclivitas.	24. controversia.	47. impunitas.
2. acerbitas.	25. crassitudo.	48. indignitas.
3. adolescentia.	26. crudelitas.	49. indiligentia.
4. aequitas.	27. cupiditas.	50. indulgentia.
5. affinitas.	28. declivitas.	51. infamia.
6. alacritas.	29. dementia.	52. infirmitas.
7. altitudo.	30. difficultas.	53. inimicitia.
8. amentia.	31. dignitas.	54. iniquitas.
9. amicitia.	32. diligentia.	55. innocentia.
10. amplitudo.	33. diuturnitas.	56. inopia.
11. angustiae.	34. duritia.	57. inscientia.
12. arrogantia.	35. exiguitas.	58. invidia.
13. audacia.	36. facultas.	59. iracundia.
14. avaritia.	37. felicitas.	60. iustitia.
15. benevolentia.	38. fertilitas.	61. laetitia.
16. bonitas.	39. firmitudo.	62. lassitudo.
17. brevitās.	40. fortitudo.	63. latitudo.
18. celeritas.	41. gravitas.	64. lenitas.
19. clementia.	42. humanitas.	65. levitas.
20. conscientia.	43. humilitas.	66. liberalitas.
21. constantia.	44. imbecillitas.	67. libertas.
22. consuetudo.	45. immunitas.	68. licentia.
23. continentia.	46. imprudentia.	69. longitudo.

- |                   |                     |                     |
|-------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| 70. magnitudo.    | 87. perfidia.       | 104. societas.      |
| 71. maiestas.     | 88. perniciousitas. | 105. solertia.      |
| 72. mansuetudo.   | 89. pertinacia.     | 106. solitudo.      |
| 73. memoria       | 90. pietas.         | 107. sollicitudo.   |
| 74. misericordia. | 91. planities.      | 108. stabilitas.    |
| 75. mobilitas.    | 92. potentia        | 109. stultitia      |
| 76. modestia.     | 93. praesentia.     | 110. temeritas.     |
| 77. mollities.    | 94. propinquititas. | 111. temperantia.   |
| 78. multitudo.    | 95. prudentia.      | 112. tenuitas.      |
| 79. necessitas.   | 96. rapiditas.      | 113. tranquillitas. |
| 80. necessitudo.  | 97. sanitas.        | 114. tristitia.     |
| 81. nobilitas     | 98. scientia.       | 115. turpitudō.     |
| 82. notitia.      | 99. sententia.      | 116. utilitas.      |
| 83. obsequentia.  | 100. servitus.      | 117. velocitas      |
| 84. opportunitas. | 101. severitas.     | 118. vicinitas.     |
| 85. patientia.    | 102. siccitas.      | 119. voluntas.      |
| 86. paucitas.     | 103. similitudo.    | 120. voluptas.      |

# VOCABULARY.

1. The Arabic numeral after a definition indicates the number of times the Latin word occurs in the text of the first seven books: e. g. **ab** occurs 366 times.

2. In the case of words occurring not over three times, references to all the places of occurrence are given: e. g. **abies** occurs only in v. 12.

3. The times of occurrence of many derivatives (especially participial and adverbial) are included under their primitives, and are not therefore affixed: e. g. **abdītus** is included in the times of occurrence of **abdo**.

## A.

**A.** (1) An abbreviation for praenomen **Aulus**. (2) a. d., ante diem. i. 6.

**ā, āb, abs**, prep., with the ablat. **a** is used before consonants. **ab** before vowels and consonants. **abs** before **te**, — *from, by, on account of, on, among, on the side of: a dextro cornu, on the right wing.* a, 172; ab, 366; abs, v. 30.

**abdītus**, partic., (**abdo**), *concealed, hidden, secret, remote.*

**abdo, ěre, dīdi, dītum, (ab + do)**, to hide, conceal, put away. 11.

**abdūco, ěre, uxi, uctum, (ab + duco)**, to lead away, withdraw, take by force. i. 11.

**abeo, ire, īvi or ii, Itum, (ab + eo)**, to go away, depart. vi. 43, vii. 50.

**abīcio, ěre, iēcī, iectum, (ab + iacio)**, to throw away, throw down, cast. 5.

**abies, ětis, f.**, a fir-tree. v. 12.

**abiungo, ěre, nxi, nctum, (ab + iungo)**, to separate, loose from the yoke, remove. vii. 56.

**abrīpio, ěre, rīpui, reptum, (ab + rīpio)**, to carry off by force, tear away, snatch. v. 33.

**abscido, ěre, cīdi, cīsum, (abs + caedo)**, to cut off, cut, cut away. iii. 14, vii. 73.

**abscisus**. See **abscido**.

**absens, entis, adj., (absum)**, absent, remote. 5.

**absimīlis, e, adj., unlike, dissimilar.** iii. 14.

**absisto, ěre, stīti, —**, to keep away from, withdraw, depart. v. 17.

**abstīneo, ěre, uī, tentum, (abs + tēneo)**, to abstain from, keep aloof from, decline. i. 22, vii. 47.

**abstrāho, ěre, xi, ctum, to drag away, carry away by force.** iii. 2, vii. 14, 42.

**absūm, esse, fui, —**, to be absent, distant, remote; to take no part in; to stand aloof. 43.

**abundo, āre, āvi, ātum, (ab + unda)**, to overflow, abound, be rich in. vii. 14, 64.

**ac, conj., and.** (After **aliter, contra, iuxta, simul, etc., than, as.**) 190.

- accēdo, ěre, essi, essum, (ad + cēdo), to approach, draw near to, arrive at, come to; to be added; *accedebat, it was added.* 27.
- accēlĕro, āre, āvi, ātum, (ad + cēlĕro), to hasten, make haste. vii. 87.
- acceptus, a, um, adj., (accipio), pleasant, agreeable, welcome. i. 3.
- accīdo, ěre, īdi, —, (ad + cado), to fall; to happen; to come to pass; *accidit, it happens,* 43.
- accīdo, ěre, cīdi, cīsum, (ad + caedo), to cut off, cut down; to fell. vi. 27.
- accīpio, ěre, ēpi, eptum, (ad + cāpio), to receive, take, hear, acquire, suffer, endure. 59.
- acclīvis, e, adj., (ad + clīvus), ascending, rising, steep. ii. 29, iii. 19, vii. 19.
- acclīvitas, ātis, f., an ascent, acclivity, a rising. ii. 18.
- accommodātus, a, um, adj., (accommodo), suitable, adapted. iii. 13 (twice).
- accommodo, āre, āvi, ātum, (ad + commodo), to adjust, adapt, suit, accommodate. ii. 21.
- accūrāte, adv., (ad + cura), carefully, attentively, exactly; comp. *accūrātus,* vi. 22.
- accurro, ěre, curri and cūcurri, cursum, (ad + curro), to run to, hasten to. i. 22, iii. 5.
- accūso, āre, āvi, ātum, (ad + causa), to accuse, blame, censure. i. 16, i. 19, vii. 20.
- ācĕr, cris, cre, adj., sharp, pungent, violent, severe. 18.
- ācerbe, adv., harshly, sharply, bitterly, keenly; comp. *ācerbūs,* sup. *ācerbissīme,* vii. 17.
- ācerbitas, ātis, f., harshness, sharpness, bitterness, severity. vii. 17.
- acerbus, a, um, adj., (ācer), sour, sharp, fierce, severe. vii. 14.
- ācerrīme, adv., sup. of *ācriter.*
- ācervus, i, m., a heap, store, pile. ii. 32.
- ācies, ēi, f., a sharp edge; an army in line of battle, a line of battle; in *āciē* in line of battle. 42.
- acquīro, ěre, sīvi, sītum, (ad + quaero), to acquire, obtain, procure. vii. 59.
- ācriter, adv., (ācer), sharply, vehemently, courageously, eagerly; comp. *ācrius,* sup. *āccerrīme.*
- actuārius, a, um, adj., (ago), easily moved, light. v. 1.
- actus, a, um. See ago.
- ācūtus, a, um, adj., (ācuo), sharp, pointed. vii. 73.
- ad, prep. with the acc., to, towards, in, among, near, about (with numerals), after, according to. 702.
- ādactus, a, um. See *ādigo.*
- ādaequo, āre, āvi, ātum, to equal, make equal. 6.
- ādāmo, āre, āvi, ātum, to love greatly, desire greatly, take pleasure in. i. 31.
- addo, ěre, dīdi, dītum, (ad + do), to add, mingle with, join. 9.
- addūco, ěre, xi, ctum, to bring, convey to, conduct, induce, draw towards. 41.
- ādemptus, a, um. See *ādīmo.*
- ādeo, adv., (ad + is), so, so far, to such a degree. 4.
- ādeo, ěre, īvi or ii, Ītum, to go to, approach, encounter. 20.
- ādeptus, a, um. See *ādīpiscor.*
- ādĕquīto, āre, āvi, ātum, to ride up to or towards. i. 46.
- ādhaereo, ěre, haesi, haesum, to adhere, cleave to, stick. v. 48.
- ādhibeo, ěre, ui, Ītum, (ad + hābeo), to bring in, receive, call in, admit, use. 7.
- ādhortor, āri, ātus, dep., to exhort, encourage. 5.
- adhūc, adv., until now, thus far, still, as yet. iii. 32.
- adigo, ěre, ēgi, actum, (ad + ago), to drive in, impel, force, compel. 8.
- ādīmo, ěre, ēmi, emptum, (ad + emo), to take away, deprive of, remove. v. 6, vii. 18.



**ādīpiscor**, *ci*, *eptus*, *dep.*, (*ad* + *apīscor*), *to obtain, acquire, attain.* v. 39.  
**ādītus**, *ūs*, *m.*, (*adeo*), *approach, entrance, access.* 20.  
**adiāceo**, *ēre*, *cui*, —, *to lie adjacent, border upon, be near.* vi. 33.  
**adīcio**, *ēre*, *iēci*, *iectum*, (*ad* + *iācio*), *to cast, add or join to.* 6.  
**adiūdico**, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum*, *to adjudge, assign, award.* vi. 37.  
**adiungo**, *ēre*, *nxi*, *nctum*, *to join, unite to, annex.* 10.  
**adiūtōr**, *ōris*, *m.*, (*adiuvo*), *a helper, an assistant.* v. 38, 41.  
**adiūvo**, *āre*, *iūvi*, *iūtum*, *to assist, help, succor, aid.* 5.  
**admātūro**, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum*, *to mature, quicken, ripen.* vii. 54.  
**adīnister**, *tri*, *m.*, (*ad* + *manus*), *a servant, attendant, assistant.* vi. 16.  
**adīnistro**, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum*, *to serve, attend, wait upon, manage, guide.* 23.  
**admīror**, *āri*, *ātus*, *dep.*, *to admire, wonder at, be surprised.* 5.  
**admitto**, *ēre*, *mīsi*, *missum*, *to admit, allow, receive; equo admissō, with horse at full speed.* 6.  
**admōdum**, *adv.*, (*ad* + *modus*), *very, exceedingly; with numerals, about, at least.* 8.  
**admōneo**, *ēre*, *ui*, *ītum*, *to admonish, warn, advise, suggest, put in mind.* v. 49.  
**ādōlescens**, *tis*, *m.* and *f.*, *a youth, a young man or woman.* 18.  
**ādōlescentia**, *ae*, *f.*, *youth.* i. 20.  
**ādōlescentūlus**, *i*, *m.*, *a young man.* iii. 21.  
**ādōlesco**, *ēre*, *ōlēvi*, *ultum*, (*ad* + *olesco*), *to grow up, mature, increase.* vi. 18.  
**ādōrior**, *īri*, *ortus*, *dep.*, (*ad* + *ōrior*), *to attack, assail; to begin, attempt.* 17.  
**adscisco**, *ēre*, *scīvi*, *scītum*, (*ad* + *scisco*), *to take, receive, admit, unite.* i. 5, iii. 9.

**adisto**, *ēre*, *stīti*, —, *to stand by, be present, appear.* vi. 18.  
**adsum**, *esse*, *fui* or *affui*, —, *irreg.*, *to be present or at hand, to be near; to aid, assist.* 12.  
**adventus**, *ūs*, *m.*, *arrival, a coming, an approach.* 46.  
**adversārius**, *a*, *um*, *adj.*, *hostile, contrary to.* **adversarius**, *i*, *m.*, *an opponent, enemy.* vii. 4.  
**adversus**, *a*, *um*, *adj.*, (*adverto*), *opposite, facing, fronting, opposed, hostile; adverso flumine, up stream.* 12.  
**adverso**, *prep.* with the *acc.*, *against, toward, opposite to.* iv. 14.  
**adverto**, *ēre*, *ti*, *sum*, (*ad* + *verto*), *to turn to or towards, with animum, to turn one's mind to, observe, notice.* i. 24, v. 18.  
**advōco**, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum*, *to call to, summon.* vii. 52.  
**advōlo**, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum*, *to fly to, hasten to, rush upon, run to.* v. 17, 39, vii. 72.  
**aedificium**, *i*, *n.*, (*aedīfīco*), *an edifice, a building.* 18.  
**aedīfīco**, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum*, (*aedes* + *fāco*), *to build, construct, erect.* iii. 9, v. 1, vi. 22.  
**aeger**, *gra*, *grum*, *adj.*, *sick, feeble, faint, weary,* v. 40, vi. 36, 38.  
**aegre**, *adv.*, (*aeger*), *hardly, with difficulty, scarcely; comp. aegrīus, sup. aegerrīme.* 8.  
**aequālīter**, *adv.*, (*aequalis*), *equally, uniformly.* ii. 18.  
**aequinoctium**, *i*, *n.*, (*aequus* + *nox*), *the equinox, i. e. when the day and night are of equal length.* iv. 36, v. 23.  
**aequitas**, *ātis*, *f.*, *equality, justice, evenness; anīmi aequitas, evenness of temper, contentment.* i. 40, vi. 22.  
**aequo**, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum*, *to make equal; to level.* i. 25, vi. 22.  
**aequus**, *a*, *um*, *adj.*, *even, level, favorable, just, right.* 16.

- aerarius, a, um, adj., (aes), of copper, brass, or bronze. iii. 21.
- aereus, a, um, adj., (aes), of copper, copper. v. 12.
- aes, aeris, n., brass, copper, money, bronze; aes aliĕnum, debt. iv. 36, v. 12, vi. 13.
- aestas, ātis, f., summer. 11.
- aestimātio, ōnis, f., valuation, estimate, vi. 19.
- aestĭmo, āre, āvi, ātum, (aes), to estimate, value, regard, determine, esteem. 4.
- aestĭvus, a, um, adj., (aestas), of summer. vi. 4.
- aestuārium, i, n., (aestus), an estuary, inlet. ii. 28, iii. 9.
- aestus, us, m., heat; the tide. 14.
- aetas, ātis, f., age; life. 11.
- aeternus, a, um, adj., eternal, perpetual. vii. 77.
- affĕro, afferre, attŭli, allātum, irr, (ad + fero), to bring to, offer, present; to afford, produce. 16.
- affĕcio, ĕre, fĕci, fectum, (ad + faciō), to affect, influence, move; to show, treat, visit. 11.
- affĭgo, ĕre, xi, xum, (ad + figo), to fix to, fasten to, attach to. iii. 14.
- affĭngo, ĕre, inxi, ictum, (ad + fingo), to form, devise, invent; to add falsely. vii. 1.
- affĭntas, ātis, f., (affinis), relationship by marriage, connection. i. 18, ii. 4.
- affirmātio, ōnis, f., (affirmo), affirmation, declaration, assertion. vii. 30.
- affixus, a, um. See affigo.
- afflicto, āre, āvi, ātum, (affligo), to agitate, toss, vex, torment. iii. 12, iv. 29.
- afflictus, a, um. See affligo.
- affligo, ĕre, xi, ctum, (ad + flĭgo), to strike, beat or dash against; to shatter, destroy. 4.
- affĕre, affŭtŭrus, affĕrem. See adsum.
- Afrĭcus, i, m., (sc. ventus), the southwest wind. v. 8.
- āger, gri, m., a field, land, territory, country. 64.
- agger, ĕris, m., (ad + gĕro), a mound, rampart. 25.
- aggrĕdiŏr, i, essus, dep., (ad + grādiŏr), to go to, go against; to attack, meet. 4.
- aggrĕgo, āre, āvi, ātum, (āgo), to collect, join, attach, ally. iv. 26, vi. 12.
- āgĭto, āre, āvi, ātum, (ago), to drive; to follow; to debate, discuss, deliberate. vii. 2.
- agmen, ĭnis, n., (ago), an army on the march, a march, line of march, troop; primum agmen, the van, front; novissimum agmen, the rear. 33.
- ago, ĕre, ĕgi, actum, to drive, conduct, lead, carry off; to do, live, treat, plead; gratias agere, to thank, return thanks. 38.
- agrĭcultŭra, ae, f., (ager + colo), agriculture. 6.
- ālĕcer, cris, cre, adj., lively, brisk, cheerful, animated, joyous. 4.
- ālĕcĭritas, ātis, f., liveliness, alacrity, ardor. i. 41, 46, iv. 24.
- ālārĭi, ōrum, m. pl., the auxiliaries who were stationed on the wings.
- ālārĭus, a, um, adj., (āla), of a wing, stationed on the wings. i. 51 (twice).
- albus, a, um, adj., white. v. 12.
- alces, is, f., the elk. vi. 27.
- ālias, adv., (ālius), at another time, otherwise; alias — alias, at one time — at another time, or sometimes — sometimes. 4.
- aliĕno, āre, āvi, ātum, (alienus), to alienate, estrange. vi. 41, vii. 10.
- ālĭĕnus, a, um, adj., (alius), of another, another's; unfavorable; foreign. 8.
- ālio, adv., (alius), in another place, elsewhere. vi. 22.
- ālĭquamdiu, adv., for some time. i. 40, v. 23.
- ālĭquando, adv., at some time, sometimes; at length. vii. 27, 77.
- ālĭquanto, adv., somewhat; a little. iii. 13.

**ālīquantus**, a, um, adj., (alius + quantus), somewhat, a little, some. v. 10.

**ālīquis**, qua, quod or quid, indef. pron., (alius + quis), some one, any one, some, any, something. 26.

**ālīquot**, indef. num. adj., (alius + quot), some, several, a few iii. 1, 2; iv. 9.

**ālīter**, adv., (alius), otherwise, in a different manner; aliter ac, otherwise than. 7.

**ālīus**, a, ud, gen., ālīus, adj., another, other; ālīus — ālīus, one — another; ālii — ālii, some — others. 85.

**allātus**, a, um. See affēro.

**allīcio**, ēre, lexi, lectum, (ad + lacio), to allure, entice, attract. v. 55, vii. 31.

**ālō**, ēre, ālui, ālītum or altum, to nourish, support, sustain, maintain. 9.

**Alpes**, ium, f. pl., the Alps. 6.

**alter**, ēra, ērum, gen., altērīus, adj., one of two, the other, the second; alter — alter, the one — the other. 55.

**alternus**, a, um, adj., one after another, mutual, alternate. vii. 23.

**altītūdo**, īnis, f., height, depth. 24.

**altum**, i, n., (sc. mare), the deep, the sea. iii. 12, iv. 24, 28.

**altus**, a, um, adj., (alo), high, tall, lofty; decp. 15.

**ālūta**, ae, f., soft leather. iii. 13.

**ambactus**, i, m., a vassal. vi. 15.

**ambo**, ae, o, num. adj., both. v. 44.

**āmentia**, ae, f., (a + mens), madness, folly. i. 40, v. 7.

**āmentum**, i, n., a strap or thong, by means of which javelins and other missiles were thrown with greater force. v. 48.

**amfractus**. See anfractus.

**amicītia**, ae, f., friendship, alliance. 30.

**āmīcus**, a, um, adj., (amo), friendly. 13.

**āmīcus**, i, m., a friend, ally.

**āmīto**, ēre, mīsi, missum, (a + mitto), to send away, dismiss; to lose. 20.

**āmor**, ōris, m., love, affection. i. 20.

**ample**, adv., (amplus), amply, abundantly, largely. 23.

**amplīfico**, āre, āvi, ātum, (amplus + facio), to enlarge, increase, extend. ii. 14, vi. 12.

**amplītūdo**, īnis, f., greatness, extent, grandeur. iv. 3, vi. 28, vii. 54.

**amplus**, a, um, adj., large, great, ample, extensive. 8.

**an**, conj., or, whether. It is chiefly used in introducing the second member of an alternative question. 9.

**anceps**, ipitis, adj., (am + caput), double, two-fold; doubtful, dangerous. i. 26, vii. 76.

**ancōra**, ae, f., an anchor. 8.

**anfractus**, ūs, m., (am + frango), a turning or winding of a way, circuit, circuitous route. vii. 46.

**angūlus**, i, m., a corner, an angle. v. 13.

**anguste**, adv., closely, narrowly; sparingly. v. 23.

**angustiae**, ārum, f. pl., narrowness, narrow pass; difficulty, perplexity. 7.

**angustus**, a, um, adj., (ango), narrow, close, contracted; steep. 13.

**anima**, ae, f., air, breath; life, soul, spirit. vi. 14.

**ānimadverto**, ēre, ti, sum, (animus + ad + verito), to turn the mind to; to notice; to punish. 22.

**ānīmal**, ālis, n., (anima), an animal. vi. 17, 19.

**ānīmus**, i, m., the mind, the soul, life, consciousness; will, design, intention; courage, heart. 66.

**annōtīnus**, a, um, adj., (annus), of a year, a year old. v. 8.

**annus**, i, m., a year. 52.

**annuus**, a, um, adj., yearly, annual. i. 16.

**anser**, ēris, m., a goose. v. 12.

**ante**, prep. with the acc., before, beyond, above. 35.

**ante**, adv., before, previously. 30.

**anteā**, adv., before, aforetime, formerly. 8.

- antēcēdo**, ěre, cessi, cessum, *to go before, outdo, precede; to excel, surpass.* 9.
- antēcursor**, ōris, m., *a forerunner, advanced guard, pioneer.* v. 47.
- antēfēro**, ferre, tūli, lātum, *to bear before, set before, place before.* v. 44 (twice).
- antemna**, ae, f., *a sail-yard.* iii. 14, (twice), 15.
- antēpōno**, ěre, pōsui, pōsitum, *to place before, present, prefer.* iv. 22.
- antēverto**, ěre, ti, sum, *to precede, anticipate, place before, prefer, forestate.* vii. 7.
- antīquūstus**, adv., *anciently, of old time, formerly.* 6.
- antīquus**, a, um, adj., (ante), *old, ancient, antique.* i. 18, 45; vii. 32.
- āpērio**, ire, ēruī, ertum, (ab + pārio), *to open, uncover, reveal, disclose.* 24.
- āperte**, adv., *openly, publicly.* vi. 21, vii. 59.
- apertus**, a, um, adj., (aperio), *uncovered, unprotected, open, exposed, naked, lying open.*
- Āpollo**, īnis, m., *son of Jupiter and Latona, and god of music, poetry, and archery.* vi. 17 (twice).
- appāro**, āre, āvi, ātum, (ad + pāro), *to prepare, place in order, furnish, equip, procure.* vii. 17, 26, 41.
- appello**, āre, āvi, ātum, (ad + pello), *to call, name; to accost, entitle, accuse.* 38.
- appello**, ěre, pūli, pulsum, (ad + pello), *to drive to, steer to, approach, bring to, direct.* vii. 60.
- appeto**, ěre, īvi or ii, itum, (ad + peto), *to seek for, strive for, covet, catch at, aim at.* i. 43, vii. 4.
- applicō**, āre, āvi, ātum, (ad + plico), *to join, attach; to apply, bring in contact with.* vi. 27.
- apporto**, āre, āvi, ātum, (ad + porto), *to carry, conduct, convey.* v. 1.
- apprōbo**, āre, āvi, ātum, (ad + prōbo), *to approve, applaud, praise, commend.* vii. 21.
- apprōpinquo**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to approach, draw nigh, come on.* 16.
- appulsus**, a, um. See appello.
- Aprīlis**, e, adj., (āpērio), *of April; Aprilis, is, m., the month of April.* i. 6, 7.
- aptus**, a, um, adj., *suitable, proper, fitted, adapted.* iii. 13, v. 16, vii. 22.
- āpud**, prep. with acc., *at, with, near, before, among, in the presence of.* 43.
- āqua**, ae, f., *water.* 10.
- āquātio**, ōnis, f., *watering, the act of getting water,* iv. 11.
- āquila**, ae, f., *an eagle; the Roman ensign.* 4.
- āquilifer**, ěri, m., (āquila + fero), *a standard-bearer.* v. 37.
- Aquītānus**, a, um, adj., *Aquitanian.* 4.
- arbīter**, tri, m., *an arbitrator, a judge, an umpire.* v. 1.
- arbītrium**, i, n., *the decision of an arbitrator, a determination, a decision; pleasure, will.* i. 36, vi. 11, vii. 75.
- arbitror**, āri, ātus, dep., (arbiter), *to think, judge, imagine, suppose.* 40.
- arbor** and **arbos**, ōris, f., *a tree.* 7.
- arcesso**, ěre, īvi, itum, *to call, invite, send for.* 10.
- ardeo**, ěre, si, sum, *to burn, blaze, be on fire; to be impatient; to be excited.* v. 29, 34.
- arduus**, a, um, adj., *high, steep, lofty, arduous, difficult to reach.* ii. 33, vii. 47.
- argentum**, i, n., *silver.* vi. 28, vii. 47.
- argilla**, ae, f., *white clay, argil, potter's clay.* v. 43.
- ārīdus**, a, um, adj., (areo), *dry, arid, parched, thirsty; ex arido, on dry land.* 4.
- āries**, ětis, m., *a ram, a battering-ram.* ii. 32, iv. 17, vii. 23.
- arma**, ōrum, n. pl., *arms; war, warfare; rigging, tackling; the implements for all uses.* 80.

- armamenta, ōrum, n. pl., *implements, utensils for all purposes; cordage, cables, rigging of a ship.* iii. 14, iv. 29.
- armātūra, ae, f., *armor; soldiers, soldiery.* 4.
- armātus, a, um, partic. adj., (*armo*), *armed; armatus, i, m., a soldier, an armed man.*
- armo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to arm, equip; to fortify, strengthen.* 17.
- arsipio, ěre, ĩpui, eptum, (*ad + rāpio*), *to seize, lay hold of, appropriate.* v. 33.
- arrōganter, adv., (*arrogans*), *arrogantly, proudly, haughtily.* i. 40.
- arrōgantia, ae, f., *arrogance, insolence, presumption, pride.* i. 33, 46; vii. 52.
- ars, artis, f., *art, method, quality; skill, contrivance, stratagem.* vi. 17.
- arte, adv., (*artus*), *closely, tightly, strictly.* iv. 17, vii. 23.
- articūlus, i, m., (*artus*), *a joint, knot, juncture.* vi. 27.
- artificium, i, n., (*artifex*), *art, workmanship, skill; craft, artifice.* vi. 17, vii. 29.
- artus, a, um, adj., (*arceo*), *close, narrow, confined, dense.* vii. 18.
- Arvernus, a, um, adj., *Arvernian.* 29.
- Arvernus, i, m., *an Arvernian.*
- arx, arcis, f., *a height, lofty place, citadel, stronghold.* i. 38, vii. 84.
- ascendo, ěre, di, sum, (*ad + scando*), *to ascend, mount, go up.* 8.
- ascensus, ūs, m., *an ascent, acclivity.* 9.
- ascisco, ěre. See *adscisco.*
- aspectus, ūs, (*aspicio*), *a seeing, beholding; appearance, looks, aspect.* v. 14, vii. 56, 76.
- asper, ěra, ěrum, adj., *rough; severe, harsh, wild, cruel.* v. 45.
- assiduus, a, um, adj., (*assideo*), *continual, incessant, diligent.* vi. 22, vii. 24, 41.
- assisto, ěre. See *adsisto.*
- assuēfācio, ěre, fēci, factum, (*assuetus + fācio*), *to accustom.* 4.
- assuesco, ěre, ēvi, ētum, (*ad + suesco*), *to accustom one's self; habituate, be accustomed.* vi. 28.
- at, conj., *but, yet.* 31.
- atque, conj., *and, as, than.* 427.
- attexo, ěre, xui, xtum, (*ad + texo*), *to weave on, unite, add, join.* v. 40.
- attingo, ěre, tīgi, tactum, (*ad + tango*), *to touch, border on, come in contact with; to arrive at, reach.* 10.
- attribuo, ěre, ūi, ūtum, (*ad + tribuo*), *to assign, bestow, give, impute, ascribe.* 8.
- attŭli. See *affĕro.*
- auctor, ōris, m., (*augeo*), *an author, originator, a maker, an adviser, a director.* 4.
- auctōritas, ātis, f., *authority, influence, power, reputation.* 29.
- auctus, a, um, partic. adj., (*augeo*), *increased.* i. 43.
- audācia, ae, f., (*audax*), *boldness, presumption.* i. 18, vi. 34, vii. 5.
- audacter and audāciter, adj., *boldly, audaciously, confidently, courageously.* 7.
- audeo, ěre, ausus, intr. semi-dep., *to dare, attempt.* 28.
- audio, ĩre, ĩvi, ĩtum, *to hear, listen, perceive, obey.* 30.
- auditio, ōnis, f., *hearing; report, rumor.* iv. 5, vii. 42.
- augeo, ěre, auxi, auctum, *to increase, enlarge, improve, advance, command.* 14.
- Aulus, i, m., *a praenomen.* i. 6.
- aurīga, ae, m., *a charioteer.* iv. 33.
- auris, is, f., *the ear.* vi. 26, vii. 4.
- ausus, a, um. See *audeo.*
- aut, conj., *or, or else, or at least.* 42.
- autem, conj., *but; moreover.* 29.
- autumnus, i, m., (*augeo*), *autumn.* vii. 25.
- auxi. See *augeo.*
- auxiliāris, (adj.), e, *auxiliary, aiding.* iii. 25.

auxilior, āri, ātus, dep., to assist, help, aid. iv. 29, vii. 25, 50.  
 auxilium, i, n., (augeo), assistance, aid, help; remedy, auxiliary force. 71.  
 Avāricensis, e, adj., (avāricum), of Avaricum. vii. 47.  
 avāritia, ae, f., (āvārus), avarice, greedy desire, covetousness. i. 40, vii. 42.  
 āvēho, ěre, vexi, vectum, to carry or convey away. vii. 55.  
 aversus, a, um, partic. adj., (averto), turned away, put to flight. i. 26, ii. 26.  
 āverto, ěre, ti, sum, (a + verito), to turn away, remove, alienate. 6.  
 āvis, is, f., a bird. iv. 10.  
 āvus, i, m., a grandfather. i. 12, iv. 12.

## B.

Bāleāris, e, adj., Balearic. ii. 7.  
 balteus, i, m., a belt, a sword belt. v. 44.  
 barbārus, a, um, adj., barbarous, wild, uncultivated, savage. 31.  
 bellicōsus, a, um, adj., warlike. i. 10, 33; iv. 1.  
 bellicus, a, um, adj., of war, warlike. vi. 24.  
 bello, āre, āvi, ātum, to wage war, carry on war. 4.  
 bellum, i, n., war. 171.  
 bēne, adv., well, prosperously, happily; comp. melius, sup. optime. iii. 18, v. 57, vii. 44.  
 bēnēficiūm, i, n., (bene + făcio), a kindness, benefit, favor, service. 15.  
 bēnēvōlentia, ae, f., (bene + volo), benevolence, good will, kindness. v. 25, vii. 43.  
 bīduum, i, n., (bis + dies), two days. 8.  
 biennium, i, n., (bis + annus), two years. i. 3.  
 bīni, ae, a, distr. num. adj., (bis), two by two, two. 5.  
 bipartīto, adv., (bis + partio), in two divisions or lines. i. 25, v. 32.

bīpĕdālis, e, adj., (bis + pes), two feet long, wide, or thick. iv. 17.  
 bis, num. adv., twice. v. 55, 66; vii. 73.  
 bōnitas, ātis, f., goodness, advantage, favor, excellence. i. 28.  
 bōnus, a, um, adj., good, friendly, well-disposed; comp. mēlior, sup. optimūs; bonum, i, n., an advantage, a good; bōna, ōrum, n. pl., property, effects, goods. 9.  
 bōs, bōvis, m. and f., an ox or cow. vi. 26, 28.  
 brachium, i, n., the arm. i. 25, vii. 56.  
 brĕvis, e, adj., short, transitory, brief. 8.  
 brĕvitas, ātis, f., shortness. ii. 20, 30.  
 brĕviter, adv., shortly, briefly, summarily. vii. 54.  
 Brītanncus, a, um, adj., (Britannia), of Britain. v. 4.  
 brūma, ae, f., (brevis), the winter solstice; winter. v. 13.

## C.

C., for Caius. 4.  
 cācūmen, inis, n., the top, extremity, point. vii. 73.  
 cādāver, ěris, n., (cado), a dead body, a corpse. ii. 27, vii. 77.  
 cādo, ěre, cĕcīdi, cāsum, to fall, perish, die. 5.  
 caedes, is, f., (caedo), a cutting, murder, slaughter. 12.  
 caedo, ěre, cĕcīdi, caesum, to cut down, cut, fell; to beat, destroy, kill. iii. 29 (twice).  
 caelestis, e, adj., heavenly; plur., the gods. vi. 17.  
 caerimōnia, ae, f., a religious ceremony, sacred rites. vii. 2.  
 caerūleus, a, um, adj., blue, azure, dark blue. v. 14.  
 caesus, a, um. See caedo.  
 Caius, i, m. See Gaius.

cālāmitas, ātis, f., calamity, injury, loss.

13

cālendae, ārum, f. pl., the first day of the month, the Calends. i. 6.

callidus, a, um, adj., (calleo), skilful, cunning, shrewd, experienced. iii. 18.

cālo, ōnis, m., a soldier's servant. 8.

campester, tris, tre, adj., (campus), of a plain; level, flat. 4.

campus, i, m., a plain, field. iii. 26, vii. 79.

cāno, ěre, cēcīni, cantum, to sing, play upon an instrument; to sound, foretell. vii. 47.

cāpillus, i, m., the hair. v. 14, vii. 48.

capio, ěre, cēpi, captum, to take; to seize, captivate, take prisoner; to choose, select; consilium capere, to adopt a plan. 64.

capra, ae, f., a she-goat, a roe. vi. 27.

captivus, a, um, adj., (cāpio), captive, taken prisoner, enslaved. 22.

captus, ūs, m., capacity, understanding, notion. iii. 3.

captus, a, um. See cāpio.

cāput, itis, n., the head; person, man; mouth of a river, fountain, source. 11.

cāreō, ěre, ui, —, to be without, in want, free from; to be deprived of. vi. 38, vii. 17.

cārīna, ae, f., the keel of a ship. iii. 13.

cāro, carnis, f., flesh. v. 14, vi. 22.

carpo, ěre, psi, ptum, to pull, pluck; to blame, upbraid, slander, revile. iii. 17.

carrus, i, m., carrum, i, n., a wagon. 9.

cārus, a, um, adj., dear, beloved. v. 33, vii. 19.

cāsa, ae, f., a hut, a cabin of turf or straw. v. 43.

cāseus, i, m., cheese. vi. 22.

Cassīānus, a, um, adj., (Cassius), with Cassius. i. 13.

castis, Idis, f., a helmet. vii. 45.

castellum, i, n., (castrum), a castle, fort, redoubt. 13,

castīgo, āre, āvi, ātum, to punish, reprove, correct, chastise. ii. 8.

castra, ōrum, n. pl., (castrum), a camp, an encampment. 273.

cāsus, ūs, m., (cādo), a fall; accident, misfortune, chance; danger, extremity. 23.

cātēna, ae, f., a chain; fetter. 4.

causa, ae, f., a cause, reason; pretext, pretence; situation, condition; causā, for the sake, on account. 147.

caute, adv., (cāveo), cautiously, prudently, warily. v. 49.

cautes, is, f., a cliff, a rock. iii. 13.

cautus, a, um, partic. adj., (cāveo), cautious, wary, careful.

cāveo, ěre, cāvi, cautum, to be on one's guard, take care; to take security. i. 14, vi. 2, vii. 2.

cēdo, ěre, cessi, cessum, to yield, withdraw, retreat, retire. 12.

cēler, ěris, ěre, adj., swift, speedy. iv. 23, vii. 47.

cēlērītas, ātis, f., swiftness, speed, celerity. 28.

cēlērīter, adv., swiftly, rapidly, quickly. 65.

cēlo, āre, āvi, ātum, to conceal, keep secret, hide. ii. 32, 33; vii. 80.

cēnseo, ěre, ui, sum, to think, judge; to decree, ordain, determine. 8.

census, ūs, m., (censeo), a census; tribute, tax. i. 29.

centum, num. adj. indecl., a hundred. 9.

centūrīo, ōnis, m., a centurion. 25.

cēpi. See cāpio.

cerno, ěre, crēvi, crētum, to see, perceive; to understand; to decide, determine. 7.

certāmen, īnis, n., (certo), a contest, a battle, an engagement. iii. 14, v. 44.

certe, adv., (certus), certainly, assuredly; at least. 5.

certus, a, um, adj., (cerno), certain, established, determined, trusty, definite. 46.

- cervus, i, m., a stag; staves resembling stag's horns. vi. 26, vii. 72.
- cespes, itis, m., a turf or sod. iii. 25, v. 42, 51.
- cētērus, a, um, adj., the rest, residue, remainder. 8.
- cibārius, a, um, adj., (cibus), of or for food; cibāria, ōrum, n. pl., food, provisions. i. 5, iii. 18, vi. 10.
- cībus, i, m., food, victuals, provender. iv. 1, vi. 38, vii. 78.
- cingo, ěre, nxi, nctum, to gird, encompass, environ, surround. 6.
- cippus, i, m., a sharp stake, a palisade. vii. 73.
- circīnus, i, m., a pair of compasses. i. 38
- circīter, adv., about, near. 57.
- circueo, ěre. See circumeo.
- circūitus, ūs, m., a circuit, revolution; circumference; a way around. 10.
- circum, prep. with acc., around, about. 10.
- circumcīdo, ěre, cīdi, cīsum, (circum + caedo), to cut around. v. 42, vii. 36.
- circumeisus, a, um, partic. adj., (circumcīdo), cut around; steep, craggy. vii. 36.
- circumclūdo, ere, si, sum, to shut in, hem in, surround, invest. vi. 28.
- circumdo, dāre, dēdi, dātum, to place around; to encompass, draw around. 6.
- circumdūco, ěre, xi, ctum, to lead or draw around. i. 38, iii. 26.
- circumeo, ěre, ěvi or ii, itum, to go around; to surround, encompass. 4.
- circumfundo, ěre, fūdi, fūsum, to pour around; to encompass, surround; (pass., to collect, flock together). 4.
- circumficio, ěre, ěeci, ěectum, to cast around; to compass. ii. 6.
- circummitto, ěre, mīsi, missum, to send around. v. 51, vii. 63.
- circummūnio, ěre, ěvi, itum, to fortify all around. ii. 30.
- circumplector, i, plexus, dep, to embrace; to surround, clasp round. vii. 83.
- circumsisto, ěre, stēti, —, to stand around; to surround, beset. 10.
- circumspīcio, ěre, exi, ectum, to look around, weigh, ponder, consider. v. 31, vi. 5, 43.
- circumvallo, āre, āvi, ātum, to surround with a rampart, circumvallate; to besiege, invest. 4.
- circumvēhor, i, vectus, dep., to be carried round; to ride around, sail around. vii. 45.
- circumvēnio, ěre, vēni, ventum, to come around, surround, invest; to encompass; to circumvent. 27.
- cis, prep. with acc., on this side of. ii. 3, iv. 4.
- cīsalpīnus, a, um, adj., on this side of the Alps; cisalpine. vi. 1.
- cīsrhēnānus, a, um, adj., (Rhēnus), on this side of the Rhine. vi. 2.
- cītātus, a, um, partic. adj., (cīto), urged; rapid. iv. 10.
- cītērior, us, gen. ōris, adj., hither, nearer. 9.
- cīto, āre, āvi, ātum, to rouse, excite; to hasten, summon. iv. 10.
- cītra, prep. with acc., (cis), on this side of. 6.
- cītro, adv., (cis), hither; ultro citroque, to and fro. i. 42.
- cīvis, is, m. and f., a citizen. 5.
- cīvītas, ātis, f., a state, the privilege of citizenship. 182.
- clam, adv., secretly, privily. 6.
- clāmīto, āre, āvi, ātum, (clāmo), to cry out, shout, exclaim. v. 7, 29.
- clāmor, ōris, m., a loud cry, clamor, noise. 24.
- clandestīnus, a, um, adj., (clam), secret, private, hidden. vii. 1, 64.
- clārus, a, um, adj., clear, manifest, evident; illustrious; distinct, loud. v. 30.
- classis, is, f., a fleet. 5.
- claudio, ěre, si, sum, to shut, encompass, conclude; agmen claudere, to bring up the rear. 6.



clāvus, i, m., a nail. iii. 13.  
 clēmentia, ae, f., mildness, mercy, clemency. ii. 14, 31.  
 cliens, tis, m. and f., a client, vassal, retainer. 10.  
 clientēla, ae, f., clientship, protection, patronage. 5.  
 clivus, i, m., an ascent, elevation, a steep. vii. 46, 47.  
 Cn. (= Gnaeus), m., a praenomen. 5.  
 coācervo, āre, āvi, ātum, (con + acervo), to heap up, accumulate, amass, pile up. ii. 27, vii. 70.  
 coactus, a, um. See cogo.  
 coagmento, āre, āvi, ātum, (cogo), to join together, connect; to construct. vii. 23.  
 coēgi. See cōgo.  
 coēmo, ēre, ēmi, emptum (con + emo), to buy up, purchase various articles. i. 3, vii. 55.  
 coeo, ire, ivi or ii, itum, (con + eo), to go or come together, meet, assemble, collect. vi. 22.  
 coepi, coepisse, defect. v., I began, commenced. 64.  
 coeptus, a, um, from coepi.  
 coerceo, ēre, ui, itum, (con + arceo), to embrace, confine; to surround, check, curb. i. 17, v. 7.  
 cōgītātio, ōnis, f., a thinking, reflection, thought, design, project. vi. 22, vii. 32.  
 cōgīto, āre, āvi, ātum, (con + agīto), to think; reflect upon, ponder, meditate. 10.  
 cognātio, ōnis, f., (con + nascor), relationship by blood, kindred, relatives. vi. 22, vii. 32.  
 cognosco, ēre, ōvi, itum, (con + nosco), to ascertain, learn, investigate, discover. 130.  
 cōgo, ēre, cōēgi, coactum, (con + ago), to drive together, collect, assemble; to compel, force, urge. 67.  
 cōhors, tis, f., a cohort. 45.

cōhortātio, ōnis, f., an exhortation, encouraging. ii. 25.  
 cohortor, āri, ātus, dep., (con + hortor), to exhort, encourage. 25.  
 coīre. See coeo.  
 collātus, a, um. See confēro.  
 collaudo, āre, āvi, ātum, (con + laudo), to praise, extol, commend. 4.  
 colligo, āre, āvi, ātum, (con + ligo), to bind together, connect. i. 25.  
 colligo, ēre, ēgi, ectum, (con + lego), to collect, gather together, assemble; to acquire, obtain. 8.  
 collis, is, m., a hill, hillock, ascent. 36.  
 collōco, āre, āvi, ātum, (con + loco), to put, place, erect, set up; to arrange. 34.  
 collōquium, i, n., conference, interview, conversation. 15.  
 collōquor, i, cūtus, dep., (con + loquor), to converse, speak with, confer. 11.  
 cōlo, ēre, ui, cultum, to cultivate, attend to; to honor, worship, reverence. v. 12, vi. 17.  
 cōlōnia, ae, f., (cōlōnus), a colony, settlement. vi. 24.  
 cōlor, ōris, m., color, complexion, hue, tint. v. 14, vi. 28, vii. 88.  
 combūro, ēre, bussi, bustum, (con + ūro), to burn up. i. 5.  
 cōmes, itis, m. and f., (con + eo), a companion, fellow, associate, comrade. vi. 30.  
 cōmītia, orum, n. pl., the comitia; i. e. an assembly of the Roman people for electing magistrates.  
 cōmītium, i, n., (con + eo), a part of the Roman forum. vii. 67.  
 cōmītor, āri, ātus, dep., (comes), to accompany, follow, attend, wait upon. vi. 8.  
 commeātus, ūs, m., (commeo), a passage; provisions, victuals, supplies; a furlough. 21.  
 commēmōro, āre, āvi, ātum, (con + mēmōro), to call to mind, mention, remind; to relate. 6.

- commendo, āre, āvi, ātum, (con + mando), to commit, intrust, commend. iv. 27.
- commeo, āre, āvi, ātum, (con + meo), to go, come and go, resort, frequent. i. 1, vii. 36.
- commīnus, adv., (con + manus), hand to hand, in close combat. i. 52, v. 44, vii. 50.
- commisūra, ae, f., (committo), a joining, joint, juncture. vii. 72.
- committo, ēre, mīsi, missum, (con + mitto), to join together; to intrust, commit; to risk, peruit; committere praelium, to join or commence battle. 35.
- commōde, adv., (commōdus), fitly, suitably, conveniently. 10.
- commōdum, i, n., (commōdus), advantage, convenience; profit, utility. 8.
- commōdus, a, um, adj., (con + mōdus), convenient, suitable, advantageous; agreeable, favorable. 5.
- commōnēfācio, ēre, fēci, factum, (con + mōneo + fācio), to remind, admonish, warn. i. 19.
- commōror, āri, ātus, dep., (con + mōror), to stop, pause, linger, stay. v. 7, vii. 32.
- commōveo, ēre, mōvi, mōtum, (con + moveo), to move, disturb, excite; to affect, influence. 9.
- commūnico, āre, āvi, ātum, (commūnis), to communicate, share, impart; to plan, concert. 11.
- commūniō, īre, īvi or ii, ītum, (con + munio), to fortify, fence about, secure. i. 8, v. 49, vi. 7.
- commūnis, e, adj., (con + mūnus), common, ordinary, general, belonging to the public. 31.
- commūtātio, ōnis, f., a change. 8.
- commūto, āre, āvi, ātum, (con + mūto), to change, exchange, alter. 5.
- compāro, āre, āvi, ātum, (con + paro), to compare. i. 31, vi. 24.
- compāro, āre, āvi, ātum, (con + paro), to prepare, provide, get ready; to acquire. 19.
- compello, ēre, pūli, pulsum, (con + pello), to drive together, assemble, collect; to force, compel, constrain. 7.
- compendium, i, n., (con + pendo), gain, profit, advantage. vii. 43.
- compērio, īre, pēri, pertum, (con + pārio), to learn, discover, ascertain. 8.
- complector, i, exus, dep., (con + plecto), to embrace, encircle, enclose. i. 20, vii. 72, 74.
- compleo, ēre, ēvi, ētum, (con + pleo), to fill, finish, complete. 20.
- complūres, a or ia, gen. ium, adj., (con + plus), several, many, a great many. 39.
- comporto, āre, āvi, ātum, (con + porto), to bring together, collect, bring. 8.
- comprēhendo, ēre, di, sum, (con + prēhendo), to seize, bring together, arrest; to include, embrace. 11.
- comprōbo, āre, āvi, ātum, (con + prōbo), to approve, confirm, sanction, make good. v. 58.
- compulsus, a, um. See compello.
- cōnātum, i, n., (cōnor), an attempt, effort, endeavor. i. 3.
- cōnātus, ūs, m., (cōnor), an attempt, endeavor, undertaking, effort. i. 8.
- concedō, ēre, cessi, cessum, to retire; to grant, yield; to allow, permit. 14.
- concerto, āre, āvi, ātum, to contend, strive. vi. 5.
- concessus, ūs, m., (concedō), permission, leave, allowing. vii. 20.
- concido, ēre, cīdi, cīsum, (con + caedo), to cut to pieces, destroy; to divide, slay. i. 12, ii. 11, iii. 9.
- concido, ēre, cīdi, —, (con + cādo), to fall, die, perish. 8.
- concilio, āre, āvi, ātum, to gain over, obtain, reconcile. 4.
- concilium, i, n., (concieo), an assembly, a council, a meeting. 35.

concisus, a, um. See concido.  
 concito, āre, āvi, ātum, (con + cito),  
*to excite, stir up, rouse, provoke, urge.* 5.  
 conclāmo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to cry out,*  
*proclaim, call out, shout.* 9.  
 conclūdo, ěre, si, sum, *to shut up, en-*  
*close, confine.* iii. 9.  
 concrēpo, āre, ui, itum, *to make a noise,*  
*rattle, ring, clash.* vii. 21.  
 concurro, ěre, curri or cucurri, cur-  
 sum, *to run or rush together, meet,*  
*charge, engage in fight; to concur, hap-*  
*pen together.* 14.  
 concursus, āre, āvi, ātum, *to run to and*  
*fro, run up and down.* v. 33, 50.  
 concursus, ūs, m, *a running together, an*  
*engagement, collision.* 8.  
 condemno, āre, āvi, ātum, (con +  
 damno), *to condemn, charge with.* vii. 19.  
 condicio, ōnis, f., (condico), *condition,*  
*quality, state; terms, stipulation.* 17.  
 condōno, āre, āvi, ātum, *to pardon, for-*  
*give; to bestow.* i. 20 (twice).  
 conduco, ěre, xi, ctum, *to bring together,*  
*assemble, conduct; to hire.* 6.  
 confectus, a, um. See conficō.  
 confercio, ěre, fersi, fertum, (con +  
 farcio), *to stuff, cram, press together,*  
*crowd.* 9.  
 confēro, ferre, contūli, collātum, *to*  
*bring together, gather; to compare; to*  
*ascribe, impute.* 26.  
 confertus, a, um, partic. adj., (con-  
 ferco), *dense, crowded, full, thick,*  
*close.* 9.  
 confestim, adv., *immediately.* 7.  
 conficō, ěre, fēci, factum, (con +  
 fācio), *to accomplish, make, perform,*  
*compose, finish execute; to weaken, ex-*  
*haust; to collect, furnish.* 48.  
 confido, ěre, fisus, semi-dep., *to confide*  
*in, trust, rely on.* 23.  
 configo, ěre, fixi, fixum, *to fasten to-*  
*gether; to stab, pierce.* iii. 13.  
 confinis, e, adj., *contiguous, adjoining,*  
*bordering upon.* vi. 3.

confinium, i, n., *a boundary, confine,*  
*border, limit, frontier.* v. 24.  
 confio, fiēri, factus, irr. pass. of con-  
 ficō, *to be accomplished, performed.*  
 vii. 58.  
 confirmatio, ōnis, f., *proof, assurance,*  
*confirmation.* iii. 18.  
 confirmo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to strengthen,*  
*establish, confirm, encourage; to secure,*  
*affirm.* 32.  
 confisus, a, um. See configo.  
 confiteor, ěri, fessus, dep., (con +  
 fateor), *to acknowledge, confess, own,*  
*admit, grant, concede.* v. 27.  
 confixus, a, um. See configo.  
 confiāgro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to be on fire,*  
*burn.* v. 43.  
 conflictio, āre, āvi, ātum, (configo),  
*to strike or dash together; to trouble,*  
*distress.* v. 35.  
 configo, ěre, fixi, fictum, *to strike or*  
*dash together, engage, fight.* 4.  
 confluens, entis, m., *the confluence.* iv. 15.  
 confluo, ěre, xi, —, *to flow together; to*  
*flock together.* vii. 44.  
 confūgio, ěre, fūgi, fūgitum, *to flee for*  
*succor, have recourse to.* vi. 5.  
 confundo, ěre, fūdi, fūsum, *to pour*  
*together, blend, join, mix.* vii. 75.  
 congrēdiōr, i, gressus, dep., (con +  
 grādiōr), *to move with; to accost, meet;*  
*to contend fight, engage.* 8.  
 congressus, ūs, m., *a meeting.* iii. 13.  
 conficio, ěre, iēci, iectum, (con + iācio),  
*to throw or hurl together, discharge, cast;*  
*to divine, conjecture.* 36.  
 coniectūra, ae, f., (conficio), *conjec-*  
*ture, conclusion.* vii. 35.  
 coniunctim, adv., (coniungo), *con-*  
*jointly, together.* vi. 19.  
 coniungo, ěre, xi, ctum, *to join together,*  
*associate, unite, connect.* 19.  
 coniunx, ūgis, m. and f., (coniungo),  
*husband; wife.* vii. 14.  
 coniūratio, ōnis, f., *a conspiracy, con-*  
*federacy, combination.* 5.

- conciūro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to conspire, swear together, plot, combine.* 5.
- cōnor, āri, ātus, dep., *to undertake, strive, attempt, endeavor.* 33.
- conquiesco, ěre, ēvi, ētum, *to repose, rest, be at rest.* vii. 46.
- conquīro, ěre, sivi, sītum, (con + quaero), *to search for, seek after, collect, procure.* 6.
- conquīsitus, a, um. See conquīro.
- consanguīneus, a, um, adj., (con + sanguis), *kindred, related by blood.* 4.
- consanguīneus, i, m., *a relation, a relative.*
- conscendo, ěre, di, sum, (con + scando), *to ascend, mount, embark.* iv. 23, v. 7, 39.
- conscientia, ae, f., (con + scio), *joint knowledge; conscience, consciousness, feeling.* v. 56.
- conscisco, ěre, scīvi, scītum, *to determine, resolve on, decree, execute.* i. 4, iii. 24.
- consciūs, a, um, adj., (con + scio), *conscious, privy to, witness of, accessory, accomplice.* i. 14.
- conscribo, ěre, scripsi, scriptum, *to write together, enlist, enroll, levy.* 9.
- consĕcro, āre, āvi, ātum, (con + sācro), *to make sacred, consecrate, hallow.* vi. 13, 17.
- consector, āri, ātus, dep., *to follow after eagerly, pursue.* 6.
- consĕcūtus, a, um. See consequor.
- consensio, ōnis, f., *consent, agreement, unanimity.* vii. 76.
- consensus, ūs, m., *agreement, consent.* 7.
- consentio, ĩre, sensi, sensum, *to agree, accord, be of the same opinion; to conspire, combine.* ii. 3 (twice), v. 29.
- consequor, i, cūtus, dep., *to follow, overtake, pursue, acquire, obtain, attain.* 16.
- conservo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to preserve, defend, protect, maintain; to observe; to save.* 8.
- consīdo, ěre, sēdi, sessum, *to sit down, settle, encamp; to stop, delay.* 24.
- consilium, i, n., *deliberation, advice, counsel, wisdom, purpose, plan, design, judgment, determination; a council.* 123.
- consimilis, e, adj., *very similar, like.* ii. 11, v. 12, vi. 27.
- consisto, ěre, stīti, stītum, *to stand, halt, stop, stay, remain; to consist.* 46.
- consōbrīnus, i, m., *a cousin.* vii. 76.
- consōlor, āri, ātus, dep., *to console, solace, comfort, encourage, cheer.* 5.
- conspectus, ūs, m., *look, sight, prescence, view.* 17.
- conspicio, ěre, spexi, spectrum, (con + spēcio), *to see, observe, behold, discern.* 17.
- conspīcor, āri, ātus, dep., *to see, desery, observe, discern.* 11.
- conspīro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to blow together; to agree, unite, conspire.* iii. 10.
- constanter, adv., *firmly, consistently, steadily.* ii. 2, iii. 25.
- constantia, ae, f., *firmness, consistency, resolution.* i. 40, vii. 77.
- consterno, āre, āvi, ātum, *to alarm, terrify, dismay.* vii. 30.
- consterno, ěre, strāvi, strātum, *to strew over, lay, spread over.* iv. 17.
- constīpo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to press or crowd together, thicken, pack, cram.* v. 43.
- constituo, ěre, ui, ūtum, (con + statuo), *to place, put, set down, station; to appoint, determine, fix; to build, create, construct.* 89.
- consto, āre, stīti, stātum, *to stand, exist, remain, continue; to persist, agree, depend upon; constat, it is evident.* 14.
- constrātus, a, um. See consterno.
- consuesco, ěre, suēvi, suētum, *to be accustomed, accustom one's self, be wont.* 38.
- consuētūdo, Inis, f., (consuesco), *custom, habit, use, intimacy.* 31.
- consuētus, a, um. See consuesco.

consul, ūlis, m., *a consul*. 9.  
 consūlātus, ūs, m., *consulship*. i. 35.  
 consūlo, ěre, ui, ultum, *to consult, deliberate, take counsel, provide for; to respect*. 12.  
 consulto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to consult, deliberate, take counsel*. v. 53, vii. 77.  
 consulto, adv., (*consultum*), *designedly, on purpose*. 5.  
 consultum, i, n., (*consūlo*), *decree, deliberation, decision, statute*. i. 43.  
 consūmo, ěre, sumpsi, sumptum, *to consume, eat up, waste, destroy; pass. spend*. 14.  
 consurgo, ěre, surrexi, surrectum, *to rise together, pay respect, rise up*. v. 31, vi. 23.  
 contābŭlo, āre, āvi, ātum, (*con + tābŭla*), *to cover with board, plank, floor*. v. 40, vii. 22.  
 contāgio, ōnis, f., (*contingo*), *contact; contagion, infection*. vi. 13.  
 contāmīno, āre, āvi, ātum, (*con + tango*), *to pollute, stain, defile, contaminate*. vii. 43.  
 contĕgo, ěre, texi, tectum, *to cover, conceal*. vii. 85.  
 contemno, ěre, mpsi, mptum, *to despise, slight, contemn*. v. 57.  
 contemptio, ōnis, f., *contempt, scorn, disdain*. 4.  
 contemptus, ūs, m., *contempt, disdain, scorn*. ii. 30.  
 contendo, ěre, di, tum, (*con + tendo*), *to stretch, endeavor, draw, exert one's self; to maintain, contend; to go to, hasten*. 75.  
 contentio, ōnis, f., *straining, endeavor, contest, zeal, dispute*. 7.  
 contentus, a, um, adj., (*contīneo*), *content, satisfied*, vii. 64.  
 contestor, āri, ātus, dep., *to call to witness, conjure, invoke*. iv. 25.  
 contexo, ere, xui, xtum, *to weave, join together, connect, construct*. iv. 17, vi. 16, vii. 23.

contīgi. See *contingo*.  
 continens, entis, partic. adj., (*contīneo*), *bordering upon, adjoining; uninterrupted, continual*.  
 continens, entis, f., (*sc. terra*), *the continent*. 10.  
 contīnenter, adv., (*contīneo*), *continually, uninterruptedly*. i. 1, 26; iii. 5.  
 continentia, ae, f., *moderation, self-control*. vii. 52.  
 contīneo, ěre, tīnui, tentum, (*con + teneo*), *contain, hold together, restrain; to occupy, keep, hold*. 53.  
 contingo, ěre, tīgi, tactum, (*con + tango*), *to touch, border on; to occur, happen*. 8.  
 continŭatio, ōnis, f., (*contīnuo*), *continuance, connection, continuation*. iii. 29.  
 contīnuo, adv., (*continuus*), *at once, immediately*. vii. 42.  
 contīnuus, a, um, adj., (*contīneo*), *continuous, successive*. 4.  
 contio, ōnis, f., (*conventio, con + venio*), *an assembly, a council, a meeting*. v. 52, vii. 52, 53.  
 contīōnor, āri, ātus, dep., (*contio*), *to harangue, address the people, make a speech*. vi. 47.  
 contrā, prep. with acc., *contrary to, against, opposite to*. 4.  
 contrā, adv., *on the contrary, on the other hand*. 53.  
 contrāho, ěre, traxi, tractum, *to draw together, collect, unite, contract, draw in*. 5.  
 contrārius, a, um, adj., (*contra*), *contrary, opposite; ex contrario, on the contrary*. 4.  
 contrōversia, ae, f., *contention, controversy, dispute, debate*. 14.  
 contŭli. See *confero*.  
 contŭmĕlia, ae, f., *disgrace, insult, violence, rudeness, outrage*. 7.  
 convalesco, ěre, lui, —, *to become strong; to gain strength, convalesce*. vi. 36.

- convallis, is, f., a valley inclosed on all sides. iii. 20, v. 32.
- convēho, ěre, vxi, vectum, to collect, bring together. vii. 74.
- convēnio, ěre, vēni, ventum, to assemble, meet: to be agreed upon, suit: to flock; convenit, it is agreed upon; it is fit, right. 61.
- conventus, ūs, m., a court, assembly, meeting, assizes. 7.
- converto, ěre, ti, sum, to turn about, direct, alter, change. 13.
- convinco, ěre, vīci, victum, prove, overcome, convince. i. 40.
- convōco, āre, āvi, ātum, to summon, call together, assemble. 17.
- coōrior, ěri, ortus, dep., (con + orior), to rise, rise in mutiny, break out, appear; to intervene, come to pass, occur. 5.
- cōpia, ae, f., (con + ops), abundance, plenty, number, supply, resources; provisions; copiae, f. pl., troops, forces. 148.
- cōpiōsus, a, um, adj., copious, rich, well supplied. i. 23.
- cōpūla, ae, f., a grapnel. iii. 13.
- cor, cordis, n., the heart; cordi esse, to be dear. vi. 19.
- cōram, adv., in person, in presence of, before. i. 32, vi. 8.
- cōrium, i, n., skin or hide of a beast, leather. vii. 22.
- cornu, ūs, n., a horn, trumpet, cornet; wing of an army. 14.
- cōrōna, ae, f., chaplet, crown, wreath. iii. 16, vii. 72.
- corpus, ōris, n., a body, person. 13.
- corrumpo, ěre, rūpi, ruptum, (con + rumpo), to damage, injure, destroy, corrupt, waste. vii. 55, 64.
- cortex, ěcis, m. and f., bark. ii. 33.
- Cōrus, i, m., the northwest wind. v. 7.
- cotidiānus. See quotidianus.
- cotidie. See quotidie.
- crassitūdo, ěnis, f., thickness. iii. 13, vii. 73.
- crātes, is, f., a hurdle, fascine, wicker-work. 8.
- crēber, bra, brum, adj., repeated, frequent, crowded. 14.
- crēbro, adv., often, frequently. vii. 41.
- crēdo, ěre, dīdi, dītum, to trust, believe, suppose, imagine, give credit to, think; to commend. 7.
- crēmo, āre, āvi, ātum, to burn. i. 4, vi. 19.
- creo, āre, āvi, ātum, to make, produce, create, elect, appoint. 5.
- Cres, ětis, adj., Cretan. ii. 7.
- cresco, ěre, crēvi, crētum, to increase, grow, thrive, become greater, come forth: to rise in influence. i. 20, vii. 55.
- crūciātus, ūs, m., torture, torment, distress. 9.
- crūdēlitas, ātis, f., cruelty. i. 32, vii. 77.
- crūdēlīter, adv., cruelly. i. 31, vii. 38.
- crus, crūrīs, n., the leg. vi. 27.
- cūbīle, is, n., a couch, a bed. vi. 27.
- culmen, ěnis, n., the summit, top of a thing. iii. 2.
- culpa, ae, f., an offence, fault. iv. 27, v. 52.
- cultus, ūs, m., (cōlo), refinement, culture, cultivation, dress, mode of living. 4.
- cum, prep. with the ablat., with, among, along with. 250.
- cum, conj., since, when, because, although. 289.
- cunctātio, ōnis, f., lingering, delay, hesitation. iii. 18, 24.
- cunctor, āri, ātus, dep., to linger, delay; to doubt, hesitate. iii. 23, iv. 25.
- cunctus, a, um, adj., all together, all, entire, the whole. ii. 29, vii. 10, 11.
- cūneātim, adv., in form of a wedge. vii. 28.
- cūneus, i, m., a wedge. vi. 40.
- cūnicūlus, i, m., a rabbit; mine, burrow. 5.
- cūpīde, adv., eagerly. 4.
- cupiditas, ātis, f., eagerness, desire, avarice, cupidity. 6.

cūpīdus, a, um, adj., *eager, desirous, fond.* 5.

cupio, ěre, ivi or ii, itum, *to wish, desire, long for; to favor, wish well to; to covet.* 5.

cur, adv., *why, wherefore.* 5.

cūra, ae, f., *attention, diligence, care.* i. 32, 40; vii. 65.

cūro, āre, āvi, ātum, *attend to, take care, care for; to regard.* 12.

curro, ěre, cūcurri, cursum, *to run, flow.* vii. 24.

currus, ūs, m., *a chariot, car, wagon.* iv. 33.

cursus, ūs, m., *a running, speed, race, course, voyage.* 13.

custōdia, ae, f., *guard, custody, charge, care, the act of keeping.* 5.

custōdio, ěre, ivi or ii, itum, *to watch, keep, guard, observe.* vi. 4.

custos, ōdis, m. and f., *a keeper, watch, guard, preserver, spy.* 5.

## D.

damno, āre, āvi, ātum, *to sentence, condemn, doom.* i. 4, v. 55.

damnum, i, n., *damage, loss, injury.* vi. 44.

de, prep. with the ablat., *of, from, concerning, after, in regard to, on account of, for, by, in, during.* 205.

dēbeo, ěre, ui, itum, (de + hābeo), *to owe, be in debt; debet, ought; pass., to be due.* 13.

dēcēdo, ěre, cessi, cessum, *to go away, depart, retire, withdraw.* 5.

dēcēm, num. adj. indecl., *ten.* 11.

dēcerno, ěre, crēvi, crētum, *to decide, judge, determine, resolve, decree, deliberate; to fight, contend, engage.* 8.

dēcerto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to strive, contend for, fight.* 6.

dēcessus, ūs, m., (decēdo), *a going away, departure, withdrawal.* iii. 13.

dēcīdo, ěre, Idi, —, (de + cado), *to fall from, fall down.* i. 48.

dēcīmus, a, um, num. adj., *the tenth.* 15.

dēcīpio, ěre, cēpi, ceptum, (de + capio), *to ensnare, catch, deceive, beguile.* i. 14.

dēcīlāro, āre, āvi, ātum, (de + claro), *to proclaim, declare, manifest, evince.* i. 50.

dēcīlvīs, e, adj., (de + clivus), *descending, sloping.* 4.

declivīt s, ātis, f., *a declivity, a descent.* vii. 85.

dēcērētum, i, n., (decerno), *a resolution, decree, decision.* vi. 13 (twice), vii. 34.

dēcērētus, a, um. See dēcerno.

dēcēmānus, a, um, adj., (dēcēm), *of or belonging to the tenth.* ii. 24, iii. 25, vi. 37.

dēcūrīo, ōnis, f., *the commander of a dēcūrīa or ten horsemen; a decurion.* i. 23.

dēcūror, ěre, cūcurri or curri, cursum, *to run down, to hasten.* 4.

dēdēcus, ōris, n., (de + dēcus), *dishonor, disgrace, infamy, shameful action.* iv. 25.

dedi. See do.

dēdīdi. See dēdo.

dēdītīcius, a, um, adj., (dēdo), *having surrendered.* 4.

dēdītīcius, i, m., *one who has surrendered, a prisoner.*

dēdītīo, ōnis, f., (dēdo), *capitulation, surrender.* 19.

dēdītus. See dēdo.

dēdo, ěre, dīdi, dītum, *to surrender, give up, deliver, devote, submit, give.* 16.

dēdūco, ěre, xi, ctum, *to bring or pull down, conduct, remove, withdraw; to influence, induce, lead, move; to accompany, conduct; e. g. a bride to her husband.* 31.

dēest. See dēsūm.

dēfātīgātīo, ōnis, f., *exhaustion, weariness.* iii. 19.

- dēfātigo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to fatigue, exhaust, weary.* 5.
- dēfectio, ōnis, f., (dēficio), *revolt, defectio; failure, want.* 12.
- dēfendo, ěre, di, sum, *to keep off, ward off, repel; to protect, defend, keep.* 28.
- dēfensio, ōnis, f., *defence.* ii. 7, vii. 23.
- dēfensor, ōris, m., *a defender, protector; defence, advocate.* 8.
- dēfēro, ferre, tūli, lātum, *to carry or bring away, convey; to report, inform, confer, offer.* 26.
- dēfessus, a, um, adj., (dēfētiscor), *fatigued, wearied.* 6.
- dēficio, ěre, fēci, fectum, (de + fācio), *to be wanting, fail; to withdraw, revolt, forsake, leave; animo deficere, to be disheartened.* 13.
- dēfīgo, ěre, fixi, fixum, *to drive down, fasten, plant, fix, thrust.* iv. 17, v. 18, 44.
- dēfīnio, ěre, īvi or ii, ītum, *to limit, define, determine, prescribe, resolve, explain.* vii. 83.
- dēfīxus, a, um. See dēfīgo.
- dēfluo, ěre, fluxi, fluxum, *to flow down, flow apart.* iv. 10.
- dēfīōre = dēfūtūrum esse, *to be about, to be wanting.* v. 5, 6.
- dēformis, e, adj., (de + forma), *deformed, ugly, misshapen, unsightly.* iv. 2, vii. 23.
- dēfūgio, ěre, fūgi, fūgītum, *to shun, flee, avoid.* vi. 13.
- dēfui. See desum.
- deīcio, ěre, iēci, iectum, (de + iācio), *to dislodge, throw down, overthrow, prostrate, kill, slay; to disappoint.* 12.
- deiectus, ūs, m., (dēicio), *a declivity, depression, steep place, descent.* ii. 8, 22, 29.
- dēinceps, adv., (dein + cāpio), *successively, besides, next in succession, after that, moreover.* 6.
- dēinde, adv., (de + inde), *afterwards, then, next.* 7.
- dēlātus, a, um. See dēfēro.
- dēlecto, āre, āvi, ātum, (de + lācio), *to please, delight, allure.* iv. 2.
- dēlectus, ūs, m., (deligo), *a levy, conscription.* vi. 1 (twice), vii. 1, 3.
- dēleo, ěre, ēvi, ētum, *to efface, destroy, overthrow; to blot out.* 6.
- dēlibero, āre, āvi, ātum, (de + libra), *to deliberate, consider, advise, determine.* i. 7, iv. 9, vii. 15.
- dēlibro, āre, āvi, ātum, (de + liber), *to peel, take off the bark.* vii. 73.
- dēlictum, i, n., (dēlinquo), *an offence, crime, sin, fault.* vii. 4.
- dēlīgo, āre, āvi, ātum, (de + līgo), *to tic, fasten, bind.* 4.
- dēlīgo, ěre, lēgi, lectum, (de + lēgo), *to select, choose, pick out, detach, cull.* 26.
- dēlītesco, ěre, lītui, —, (de + lātesco), *to be concealed, lie hid, lurk.* iv. 32.
- dēmentia, ae, f., (demens), *folly, madness.* iv. 13.
- dēmēto, ěre, messui, messum, *to cut down, reap.* iv. 32.
- dēmīgro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to depart, migrate, remove.* iv. 4, 19; v. 43.
- dēmīnuo, ěre, ui, ūtum, *to lessen, diminish, abate, withdraw.* 6.
- dēmīssus, a, um, partic. adj., (demitto), *drooping, dejected.*
- dēmīto, ěre, mīsi, missum, *to send down, cast, sink, lower, let fall, thrust.* 9.
- dēmo, ěre, dempsi, demptum, (de + ěmo), *to remove, take off, take away.* v. 48.
- dēmonstro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to show, point out, demonstrate, declare, mention, name, state.* 37.
- dēmōror, āri, ātus, *to detain, hinder, delay, stop, abide, remain.* iii. 6.
- dēmum, adv., *finally, at length.* 4.
- dēnēgo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to deny, refuse, not suffer.* i. 42.
- dēni, ae, a, dist. num. adj., *ten by ten, ten.* i. 43, v. 14.
- dēnīque, adv., *finally, at last, at least.* 5.



- densus, a, um, adj., *dense, close, crowded, thick.* 7.
- dēnuntio, āre, āvi, ātum, *to declare, announce; to denounce, threaten.* i. 36, v. 54, vi. 10.
- dēpello, ěre, pŭli, pulsum, *to drive down, drive away, dislodge, avert, remove.* 4.
- dēperdo, ěre, dīdi, dītum, *to lose.* i. 43, iii. 28, v. 54.
- dēpereo, ĩre, ii, —, *to be lost, perish, be undone, go to ruin.* v. 23, vii. 31.
- dēpōno, ěre, pōsui, pōsitum, *to lay aside, put down, place, station; to give up, lose.* 8.
- dēpōpŭlor, āri, ātus, dep., *to ravage, lay waste, plunder.* 6.
- dēporto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to convey away, carry, transfer from one place to another.* iii. 12.
- dēposco, ěre, pōposci, —, *to require, demand, request earnestly.* vii. 1.
- dēpōsitus, a, um. See depono.
- dēprēcātor, ōris, m., *an intercessor.* i. 9, vi. 4.
- dēprēcōr, āri, ātus, dep., *to avert by prayer, supplicate, beg, implore, deprecate, excuse.* 5.
- dēprēhendo, ěre, di, sum, *to seize, catch, detect, discover, surprise.* 5.
- dēpugno, āre, āvi, ātum, *to contend, fight it out.* vii. 28.
- dēpulsus, a, um. See dēpello.
- dērivo, āre, āvi, ātum, (de + rivus), *to derive, draw off.* vii. 72.
- dērōgo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to diminish, detract from, take away.* vi. 23.
- dēscendo, ěre, di, sum, (de + scando), *to come down, descend.* 5.
- dēsěco, āre, ui, tum, *to cut off.* vii. 4.
- dēsěro, ěre, ui, tum, *to abandon, desert, leave, forsake.* 10.
- dēsertor, ōris, m, *a deserter.* vi. 23.
- dēsertus, a, um, partic. adj., (dēsěro), *solitary, deserted, lonely, uninhabited.* ii. 29, v. 53.
- dēsīděro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to long for; to desire, miss, need, regret.* 7.
- dēsīdia, ae, f., (dēsīdeo), *inactivity, idleness.* vi. 23.
- dēsīgno, āre, āvi, ātum, *to designate, mark out, specify, denote.* i. 18.
- dēsīlio, ĩri, ui or ii, ultum, (de + sālĭo), *to leap down.* 8.
- dēsisto, ěre, stīti, stītum, *to discontinue, stand still, give over, cease, desist.* 13.
- dēspectus, us, m., (dēsīpicio), *prospect, height, elevation.* 5.
- dēsīpěrātus, a, um, partic. adj., (dēsīpěro), *desperate.* 12.
- dēsīpěrātĭo, ōnis, f., (dēsīpěro), *desperation, despair.* v. 33.
- dēsīpěro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to despair.* 20.
- dēsīpicio, ěre, spexi, spectrum, (de + spěcio), *to despise, look down on, disregard, disdain.* 7.
- dēsīpĭo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to deprive of, despoil, plunder, strip.* ii. 31.
- děstīneo, ěre, tĭnui, tentum, (de + těneo), *to detain, stay, stop, hinder.* iii. 12, vii. 37.
- děstīno, āre, āvi, ātum, *to make fast, fasten, design; to resolve, determine; to send, appoint.* iii. 14, vii. 22, 72.
- destīti. See dēsisto.
- děstituo, ěre, ui, ūtum, (de + stātuo), *to leave, forsake, abandon.* i. 16.
- děstringo, ěre, inxi, ictum, *to tear off, pluck, strip, draw, unsheathe.* i. 25, vii. 12.
- děsum, esse, fui, —, *to be wanting, fail.* 12.
- děsŭper, adv., *above, from above.* i. 52.
- dětěrior, us, adj. comp., *worse, inferior.* i. 36.
- dětěrreo, ěre, ui, ĩtum, *to prevent, deter, hinder, frighten.* 5.
- dětěstor, āri, ātus, dep., *to imprecate, execrate, curse; to detest.* vi. 31.
- dětracto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to decline, refuse, avoid.* vii. 14.
- dětractus, a, um. See dětrāho.

- detrāho, ěre, xi, ctum, to take off, remove, withdraw. 5.
- detrīmentōsus, a, um, adj., injurious, detrimental. vii. 33.
- detrīmentum, i, n., (dētĕro), damage, loss, harm. 9.
- detrūdo, ěre, trūsi, trūsum, to remove, thrust off. ii. 21.
- dētŭli. See dĕfĕro.
- dĕturbo, āre, āvi, ātum, to drive or cast down, beat, overthrow, drive away, dislodge. v. 43, vii. 86.
- dĕuro, ěre, ussi, ustum, to consume, burn up, set on fire. vii. 25.
- deus, i, m., a god, divinity, deity. 10.
- deustus, a, um. See dĕuro.
- dĕvĕho, ěre, xi, ctum, to carry or bring down, convey, remove. v. 47, vii. 88.
- dĕvĕnio, ěre, vĕni, ventum, to come down or go down, reach, arrive at. ii. 21.
- dĕvĕxus, a, um, adj., (dĕvĕho), inclining downward, sloping. vii. 88.
- dĕvīnco, ěre, vīci, victum, to subdue, conquer completely. vii. 34.
- dĕvōco, āre, āvi, ātum, to call, call away. vi. 7.
- dĕvōtus, a, um, partic. adj., (dĕvōveo), attached, devoted. iii. 22.
- dĕvōveo, ěre, vōvi, vōtum, to devote, vow, promise; to doom. iii. 22, vi. 7.
- dexter, ěra, ěrum, and tra, trum, adj., right, on the right; dextra, ae, f., (sc. mānus), the right hand. 13.
- dicio, ōnis, f., dominion, power, authority, rule. i. 31, 33; ii. 34.
- dīco, āre, āvi, ātum, to consecrate, dedicate, offer, devote, vow. vi. 12, 13.
- dīco, ěre, dixi, dictum, speak, say, name, appoint, determine, agree to, promise, mention. 107.
- dictio, ōnis, f., a pleading. i. 4.
- dictum, i, n., a word, command, saying. v. 6.
- dīdūco, ěre, xi, ctum, to draw aside, separate, divide, disperse. iii. 23, vi. 34.
- dies, ēi, m. and f., a day, time, length of time; in dies, daily; diem ex die, day after day. 186.
- diffĕro, ferre, distŭli, dilātum, to carry hither and thither, disperse, scatter; delay, protract; to differ, be different. 9.
- difficilis, e, adj., (dis + fācilis), difficult. 7.
- difficultas, ātis, f., difficulty. 14.
- difficulter, adv., with difficulty. vii. 58.
- diffīdo, ěre, fīsus sum, semi-dep., (dis + fīdo), to mistrust, distrust, despair, fear, despair of. v. 41, vi. 36, 38.
- diffundo, ěre, fūdi, fūsum, (dis + fundo), to pour out, scatter, spread out, extend, diffuse. vi. 26.
- dīgītus, i, m., a finger. iii. 13, vii. 73.
- dignitas, ātis, f., merit, dignity, worth, standing. 13.
- dignus, a, um, adj., worthy. vii. 25.
- dii. See deus.
- diiŭdīco, āre, āvi, ātum, to decide, judge, distinguish, determine. v. 44.
- diligenter, adv., attentively, diligently, carefully, accurately. 9.
- diligentia, ae, f., attention, diligence, carefulness, industry, caution. 13.
- dīlīgo, ěre, lexi, lectum, (dis + lĕgo), to love. vi. 19.
- dīmĕtiar, ěri, mensus, dep., to measure off. ii. 19, iv. 17.
- dīmīcātio, ōnis, f., a fight, contest, skirmish, struggle, risk. vii. 86.
- dīmīco, āre, āvi, ātum, (dis + mīco), to contend, fight. 18.
- dīmīdium, i, n., the half. v. 13.
- dīmīdius, a, um, adj., (dis + mĕdius), half. vi. 31.
- dīmītto, ěre, mīsi, missum, to dismiss, send away, discharge, let go; to release, reject, leave, abandon, renounce. 36.
- dīrecte, (directus), adv., straight. iv. 17.
- dīrectus, a, um, partic. adj., (dīrīgo), direct, straight, level, upright, steep. 4.

- dirigo, ěre, rexi, rectum, (dis + rĕgo),** to arrange, direct, guide, dispose, steer, regulate. vi. 8.
- dirimo, ěre, ěmi, emptum, (dis + emo),** to part, divide, separate, interrupt, break off. i. 46.
- diripio, ěre, ripui, reptum, (dis + rāpio),** to snatch different ways, tear asunder; to plunder, lay waste, ravage. 10.
- Dis, Dītis, m.,** Pluto, the god of the infernal regions. vi. 18.
- discĕdo, ěre, cessi, cessum, to with-**draw, depart, go away. 50.
- disceptātor, ōris, m.,** an umpire, arbitrator, mediator, judge. vii. 37.
- discerno, ěre, crĕvi, crĕtum, distin-**guish, discern, judge, determine; to separate. vii. 75.
- discensus, ūs, m., (discĕdo),** separation, departure. 11.
- disciplīna, ae, f., (disco),** learning, instruction, discipline, system. 8.
- disclūdo, ěre, si, sum, to divide, sepa-**rate, keep apart. iv. 17, vii. 8.
- disco, ěre, dīdici, —, to learn, study, un-**derstand. 4.
- discrīmen, ĩnis, n., (discerno),** separation, difference, distinction; danger, peril, hazard. vi. 38.
- discūtio, ěre, cussi, cussum, (dis + quātio),** to scatter, remove, disperse, shatter. vii. 8.
- discio, ěre, iĕci, iectum, (dis + iācio),** to disperse, rout, scatter. i. 25, iii. 15, 20.
- dispar, āris, adj.,** unlike, unequal, different. v. 16, vii. 39.
- dispāro, āre, āvi, ātum, to divide, sepa-**rate. vii. 28.
- dispergo, ěre, si, sum, (dis + spargo),** to disperse, scatter, distribute. 11.
- dispōno, ěre, pōsui, pōsitum, to arrange,** distribute, dispose, station. 17.
- dispūtātio, ōnis, f.,** dispute, discussion, debate. v. 30, 31.
- dispūto, āre, āvi, ātum, to debate, argue,** discuss. vi. 14.
- dissensio, ōnis, f.,** disagreement, discord, variance, strife. 6.
- dissentio, ĩre, sensi, sensum, to dissent,** disagree, differ in opinion or in sentiment. v. 29, vii. 29.
- dissĕro, ěre, sĕvi, sĕtum, to plant, sow,** put into the ground. vii. 73.
- dissimūlo, āre, āvi, ātum, to conceal,** disguise, dissemble. iv. 6.
- dissīpo, āre, āvi, ātum, to disperse, scat-**ter, throw asunder. ii. 24, v. 58, vi. 35.
- dissuādeo, ěre, suāsi, suāsum, to dis-**suade. vii. 15.
- distīneo, ěre, tīnui, tentum, (dis + tĕneo),** to keep separate, divide, keep apart, hinder, detain, prevent. 6.
- disto, āre, —, to stand apart, be dis-**tant. 5.
- distrāho, ěre, xi, ctum, to draw apart,** divide, separate. vii. 23.
- distribūo, ěre, ui, ūtum, to divide, dis-**tribute. 12.
- distūli.** See diffĕro.
- dītissīmus.** See dīves.
- dīū, adv.,** long, for a long time; by day. 21.
- diurnus, a, um, adj., (dies),** by day, daily, in the daytime. 4.
- dīūtīnus, a, um, adj., (diu),** lasting, long. v. 52.
- dīūturnitas, ātis, f.,** long duration. i. 40, iii. 4.
- dīūturnus, a, um, adj., (diu),** lasting long, of long duration. i. 14.
- dīversus, a, um, adj., (diverto),** separate, turned in different directions, remote, different. 6.
- dīves, ĩtis, adj.,** rich; comp. dīvītīor or dītīor, sup. dīvītīssīmus or dītīssīmus. i. 2.
- dīvido, ěre, vīsi, vīsum, to divide, sepa-**rate. 16.
- dīvīnus, a, um, adj., (divus),** divine. ii. 31, vi. 13, 21.

do, dāre, dēdi, dātum, *to give, afford, grant, make, cause, occasion, perform, concede.* 95.

dōceo, ēre, ui, tum, *to instruct, teach, inform.* 22.

dōcūmentum, i, n., (dōceo), *a lesson, example, warning, essay, trial.* vii. 4.

dōleo, ēre, ui, itum, *to regret, grieve, be pained.* 4.

dōlor, ōris, m., *pain, grief, mortification, vexation, resentment.* 10.

dōlus, i, m., *fraud, deceit, stratagem.* i. 13, iv. 13.

dōmesticus, a, um, adj., (domus), *private, domestic, of a house or family.* ii. 10, v. 9.

dōmicilium, i, n., (domus), *a home, dwelling, abode.* 4.

dōmīnor, āri, ātus, dep., (dōmīnus), *to rule, govern.* ii. 31.

dōmīnus, i, m., (dōmus), *a master, lord, owner, proprietor.* vi. 13.

dōmus, ūs and i, f., *a house, home, habitation; dōmi, at home; dōmum, homeward, home; dōmo, from home.* 33.

dōno, āre, āvi, ātum, *to give, confer, present; to pardon, forgive.* i. 47, vii. 11.

dōnum, i, n., *a present, gift, reward.* vii. 31.

dorsum, i, n., *the back; dorsum iugī, the slope or rid e of a hill.* vii. 44.

dōs, dōtis, f., (do), *a dowry.* vi. 19 (twice).

Druīdes, um, m. pl., *the Druids, the priests of the Gauls.* 7.

dūbītātio, ōnis, f., *uncertainty, doubt.* i. 14, v. 48, vii. 40.

dubīto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to hesitate, doubt.* 13.

dūbīus, a, um, adj., (duo), *uncertain, doubtful, hesitating; dūbium, i, n., doubt, uncertainty.* 4.

dūcenti, ae, a, num. adj., (duo + centum), *two hundred.* 7.

dūco, ēre, duxi, ductum, *to draw, lead, convey, conduct; to think, consider, account; to construct, build.* 37.

ductus, ūs, m., *lead, command, conduct.* vii. 62.

dum, adv., *while, until.* 27.

duo, ae, o, num. adj., *two.* 77.

duōdēcim, num. adj., *twelve.* i. 5, vi. 29.

duōdēcīmus, a, um, num. adj., *the twelfth.* ii. 23, 25; vii. 62.

duōdēni, ae, a, dist. num. adj., *twelve by twelve, twelve, twelve each.* v. 14, vii. 36, 75.

duōdēvīginti, num. adj., *eighteen.* 4.

duplex, icis, adj., (duo + plīco), *two-fold, double.* ii. 29, iii. 24, vii. 36.

dūplīco, āre, āvi, ātum, (duplex), *to double.* iv. 36, vi. 1.

dūrītia, ae, f., *hardness, endurance, hardness, roughness, severity.* vi. 21.

dūro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to harden, to endure.* vi. 28.

dūrus, a, um, adj., *hard, severe, harsh.* 4.

dux, dūcis, m. and f., *a guide, a leader.* 27.

## E.

ē or ex, prep. with the ablat., *from, out of, after, on account of, among; e is used only before consonants, ex before vowels and consonants.* e 20, ex 447.

ēdisco, ēre, dīdīci, —, *to commit to memory, learn by heart.* vi. 14.

ēdītus, a, um, partic. adj., (ēdo), *raised, high, lofty, elevated.* 4.

ēdo, ēre, dīdi, dītum, (e + do), *to utter, put forth, publish, make known, exhibit.* i. 31.

ēdōceo, ēre, ui, ctum, *to instruct, inform, relate, teach.* 4.

ēdūco, ēre, xi, ctum, *to draw out, bring out, lead forth.* 22.

effarcio, īre, si, tum, (ex + farcio), *to cram, stuff, fill.* vii. 23.

- effemino, āre, āvi, ātum, (ex + fēmīna),  
effeminate, enervate. i. 1, iv. 2.
- effero, ferre, extūli, ēlātum, to produce,  
bring forth, raise, lift up, elate; to pro-  
claim, divulge. 9.
- efficio, ěre, fēci, fectum, (ex + fācio),  
to accomplish, effect, occasion, bring to  
pass, produce, render. 32.
- effodio, ěre, fōdi, fossum, (ex + fōdio),  
to tear out, dig out. vii. 4.
- effugio, ěre, fūgi, fūgitum, (ex + fūgio),  
to flee away, avoid, shun, escape. iv. 35,  
v. 58, vi. 30.
- ēgens, entis, partic. adj., (ēgeo), in  
want, needy, destitute. vii. 4.
- ēgeo, ēre, ui, —, to be destitute, needy,  
in want. vi. 11, vii. 4.
- ēgestas, ātis, f., poverty, need, want.  
vi. 24.
- ēgi. See ago.
- ēgo, mei, pers. pron., I. 10.
- ēgrēdior, i, gressus, dep., (e + grādior),  
to depart from, go out, go beyond, leave;  
to disembark. 27.
- ēgrēgie, adv., (ēgrēgius), excellently,  
admirably, eminently. 6.
- ēgrēgius, a, um, adj., (e + grex), ex-  
cellent, eminent, remarkable, admirable,  
distinguished, surpassing. 4.
- ēgressus, ūs, m., (ēgrēdior), a landing,  
departure, going out, egress. v. 8.
- ēicio, ěre, iēci, iectum, (e + iacio), to  
cast or drive out, banish, expel; se  
eicere, to rush out. 9.
- ēiusmōdi, adv., (is + mōdus), of that  
nature, such. 8.
- ēlābor, i, lapsus, dep., to slip away,  
escape, get off. v. 37.
- ēlātus, a, um. See effero.
- ēlectus, a, um, partic. adj., (ēlīgo),  
selected, picked, chosen. ii. 4.
- ēlēphantus, i, m., an elephant. vi.  
28.
- ēlīcio, ěre, līcui, līcītum, (e + līcio), to  
draw out, elicit, lure forth, entice. v. 50,  
vi. 8, vii. 32.
- ēlīgo, ěre, lēgi, lectum, (e + lēgo), to  
pick out, select. ii. 4.
- ēmīgro, āre, āvi, ātum, to remove, emi-  
grate, depart. i. 31.
- ēmīneo, ěre, ui, —, to stand out, project.  
vii. 72, 73 (twice).
- ēmīnus, adv., (e + mānus), from a dis-  
tance, at a distance. vii. 24.
- ēmīto, ěre, mīsi, missum, to send out,  
let go, dismiss, throw, cast aside, hurl,  
discharge. 7.
- ēmo, ěre, ēmi, emptum, to buy, pur-  
chase. i. 16, ii. 33.
- ēnascor, i, nātus, dep., to spring or  
grow up, sprout out, spring from. ii. 17.
- ēnim, conj., for, now, indeed. 19.
- ēnuntio, āre, āvi, ātum, to disclose, di-  
vulge, reveal, declare. 8.
- eo, ěre, īvi or ii, itum, to go, proceed,  
pass. 27.
- eō, adv., (is), thither, there, to that place,  
to such an extent, on that account, there-  
fore. 67.
- eōdem, adv., (idem), to the same place,  
purpose, end, or thing. 9.
- ēphippīātus, a, um, adj., using saddles.  
iv. 2.
- ēphippium, i, n., a saddle, horse-cloth.  
iv. 2.
- ēpistolā, ae, f., a letter, epistle. v. 48  
(three times).
- ēpūlae, ārum, f. pl., banquets, feasts.  
vi. 28.
- eques, ītis, m., (equus), a horseman, cav-  
alry; knight, a member of equestrian  
order in rank between the patricians  
and plebeians. 119.
- ēquester, tris, tre, adj., (eques), of the  
cavalry, equestrian. 14.
- ēquītātus, ūs, m., cavalry. 110.
- ēquus, i, m., a horse. 28.
- ērectus, a, um, partic. adj., (ēriġo),  
elevated, erect, high, upright. iii. 13.
- erga, prep. with acc. towards. v. 54.
- ergo, conj., therefore, then. vii. 77  
(twice).

- ēriġo**, ěre, rexi, rectum, (e + rego), to raise, elevate, erect. iii. 13, vi. 27.
- ēripio**, ěre, rġpui, reptum, (e + rġpio), to snatch away, tear or take away, wrest; to rescue, liberate. 11.
- erro**, ġre, ġvi, ġtum, to wander, err, be mistaken. v. 41, vii. 29.
- ērumġo**, ěre, rġpi, ruptum, to burst forth, break out, sally forth, rush forth. iii. 5.
- ēruptio**, ōnis, f., (erumpo), a breaking, bursting forth, a sally, a sortie. 23.
- essědġrius**, m., one who fought from a war-chariot. 4.
- essědum**, i, n., a war-chariot of the Gauls and Britons. 6.
- et**, conj., and, even, also; et — et, both — and. 890.
- ětiam**, conj., also, likewise; yet, even, still. 94.
- etsi**, conj., even if, although. 18.
- ěvġdo**, ěre, si, sum, to escape, come out, go out, go forth or from. iii. 19.
- ěvello**, ěre, velli, vulsum, to pluck or pull out. i. 25.
- ěvěnio**, ġre, věni, ventum, to come out, happen, result. iv. 25.
- ěventus**, ūs, (ěvěnio), an event, issue, occurrence. 6.
- ěvġcġti**, ōrum, m pl., old soldiers who after having served out their time were called upon to serve as volunteers
- ěvġcġtus**, a, um, part, (ěvġco), called out.
- ěvġco**, ġre, ġvi, ġtum, to call forth, challenge, summon, entice, invite. 15.
- ěvġlo**, ġre, ġvi, ġtum, to fly out, sally out, rush forth. iii. 28, vii. 27.
- ex**. See e.
- exactus**, a, um. See exġgo.
- exġġto**, ġre, ġvi, ġtum, to harass, disturb, persecute, vex, annoy. ii. 19, iv. 1.
- exġmġno**, ġre, ġvi, ġtum, (exġmen), to weigh, ponder, examine. v. 12.
- exġnġmo**, ġre, ġvi, ġtum, to exhaust, weaken; to destroy, kill. 7.
- exardesco**, ěre, arsi, arsum, to blaze out, kindle; to be excited, inflamed; to break out. v. 4.
- exaudio**, ġre, ġvi or ii, ġtum, to listen to, hear, regard. 6.
- excědo**, ěre, cessi, cessum, to depart, withdraw, go out, retire. 16.
- excello**, ěre, ui, —, to excel, surpass, be eminent. vi. 13
- excelsus**, a, um, adj., (excello), lofty, high, elevated. vi. 26.
- excepto**, ġre, ġvi, ġtum, (excġpio), to pick or take up. vii. 47
- excědo**, ěre, cġdi, cġsum, (ex + caedo), to cut out, banish, remove, destroy, demolish. vii. 50.
- excġpio**, ěre, cġpi, ceptum, (ex + cġpio), to take out, incur, receive, sustain, meet; to succeed, follow after; to undergo. 12.
- excġto**, ġre, ġvi, ġtum, to arouse, excite, call forth, incite, impel, stimulate, spur on; to construct, raise, erect; to kindle. 10.
- exclŭdo**, ěre, si, sum, to exclude, shut out, cut off; to prevent, hinder. 4.
- excŃgġto**, ġre, ġvi, ġtum, to contrive, devise, consider. v. 31.
- excrŭcio**, ġre, ġvi, ġtum, to torment, torture. vi. 19, vii. 20, 38.
- excŭbġtor**, ōris, m., a sentinel, guard, watch. vii. 69.
- excŭbo**, ġre, cŭbui, cŭbġtum, to lie out on guard, watch. vii. 11, 24 (twice).
- exculco**, ġre, ġvi, ġtum, (ex + calco), to tread down. vii. 73
- excursio**, ōnis, f., an excursion, attack, sally, incursion. ii. 30.
- excŭsġtio**, ōnis, f., an excuse, apology, defence. vi. 4.
- excŭso**, ġre, ġvi, ġtum, to excuse, plead in excuse, defend. iv. 22
- exemplum**, i, n., (exġmo), example, pattern, model; manner, way, kind; copy, sample, precedent; purport. i. 8, 31; vii. 77.

- exeo**, *īre*, *īvi* or *īi*, *ītum*, to go out or away, depart, march out, leave. 10.
- exerceo**, *ēre*, *ui*, *ītum*, (*ex* + *arceo*), to exercise, drive on, keep busy, occupy, employ, practise, train. 5.
- exercitatio**, *ōnis*, *f.*, exercise, practice. 7.
- exercitatus**, *a*, *um*, partic. adj., (*exercito*), exercised, practised, versed, trained. i. 36, ii. 20.
- exercito**, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum*, (*exerceo*), to practise, exercise. i. 36, ii. 20.
- exercitus**, *ūs*, *m.*, an army. 131.
- exhaurio**, *īre*, *hausi*, *haustum*, to drain, draw out, remove. v. 42.
- exigo**, *ēre*, *ēgi*, *actum*, (*ex* + *ago*), to drive out; to complete, finish; to exact, demand; to spend, pass; to ponder, consider. iii. 28, vi. 1.
- exigue**, adv, hardly, scarcely, briefly, slightly, shortly. vii. 71.
- exiguitas**, *ātis*, *f.*, scantiness, smallness, scarcity, poverty, shortness, small number. 5.
- exiguus**, *a*, *um*, adj., (*exigo*), scanty, small, little, short, mean, slight. 5.
- eximius**, *a*, *um*, adj., (*eximo*), distinguished, uncommon, excellent, select. ii. 8.
- existimatio**, *ōnis*, *f.*, judgment, opinion; reputation, good name. i. 20, v. 44.
- existimo**, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum*, (*ex* + *aestimo*), to judge, consider, suppose, think, esteem. 78.
- exitus**, *ūs*, *m.*, (*exeo*), departure; outlet, passage; close, end, conclusion. 8.
- expedio**, *īre*, *īvi* or *īi*, *ītum*, (*ex* + *pes*), to extricate, free, liberate; to expedite, facilitate; to arrange, prepare, make ready; to procure. 18.
- expeditio**, *ōnis*, *f.*, an expedition. v. 10.
- expeditus**, *a*, *um*, partic. adj., (*expedio*), unimpeded, free, easy, ready at hand, light-armed. 15.
- expello**, *ēre*, *pūli*, *pulsum*, to drive away, banish, expel. 13.
- expērior**, *īri*, *pertus*, dep., to make trial of, try, prove, put to test, know by experience, wait. 10.
- expio**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, to make complete satisfaction, atone for, expiate, make good, make amends for. v. 52.
- explēo**, *ēre*, *ēvi*, *ētum*, to fill up, complete, finish, satisfy, suit, appease, supply. 6.
- explōrator**, *ōris*, *m.*, a spy, scout. 23.
- explōratus**, *a*, *um*, partic. adj., (*exploro*), certain, ascertained, sure. 11.
- explōro**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, to search out, seek, discover, explore; to examine, investigate, ascertain; to reconnoitre, spy out. 14.
- expōno**, *ēre*, *pōsui*, *pōsitum*, to expose; to land, disembark; to explain, expound, set forth; to draw up, marshal. 9.
- exporto**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, to export, carry out, convey away. iv. 18.
- exposco**, *ēre*, *pōposci*, —, to ask earnestly, beg, request, entreat. vii. 19.
- exprimo**, *ēre*, *pressi*, *pressum*, (*ex* + *prēmo*), to press or squeeze out, extort, wrest; to express, declare, represent; to raise up, elevate. i. 32, vii. 22.
- expugnatio**, *ōnis*, *f.*, the storming of a place; storming, assault. vi. 41, vii. 36.
- expugno**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, to take by assault, reduce, subdue, storm. 12.
- exquiro**, *ēre*, *sīvi*, *sītum*, (*ex* + *quaero*), to search diligently; to make inquiry, ask, investigate, examine. i. 41, iii. 3.
- exsequor**, *i*, *cūtus*, dep., to follow, pursue, execute, perform, accomplish. i. 4.
- exsēro**, *ēre*, *sērui*, *sertum*, to thrust out; to bare, uncover. vii. 50.
- exsisto**, *ēre*, *stīti*, *stītum*, to step out or forth, appear, emerge; to proceed, become, arise, be, exist. 5.
- exspecto**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, to await, wait for; to long for, desire, anticipate; to dread; to wait to see. 34.

exspōlio, āre, āvi, ātum, *to spoil, strip, plunder.* vii. 77.

exstinguo, ěre, nxi, nctum, *to extinguish, put out, extirpate, destroy, annihilate.* v. 29.

exsto, āre, stīti, —, *to stand out or above; to appear, exist; to project.* v. 18.

exstruo, ěre, xi, ctum, *to pile or heap up thoroughly; to raise, build, erect, construct.* 5.

exsul, ūlis, m. and f., (ex + solum), *an exile.* v. 55.

exter or exterus, a, um, adj., *outward, external, outer, foreign; comp. exterior, sup. extrēmus or extīmus, extreme, outermost, last, farthest, most remote, end of.* 27.

exterreo, ěre, ui, itum, *to dismay, terrify.* vii. 43, 77.

extimesco, ěre, tīmui, —, *to dread, fear greatly.* iii. 13.

extorqueo, ěre, torsi, tortum, *to extort, wrest.* vii. 54.

extrā, prep. with the acc., *without, out of, outside of, besides, except, beyond.* 7.

extrāho, ěre, traxi, tractum, *to draw out or forth, withdraw, release, spend, waste.* v. 22.

extrēmus, a, um. See *exter.*

extrūdo, ěre, trūsi, trūsum, *to thrust out, exclude, keep back.* iii. 12.

extūli. See *effero.*

exuo, ěre, ui, ūtum, *to divest, deprive, despoil, strip off, draw out or off.* 4.

exūro, ěre, ussi, ustum, *to burn up.* i. 5.

exūtus, a, um. See *exuo.*

## F.

fāber, bri, m., *a workman, artisan, artificer, smith.* v. 11.

fācile, adv., *readily, easily.* 39.

fācilis, e, adj., (fācio), *easy, ready, courteous, affable.* 7.

fācīnus, ōris, n., (fācio), *a deed, action, exploit, crime; daring deed.* 9.

fācio, ěre, fēci, factum, *to make, perform, do, bring to pass; to construct, prepare, render, cause; to give, furnish; castra facere, to pitch a camp.* 324.

factio, ōnis, f., (fāctio), *a party, side, faction.* 5.

factum, i, n., *a deed, act, exploit.* 5.

factus, a, um. See *fio.*

fācultas, ātis, f., (fācilis), *ability, power, abundance, number, stock, resources, means, opportunity.* 27.

fāgus, i, f., *a beech-tree.* v. 12.

fallo, ěre, fēfelli, falsum, *to deceive, cheat, trick, dupe, mislead, disappoint, escape notice, elude observation.* ii. 10, iv. 13, vii. 50.

falsus, a, um, adj., (fallo), *unfounded, false, deceitful.* vi. 20.

falx, falcis, f., *a sickle; a military implement shaped like a sickle used in sieges to pull down walls.* 6.

fāma, ae, f., *report, fame, rumor; renown, reputation, character.* 12.

fāmes, is, f., *famine, hunger.* 6.

fāmīlia, ae, f., *a household, family; the slaves of a family.* 8.

fāmīliāris, e, adj., *of a family, private, intimate; res familiaris, family estate, private property.* 9.

fāmīliāris, is, m., *a friend.* 4.

fāmīliārītas, ātis, f., *familiarity, intimacy, friendship, acquaintance.* v. 3.

fās, n. indecl., *divine law, the will of heaven; right, duty, justice.* 4.

fastīgātus, a, um, partic. adj., (fastīgo), *sloping to a point, descending, sloping.* ii. 8, iv. 17.

fastīgium, i, n., *summit, top, height, eminence, slope, descent, declivity.* vii. 69, 73, 85.

fastīgo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to make pointed; to slope or incline.* ii. 8, iv. 17.

fātum, i, n., (fari), *fate, destiny, an oracle.* i. 39.



- fāveo, ēre, fāvi, fautum, *to favor, countenance.* i. 18, vi. 7.
- fax, fācis, f, *firebrand, torch.* vii. 24.
- fēlicitas, ātis, f., *happiness, felicity, good fortune, success.* i. 40, vi. 43.
- fēliciter, adv., *happily, successfully, auspiciously.* iv. 25.
- rēmīna, ae, f., *a female, a woman.* vi. 21, 26; vii. 73.
- fēmur, ōris, n., *the thigh.* v. 35.
- fēra, ae, f., *a wild beast.* vi. 25, 28.
- fērax, ācis, adj., (fēro), *fruitful, fertile, productive.* ii. 4.
- fēre, adv., *almost, nearly, about, for the most part, generally.* 45.
- fēro, ferre, tūli, lātum, *to bear, carry, bring, more; to get, obtain, acquire; to suffer, tolerate, endure; to report, relate, make known; to go, hasten; fertur, it is said.* 66.
- ferrāmentum, i, n., (ferrum), *a tool, implement.* v. 42.
- ferrāria, ae, f., (ferrum), *an iron mine.* vii. 22.
- ferreus, a, um, adj., *of iron, iron.* 4.
- ferrum, i, n., *iron; sword.* i. 25, v. 12, 30.
- fertilis, e, adj., *fertile, fruitful.* vi. 24, vii. 13.
- fertilitas, ātis, f., *fertility, fruitfulness.* ii. 4.
- fērus, a, um, adj. *wild, rude, cruel, barbarous.* 5.
- fervēfācio, ēre, fēci, factum, (ferveo + fācio), *to make hot, heat, melt.* v. 43, vii. 22.
- ferveo, ēre, bui and vi, —, *to be boiling or red hot, glow with heat.* v. 43.
- fībūla, ae, f., *a clasp, brace.* iv. 17.
- fictus, a, um, partic. adj., (fingo), *feigned, fictitious, false.* iv. 4.
- fidēlis, e, adj., (fides), *faithful, trusty, sure.* iv. 21, vii. 76.
- fidēs, ēi, f., *faith, confidence; reliance, belief, protection, security; promise, engagement, pledge, word.* 35.
- fiducia, ae, f., (fīdo), *confidence, reliance, assurance, courage.* vii. 19, 38, 76.
- fīgūra, ae, f., (fingo), *form, shape; kind, quality, species, nature.* 5.
- fīlia, ae, f., *a daughter.* 4.
- fīlius, i, m., *a son.* 13.
- fingo, ēre, fīnxi, fīctum, *to form, shape, fashion, frame, make; to contrive, devise, invent; to feign.* i. 39, iv. 4, vi. 37.
- fīnio, ire, i, vi or ii, itum, (fīnis), *to limit, bound, determine, fix, appoint; to finish, terminate, compute.* iv. 16, vi. 18, 25.
- fīnis, is, m. and f., *an end, limit; boundary, territory.* 126.
- fīnitīmus, a, um, adj., (fīnis), *bordering upon, adjoining, neighboring; finitimi, ōrum, m. pl., neighbors.* 40.
- fīo, fīeri, factus, irreg. pass. of fācio, *to be made, done; to become, occur, happen; certior fīeri, to be informed; fit, it happens.* See facio.
- fīrmīter, adv., *firmly, resolutely.* iv. 26.
- fīrmitūdo, īnis, f., *firmness, strength, solidity.* iii. 13, iv. 17.
- fīrmo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to make firm, strengthen, support, establish; to encourage, animate.* vi. 29.
- fīrmus, a, um, adj., *strong, solid, firm, durable; brave, valiant.* 11.
- fīstūca, ae, f., *a rammer, pile-driver.* iv. 17.
- fīāgīto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to demand earnestly, entreat, importune.* i. 16.
- flamma, ae, f., *flame, blaze, glow.* v. 43 (twice), vi. 16.
- flecto, ēre, xi, xum, *to bend, bow, turn; to persuade, move, guide, direct.* iv. 33, vi. 25.
- fleo, ēre, ēvi, ētum, *to weep, cry, lament.* 6.
- fletus, ūs, m., (fleo), *a weeping, lamentation.* i. 32, v. 33.
- flo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to flow.* v. 7.

- florens, entis, partic. adj., (flōreo), *flourishing, prosperous, fine, excellent, influential.* i. 30, iv. 3, vii. 32.
- flōs, flōris, m., *a flower.* vii. 73.
- fluctus, ūs, m., (fluō), *a wave.* 4.
- flūmen, inis, n., (fluō), *a river, stream; flumine secundo, down stream; flumine adverso, up stream.* 102.
- fluō, ěre, xi, xum, *to flow.* i. 6, 12.
- fōdio, ěre, fōdi, fossum, *to dig, dig up, dig out.* vii. 73.
- foedus, ěris, n., *a league, treaty, compact.* vi. 2.
- fōrem = essem, fōre = fūtūrus esse.
- fōris, adv., *without, abroad, outside, out of doors.* vii. 76.
- forma, ae, f., *form, figure, shape; nature, kind; beauty.* 4.
- fors, fortis, f., (fĕro), *chance, hap, hazard, fortune; forte, abl., by chance.* 5.
- fortis, e, adj., *strong, brave.* 9.
- fortiter, adv., *bravely, firmly.* 13.
- fortitūdo, inis, f., (fortis), *courage, bravery, fortitude.* i. 2.
- fortuito, adv., (fors), *by chance, accidentally.* vii. 20.
- fortūna, ae, f., (fors), *chance, fortune, fate, lot.* 39.
- fortūnātus, a, um, adj., *fortunate, prosperous, rich.* vi. 35.
- fōrum, i, n., (fōris), *a market-place, public place. forum.* vii. 28.
- fossa, ae, f., (fōdio), *a trench, ditch, fosse.* 27.
- fōvea, ae, f., *a pitfall, pit.* vi. 28.
- frango, ěre, frēgi, fractum, *to break, dash to pieces, crush, subdue, discourage.* i. 31, iv. 29.
- frāter, tris, m., *a brother.* 27.
- frāternus, a, um, adj., *brotherly, fraternal, of a brother.* i. 20, 36.
- fraus, fraudis, f., *deceit, guile, fraud, treachery.* vii. 40.
- frēmītus, ūs, m., (frĕmo), *a murmuring, resounding noise, clamor.* ii. 24, iv. 14, v. 32.
- frĕquens, tis, adj., *frequent, repeated, numerous, crowded.* iv. 11, 13; vii. 63.
- frĕtus, a, um, adj., *relying on, depending on.* iii. 21, vi. 5.
- frĕgidus, a, um, adj., *cold.* iv. 1
- frĕgus, ōris, n., *cold, coolness.* 4.
- frons, frontis, f., *the forehead, brow, front; a fronte, in front.* 6.
- fructuōsus, a, um, adj., *fruitful, fertile, productive.* i. 30.
- fructus, ūs, m., (fruor), *fruit, produce, profit, employment, result, effect.* 4.
- frūmentārius, a, um, adj., *of corn, fertile in corn; res frumentaria, corn, a supply of corn, provisions.* 26.
- frūmentātio, ōnis, f., *a procuring of corn, foraging.* vi. 39, vii. 16, 64.
- frūmentor, āri, ātus, dep., *to fetch corn, forage.* 7.
- frūmentum, i, n., (fruor), *corn, grain,* 55.
- fruor, i, frūtus and fructus, dep., *to enjoy.* iii. 22.
- frustrā, adv., *in a deceived manner, without effect, to no purpose, in vain.* 4.
- fūga, ae, f., *flight.* 70.
- fūgio, ěre, fūgi, fūgitum, *to flee; to take to flight, run away, flee from, avoid, shun.* 18.
- fūgītivus, a, um, adj., *fugitive; fūgītivus, i, m., a deserter.* i. 23.
- fūgo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to cause to flee; to put to flight, rout.* vii. 68.
- fūmo, āre, —, —, *to smoke.* vii. 24.
- fūmus, i, m., *smoke.* ii. 7, v. 48.
- funda, ae, f., *a sling.* 5.
- funditor, ōris, m., *a slinger.* 4.
- fundo, ěre, fūdi, fūsum, *to pour, shed, cast; to found; to scatter, throw, rout, prostrate.* iii. 6, vii. 24.
- fungor, i, functus, dep., *to perform, discharge, execute.* vii. 25.
- fūnis, is, m., *a cable, rope.* 4.
- fūnus, ěris, n., *a funeral, funeral rites* vi. 19 (twice).

fūror, ōris, m., *rage, madness.* i. 40, ii. 3, vii. 42.

furtum, i, n., (*fur*), *theft.* vi. 16.

fūsīlis, e, adj., (*fundo*), *melted, liquid, pliant, molten.* v. 43.

fūtūrus, a, um, serves as future partic. to sum.

## G.

gaesum, i, n., *a long heavy javelin of the Gauls.* iii. 4.

gālea, ae, f., *a helmet.* ii. 11.

Gallia, ae, f., *Gaul.* 160.

Gallīcus, a, um, adj., *Gallie.* 16.

gallīna, ae, f., *a hen.* v. 12.

Gallus, a, um, adj., *Gallic*; Gallus, i, m., *a Gaul.* 101.

gaudeo, ēre, gāvīsus sum, semi-dep., *to be glad, rejoice.* iv. 13.

gāvīsus, a, um. See gaudeo.

Gēnābensis, is, m., *an inhabitant of Genabum.* vii. 11.

gēner, ēri, m., *son-in-law.* v. 56.

gēnērātīm, adv., (*genus*), *by kinds, classes, tribes, nations; generally, in general.* i. 51, vii. 19.

gens, gentis, f., *a tribe, nation, race, kind, class, clan.* 8.

gēnus, ēris, n., *birth, descent, origin, race, people; class, sort, species, kind, style, nature.* 33.

Germānia, ae, f., *Germany.* 7.

Germānīcus, a, um, adj., *German, Germanic.* iv. 16.

Germānus, a, um, adj., *German, of Germany.* 88.

gēro, ēre, gessi, gestum, *to bear, carry; to manage, regulate, rule, govern, carry on, accomplish; to wage, perform, conduct.* 69.

glādius, i, m., *a sword.* 10.

glands, glandis, f., *an acorn; an acorn-shaped ball, bullet.* v. 43, vii. 81.

glēba, ae, f., *a elod, lump, piece.* vii. 25.

glōria, ae, f., *glory, fame, renown.* 5.

glōrior, āri, ātus, dep., *to glory, boast, pride one's self.* i. 14.

Graecus, a, um, adj., *Greek.* i. 29, v. 48, vi. 14.

Graecus, i, m., *a Greek.* vi. 24.

grandis, e, adj., *great, large.* 4.

grātia, ae, f., *esteem, regard, love, friendship, influence, popularity, gratitude, acknowledgment; grātiā, for the sake of, on account of; gratias agēre, to thank; gratiam referre, to recompense, return a favor.* 25.

grātūlātiō, ōnis, f., *rejoicing, congratulation, joy.* i. 53 v. 53, vii. 79.

grātūlor, āri, ātus, dep., (*grātus*), *to manifest one's joy, congratulate, rejoice, wish joy, thank.* i. 30.

grātus, a, um, adj., *pleasing, agreeable, thankful, grateful.* i. 44, vi. 16.

grāvis, e, adj., *heavy, weighty, grave, important, dignified; grievous, severe, oppressive.* 17.

grāvītas, ātis, f., *weight, heaviness, dignity, importance, power, influence.* iv. 3, v. 16.

grāvīter, adv., *heavily, strongly, grievously, severely, with displeasure, ill.* 18.

grāvo, āre, āvi, ātum, (*grāvis*), *to burden, weigh down, oppress; pass., to be burdened, feel vexed, be reluctant.* i. 35.

gūbernātor, ōris, m., *a pilot.* iii. 9, v. 10.

gusto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to taste, partake of.* v. 12.

## H.

hābeo, ēre, ui, itum, *to have, possess, hold, keep, consider, regard; gratiam habēre, to feel grateful.* 176.

Haeduus, a, um, adj., *Haeduan*; Haeduus, i, m., *an Haeduan.* 122.

haesīto, āre, āvi, ātum, (*haero*), *to remain fixed, stick fast, be rooted.* vii. 19.

hāmus, i, m., *a hook.* vii. 73.

harpāgo, ōnis, m., a grappling hook, grapple, drag. vii. 81.  
 haud, adv., not. v. 54.  
 Helvēticus, a, um, adj., *Helvetian*. vii. 9.  
 Helvētius, a, um, adj., *Helvetian*. 67.  
 Hercynius, a, um, adj., *Hercynian*:  
 Hercynia silva, the *Hercynian forest*,  
 in ancient Germany. vi. 24, 25.  
 hērēditas, ātis, f., (heres), *heirship*,  
*inheritance*. vi. 13.  
 hiberna. See hibernus.  
 hibernāculum, i, n., *winter tent, winter*  
*quarters*. ii. 35.  
 Hibernia, ae, f., *Ireland*. v. 13.  
 hibernus, a, um, adj., (hiems), of *winter*,  
*winter*; hiberna, ōrum, n. pl.,  
 (sc. castra), *winter quarters*. 46.  
 hic, haec, hoc, dem. adj. pron., *this, this*  
*one, this man, the latter, such, that*;  
 hoc, on *this account*; hoc with com-  
 paratives, *the more, the*. 655.  
 hic, adv., *here, in this place*. 4.  
 hiemo, āre, āvi, ātum, (hiems), to *pass*  
*the winter, winter*. 17.  
 hiems, ěmis, f., *winter*. 17.  
 hinc, adv., *hence, from this place*. vi. 25,  
 40.  
 Hispānia, ae, f., *Spain*. 6.  
 Hispānus, a, um, adj., *Spanish*. v. 26.  
 hōmo, īnis, m. and f., a *man, woman*,  
*human being*. 88.  
 hōnestus, a, um, adj., (honor), *respect-*  
*able, honorable, esteemed, distinguished,*  
*noble*. i. 53, v. 45, vii. 3.  
 hōnor, ōris, m., *honor, respect, esteem,*  
*official duty, post of honor*; honōris  
 causā, out of *respect*. 8.  
 hōnōrificus, a, um, adj., (honor +  
 fācio), *honorable*. i. 43.  
 hōra, ae, f., an *hour*. 16.  
 horreo, ěre, ui, —, to *dread, tremble at*.  
 i. 32.  
 horribilis, e, adj., to be *dreaded, dread-*  
*ful, horrible, terrible*. vii. 36.  
 horridus, a, um, adj., *horrid, dire,*  
*rough, rugged*. v. 14.

hortor, āri, ātus, dep., to *exhort, en-*  
*courage, cheer, urge, move*. 18.  
 hospes, itis, m. and f., a *stranger, guest,*  
*visitor, host*. i. 53, v. 6, vi. 23.  
 hospitium, i, n., *hospitality, friendship*. 5.  
 hostis, is, m. and f., an *enemy*. 285.  
 huc, adv., (hic), *hither, to this place*;  
 thus *far, to this*. 22.  
 huismōdi, adv., (hic + modus), of  
 such a *nature, of this kind, such*. iii. 3,  
 vii. 22.  
 hūmānitas, ātis, f., *humanity; culture,*  
*refinement*. i. 1, 47.  
 hūmānus, a, um, adj., (hōmo), *human,*  
*humane; civilized, polished*. iv. 3, v. 14.  
 hūmērus, i, m., the *shoulder*. vii. 50, 56.  
 hūmilis, e, adj., (humus), *low, humble,*  
*poor, abject, base, vile*. 6.  
 hūmilitas, ātis, f., *lowness, weakness,*  
*insignificance, meanness*. v. 1, 27.

## I (vowel).

ībi, adv., *there, in that place; then*. 51.  
 ictus, ūs, m., (īco), a *blow, stroke*. i. 25,  
 vii. 25.  
 idcirco, adv., *therefore, for this reason*.  
 v. 3.  
 Idem, eādē, idē, dem. adj. pron.,  
 (is + dem), *the same, at once, also*.  
 113.  
 Identīdem, adv., (idem + idem), *re-*  
*peatedly, at intervals, now and then*.  
 ii. 19.  
 Idōnēus, a, um, adj., *suitable, fit, proper,*  
*worthy, capable*. 20.  
 īdūs, uum, f. pl., the *Ides*; the 13th day  
 of the month, but the 15th of March,  
 May, July, and October. i. 7.  
 ignis, is, m., *fire*. 13.  
 ignōbilis, e, adj., (in + nōbilis), *un-*  
*known, obscure, humble, mean, of low*  
*birth*. v. 28.  
 ignōmīnia, ae, f., (in + nōmen), *dis-*  
*honor, disgrace, ignominy*. vii. 17  
 (twice), 80.

ignōro, āre, āvi, ātum, *not to know, be ignorant of.* 5.

ignoscere, ēre, nōvi, nōtum, (in + nosco), *to forgive, pardon, excuse.* 4.

ignōtus, a, um, adj., (in + nōtus), *unknown.* iv. 24.

illātus, a, um. See infēro.

ille, illa, illud, dem. adj. pron., *that, he, she, that man, that woman, that thing.* 120.

illuc, adv., *there, in that place.* i. 18, vii. 20.

illigo, āre, āvi, ātum, (in + ligo), *to bind on, fasten, connect.* iv. 17, v. 45.

illo, adv., *thither, to that place, to that thing or purp. se.* vi. 13, vii. 45.

illustris, e, adj., *light, clear, bright, luminous; plain, evident; illustrious.* vi. 19, vii. 3, 32.

imbēcillitas, ātis, f., (imbēcillus), *feebleness, weakness, imbecility.* vii. 77.

imber, bris, m., *a shower, rain.* 4.

īmītor, āri, ātus, dep., *imitate, copy after, resemble, counterfeit.* vi. 40, vii. 22.

immānis, e, adj., *enormous, immense; wild, savage, cruel.* iv. 1, vi. 16.

immineo, ēre, —, —, (in + mineo), *to hang over, project; to be near.* vi. 38.

immitto, ēre, mīsi, missum, (in + mitto), *to send or let in; to hurl, cast, throw, let loose upon; to introduce.* 5.

immōlo, āre, āvi, ātum, (in + mola), *to sacrifice, immolate, offer.* vi. 16 (twice), 17.

immortālis, e, adj., *immortal.* 7.

immūnis, e, adj., (in + mūnus), *exempt from public service or taxation; free from.* vii. 76.

immūnitas, ātis, f., *immunity, exemption from public service, freedom.* vi. 14.

impārātus, a, um, adj., *unprepared, not ready.* vi. 30.

impēdimentum, i, n., (impēdio), *impediment, hindrance, burden, obstacle; plur., baggage of an army.* 48.

impēdio, īre, īvi or ii, Itum, (in + pes), *to entangle, hamper, embarrass, perplex; to bind, tie; to obstruct, hinder, impede.* 39.

impēdītus, a, um, partic. adj., (impēdio), *obstructed, difficult, troublesome.*

impello, ēre, pūli, pulsum, (in + pello), *to push, drive against, drive forward, urge onward, impel; to persuade, induce, incite.* 9.

impendeo, ēre, —, —, (in + pendeo), *to hang over, overhang, impend, threaten.* i. 6, iii. 2.

impendo, ēre, di, sum (in + pendo), *to expend, employ.* iv. 2.

impensus, a, um, partic. adj., (impendo), *expensive, dear; large, great.* iv. 2.

impērātor, ōris, m., (impēro), *a commander-in-chief, general; a chief, leader.* 16.

impērātum, i, n., *order, command.* 9.

imperfectus, a, um, adj., *imperfect, unfinished.* vi. 12.

impērītus, a, um, adj., (in + perītus), *inexperienced, unskilled, ignorant, unacquainted with.* 9.

imperium, i, n., *direction, command, government, power, order.* 57.

impēro, āre, āvi, ātum, (in + paro), *to command, order, enjoin, require, demand, order to be provided.* 67.

impētro, āre, āvi, ātum, (in + pātro), *to accomplish, effect, procure, obtain.* 18.

impētus, ūs, m., (impēto), *attack, assault, charge, onset; impetuosity, force.* 49.

impīus, a, um, adj., (in + pius), *irreverent, ungodly.* vi. 13.

implico, āre, āvi, ātum, or ui, Itum, (in + plīco), *to unfold; to involve, entangle, entwine, interlace.* vii. 73.

implōro, āre, āvi, ātum, (in + plōro), *to implore, entreat.* 4.

**impōno**, ěre, pōsui, pōsitum, (in + pōno), to place upon, set over; to impose, impose upon; to embark. 5.

**importo**, āre, āvi, ātum, (in + porto), to import. 5.

**imprōbus**, a, um, adj., (in + prōbus), shameless, wicked, unprincipled. i. 17.

**imprōvisō**, adv., (imprōvisus), suddenly, unexpectedly.

**imprōvisus**, a, um, adj., unexpected, unforeseen, sudden. 7.

**imprūdēns**, tis, adj., not foreseeing, imprudent, unaware, ignorant, unsuspecting. iv. 29, v. 15.

**imprudentia**, ae, f., imprudence, inadvertence, want of foresight. iv. 27 (twice), v. 3.

**impūbes**, ěris, adj., (in + pūbes), under age, youthful; unmarried; chaste, continent. vi. 21.

**impugno**, āre, āvi, ātum, to assail, attack, oppose, charge, invade. i. 44, iii. 26.

**impulsus**, a, um. See impello.

**impulsus**, ūs, m., (impello), instigation, impulse. v. 25.

**impūne**, adv., (in + poena), with impunity, without punishment. i. 14.

**impūnitas**, ātis, f., impunity. i. 14.

**imūs**, a, um. See infērus.

**in**, prep. with acc. or ablat., in, into, to, at, during; among, with; on, about, concerning; against, towards; in with ablat., 543; in with acc., 542.

**inānis**, e, adj., empty, void; useless, vain, idle. v. 23, vii. 19.

**incaute**, adv., unvarily, inconsiderately, incautiously. vii. 27.

**incautus**, a, um, adj., (in + cāveo), unvary, heedless, inconsiderate, off one's guard. vi. 30.

**incendium**, i, n., (incendo), a conflagration, fire. 6.

**incendo**, ěre, di, sum, (in + candeo), to kindle, set on fire, burn; to inflame, excite. 21.

**incertus**, a, um, adj., doubtful, uncertain, not sure, not to be relied upon. 6.

**incīdo**, ěre, cīdi, cāsum, (in + cādo), to fall into or upon, fall among, meet; to fall out, occur, happen. 5.

**incīdo**, ěre, cīdi, cīsum, (in + caedo), to cut into. ii. 17.

**incīpio**, ěre, cēpi, ceptum, (in + cāpio), to commence, take; to attempt, undertake. 8.

**incīto**, āre, āvi, ātum, to incite, urge on, encourage, rouse. 15.

**incognītus**, a, um, adj., unknown. iv. 20, 29.

**incōlo**, ěre, colui, cultum, to abide or dwell in a place, inhabit. 15.

**incōlūmis**, e, adj., safe, uninjured, unimpaired, sound, whole. 19.

**incommōde**, adv., unfortunately. v. 33.

**incommōdum**, i, n., disadvantage, loss, defeat, harm.

**incommōdus**, a, um, adj., inconvenient, unfortunate, troublesome, hurtful. 14.

**incrēdībīlis**, e, adj., incredible, wonderful, astonishing, strange. 6.

**incrēpīto**, āre, āvi, ātum, (incrēpo), to reprove, rebuke, taunt, blame. ii. 15, 30.

**incumbo**, ěre, cūbui, cūbītum, to recline or lean upon; to apply one's self to, attend to. vii. 76.

**incursio**, ōnis, f., an incursion, invasion; an attack, assault, charge. 4.

**incursus**, ūs, m., attack, onset, charge, assault. vii. 36.

**incūso**, āre, āvi, ātum, (in + causa), to blame, complain of, accuse. i. 40, ii. 15.

**inde**, adv., thence, from that place; after that, next, then. 15.

**indīcium**, i, n., (index), discovery, information, proof, token, mark. 4.

**indīco**, ěre, dixi, dictum, to declare, disclose, reveal, show, tell. 8.

**indictus**, a, um, adj., (in + dico), unsaid, unpleaded. vii. 38.

**indigne**, adv., *undeservedly, unworthily, basely*. vii. 38.

**indignitas**, ātis, f., *indignity, insult, unworthiness*. ii. 4, vii. 56.

**indignor**, āri, ātus, dep., *to scorn, disdain; to be enraged at, angry with, displeased*. vii. 19.

**indignus**, a, um, adj., *unworthy, dishonorable, shameful, unbecoming, base, indecent*. v. 35, vii. 17, 38.

**indiligens**, tis, adj., *careless, negligent*. ii. 33, vii. 71.

**indiligenter**, adv., *carelessly, negligently*. ii. 33.

**indiligentia**, ae, f., *negligence, carelessness*. vii. 17.

**indūciae**, ārum, f. pl., (*induo*), *armistice, truce*. See *indutiae*.

**indūco**, ěre, xi, ctum, *to conduct, introduce; to induce, influence; to cover, draw on*. 4.

**indulgentia**, ae, f., *favor, indulgence*. vii. 63.

**indulgeo**, ěre, si, tum, (*in + dulcis*), *to favor, indulge, gratify*. i. 40, vii. 40.

**induo**, ěre, ui, ūtum, *to put on, clothe, furnish with; se induere, to fall into or upon; to be entangled in*. vii. 73, 82.

**industriē**, adv., (*industrius*), *diligently, industriously*. vii. 60.

**indūtiae**, ārum, f. pl., (*induco*), *armistice, truce*. iv. 12, 13.

**ineo**, ire, ivi or ii, itum, *to go into, enter; to begin, commence, enter upon, form*. 21.

**inermis**, e, or **inermus**, a, um, adj., (*in + arma*), *unarmed, defenceless, without arms*. 4.

**iners**, tis, adj., (*in + ars*), *sluggish, indolent, inactive, lazy, spiritless*. iv. 2.

**infāmia**, ae, f., (*in + fāma*), *dishonor, disgrace, infamy*. vi. 23, vii. 56.

**infans**, tis, adj., (*in + fāri*), *that cannot speak*. See noun.

**infans**, tis, m. and f., *an infant, child*. vii. 28, 47.

**infectus**, a, um, adj., (*in + fācio*), *unaccomplished, unfinished*. vii. 17.

**infĕro**, ferre, intŭli, illātum, *to bring or carry into, bring on, inflict; to introduce, interpose; signa inferre, to attack; to advance the standards*. 19.

**infĕrus**, a, um, adj., *below, underneath, low; comp. infĕrior, lower, inferior; sup. infimus or ĩmus, the lowest, last, deepest, lowest part of*. 19.

**infestus**, a, um, adj., *unsafe, insecure; hostile, dangerous; embittered*. vi. 8, 51.

**inficio**, ěre, fĕci, fectum, (*in + fācio*), *to color, stain, dye*. v. 14.

**infidĕlis**, e, adj., *unfaithful, treacherous, faithless*. vii. 59.

**infigo**, ěre, fixi, fixum, *to fasten in, fix in*. vii. 73.

**infimus**, a, um. See *infĕrus*.

**infinitus**, a, um, adj., *without bounds, limitless, vast, infinite*. v. 12, vi. 10, 43.

**infirmitas**, ātis, f., *infirmity, weakness, feebleness, inconstancy, fickleness*. iv. 5, 13; vii. 26.

**infirmus**, a, um, adj., *weak, inconstant, fickle, light-minded*. 5.

**inflecto**, ěre, xi, xum, *to bend, curve; to change, alter*. i. 25, ii. 17.

**influo**, ěre, xi, xum, *to empty into, flow into*. 8.

**infŏdio**, ěre, fŏdi, fossum, *to dig in; to bury*. vii. 73.

**infĕrā**, prep. with acc., and adv., *under, below, underneath, smaller than*. 4.

**ingens**, tis, adj., *enormous, huge, vast*. i. 39, iv. 10, v. 3.

**ingrātus**, a, um, adj., *unpleasant, disagreeable, unthankful, ungrateful, unacceptable*. vii. 30.

**ingrĕdior**, i, gressus, (*in + grādior*), *to get into; to enter, advance; to engage in, commence*. ii. 4, v. 9.

**inicio**, ěre, iĕci, iectum, (*in + iācio*), *to cast into, inspire, bring into; to occasion, cause*. 5.

- inimicitia**, ae. f., (*inimicus*), *enmity, hostility*. vi. 12.
- inimicus**, a, um, adj., (*in + amicus*), *unfriendly, hostile, inimical*. 7.
- iniquitas**, ātis, f., *unevenness, unfavorable position, difficulty, injustice, unfairness*. 8.
- iniquus**, a, um, adj., (*in + aequus*), *uneven, unequal; disadvantageous, unfavorable, unjust*. 16.
- initium**, i, n., (*ineo*), *commencement, beginning; element*. 23.
- iniungo**, ěre, iunxi, iunctum, *to attach, fasten on; to inflict, occasion, impose, bring upon*. vii. 77.
- iniūria**, ae, f., (*in + ius*), *injustice, injury, damage, wrong*. 32.
- iniussu**, ablat., *without command*. i. 19, v. 28.
- innascor**, i, nātus, dep., *to be born in; to arise, have its origin, grow in*. i. 41, vii. 42.
- innātus**, a, um, partic. adj., (*innascor*), *innate, inborn, natural*. i. 41, vii. 42.
- innitor**, i, nixus, dep., *to lean or rest upon; to support one's self by*. ii. 27.
- innocens**, tis, adj., *innocent, harmless*. vi. 9, 16.
- innocentia**, ae, f., *innocence; uprightness, integrity, blamelessness*. i. 40.
- inopia**, ae, f., (*inops*), *scarcity, poverty, want*. 24.
- inopinans**, tis, adj., (*in + opinor*), *not expecting, unawares, ignorant*. 8.
- inquam**, def., *I say*. 13.
- insciens**, tis, adj., (*in + scio*), *unaware, ignorant, not knowing*. i. 19, v. 7.
- inscientia**, ae, f., (*insciens*), *inexperience, ignorance*. 4.
- inscius**, a, um, adj., (*in + scio*), *not knowing, ignorant, unaware*. iv. 4, vii. 77.
- insēquor**, i, cūtus, dep., *to follow, pursue, harass*. 18.
- insēro**, ěre, ui, tum, *to put in, insert, ingraft*. iii. 14.
- insīdiae**, ārum, f. pl., (*insīdeo*), *an ambush, ambushade; artifice, stratagem, treachery*. 8.
- insīdior**, āri, ātus, dep., *to wait for, watch for, lie in wait, form an ambushade*. vi. 34.
- insigne**, is, n., (*insignis*), *a distinctive mark, badge, decoration*. 4.
- insignis**, e, adj., (*in + signum*), *remarkable, distinguished, extraordinary*. i. 12, ii. 20, vii. 50.
- insilio**, ěre, ui or ii, —, (*in + sālĭo*), *to leap or spring into; to leap upon, spring upon*. i. 52.
- insimūlo**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to charge, accuse, blame*. vii. 20 (twice), 38.
- insīnuo**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to work one's way into; to arrive at, reach, come among*. iv. 33.
- insisto**, ěre, stīti, —, *to set foot upon, stand; to begin, adopt, press hard upon*. 5.
- insōlenter**, adv., (*insōlens*), *in an unusual manner, haughtily, insolently, excessively*. i. 14.
- inspecto**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to look at, view, behold*. vii. 25.
- instābilis**, e, adj., (*in + sto*), *variable, uncertain, unsteady*. iv. 23.
- instar**, n. indecl., *likeness, image*. ii. 17.
- instīgo**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to incite, stimulate*. v. 56.
- instītuo**, ěre, ui, ūtum, (*in + statuo*), *to put, set, place into, rear, construct, build, erect; to prepare, make ready, furnish, provide, arrange, institute, establish, appoint; to determine, resolve; to educate; to fix upon*. 49.
- instītūtum**, i, n., (*instītuo*), *a plan, purpose, design; habit, custom; institution*. 9.
- insto**, āre, stīti, stātum, *to stand on or upon; to follow closely up, pursue; to be near at hand, present; to draw near, approach; to press on; to threaten*. 7.



instrūmentum, i, n., (instruo), *an implement, tool, utensil, instrument.* v. 31, vi. 30.

instruo, ěre, xi, ctum, *to put into; to build into; to arrange, draw up; to furnish, equip, prepare; to erect.* 19.

insuēfactus, a, um, adj., (in + suesco + fācio), *accustomed, habituated, trained.* iii. 24.

insuētus, a, um, adj., (in + suesco) *unaccustomed, unused, unwonted.* v. 6, vii. 30.

insŭla, ae, f., *an island.* 18.

insŭper, adv., *above, upon, besides, moreover.* iv. 17, vii. 23.

intĕger, gra, grum, adj., *fresh, new, vigorous; entire, whole, untouched, unimpaired.* 11.

intĕgo, ěre, xi, ctum, *to cover.* vii. 22, 73, 79.

intelligo, ěre, lexi, lectum, (inter + lego), *to perceive, discern, understand, perceive.* 45.

intendo, ěre, di, tum and sum, *to direct towards, stretch out, endeavor, strive.* 4.

intentus, a, um, partic. adj., (intendo), *attentive, intent upon, on the alert, fixed upon, intent.* iii. 22, 26; vii. 80.

inter, prep. with the acc., *among, between, amid, with, during.* 81.

intercĕdo, ěre, cessi, cessum, *to come between, intervene, intercede, plead for.* 10.

intercĕpio, ěre, cĕpi, ceptum, (inter + cāpio), *to seize, capture, intercept.* 4.

interclŭdo, ěre, si, sum, *to shut or cut off, prevent, hinder, debar.* 13.

interdĭco, ěre, xi, ctum, *to interdict, forbid, prohibit, exclude.* 7.

interdiu, adv., *in the daytime; by day.* i. 8, vii. 69, 72.

interdum, adv., *sometimes.* i. 14, 39.

intĕreā, adv., *in the meantime, meanwhile.* 9.

intĕreo, ĭre, ii, ĭtum, *to be lost, undone; to perish.* 8.

interesse. See intersum.

interficio, ěre, fĕci, fectum, (inter + fācio), *to slay, kill, destroy.* 83.

interĭcio, ěre, iĕci, iectum, (inter + iacio), *to throw or put between; pass, to intervene.* 9.

intĕrim, adv., *meanwhile, in the mean time.* 31.

intĕrior, us, comp. adj., *inner, interior; sup. intimus.* 6.

intĕriōres, *those in the interior.*

intĕritus, ūs, m., (intĕreo), *destruction, ruin, annihilation, death.* v. 47.

intermitto, ěre, mĭsi, missum, *to place between, interpose, interrupt, neglect, break off; to cease.* 33.

internĕcio, ōnis, f., (inter + nĕco), *a slaughter, massacre; destruction.* i. 13, ii. 28.

interpello, āre, āvi, ātum, *to disturb, interrupt, hinder, prevent.* i. 44.

interpōno, ěre, pōsui, pōsitum, *to interpose, place between, allege, adduce, propose, apply.* 8.

interpres, ětis, m. and f., *mediator, interpreter.* i. 19, v. 36.

interpretor, āri, ātus, dep., *to expound, explain, interpret.* vi. 13.

interrōgo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to inquire, ask; to accuse.* vii. 20.

interrumpo, ěre, rūpi, ruptum, *to interrupt, break down.* vii. 19, 34.

interscindo, ěre, ĭdi, ĭssum, *to tear down, destroy, cut down.* ii. 9, vii. 24.

intersum, esse, fui, —, *to be between; to be present; to be occupied with; interest, imp., it concerns; it is important.* 9.

intervallum, i, n., (inter + vallus), *distance, interval.* 10.

intervĕnio, ĭre, vĕni, ventum, *to come between; to intervene, arrive, happen, occur.* vi. 37, vii. 20.

interventus, ūs, m., *interposition, intervention.* iii. 15.

- intexo**, ěre, xui, xtum, *to weave into; to cover, interlace.* ii. 33.
- intōlēranter**, adv., (in + tōlēro), *excessively, immoderately.* vii. 51.
- intra**, prep. with acc., in, *within, during.* 19.
- intritus**, a, um, adj., (in + tēro), *not exhausted; not worn out.* iii. 26.
- intro**, adv., *within.*
- intro**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to go into, enter, penetrate.* ii. 17, vii. 8, 73.
- intrōdūco**, ěre, xi, ctum, *to introduce, lead into.* ii. 5, 10; iii. 20.
- introeo**, ěre, ivi or ii, itum, *to enter, go into.* v. 43.
- introitus**, ūs, m., *access, entrance.* v. 9.
- intrōmitto**, ěre, mīsi, missum, *to let in or send; to introduce.* 4.
- introrsus**, adv., (introversus), *inwardly, within, into the interior, inland.* 5.
- intrūmpo**, ěre, rūpi, ruptum, *to break or burst into; to enter by force; to break.* v. 51.
- intueor**, ěri, tuitus, dep., *to regard, behold, look at.* i. 32.
- intus**, adv., *on the inside, within.* v. 45, vi. 37.
- inūsītātus**, a, um, adj., *uncommon, unusual, uncounted, extraordinary, strange.* ii. 31, iv. 25 (twice).
- inūtīlis**, e, adj., *unprofitable, useless.* 5.
- invēnio**, ěre, vēni, ventum, *to come upon, find, meet with; to find out, discover, contrive.* 6.
- inventor**, ōris, m., *author, inventor, originator.* vi. 17.
- invētērasco**, ěre, rāvi, —, *to grow old; to become established; to settle.* ii. 1, v. 41.
- invicem**, adv., (in + vīcis), *one after another, by turns, mutually, alternately.* iv. 1, vii. 85.
- invictus**, a, um, adj., *unconquered, unvanquished, invincible.* i. 36.
- invideo**, ěre, vīdi, vīsum, *to grudge; to envy.* ii. 31.
- invidia**, ae, f., *envy, jealousy, grudge, ill-will, hatred, malice.* vii. 77.
- inviolātus**, a, um, adj., (in + viōlo), *inviolate, inviolable.* iii. 9.
- invito**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to allure, entice, invite.* 4.
- invitus**, a, um, adj., *unwilling, reluctant, against one's will.* 7.
- ipse**, a, um, intens. pers. pron., *himself, itself, herself;* adj. pron., *very, precisely, exactly.* 190.
- irācundia**, ae, f., *rage, anger, passion.* vi. 5, vii. 42.
- irācundus**, a, um, adj., *passionate, angry, irascible.* i. 31.
- irrideo**, ěre, rīsi, rīsum, (in + rīdeo), *to laugh at, ridicule.* ii. 30.
- irridicūle**, adv., *unwittily.* i. 42.
- irrumpo**, ěre, rūpi, ruptum, *to break into, rush into, invade; to storm, force one's way into.* 5.
- irruptio**, ōnis, f., *an invasion, attack, irruption.* vii. 70.
- is**, ea, id, dem. adj. pron., *this, that, such;* eo, ablat., *on that account, for this reason;* ea, ablat., *in that way;* pers. pron., *he, she, it.* 962.
- iste**, a, ud, dem. adj. pron., *this of yours; that, this, such;* pers. pron., *he, she, it.* vii. 77.
- itā**, adv., *in this way, thus, so, in such a manner.* 42.
- itāque**, conj., *therefore, so, thus, to such a degree.* 29.
- item**, adv., *likewise, also, in like manner.* 28.
- iter**, itīnēris, n., (eo), *a march, journey, way.* 112.
- itērum**, adv., *again.* 4.
- itūrus**, a, um. See eo.

## I (consonant).

**iāceo**, ěre, ui, itum, *to lie, lie down, lie dead; to extend.* ii. 27, vii. 25.

**iācio, ěre, iāci, iactum**, to cast, throw, hurl, fling: to throw up, construct. 7.

**iacto, āre, āvi, ātum, (iācio)**, to throw, fling, toss, cast, hurl: to speak or make mention of; to discuss, examine, talk about. i. 18, 25; vii. 47.

**iactūra, ae, f., (iācio)**, a throwing away; loss, damage, hurt, sacrifice. vi. 12, vii. 26, 77.

**iācūlum, i, n., a dart, javelin.** v. 43, 45.

**iam, adv., already, now, soon.** 67.

**iūba, ae, f., a mane.** i. 48.

**iūbeo, ěre, iussi, iussum**, to order, command, bid. 112.

**iūdicium, i, n., a judging, trial, judgment, decision, sentence, opinion.** 10.

**iūdico, āre, āvi, ātum, (ius + dico)**, to judge, determine, decide, declare; to deem, consider, think. 19.

**iūgum, i, n., a yoke: the yoke** (formed by a spear fastened to the top of two other spears set upright in the ground, under which the vanquished force was made to pass in token of subjection); height, ridge, summit. 13.

**iumentum, i, n., a beast of burden, draught-animal, ox, horse, etc.** 7.

**iunctūra, ae, f., (iungo)**, a junction, joint, union. iv. 17.

**iungo, ěre, iunxi, iunctum**, to join, unite, bind, fasten. 5.

**iūnior.** See **iūvĕnis.** vii. 1.

**Iūpiter, Iōvis, m., son of Saturn, and king of the gods.** vi. 17.

**iūro, āre, āvi, ātum**, to swear. i. 31, vi. 12.

**iūs, iuris, n., law, right, justice, power, authority.** 10.

**iusiūrandum, iūrisiurandi, n., (ius + iūro)**, an oath. 21.

**iussu, ablat., by command; by order.** vii. 3.

**iustitia, ae, f., equity, justice, uprightness.** 4.

**iustus, a, um, adj., (iūs)**, right, fair, just, customary, appropriate. 7.

**iūvĕnis, e, adj., young; iuvenis, is, m., a youth; comp., iūnior.** vii. 1.

**iūventus, ūtis, f., youth; young persons.** iii. 16, vi. 14, 23.

**iūvo, āre, iūvi, iutum**, to aid, help, assist. 5.

**iuxta, adv., near by, close to, by, next to, near to, near.** ii. 26.

## K.

**Kalendae, ārum, f. pl., the first day of the Roman month.** i. 6.

## L.

**lābor, i, lapsus, dep., to fall down, slip down; to err, commit a fault, make a mistake, fail.** v. 3, 55.

**lābor, ōris, m., toil, labor, exertion, work; fatigue, hardship, trouble, distress.** 31.

**lābōro, āre, āvi, ātum**, to toil, labor: to suffer, be distressed: to be in danger or difficulty. 12.

**labrum, i, n., a lip, the edge or rim.** v. 14, vi. 28, vii. 72.

**lac, lactis, n., milk.** iv. 1, v. 14, vi. 22.

**lācesso, ěre, īvi or ii, itum, (lācio)**, to attack, assail, provoke, irritate, challenge. 10.

**lacrīma, ae, f., a tear.** i. 20, 39.

**lacrīmo, āre, āvi, ātum**, to weep. vii. 38.

**lācus, ūs, m., a lake.** i. 2, 8; iii. 1.

**laedo, ěre, laesi, laesum**, to strike, injure, violate, harm. vi. 9.

**laetātio, ōnis, f., gladness, joy.** v. 22.

**laetitia, ae, f., gladness, joy, exultation, delight.** v. 48, vii. 79.

**laetus, a, um, adj., glad, joyful.** iii. 18.

**languide, adv., feebly, faintly, languidly.** vii. 27.

**languidus, a, um, adj., feeble, faint, sluggish, languid.** iii. 5.

**languor, ōris, m., faintness, languor, weariness, listlessness.** v. 31.

- lāpis, īdis, m., a stone. 8.
- lāqueus, i, m, a snare, noose. vii. 22.
- largior, īri, ītus, dep., to give bountifully, bestow, distribute, supply, impart. i. 18, vi. 24.
- largīter, adv., liberally, largely. i. 18.
- largītio, ōnis, f., liberal giving. i. 9.
- lassitūdo, īnis, f., (lassus), fatigue, weariness, lassitude. ii. 23, iv. 15.
- lāte, adv., extensively, widely. 8.
- lātebra, ae, f., a lurking place, hiding place, retreat, covert. vi. 43.
- lāteo, ēre, ui, —, to skulk, lurk, lie hidden, concealed. ii. 19, iii. 14.
- lātītūdo, īnis, f., width, breadth, extent. 9.
- latro, ōnis, m., a robber, bandit. iii. 17, vii. 38.
- latrōcinium, i, n., robbery. vi. 16, 23, 35.
- lātus, a, um, adj., wide, broad, spacious, extensive. 10.
- lātus, a, um. See fēro.
- lātus, ēris, n., the flank, side. 25.
- laudo, āre, āvi, ātum, (laus), to commend, praise. v. 8.
- laus, laudis, f., fame, praise, renown, merit. 13.
- lāvo, āre, and ēre, lāvi, lāvātum, lautum, and lōtum, to bathe, wash. iv. 1.
- laxo, āre, āvi, ātum, to widen, open, loosen, extend. ii. 25.
- lēgātio, ōnis, f., a deputation, legation, embassy. 15.
- lēgātus, i, m., (lēgo), an ambassador, lieutenant, deputy, delegate. 123.
- lēgio, ōnis, f., (lēgo), a legion. 188.
- lēgiōnārius, a, um, adj., of a legion, legionary. 7.
- Lēmānus, i, m., the lake of Genera. i. 2, 8; iii. 1.
- lēnis, e, adj., mild, gentle, soft, smooth; gradually rising, sloping. 7.
- lēnitas, ātis, f., smoothness, mildness, gentleness. i. 12.
- lēniter, adv., mildly, gently. 5.
- lēpus, ōris, m, a hare. v. 12.
- lēvis, e, adj., light, trifling, trivial, slight, fickle. 11.
- lēvitas, ātis, f., fickleness, inconstancy, lightness. ii. 1, vii. 43.
- lēvo, āre, āvi, ātum, (levis), to alleviate, relieve, aid, lighten. v. 27.
- lex, lēgis, f., a law. 14.
- libenter, adv., (libens), cheerfully, willingly. i. 44, iii. 18, vi. 4.
- liber, ěra, ěrum, adj., unrestrained, free. 11.
- libērālitas, ātis, f., (libērālis), liberality, generosity. i. 18, 43.
- libērāliter, adv., liberally, graciously, kindly. ii. 5, iv. 18, 21.
- libēre, adv., (liber), frankly, boldly, freely. 4.
- libēri, ōrum, m. pl., children. 15.
- libēro, āre, āvi, ātum, to release, liberate, free. 5.
- libertas, ātis, f., (liber), liberty, freedom. 19.
- librilis, e, adj., (libra), weighing a pound. vii. 81.
- licentia, ae, f., (licet), license, freedom, liberty; boldness, lawlessness, presumption. vii. 52.
- liceor, ēri, licitus, dep., to bid at auction. i. 18 (twice).
- licet, ēre, licuit or licitum est, impers., it is allowed, it is permitted; one may or can. 17.
- lignātio, ōnis, f., procuring wood. v. 39.
- lignātor, ōris, m., a woodman, woodcutter. v. 26.
- lilium, i, n., a lily; a military work in the form of a lily. vii. 73.
- linea, ae, f., a string, a line. vii. 23.
- lingua, ae, f., the tongue; speech, language. i. 1 (twice), 47.
- lingūla, ae, f., a tongue of land. iii. 12.
- linter, tris, f., a skiff, boat. i. 12, 53; vii. 60.
- linum, i, n., linen, flax. iii. 13.
- lis, litis, f., dispute, strife, damages, lawsuit. v. 1.

littĕra, ae, f., a letter of the alphabet; pl., an epistle, letter, despatches. 22.  
 litus, ōris, n., the bank, shore, coast, strand. 6.  
 lŏcus, i, m, (pl. lŏca and lŏci), a spot, place, position, condition, rank, station. 277.  
 longe, adv., at a distance, far. 65.  
 longinquus, a, um, adj., remote, long, removed, of long duration, long continued. 5.  
 longitŭdo, ĩnis, f., length. 11.  
 longŭrius, i, m., a long pole. iii 14, iv. 17, vii. 84.  
 longus, a, um, adj., long, distant. 83.  
 lŏquor, i, cŭtus, dep., to declare, say, speak. 8.  
 lŏrica, ae, f., a coat of mail, corselet, breastwork, parapet. v. 40, vii. 72, 86.  
 lŭna, ae, f, the moon. i. 50, iv. 29, vi. 21  
 lux, lŭcis, f., daylight, light. 18.  
 luxŭria, ae, f., (luxus), luxury; extravagance, excess. ii. 15.

## M.

mācĕria, ae, f., an inclosure, a wall. vii. 69, 70.  
 māchĭnātio, ōnis, f., a machine. ii. 30, 31, iv. 17.  
 maestus, a, um, adj., mournful, sad, sorrowful, dejected. vii. 80.  
 magis, comp. adv., rather, more; sup. maxime. 15.  
 māgistrātus, ūs, m., a magistracy, officer, magistrate. 21.  
 magnificus, a, um, adj., (magnus + fācio), magnificent, splendid. vi. 19.  
 magnitŭdo, ĩnis, f., size, magnitude, extent. 28.  
 magnŏpĕre, adv., (magnus + ōpus), greatly, very much, exceedingly, strongly. 7.  
 magnus, a, um, adj., great, large, extensive, spacious; powerful, important; comp. māior, sup. maxĭmus. 353.

māiestas, ātis, (māius), honor, dignity, excellence, splendor, majesty. vii. 17.  
 māior, comp. of magnus.  
 māiŏres, um, m. pl., (māior), ancestors, forefathers. 16.  
 mālācia, ae, f., a calm at sea, dead calm. iii. 15.  
 mālĕ, adv., ill, badly, unfortunate, adversely, unsuccessfully; comp. pĕius, sup. pessĭme. i. 40.  
 mālĕficiŭm, i, n, (male + fācio), an offence, evil deed, damage, mischief, harm. 4.  
 mālŏ, malle, mālui, (māgis + vŏlo), to choose rather; to prefer, be more willing. iii. 8, 20.  
 mālus, i, m., a pole, mast. iii. 14, vii. 22.  
 mālus, a, um, adj., evil, bad, injurious, mischievous, destructive; comp. pĕior, sup. pessĭmus. i. 40.  
 mandātum, i, n., order, commission, command, charge. 7.  
 mando, āre, āvi, ātum, (mānus + do), to enjoin, order, command; to commission, bid. 19.  
 māne, adv., in the morning, iv. 13, v. 10, vii. 18.  
 māneo, ĕre, mansi, mansum, to stay, continue, remain. 9.  
 mānipŭlaris, e, adj., of or belonging to a company, manipular; in plu. as noun, soldiers of same company. vii. 47, 50.  
 mānipŭlus, i, m., (mānus + plĕnus), a bundle, handful; a company of soldiers. ii. 25, vi. 34, 40.  
 mansuĕfio, fĭĕri, factus, irr. pass., (mānus + suĕtus + fio), to be tamed. vi. 28.  
 mansuĕtŭdo, ĩnis, f., gentleness, clemency, mildness. ii. 14, 31.  
 mānus, ūs, f., a hand, an armed force, band of troops; art, power. 47.  
 mārĕ, is, n., the sea. 16.  
 mārĭtĭmus, a, um, adj., maritime, of or on the sea. 11.

- Mars, Martis, m., *the god of war; battle, war, strife.* vi. 17 (twice), vii. 19.
- mās, māris, m., *a male.* vi. 26.
- matāra, ae, f., *a pike, javelin.* i. 26.
- māter, tris, f., *a mother.* 6.
- māterfamiliae. See mater and familia.
- mātēria, ae, f., and mātēries, ēi, f., (māter), *matter, material, wood, timber; materia, 8; materies, vii. 24.*
- mātērior, āri, ātus, *to fell or procure timber.* vii. 73.
- mātrīmōnium, i, n., *marriage.* i. 3, 9.
- mātūre, adv., *early, seasonably; speedily, soon, quickly.* 5.
- mātūresco, ēre, ūrui, —, *to become ripe, ripen.* vi. 29.
- mātūro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to make ripe; to hasten, make haste.* 4.
- mātūrus, a, um, adj., *ripe, mature; timely, seasonable, right, suitable, proper, fit.* 7.
- maxīme, adv., *in the highest degree, very, most, especially.* vii. 68.
- maximus, a, um, sup. of magnus.
- mēdeor, ēri, dep., *to heal, cure, remedy; to correct, relieve, take care.* v. 24.
- mēdiocris, e, adj., (mēdius), *ordinary, middling, moderate.* 7.
- mēdiocrīter, adv., *ordinarily, in an ordinary degree, moderately.* i. 39.
- mēditerrāneus, a, um, adj., (mēdius + terra), *inland, remote from the sea.* v. 12.
- mēdius, a, um, adj., *in the middle, in the midst, middle, intermediate.* 29.
- mēlior, us, comp. of bōnus.
- mēlius, comp. of bēne.
- membrum, i, n., *a limb, member.* iv. 24, vi. 16.
- mēmīni, isse, defect., *to recollect, remember.* iii. 6, vii. 37.
- mēmōria, ae, f., *recollection, memory.* 21.
- mendācium, i, n., *a falsehood.* vii. 38.
- mens, mentis, f., *the soul, mind; feelings, disposition, intellect, judgment, reason; heart, soul, courage.* 8.
- mensis, is, m., *a month.* 4.
- mensūra, ae, f., (mētior), *measurement, measure.* v. 13, vi. 25.
- mentio, ōnis, f., *mention.* vi. 38.
- mercātor, ōris, m., (mercor), *a trader, merchant.* 11.
- mercātūra, ae, f., (mercor), *traffic, commerce, trade.* vi. 17.
- merces, ēdis, f., (mēreo), *hire, pay, wages, salary, reward.* i. 31.
- Mercūrius, i., m., *Mercury, son of Jupiter and Maia, and messenger of the gods.* vi. 17.
- mēreo, ēre, ui, ītūm, and mēreor, ēri, ītus, dep., *to get, gain, acquire, obtain; to deserve, merit, serve.* 15.
- mēriānus, a, um, adj., *of midday, noon.* v. 8.
- mēridies, ēi, m., (mēdius + dies), *noon, midday, the south.* 7.
- mērito, adv., *justly, deservedly, according to desert.* 4.
- mēritum, i, n., *desert, merit, favor, kindness, service.* 5.
- mētior, īri, mensus, dep., *to measure out, measure, deal out.* i. 16, 23; vii. 71.
- mēto, ēre, messui, messum, *to mow, reap, gather in, harvest.* iv. 32.
- mētus, ūs, m., *dread, fear.* 8.
- meus, a, um, poss. adj. pron., *my, of mine, mine.* 4.
- mīles, ītis, m. and f., *a soldier.* 169.
- mīlia. See mille.
- militāris, e, adj., *warlike, military, soldierly.* 18.
- militia, ae, f., *war, warfare, military service.* vi. 14, vii. 14.
- mille, num. adj. and subs., *a thousand; plu. milia, ium.* 115.
- mīnime, adv. (sup. of pārūm), *least of all, least, by no means, not in the least, not at all.* 7.

- mīnimus**, a, um, adj., (sup. of *parvus*), *the smallest, least.* 4.
- mīnor**, us, adj., (comp. of *parvus*), *less, smaller, inferior.* 19.
- mīnuo**, ēre, ui, ūtum, *to diminish, impair; to remove, settle, put an end to; to weaken, grow small.* 10.
- mīnus**, adv., (comp. of *parvum*), *less, not.* 33.
- mīror**, āri, ātus, dep., *to admire, wonder.* i. 32, v. 54, vii. 44.
- mīrus**, a, um, adj., *wonderful.* i. 34, 41.
- mīser**, ēra, ērum, adj., *unfortunate, pitiable, wretched, lamentable.* i. 32, ii. 28, vi. 35.
- mīsēricordia**, ae, f., *compassion, pity, mercy.* 4.
- mīsērōr**, āri, ātus, dep., *to lament, deplore, bewail, pity, commiserate.* i. 39, vii. 1.
- missus**, ūs, m., *a dispatching, sending.* v. 27, vi. 7.
- mīte**, adv., *gently, mildly.* vii. 43.
- mitto**, ēre, mīsi, missum, *to let go, send, dispatch, dismiss, break up, cast, hurl, throw, launch.* 160.
- mōbilis**, e, adj., (*moveo*), *movable; fickle, changeable.* iv. 5.
- mōbilitas**, ātis, f., *changeableness; speed, rapidity.* ii. 1, iv. 33.
- mōbīliter**, adv., *quickly, rapidly, easily.* iii. 10.
- mōdēror**, āri, ātus, dep., (*mōdus*), *to restrict, moderate, manage, direct, regulate, govern.* iv. 33, vii. 75.
- mōdestia**, ae, f., *modesty, unassuming conduct, moderation, discretion.* vii. 52.
- mōdo**, adv., (*mōdus*), *only, merely, but, just, even, lately; non modo, not only; modo — modo, sometimes — sometimes, now — now.* 23.
- mōdus**, i, m., *extent, measure, way, manner, mode.* 26.
- moenia**, ium, n. pl., (*mūnio*), *defensive walls, ramparts, bulwarks, fortifications, defences, a walled town.* 4.
- mōles**, is, f., *a huge mass; a mole, dam, dike.* iii. 12.
- mōleste**, adv., *with trouble, in a troublesome way, annoyingly; moleste fero, I take it ill, I am displeased.* ii. 1.
- mōlimentum**, i, n., *effort, exertion, endeavor.* i. 34.
- mōlītus**, a, um. See *molo*.
- mollio**, ire, īvi or ii, ītum, *to make soft, soften; to make gentle; to lighten, ease.* vii. 46.
- mollis**, e, adj., *mild, gentle, soft, weak, feeble, sloping.* iii. 19, v. 9.
- mollitia**, ae, f., *weakness, effeminacy.* vii. 77.
- mollities**, ēi, f. *irresolution, effeminacy, timidity, weakness.* vii. 20.
- mōlo**, ēre, ui, ītum, *to grind, i.* 5.
- mōmentum**, i, n., *weight, influence, moment, importance.* vii. 39, 85.
- mōneo**, ēre, ui, ītum, *to warn, admonish, advise, instruct, teach, tell, inform.* 8.
- mons**, tis, m., *a mountain.* 33.
- mōra**, ae, f., *hindrance, delay, obstacle.* 4.
- morbus**, i, m., *sickness, disease.* vi. 16, 17.
- mōrior**, i, mortuus, dep., *to die.* i. 4, iii. 22, vi. 13.
- mōror**, āri, ātus, *to stay, tarry, delay, linger, hinder, detain.* 20.
- mors**, mortis, f., *death.* 20.
- mos**, mōris, m., *custom, manner, usage, character, practice.* 18.
- mōtus**, ūs, m., *movement, motion, rising, rebellion, disturbance, commotion.* 14.
- mōveo**, ēre, mōvi, mōtum, *to move, set in motion; to influence, affect; to excite, occasion, remove, break up.* 17.
- mūlier**, ēris, f., *a woman, wife.* 8.
- mūlio**, ōnis, m., *a muleteer.* vii. 45.
- multitūdo**, īnis, f., *a great number, multitude, crowd, populace, the common people.* 83.
- multo**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to fine, punish, deprive of, impose a fine.* vii. 54.

multo, adv., *by far, much*. 12.  
 multum, adv., *greatly, much, far, especially*. 17.  
 multus, a, um, adj., *many, much*; comp. plus, sup. plurimus. 70.  
 mūlus, i, m., *a mule*. vii. 45.  
 mundus, i, m., *the universe; the heavens, world*. vi. 14.  
 mūnimentum, i, n., *a fortification, defence, rampart, bulwark*. ii. 17.  
 mūnio, ire, ivi or ii, itum, *to fortify, protect, secure*. 37.  
 mūnītio, ōnis, f., *a rampart, defence, fortification*. 73.  
 mūnītus, a, um, partic. adj., (mūnio), *secured, fortified*. 20.  
 mūnus, ōris, n., *a gift, present; function, office, charge*. i. 43, vi. 18, vii. 25.  
 mūrālis, e, adj., *mural*, iii. 14, v. 40, vii. 82.  
 mūrus, i, m., *a wall*. 48.  
 muscūlus, i, m., (mus), *a little mouse; a warlike machine*, vii. 84.  
 mutilus, a, um, adj., *mutilated, maimed*. vi. 27.  
 mūto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to alter, change; to avoid; to improve*. vii. 45.

## N.

nactus, a, um. See nanciscor.  
 nam or namque, conj., *for*. nam, 46; namque, 5.  
 nanciscor, i, nactus, dep., *to meet with, acquire, find, obtain*. 17.  
 nascor, i, natus, dep., *to arise, proceed; to be born, be produced*. 20.  
 nātālis, e, adj., *natal, of birth*. vi. 18.  
 nātio, ōnis, i., (nascor), *a people, nation, race*. 16.  
 nātīvus, a, um, adj., *natural*. vi. 10.  
 nātu, m., ablat., *by birth, in age; maiores natu, the older persons (ancestors)*. ii. 13, 28, iv. 13.

nātūra, ae, f., (nascor), *nature; character, disposition*. 30.  
 nātus, a, um. See nascor.  
 nauta, ae, m., *a sailor*. iii. 9, v. 10.  
 nauticus, a, um, adj., (nauta), *naval, nautical*. iii. 8.  
 nāvālis, e, adj., *naval*, iii. 19, v. 22.  
 nāvīcūla, ae, f., (navis), *a skiff, little boat*. i. 53.  
 nāvīgātio, ōnis, f., (navigo), *a sailing, navigation, voyage*. 6.  
 nāvīgium, i, n., *a vessel*. iii. 14, iv. 26, v. 8.  
 nāvīgo, āre, āvi, ātum, (nāvis + āgo), *to steer or navigate a ship, navigate, sail over*. 7.  
 nāvis, is, f., *a ship, bark, vessel; navis longa, a ship of war*. 115.  
 nāvo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to perform vigorously or diligently*. ii. 25.  
 nē, conj., *that not, lest; ne — quidem, not even*. 153.  
 nē, enclit. conj., *whether; ne — ne, whether — or (in direct questions often omitted in translating)*. 10.  
 nec, conj., *neither, nor, and not, but not; nec — nec, or neque — neque, neither — nor*. nec, 31; neque, 263.  
 nēcessārio, adv., *necessarily, of necessity*. 15.  
 nēcessārius, a, um, adj., *necessary, pressing*. 20.  
 nēcessārius, i, m., *a relative, friend, kinsman*. i. 11.  
 nēcesse, adj., indecl., *necessary*. 9.  
 nēcessitas, ātis, f., *necessity*. 6.  
 nēcessitūdo, inis, f., *necessity, need, want; relationship, intimacy, friendship*. i. 43.  
 necne, conj., (nec + ne), *or not*. i. 50.  
 nēco, āre, āvi, ātum, *to kill, destroy, slay*. 6.  
 nēcūbī, adv., *lest anywhere, that nowhere*. vii. 35.  
 nēfārius, a, um, adj., *wicked, impious, base, abominable*. vii. 38, 77.



**nēfas**, n., indecl., *criminal, impious; a disgrace, impiety, abomination, villainy.* vii. 40.

**neglīgo**, ēre, lexi, lectum, (nec + lēgo), *to disregard, slight, neglect.* 12.

**nēgo**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to refuse, deny, say no.* 5.

**nēgōtiōr**, āri, ātus, dep., *to trade, carry on a business, traffic.* vii. 3, 42, 55.

**nēgōtium**, i, n., (nec + otium), *occupation, business; matter, affair, difficulty, fact.* 14.

**nēmo**, īnis, m. and f., (nē + homo), *no one, nobody, no man.* 14.

**nēquāquam**, adv., *in no wise, by no means.* iv. 23, vii. 77.

**nēque**, conj., (ne + que). See nec.

**nēquīquam**, adv., *in vain, to no purpose.* ii. 27.

**nēquis** is more properly written **ne quis**. See quis.

**Nervicus**, a, um, adj., *Nervian,* ii. 27.

**nervus**, i, m., *a nerve, sinew; strength, vigor, force.* i. 20, vi. 21.

**neu** or **nēve**, conj., *and not, nor, neither.* neu, 11; neve, 4.

**neuter**; **tra**, **trum**, adj., (nē + ūter), *neither of two, neither.* ii. 9, vii. 63.

**nex**, **nēcis**, f., *death, murder, slaughter.* i. 16, vi. 19, 23.

**nihil**, n., indecl., *nothing, nought; nihilo secius, nevertheless; nihilo minus, nevertheless.* 54.

**nīmis**, adv., *very, too much, exceedingly.* vii. 36.

**nīmius**, a, um, adj., *too much, too great, excessive, immoderate.* vii. 29.

**nīsi**, conj., *if not, except, unless.* 24.

**nītor**, i, **nīsus** or **nīxus**, dep., *to endeavor, strive, exert one's self, attempt.* i. 13, vi. 37, 63.

**nix**, **nīvis**, f., *snow.* vii. 8 (twice), 55.

**nōbilis**, e, adj., (nosco), *noted, renowned, famous, illustrious, noble.* 10.

**nōbilitas**, ātis, f., *reputation, renown, fame, worth, nobleness.* 7.

**nōcens**, tis, partic. adj., *hurtful, pernicious, guilty, criminal.* vi. 9.

**nōceo**, ēre, ui, **ītum**, *to hurt, injure, harm.* 12.

**noctū**, adv., *by night.* 16.

**nocturnus**, a, um, adj., *of night, nocturnal.* 10.

**nōdus**, i, m., *a joint; knot, tie, bond.* vi. 27.

**nōlo**, nolle, **nōlui**, —, irr., (non + volo), *to be unwilling; to dislike, not to wish well to.* 11.

**nōmen**, īnis, n., (nosco), *a name; reason, account, excuse, pretence.* 18.

**nōmīnātum**, adv., (**nōmīno**), *by name, expressly.* 4.

**nōmīno**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to call by name; to appoint, nominate.* ii. 18, vii. 39, 73.

**nōn**, adv., *not, no.* 313.

**nōnāginta**, num. adj., *ninety.* i. 29.

**nondum**, adv., *not yet.* 9.

**nonnihil**, adv., *something, somewhat.* iii. 17.

**nonnullus**, a, um, adj., *some.* 24.

**nonnumquam**, adv., *sometimes.* 4.

**nōnus**, a, um, num. adj., *the ninth.* ii. 23, iv. 23, v. 53.

**Nōricus**, a, um, adj., *Norican,* i. 5, 53.

**nosco**, ēre, **nōvi**, **nōtum**, *to learn, become acquainted with, know.* 12.

**noster**, **tra**, **trum**, poss. adj. pron., *ours, of ours, our.* 233.

**nōtītia**, ae, f., *knowledge, acquaintance.* vi. 21, 24.

**nōtus**, a, um, partic. adj., (nosco), *known, well known, noted.* 7.

**nōvem**, num. adj., indecl., *nine.* 4.

**nōvītas**, ātis, f., *newness, novelty, strangeness.* iv. 34, vii. 58.

**nōvus**, a, um, adj., *new, strange, recent, unusual; sup. nōvissimus, the latest, last, newest; agmen novissimum, the rear; novissimi, the rear, rear men.* 34.

**nox**, **noctis**, f., *night.* 46.

noxia, ae, f., (nōceo), *crime, offence, fault.* vi. 16.  
 nūbo, ěre, nupsi, nuptum, *to veil; to marry, be married.* i. 18.  
 nūdo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to uncover, bare, strip, expose; to deprive.* 7.  
 nūdus, a, um, adj., *naked, bare, unprotected, uncovered.* i. 25, vi. 21, vii. 47.  
 nullus, a, um, adj., (nē + ullus), *none, no, not any.* 56.  
 num, interrog. adv., *whether.* i. 14.  
 nūmen, īnis, n., (nuo), *the will of the gods; command, deity, divinity.* vi. 16.  
 nūmĕrus, i, m., *quantity, number, position, rank, estimation, account.* 105.  
 Nūmīda, ae, m., *a Numidian.* ii. 7, 10, 24.  
 nummus, i, m., *a piece of money, coin.* v. 12 (twice).  
 nunc, adv., *at present, now.* 8.  
 nuntio, āre, āvi, ātum, *to announce, bring news, report, inform, warn.* 28.  
 nuntius, i, m., *tidings, news, message, order; messenger, courier.* 34.  
 nūper, adv., *recently, lately, not long ago.* 4.  
 nusquam, (ne + usquam), adv., *nowhere, in no case.* vii. 17.  
 nūtus, ūs, m., (nuo), *a nod, beck, will; command, pleasure; gravity, weight.* i. 31, iv. 23, v. 43.

## O.

ōb, prep. with acc., *on account of, for, for the sake of.* 15.  
 ōbaerātus, a, um, adj., (ob + aes), *involved in debt.* i. 4.  
 ōbaerātus, i, m., *a debtor.* i. 4.  
 obdūco, ěre, duxi, ductum, *to lead against or to, draw ductward, draw out; to construct.* ii. 8.  
 ōbeo, ěre, ivi or ii, itum, *to traverse, go through, come to, go against; to execute, perform, do.* v. 33.

ōbītus, ūs, m., (obeo), *death.* ii. 29.  
 obīcio, ěre, iēci, iectum, (ob + iācio), *to throw before, throw up, expose, oppose; to present, offer.* 6.  
 obiectus, a, um, partic. adj., (obicio), *lying before or opposite, open to, exposed, intervening.* vi. 10, 37, vii. 59.  
 oblātus, a, um. See offĕro.  
 oblīque, adv., *obliquely.* iv. 17.  
 oblīquus, a, um, adj., *oblique, slanting, sidewise.* vii. 73.  
 oblīviscor, i, oblītus, dep., *to forget.* i. 14, vii. 34.  
 obsĕcro, āre, āvi, ātum, (ob + sācro), *to implore, entreat, beseech.* i. 20, vii. 8, 38.  
 obsĕquentia, ae, f., (obsĕquens), *obsequiousness, compliance.* vii. 29.  
 observo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to observe, watch, regard, notice; to obey.* 4.  
 obses, īdis, m. and f., (ob + sĕdeo), *a pledge, security, hostage.* 71.  
 obsessio, ōnis, f., (obsīdeo), *a siege.* vi. 36, vii. 36.  
 obsīdeo, ěri, sĕdi, sessum, (ob + sĕdeo), *to besiege, blockade.* 6.  
 obsīdio, ōnis, f., (obsīdeo), *a blockade, siege; imminent peril.* 7.  
 obsigno, āre, āvi, ātum, *to seal, sign, execute, make.* i. 39.  
 obsisto, ěre, stīti, stītum, *to resist, oppose, withstand, stop, hinder.* vii. 29.  
 obstīnāte, adv., *firmly, resolutely.* v. 6.  
 obstringo, ěre, inxi, ictum, *to tie, bind, fetter; to oblige, put under obligation.* i. 9, 31.  
 obstruo, ěre, xi, ctum, *to barricade, stop up, block up.* v. 50, 51, vii. 41.  
 obtempĕro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to submit to, comply with, obey.* iv. 12.  
 obtestor, āri, ātus, dep., *to call solemnly to witness, protest; to supplicate, adjure, beseech.* 4.  
 obtīneo, ěre, tīnui, tentum, (ob + tĕneo), *to possess, hold, retain, obtain, accomplish, effect, preserve.* 25.

- obtūli. See offēro.
- obvēnio, ire, vēni, ventum, to meet; to occur, happen, befall. ii. 23, vii. 28, 81.
- obviam, adv., (obvius), in the way, against, towards. vii. 12, 28.
- occāsio, ōnis, f., (occīdo), opportunity, occasion. 6.
- occāsus, ūs, m., (occīdo), a setting, going down; the west; destruction, downfall, end. 7.
- occidens, tis, partic. adj., (occīdo), going down, setting. v. 13.
- occīdo, ěre, cīdi, occāsum, (ob + cādo), to perish, fall; to set, go down. vi. 37.
- occido, ěre, cīdi, cīsum, (ob + caedo), to kill, cut down, slay; to beat severely. 18.
- occultatio, ōnis, f., concealment. vi. 21.
- occulte, adv., secretly, privately. vii. 83.
- occulto, āre, āvi, ātum, (occūlo), to secrete, cover, conceal, hide. 13.
- occultus, a, um, part. adj., (occūlo), concealed, hidden, secret. 9.
- occūpāto, ōnis, f., (occūpo), a seizing, occupying; employment, occupation. iv. 16, 22.
- occūpo, āre, āvi, ātum, (ob + cāpio), to occupy, seize upon, attack, invade; to engross, employ. 28.
- occurro, ěre, curri or cūcurri, cursum, (ob + curro) to go, come or run to meet, fall in with; to resist, oppose; to occur, present itself. 14.
- ōceānus, i, m., the ocean. 16.
- octāvus, a, um, num. adj., the eighth. ii. 23, v. 35.
- octigenti, ae, a, num. adj., (octo + centum), eight hundred. iv. 12, v. 8, 13.
- octo, num. adj., eight. 7.
- octōdĕcim, num. adj., eighteen. 4.
- octōginta, num. adj., eighty. 7.
- octōni, ae, a, distr. num. adj., eight by eight, eight each, eight. vii. 73, 75.
- ōcūlus, i, m., the eye. 6.
- ōdi, ōdisse, defect., I hate, detest. i. 18, iii. 10.
- ōdium, i, n., enmity, odium, hatred, ill-will, dislike, detestation. vi. 5, 9.
- offendo, ěre, di, sum, to run or hit against; to offend, take offence; to blame, displease. i. 19, vi. 36.
- offensio, ōnis, f., harm, offence; aversion, dislike. i. 19.
- offēro, ferre, obtūli, oblātum, to bring before, offer, give, present; to expose; to promise. 10.
- officium, i, n., (offīcio), a favor, service, kindness; honor, respect, deference; employment, office, charge. 16.
- ōmitto, ěre, mīsi, missum, (ob + mitto), to omit, let go, lay aside; to postpone; to slight, excuse, disregard. ii. 17, vii. 34, 88.
- omnino, adv., entirely, wholly, altogether, utterly, only. 21.
- omnis, e, adj., every, all, the whole, of every kind. 519.
- ōnĕrārius, a, um, adj., (onus), fitted for burdens, transport; nāvis oneraria, a transport ship. 4.
- ōnĕro, āre, āvi, ātum, to load, lade, fill. v. 1.
- ōnus, ěris, n., a load, burden; freight, cargo; trouble. 5.
- ōpĕra, ae, f., labor, work, pains; help, assistance; operam dare, to take pains. 11.
- ōpīnio, ōnis, f., belief, opinion, supposition; rumor, fame. 25.
- ōportet, ěre, uit, —, impers., it is proper, it behooves, it ought, it must be, it is necessary. 18.
- oppīdāni, ōrum, m. pl., citizens, townspeople.
- oppīdānus, a, um, adj., of a town. 5.
- oppīdum, i, n., a town. 130.
- oppōno, ěre, pōsui, pōsitum, (ob + pono), to place against or opposite, station, place. vi. 36, vii. 56, 65.
- opportūne, adv., seasonably, fitly, opportunely, suitably, properly, conveniently. iv. 13, 22.

**opportunitas, ātis, f.**, *fitness, convenience, advantage, favorableness, opportunity, the right chance.* 7.

**opportūnus, a, um, adj.**, (**ob + portus**), *suitable, convenient, fit, proper.* 10.

**oppōsitus, a, um, adj.** See **oppōno**.

**opprimo, ěre, pressi, pressum, (ob + prĕmo)**, *to suppress, press down; to overthrow, overpower, prostrate, fall upon suddenly, surprise.* 11.

**oppugnātio, ōnis, f.**, *assault, attack, siege, an assaulting.* 19.

**oppugno, āre, āvi, ātum, (ob + pugno)**, *to attack, assail, beset, fight against.* 23.

**ops, ōpis, f.**, *strength, power, assistance, aid, succor; interest, influence.* 9.

**optātus, a, um, partic. adj.**, (**opto**), *longed for, wished for, dear, desired, wished.* vi. 42.

**optīme, adv.**, (**sup. of bĕne**), *most excellently, best.* i. 45, vii. 71.

**optīmus, a, um, adj.**, (**sup. of bonus**), *most excellent, best, very good.* 4.

**opus, ěris, n**, *a work, labor, art, deed, business; tanto opere, so greatly; quanto opere, how much, how greatly.* 46.

**ōpus, n.**, *indecl., necessity, need.* 8.

**ōra, ae, f.**, *the margin, shore, edge, region.* 4.

**ōrātio, ōnis, f**, (**ōro**), *language, speech, oration, harangue.* 22.

**ōrātor, ōris, m**, (**ōro**), *an orator, speaker.* iv. 27.

**orbis, is, m.**, *a circle; a region of country; a rank or file of soldiers; orbis terrarum, the world, earth.* 4.

**ordo, ĩnis, m.**, *order, series, row; method, arrangement.* 27.

**ōrior, ĩri, ortus, dep.**, *to arise, begin, rise; to spring.* 21.

**ornāmentum, i, n.**, *ornament, embellishment, honor.* i. 44, vii. 15.

**ornātus, a, um, partic. adj.**, (**orno**), *furnished, equipped.* iii. 14.

**orno, āre, āvi, ātum, to equip, furnish, ornament, adorn, honor.** iii. 14, vii. 33.

**ōro, āre, āvi, ātum, to entreat, implore, beseech, ask.** 11.

**ortus, ūs, m**, (**ōrior**), *a rising.* vii. 41.

**ōs, ōris, n.**, *the mouth, countenance, face.* v. 35, vi. 39.

**ostendo, ěre, di, sum, (ob + tendo)**, *to display, show, manifest, disclose.* 20.

**ostentātio, ōnis, f.**, *display, show, pretence.* vii. 45, 53.

**ostento, āre, āvi, ātum, (ostendo)**, *to display, show, manifest, exhibit.* 4.

**ōtium, i, n.**, *ease, quiet, leisure, rest, idleness.* vii. 66.

**ōvum, i, n.**, *an egg,* iv. 10.

## P.

**pābŭlātio, ōnis, f.**, *a foraging.* 7.

**pābŭlātor, ōris, m.**, *a forager.* v. 17.

**pābŭlor, āri, ātus, dep.**, *to forage.* v. 17, vii. 14, 18.

**pābŭlum, i, n.**, *forage, fodder.* 6.

**pācātus, a, um, partic. adj.**, (**pāco**), *peaceful, pacified, quiet, calm, serene.* 10.

**pāco, āre, āvi, ātum, to tranquillize, subdue, conquer.** 11.

**pactum, i, n**, (**paciscor**), *a compact, agreement, rule, condition.* vii. 83.

**paene or pĕne, adv.**, *nearly, almost.* 17.

**paenĭtet, ěre, uit, impers.**, *to repent, be sorry, regret; me paenitet, I repent, am sorry.* iv. 5.

**pāgus, i, m.**, *a district, canton.* 11.

**pālam, adv.**, *publicly, openly.* v. 25, vi. 7, 18.

**palma, ae, f.**, *the palm of the hand; the palm-tree; victory.* vi. 36.

**pālus, ūdis, f.**, *a marsh, swamp, fen, bog.* 24.

**pāluster, tris, tre, adj.**, (**palus**), *marshy, boggy, swampy.* vii. 20.

pando, ěre, di, passum or pansum, *to open, throw open, spread out.* 4.

pār, pārís, adj., *equal, like, even, similar, strong.* 18.

pārātus, a, um, partic. adj., (pāro), *prepared, ready, furnished, provided, fitted.* 13.

parce, adv., *sparingly, moderately, frugally.* v. 71.

parco, ěre, pēperci or parsi, parcitum or parsum, *to abstain, forbear, spare.* 7.

pārens, tis, m. and f., (pārio), *a parent, mother or father.* v. 14, vi. 14, vii. 66.

pārento, āre, āvi, ātum, (pārens), *to perform funeral rites of parents or near relatives; to avenge, appease.* vii. 17.

pāreo, ěre, ui, itum, *to comply with, submit to, obey.* 6.

pārio, ěre, pēpēri, partum, *to bring forth, produce; to gain, acquire.* v. 43, vi. 40.

pārīter, adv., (pār), *equally.*

pāro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to provide, order, dispose, procure, furnish, obtain, acquire.* 33.

pars, tis, f., *share, portion, part; party, side; region, place; ex parte, in part.* 244.

partim, adv., *partly, in part.* 6.

partio, ěre, ívi or ii, itum, partior, ěri, itus, dep., *to divide, distribute.* 5.

partus, a, um. See pārio.

pārūm, adv., *too little, not enough, not much; comp. mínus, sup. mínime.* iii. 18. vii. 66.

parvūlus, a, um, adj., (dim. parvus), *little, small, slight, puny, trifling.* 5.

parvus, a, um, adj., *small, little, slight; comp. mīnor, sup. mīnīmus.* 5.

passim, adv., (pando), *everywhere, here and there.* iv. 14.

passus, ūs, m., (pando), *a pace, a measure of five Roman feet; mille passuum, a Roman mile.* 62.

passus, a, um. See pando.

passus, a, um. See pātiōr.

pātēfācio, ěre, fēci, factum, (pāteo + fācio), *to throw open; to discover, disclose, open.* ii. 32, vii. 8.

pātēfio, fīēri, factus, irreg. pass. of pātēfācio. iii. 1.

pātenš, tis, partic. adj., (pāteo), *unobstructed, accessible, open.* i. 10, vii. 28.

pāteo, ěre, ui, —, *to be open, accessible, extend; to be clear, evident or known.* 13.

pāter, tris, m., *a father.* 14.

paterfamiliae. See pater and familia.

pātiēter, adv., (pātiōr), *tamely, patiently.* vii. 77.

pātiēntia, ae, f., *a suffering, enduring, patience.* vi. 24, 36.

pātiōr, i, passus, dep., *to endure, suffer, bear; to permit, allow.* 19.

patrius, a, um, adj., (pater), *paternal, fatherly, native.* ii. 15.

patrōnus, i, m., (pater), *protector, patron, defender, advocate, champion.* vii. 40.

patruus, i, m., (pater), *father's brother, uncle.* vii. 4.

pauci, ae, a, adj., *a few, few.* 38.

paucitas, ātis, f., *small number, fewness.* 9.

paulātim, adv., *by degrees, gradually.* 11.

paulisper, adv., *a short time, for a little while.* 7.

paulo. See paulum.

paulūlum, adv., *somewhat, a little.* ii. 8.

paulum, adv., *somewhat, a little; paulo, ablat. of paulus, a little.* 50.

pax, pacis, f., *peace.* 27.

pecco, āre, āvi, ātum, *to offend, err, injure, transgress, mistake.* i. 47.

pectus, ōris, m., *the breast.* vii. 47.

pēcūnia, ae, f., *money, wealth.* 12.

pecus, ōris, n., *a herd, cattle.* 13.

pēdālis, e, adj., (pes), *of a foot, a foot long or broad.* iii. 13.

- pēdes**, itis, m., (pes), a *foot-soldier*, *infantry*. 10.
- pēdester**, tris, tre, adj., (pes), *infantry*; *on land*; *on foot*, *pedestrian*. 8.
- pēditātus**, ūs, m. *infantry*. 10.
- peior**, us, adj., (comp. of mālus), *worse*; *a worse thing*. i. 31.
- pellis**, is, f., a *hide*, *skin*; *tent*. 7.
- pello**, ěre, pēpūli, pulsum, *to expel*, *drive away*, *dispossess*, *discomfort*, *rout*. 20.
- pendo**, ěre, pēpendi, pensum, *to weigh*, *consider*, *think upon*; *to pay*; *to undergo*. 6.
- pēnitus**, adv., *inwardly*, *within*. vi. 10.
- per**, prep. with the acc., *through*, *through the midst of*, *throughout*, *during*; *over*, *along*; *on account of*, *for the sake of*, *for*. 103.
- pērāgo**, ěre, ēgi, actum, *to accomplish*, *finish*, *end*, *carry through*, *complete*. 4.
- perangustus**, a, um, adj., *very narrow*. vii. 15.
- percipio**, ěre, cēpi, ceptum, (per + cāpio), *to acquire*, *obtain*; *to learn*, *perceive*, *hear of*. 4.
- percontātio**, ōnis, f., *injury*. i. 39, v. 13.
- percunctātio**. See percontātio.
- percurro**, ěre, cūcurri or curri, cursum, *to traverse*; *to run through and over*. iv. 33.
- percūtio**, ěre, cussi, cussum, (per + quātio), *to smite*, *kill*, *slay*. v. 44.
- perdisco**, ěre, dīdīci, —, *to learn by heart*, *learn thoroughly*. vi. 14.
- perditus**, a, um, partic. adj., (perdo), *profligate*, *abandoned*. iii. 17, vii. 4.
- perdo**, ěre, dīdi, dītum, (per + do), *to destroy*, *lose*, *ruin*. iii. 17, vii. 4.
- perdūco**, ěre, xi, ctum, *to convey through*, *bring*, *lead*; *to persuade*; *to promote*, *advance*; *to protract*, *prolong*. 13.
- pērendinus**, a, um, adj., *after to-morrow*. v. 30.
- pēreo**, ěre, īvi or ii, ětum, *to die*, *be lost*, *perish*. 4.
- pērēquito**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to ride around*, *ride through*. iv. 33, vii. 66.
- pērēxiguus**, a, um, adj., *very little*, *small*. v. 15.
- perfacilis**, e, adj., *very easy*. i. 2, 3, vii. 64.
- perfero**, ferre, tūli, lātum, *to bear or carry through*; *to convey*, *bring*; *to suffer*, *support*, *undergo*; *to bring news*, *report*. 20.
- perficio**, ěre, fēci, fectum, (per + fācio), *to accomplish*, *perform*, *finish*, *complete*, *cause*. 14.
- perfidia**, ae, f., *treachery*, *perfidy*. 6.
- perfringo**, ěre, frēgi, fractum, (per + frango), *to burst through*, *break through*, *rout*, *shatter*; *to infringe*, *violate*. i. 25, vii. 85.
- perfuga**, ae, m., a *deserter*. 6.
- perfugio**, ěre, fūgi, fūgitum, *to flee for succor*, *take refuge*; *to desert*. i. 27, v. 45.
- perfugium**, i, n., a *shelter*, *refuge*. iv. 38.
- pergo**, ěre, perrexi, perrectum, (per + rēgo), *to continue*, *go on*, *proceed*. iii. 18.
- pēriclitor**, āri, ātus, dep., (pericūlum), *to prove*, *try*, *essay*; *to be in danger*, *risk*, *hazard*. ii. 8, vi. 34, vii. 56.
- pēriculōsus**, a, um, adj., *perilous*, *hazardous*. i. 33, vii. 8.
- pēricūlum**, i, n., *experiment*, *trial*; *peril*, *hazard*, *danger*, *risk*. 55.
- pēritus**, a, um, adj., *acquainted with*, *experienced*, *skilled*. i. 21, iii. 21, vii. 83.
- perlātus**, a, um. See perfero.
- perlēgo**, ěre, lēgi, lectum, *to read through*. v. 48.
- perluo**, ěre, ui, ūtum, *to wash*, *bathe*. vi. 21.
- permagnus**, a, um, adj., *very great*. vii. 31.
- permaneo**, ěre, mansi, mansum, *to continue*, *remain*; *to hold out*, *persist*, *endure*. 10.

- permisceo, ēre, cui, istum or ixtum, to mingle, mix together, blend, confuse. vii. 62.
- permitto, ěre, mīsi, missum, to send through; to entrust, commit, allow, grant, suffer, permit. 10.
- permixus, a, um. See permisceo.
- permōveo, ěre, mōvi, mōtum, to move through, stir up well; to influence, induce: to arouse, excite. 16.
- permulceo, ěre, si, sum or ctum, to appease, allay, soothe. iv. 6.
- pernīcies, ēi, f., (perněco), ruin, destruction, disaster. i. 20, 36.
- perpauci, ae, a, adj., very few. 7.
- perpendīculum, i, n., (per + pendo), a plumb-line, plummet. iv. 17.
- perpětor, i, pessus, dep., (per + pātor), to suffer patiently, bear, endure. vii. 10.
- perpětuo, adv., perpetually, continuously, i. 31, vii. 41.
- perpětuus, a, um, adj., (per + pěto), uninterrupted, continuous, perpetual. 16.
- perquīro, ěre, sīvi, sītum, (per + quaero), to search for, ask, inquire; to investigate. vi. 9.
- perrumpo, ěre, rūpi, ruptum, to break through, burst through, enter forcibly. 8.
- perscribo, ěre, psi, ptum, to describe, record, write out. v. 47, 49.
- persequor, i, cūtus, dep., to pursue, press upon, follow, avenge, revenge; to accomplish, perform. 7.
- persĕvĕro, āre, āvi, ātum, to continue, persevere, persist. i. 13, v. 36.
- persolvo, ěre, solvi, solūtum, to discharge, release; to pay completely, pay; poenas persolvere, to suffer punishment. i. 12.
- perspicio, ěre, spexi, spectrum, (per + specio), to see through, look through, observe, perceive, examine, view. 24.
- persto, āre, stiti, stātum, to persist, stand fast, continue, persevere. vii. 26.
- persuādeo, ěre, si, sum, to convince, persuade. 20.
- perterreo, ěre, ui, ětum, to terrify, frighten greatly. 33.
- pertrīnācia, ae, f., obstinacy, perversity, stubbornness, pertinacity. i. 42, v. 31.
- pertrīneo, ěre, ui, —, (per + trīneo), to extend, stretch out; to belong, pertain; to tend. 22.
- pertrīli. See perfĕro.
- pertrubātio, ōnis, f., confusion, disturbance, trouble. iv. 29.
- pertrubo, āre, āvi, ātum, to disturb greatly, confuse, trouble, embroil, embarrass. 19.
- pervāgor, āri, ātus, dep., to rove about, wander about. vii. 9.
- pervĕnio, ire, vĕni, ventum, to come to, arrive at, reach, come, arrive. 58.
- pes, pĕdis, m., a foot, step; pedem referre, to draw back, retire. 44.
- pĕto, ěre, ěvi or ii, ětum, request, seek; to attack, assail; to covet; to repair to, travel to. 66.
- phalanx, űgis, f., a phalanx. 4.
- piĕtas, ātis, f., dutiful conduct, piety, devotion, performance of duty. v. 27.
- pīlum, i, n., dart, javelin. 11
- pīlus, i, m., a company of the triarii; a company of soldiers armed with the pilum. iii. 5, v. 35, vi. 38.
- pinna, ae, f., a feather; parapet, pinnacle. v. 40, vii. 72.
- piscis, is, m., a fish. iv. 10.
- pīx, pīcis, f., pitch. vii. 22, 24, 25.
- plāceo, ěre, ui, ětum, to be agreeable, please, satisfy, soothe, calm. 7.
- plācīde, adv., quietly, calmly, mildly, gently. vi. 8.
- plāco, āre, āvi, ātum, to calm, reconcile, appease. vi. 16.
- plāne, adv., clearly, plainly, distinctly, quite, entirely. iii. 26, vi. 43.
- planities. See planities.
- plānitīes, ēi, f., a plain; a flat surface, level ground. 9.

- plānus, a, um, adj., *level, plain, even, smooth.* iii 13, iv 23.
- plēbes, ēi, f., and plebs, plēbis, f., *plebeians, the common people, populace.* 9.
- plēne, adv., *entirely, fully.* iii 3.
- plēnus, a, um, adj., *full, entire, complete.* iii 2, iv 29, vii 76.
- plērumque, adv., *generally, commonly.* 15.
- plērusque, āque, umque, adj., *the most, most; pl., very many, most* 7.
- plumbum, i, n., *lead; plumbum album, tin.* v 12.
- plūrimum, adv., (sup. of multum), *most of all, especially, exceedingly.* 11.
- plurimus, a, um, adj., (sup. of multus), *most, very much; pl., very many, most.* 8.
- plūs, adv., (comp. of multum), *more:* 8.
- plūs, plūris, adj., (comp. of multus), *more; plūres, more, many, several.* 16.
- plūteus, i, m., *a parapet, breastwork.* vii 25, 41, 72.
- pōcūlum, i, n., *goblet, cup.* vi 28.
- poena, ae, f., *atonement, satisfaction, punishment, penalty.* 10.
- pollex, icis, m., *the thumb.* iii 13.
- polliceor, ēri, itus, dep., *to promise; to offer one's self for.* 26.
- pollicitatio, ōnis, f., *a promise.* 5.
- pondus, ēris, n., *a burden, weight, load, heaviness.* 4.
- pōno, ēre, pōsui, pōsitum, *to place, set; to build, erect; to lay aside, regard; to station, post.* 43.
- pons, tis, m., *a bridge.* 32.
- pōposci. See posco.
- populatio, ōnis, f., (pōpūlor), *a laying waste, ravaging, depopulating, plundering.* i 15.
- pōpūlor, āri, ātus, dep., (populus), *to lay waste, ravage, pillage, spoil, plunder.* 5.
- pōpūlus, i, m., *a nation, people.* 82.
- porrectus, a, um. See porriġo.
- porriġo, ěre, rexi, rectum, (pro + rego), *to stretch, spread out, extend; hold out, offer.* ii 19.
- porro, adv., *farther on, forward, besides.* v 27.
- porta, ae, f., *a gate.* 34.
- porto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to convey, carry, conduct, bear.* 5.
- portōrium, i, n., (porto), *a duty, tax, impost.* i 18, iii 1.
- portus, ūs, m., *a harbor, port; asylum, shelter.* 16.
- posco, ěre, pōposci, —, *to ask for, demand, call for.* 5.
- positus, a, um. See pono.
- possessio, ōnis, f., *a property, possession, estate.* 4.
- possideo, ěre, sēdi, sessum, *to hold, occupy, own, possess.* 4.
- possum, posse, pōtui, irr., (pōtis + sum), *to be able; to have power, avail, have influence; plurimum posse, to be very powerful* 306
- post, adv., and prep. with the acc., *behind, since, after, below, beneath.* 41.
- postea, adv., *afterwards.* 12.
- postea quam, adv., *after.* 9.
- posterus, a, um, adj., *coming after, following, next, ensuing; posteri, ōrum, m. pl., descendants, posterity; comp. posterior, sup. postrēmus and postūmus.* 29.
- postpōno, ěre, pōsui, pōsitum, *to value less; to postpone, neglect, disregard.* v 7, vi 3.
- postquam, conj., *after, after that, as soon as.* 8.
- postrēmo, adv., *finally, at last.* 4.
- postrēmus, a, um, adj., (sup. of postērus), *the last, latest, hindmost.*
- postridie, adv., *the day after, on the following day.* 7.
- postulātum, i, n., (postūlo), *a request, demand.* 4.
- postūlo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to require, demand, ask, beg.* 21.



- pōtens**, tis, adj., (**possum**), *able, powerful, strong; rich.* 9.
- pōtentātus**, ūs, m., *dominion, power, rule.* i. 31.
- pōtentia**, ae, f., *power.* 7.
- pōtestas**, ātis, f., *power, ability; virtue, efficacy; rule, empire, dominion.* 27.
- pōtior**, īri, ītus, dep., (**pōtis**), *to become master of; to gain, acquire, take, obtain.* 15.
- pōtius**, comp. adv., *sooner, rather; sup. pōtissime and pōtissimum.* 6.
- prae**, prep. with the ablat., *for, through, by reason of, on account of.* ii. 30, vii. 44.
- praeācūtus**, a, um, adj., *pointed, sharpened, made sharp.* 6.
- praebeo**, ēre, ui, Itum, (**prae + habeo**), *to offer, afford, furnish; to present; to exhibit, show.* 5.
- praeceāveo**, ēre, cāvi, cautum, *to take precaution, be on one's guard against.* i. 38.
- praeceōdo**, ēre, cessi, cessum, *to go before, precede; to surpass, excel, be superior to.* i. 1.
- praeceps**, cīpītis, adj., (**prae + caput**), *rapid, headlong, hasty; sudden, steep, precipitous.* ii. 24, iv. 33, v. 17.
- praeceptum**, i, n., *direction, instruction; precept, counsel.* 5.
- praeceptio**, ēre, cēpi, ceptum, (**prae + cāpio**), *to anticipate; to order, instruct, direct.* 8.
- praecepto**, āre, āvi, ātum, (**praeceps**), *to precipitate, plunge, throw headlong.* iv. 15, vii. 50.
- praeceptue**, adv., *particularly, especially.* i. 40, vii. 40.
- praeceptuus**, a, um, adj., *especial, particular, peculiar, remarkable.* v. 54.
- praeclūdo**, ēre, si, sum, *to hinder, shut up, close.* v. 9.
- praeco**, ōnis, m., *a herald,* v. 51.
- praecurro**, ēre, cūcurri or curri, cursum, *to precede, run before; to surpass, excel, outstrip.* vi. 39, vii. 9, 37.
- praeda**, ae, f., *booty, plunder, spoil, prey.* 19.
- praedīco**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to publish, declare, report, assert.* 4.
- praedor**, āri, ātus, dep., *to pillage, ravage, spoil, rob.* 7.
- praedūco**, ēre, xi, ctum, *to construct; to draw before.* vii. 46, 69.
- praefectus**, i, m., (**praeficio**), *a commander of cavalry; overseer.* 8.
- praefēro**, ferre, tūli, lātum, irr., *to prefer; to bear before.* ii. 27, v. 54.
- praeficio**, ēre, fēci, fectum, (**prae + fācio**), *to set over, preside over, delegate, depute, constitute.* 26.
- praefigo**, ēre, xi, xum, *to set up in front, fasten before.* v. 18.
- praefui.** See praesum.
- praemētuo**, ēre, ui, —, *to fear beforehand, fear.* vii. 49.
- praemitto**, ēre, mīsi, missum, *to send in advance; to dispatch.* 15.
- praemium**, i, n., *advantage, profit; recompense, reward.* 18.
- praecōcūpo**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to pre-occupy, seize beforehand.* vi. 41, vii. 26.
- praeopto**, āre, āvi, ātum, (**prae + opto**), *to choose rather, wish in preference.* i. 25.
- praepāro**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to provide, prepare.* 4.
- praepōno**, ēre, pōsui, pōsitum, *to appoint over, set over; to place first.* i. 54, vi. 40.
- praerumpo**, ēre, rūpi, ruptum, *to tear away, break off.* iii. 14, vi. 7, vii. 86.
- praeruptus**, a, um, partic. adj., (**praerumpo**), *steep, abrupt.* vi. 7, vii. 86.
- praescribo**, ēre, psi, ptum, *to write before; to order, appoint, dictate.* 4.
- praescriptum**, i, n., *direction, order, command.* i. 36.
- praesens**, tis, adj., *present, in person, at hand.* 8.
- praesentia**, ae, f., *the present, presence.* 5.

- praesentio, ĭre, sensi, sensum, to see beforehand, foresee, presage, foretell, foreknow. v. 54, vii. 30.
- praesēpio, ĭre, psi, ptum, to block up, barricade. vii. 77.
- praesertim, adv., particularly, especially. 11.
- praesĭdium, i, n., (prae + sēdeo), protection, defence; guard, reserve, escort; post, station. 64.
- praesto, āre, stĭti, stĭtum, to excel, surpass, be superior to; to afford, furnish; to exhibit, show. 16.
- praesto, adv., ready, present, at hand. v. 26.
- praesum, esse, fui, —, irr., to be over, rule over, have command over. 26.
- praeter, prep. with the acc., beyond, except, besides; against, contrary to. 15.
- praetĕreā, adv., moreover, besides. 11.
- praetĕreo, ĭre, ĭvi or ĭi, ĭtum, to pass or go by, pass over, neglect, omit, leave out. 4.
- praetĕrĭtus, a, um, partic. adj., (praetĕreo), past.
- praetermitto, ĕre, mĭsi, missum, to pass over, omit, neglect, let pass by. iv. 13, vi. 34, vii. 55.
- praeterquam, adv., besides, beyond, except. i. 5, vii. 77.
- praetor, ōris, m., a praetor, leader, chief, commander, magistrate. i. 21.
- praetōrius, a, um, adj., befitting a praetor, praetorian, belonging to a general. i. 40, 42.
- praeuro, ĕre, ussi, ustum, to burn at the end. v. 40, vii. 22, 73.
- praevertĕ, ĕre, ti, sum, to prevent; to prefer; to get the start of, anticipate. vii. 33.
- prāvus, a, um, adj., crooked, distorted; bad, wrong, depraved, wicked. vii. 39.
- prĕces. See prex.
- prĕhendo or prendo, ĕre, di, sum, to lay hold of, seize, grasp. i. 20.
- prĕmo, ĕre, pressi, pressum, to press upon, press, strain, harass, pursue, urge 24.
- prendo. See prĕhendo.
- prĕtĭum, i, n., value, worth, price. i. 18, iv. 2.
- prex, prĕcis, f., an entreaty, prayer; imprecation. 8.
- pridie, adv., on the day before. 5.
- primo, adv., at first. 12.
- prĭmipĭlus, m., (primus + pilus), the chief centurion. 4.
- prĭmum, adv., first, in the beginning; quam primum, as soon as possible; cum primum, as soon as. 22.
- prĭmus, a, um, adj., (sup. of prior), first, foremost, principal, excellent, illustrious; in the van, in front. 62.
- princeps, ĭpis, adj., (primus + cāpio), foremost, the first. 11.
- principes, rulers, chiefs, leaders. 39.
- prĭncĭpātus, ūs, m., pre-eminence, sovereignty, rule, dominion. 11.
- prior, us, gen. ōris, adj., first, former, previous, foremost. 4.
- prĭstĭnus, a, um, adj., old, former, ancient, original. 9.
- prĭus, adv., sooner, before. vii. 47.
- prĭusquam, adv., before. 30.
- prĭvātĭm, adv., privately, in private. i. 17, v. 3, 55.
- prĭvātus, a, um, adj., private. 8.
- prĭvātus, i, m., a private citizen. 4.
- pro, prep. with the ablat., before, in front of, right opposite to; on, in; according to, for; in place of, instead of, as. 79.
- prŏbo, āre, āvi, ātum, to approve, be satisfied; to examine, try; to prove, show, demonstrate. 16.
- procĕdo, ĕre, cessi, cessum, to advance, proceed, go forth. 15.
- prŏclĭno, āre, āvi, ātum, to bend forward, incline. vii. 42.
- prŏconsul, ūlis, m., a proconsul. iii. 20, vi. 1.
- prŏcul, adv., far, far off, at a distance. 11.

- procumbo**, ěre, cūbui, cūbitum, *to fall forward, fall down, lean.* 5.
- prōcūro**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to take care of, attend to, look after.* vi. 13.
- prōcurro**, ěre, cūcurri or curri, cursum, *to rush forward, run forth* 5.
- prōdeo**, ěre, İvi or İi, İtum, *to advance, proceed, come forth, go out.* 4.
- proditio**, ōnis, f., *treachery; discovery.* 4.
- prōdītor**, ōris, m., *a traitor.* vi. 23.
- prōdo**, ěre, dīdi, dītum, *to give or bring forth, divulge, disclose, manifest; to report, relate, hand down; to betray, abandon.* 7.
- prōdūco**, ěre, xi, ctum, *to lead forth, bring out; to draw out, lengthen, prolong.* 14.
- proelior**, āri, ātus, dep., *to combat, contend, fight.* 6.
- proelium**, i, n., *a battle.* 121.
- prōfectio**, ōnis, f., *a departure.* 10.
- prōfectus**, a, um. See **prōficio**.
- prōfectus**, a, um. See **prōfiscor**.
- prōfĕro**, ferre, tūli, lātum, *to bring forth, say, produce; to defer, put off; to enlarge, prolong.* vii. 48, 82, 84.
- prōficio**, ěre, fĕci, fectum, (pro + fĕcio), *to advance, gain ground; to obtain, effect, accomplish, bring about.* 7.
- prōfiscor**, i, fectus, dep., *to set out, go, travel, march, depart, proceed.* 79.
- prōfīteor**, ēri, fessus, dep., (pro + fĕteor), *to declare publicly, acknowledge, confess, avow; to promise.* 4.
- prōfīgo**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to throw or dash down; to overthrow, conquer, overcome, destroy.* ii. 23, vii. 13.
- prōfluo**, ěre, xi, xum, *to issue, flow forth.* iv. 10.
- prōfūgio**, ěre, fūgi, fūgītum, *to flee, flee from; to escape; to flee for refuge.* 12.
- prōfui**. See **prōsum**.
- prōgnātus**, a, um, adj., *deseended, sprung from, born.* ii. 29, vi. 18.
- prōgrĕdior**, i, gressus, (pro + grĕdior), *to go forth, advance, proceed.* 27.
- prōhĕbo**, ěre, ui, ĩtum, (pro + hĕbeo), *to hold back, keep in check, restrain, hinder, keep from; to preserve, keep, defend.* 43.
- prōicio**, ere, iĕci, iectum, (pro + iĕcio), *to cast forth or forward; to throw away, fling down; to resign, renounce, reject; to abandon, forsake, neglect.* 10.
- prōinde**, adv., *therefore, then, hence.* 4.
- prōlātus**, a, um. See **prōfĕro**.
- prōmĕneo**, ěre, ui, —, *to stand or jut out, overhang, project.* vii. 47.
- prōmiscue**, adv., *promiscuously.* vi. 21.
- prōmitto**, ěre, mĕsi, missum, *to promise; to let down.* v. 14.
- prōmontōrium**, i, n., (pro + mons), *a headland, promontory.* iii. 12.
- prōmōveo**, ěre, mōvi, mōtum, *to move forwards, advance, push away.* 4.
- promptus**, a, um, adj., *quick, active, prompt.* iii. 19.
- prōne**, adv., *in an inclined position, leaning forward.* iv. 17.
- prōnuntio**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to make known publicly, announce, proclaim, report, tell, narrate.* 15.
- prōpe**, prep. with the acc. and adv., *near.* 23.
- prōpello**, ěre, pūli, pulsum, *to drive or push forward, propel, impel, urge on; to put to flight, rout.* 4.
- prōpĕro**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to make haste, hasten, be quick.* ii. 11, 35; v. 33.
- prōpinqūitas**, ātis, f., *nearness, proximity; relationship.* 7.
- prōpinquus**, a, um, adj., *neighboring, near, not far off, related; prōpinquus, i, m., a kinsman, relative.* 18.
- prōpior**, ius, gen. ōris, comp. adj., *nearer; sup. proximus.* 12.
- prōpōno**, ěre, pōsui, pōsitum, *to put, place or set forth; to present, expose; to explain, represent; to make known, declare, say, relate.* 17.

- proprius, a, um, adj., *one's own, peculiar, special, particular.* vi. 22, 23.
- propter, prep. with the acc., *by reason of; on account of; for, because of.* 58.
- propterea, conj., *therefore, on that account.* 20.
- prōpugnātor, ōris, m., *a defender.* vii. 25.
- prōpugno, āre, āvi, ātum, *to go forth to fight; to defend; to make sorties; to defend one's self.* ii. 7, v. 9, vii. 86.
- prōpūli. See prōpello.
- prōpulso, āre, āvi, ātum, *to repel, repulse, drive back.* i. 49, vi. 15.
- prōra, ae, f., *the prow.* iii. 13.
- prōruo, ěre, ui, ūtum, *to demolish, pull down.* iii. 26.
- prōsēquor, i, cūtus, dep., *to follow, accompany; to pursue, attack, assail.* 4.
- prospectus, ūs, m., *a sight, view, prospect.* ii. 22, v. 10, vii. 81.
- prospicio, ěre, spexi, spectrum, (pro + spēcio), *to look forward; to take care of, provide for.* i. 23, v. 7, vii. 50.
- prosterno, ěre, strāvi, strātum, *to throw down, prostrate, overthrow.* vii. 77.
- prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui, —, *to be of use, do good; to benefit, profit; to avail; to conduce.* vi. 40.
- prōtēgo, ěre, xi, ctum, *to shelter, protect, defend.* v. 44.
- prōterreo, ěre, ui, itum, *to frighten away, terrify.* v. 58, vii. 81.
- prōtinus, adv., *right on; continually, constantly; immediately, instantly.* 5.
- prōturbo, āre, āvi, ātum, *repel, repulse, drive off.* ii. 19, vii. 81.
- prōvĕho, ěre, vexi, vectum, *to carry forwards, convey away; to drive away; provehor* as dep., *to sail, ride, drive.* iii. 28, v. 8.
- prōvĕnio, ěre, vĕni, ventum, *to appear, come forth; to turn out.* v. 24.
- prōventus, ūs, m., *a fortunate issue; coming forth; success; result.* vii. 29, 80.
- prōvĕdo, ěre, vĕdi, vĕsum, *to see before; to discern; to look out for, take care of; to foresee.* 19.
- prōvincia, ae, f., *a province.* 47.
- prōvinciālis, e, adj., *provincial, of a province.* vii. 7.
- prōvōlo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to fly forth, hasten forth, rush out.* ii. 19.
- proxīme, adv., *last, lately.* 6.
- proxīmus, a, um, adj., (sup. of prōpior), *next, nearest, last.* 47.
- prudentia, ae, f., *foresight, wisdom, prudence, discretion.* ii. 4.
- pūbes and pūber, ěris, adj., *adult, grown up.* pūbĕres, um, m. pl., *adults, men* v. 56.
- publice, adv., *publicly; by the state, in the name of the state.* 6.
- publico, āre, āvi, ātum, *to confiscate, make public property.* v. 56, vii. 43.
- publicus, a, um, adj., *public, common, of the state.* 27.
- pūdet, ěre, uit or pūditum est, impers., *to be ashamed; me pūdet, I am ashamed.* vii. 42.
- pūdor, ōris, m., *modesty, shame; respect, regard; disgrace, ignominy.* i. 39, 40.
- puer, ěri, m., *a boy.* 5.
- puerilis, e, adj., *boyish, childish, youthful.* vi. 18.
- pugna, ae, f., *fight, battle.* 34.
- pugno, āre, āvi, ātum, *to combat, contend, fight.* 58.
- pulcher, chra, chrum, adj., *fair, beautiful; noble, glorious.* vii. 15, 77.
- pulsus, a, um. See pello.
- pulsus, ūs, m., *a stroke.* iii. 13.
- pulvis, ěris, m., *dust.* iv. 32.
- puppis, is, f., *the stern.* iii. 13, 14.
- purgo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to cleanse, make clean; to excuse, exculpate, clear.* 4.
- pūto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to suppose, think; to count; to hold; to judge, decide.* 20.
- Pyrĕnaeus, a, um, adj., *Pyrenean.* i. 1.

## Q.

- quā, adv., *in which place; where, wherever; how; on which side.* 9.
- quādrāgēni, ae, a, dist. num. adj., *forty each.* iv. 17, vii. 23.
- quādrāginta, num. adj., *forty.* 5.
- quādringenti, ae, a, num. adj., *four hundred.* i. 5, v. 46, vii. 72.
- quaero, ĕre, sīvi, sītum, *to seek, search for; to get, procure, obtain; to need, ask, require; to investigate, examine into.* 15.
- quaestio, ōnis, f., *inquiry, investigation, examination; question; trial.* 5.
- quaestor, ōris, m., *a quaestor.* 8.
- quaestus, ūs, m., (quaero), *profit, gain, acquisition.* vi. 17.
- quālis, e, adj., *of what nature, of what sort, what; as, such as.* i. 21 (twice).
- quam, adv. and conj., *how, how much, in what manner; as, than; with sup., as possible; quam maximus, as large as possible.* 113.
- quamdiu, adv., *as long as, how long.* i. 17.
- quamobrem, conj., *wherefore.* 8.
- quamvis, adv., *as much as you will; as you will; however, although, though, very.* iv. 2.
- quando, adv., *when; si quando, if ever.* iii. 12.
- quantōpĕre, adv., (quantus + opus), *how much, how greatly.* ii. 5, vii. 52.
- quantus, a, um, adj., *how great, how much, so much; quanto — tanto, the — the.* 40.
- quantusvis, tāvis, tumvis, adj., *as much as you will; however much, however great; any.* v. 28.
- quāre, conj., *wherefore, why.* 8.
- quartus, a, um, num. adj., *fourth.* 13.
- quāsi, conj., *as if, as it were, just as if; nearly.* vii. 38.
- quātuor, num. adj., *four.* 20.
- quĕ, conj., *and; que — que, or que — et, both — and.* 892.
- quemadmōdum, adv., *after the manner of, just as, how, as.* See quis and modus.
- quĕror, i, questus, dep., *to lament, complain of, bewail.* 10.
- quī, quae, quod, rel. and adj. pron., *who, which, what, that.* 1214.
- quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, indef. pron., *whoever, whatever, whosoever; all that, every, all.* 12.
- quīdam, quaedam, quoddam and quiddam, indef. pron., *a certain one, some one, some, something, somebody.* <sup>10</sup> 7.
- quīdem, adv., *truly, indeed, at least, assuredly, in truth; ne — quidem, not even.* 43.
- quies, ĕtis, f., *quiet, rest, repose.* 5.
- quiĕtus, a, um, adj., *at rest, calm, quiet, peaceful.* 4.
- quīn, conj., (qui + ne), *but that; that not; that, but; quin etiam, moreover, nay even.* 25.
- quīnam, quaenam, quodnam, interrog. adj. pron., *who? which? what? nam has the force of pray.* ii. 30, v. 44.
- quincunx, uncis, m., (quinque + uncia, a twelfth), *five twelfths; the five spots on dice; in quincuncem, after the manner of these spots, — ∴.* vii. 73.
- quindĕcim, num. adj., *fifteen.* 8.
- quīnĕtiam. See quin.
- quingenti, ae, a, num. adj., (quinque + centum), *five hundred.* 5.
- quīni, ae, a, dist. num. adj., *five each, five.* 4.
- quīnquāginta, num. adj., *fifty.* 6.
- quinque, num. adj., *five.* 10.
- quintus, a, um, num. adj., *fifth.* 4.
- quis, quae, quid, interrog. pron., *who? which? what? quid, adv., why? how? indef. pron., any one, one: somebody, something.* After ne, si, nisi, the fem. sing. is qua, as nequa, etc. 158.

quisnam, quanam, quidnam, interrog. pron., *who, pray? which, pray? what, pray?* The *nam* has the force of *pray*. See *quinam*.

quispiam, quaequam, quodpiam or quidpiam, or quippiam, indef. pron., *some, any; some one, any one; something, anything*. v. 35, vi. 17.

quisquam, quaequam, quidquam or quicquam, indef. pron., *some, any, any one, anything*. 26.

quisque, quaeque, quodque or quidque, or quicque, indef. pron., *each, every, every one, all, everything*. 45.

quisvis, quaequae, quodquod or quicquid, or quicquid, indef. pron., *whichever, whatever, each, all*. ii. 17, vii. 46.

quisvis, quaevis, quodvis or quidvis, indef. pron., *any one you please; every one, any one; whoever; anything*. ii. 31, iii. 13, iv. 2.

quō, adv. and conj.; as adv., old dat. of *qui*, *whither, where; to what place*; after *si*, *to any place, anywhere*. *quo* as a conj. is the ablat. of *qui*, *that, in order that* (usually with comparatives). 42.

quoad, adv., *as long as, as far as; till, until*. 4.

quod, conj., *because, that, in that, in so far as; quodsi, and if, but if*. 299.

quōmīnus, conj., (see *quō*), *that not, so that not*. iv. 22, vii. 19.

quōniam, conj., *because, since*. 15.

quōque, conj., *too, also*. 10.

quōqueversus, adv., *in every direction*. iii. 23.

quōt, indecl. adj., *as, as many as; how many*. vii. 19.

quōtannis, adv., (*quot + annus*), *yearly, every year*. 4.

quōtidiānus, a, um, adj., *every day, daily; usual*. 8.

quōtidie, adv., *every day, daily*. 11.

quōtīens, adv., *as often as; how often*. i. 43, v. 34.

## R.

rādix, ūcis, f., *a root; the base of a mountain*. 5.

rādo, ěre, rāsi, rāsum, *to smooth, scrape, shave*. v. 14.

rāmus, i, m., *a bough, branch*. 4.

rāpīditas, ātis, f., *velocity, swiftness, rapidity*. iv. 17.

rāpīna, ae, f., (*rāpio*); *robbery, rapine, plundering*. i. 15.

rārus, a, um, adj., *far apart, scattered, thin, scanty, dispersed; single; few*. 6.

rātio, ōnis, f., *account, calculation, reckoning, computation; transaction, affair; regard, respect, concern, care, consideration; judgment, understanding, reason; method, manner, fashion; motive*. 41.

rātis, is, f., *a raft*, i. 8, 12; vi. 35.

rēbellio, ōnis, f., *a rebellion, revolt*. iii. 10, iv. 30, 38.

rēcēdo, ěre, cessi, cessum, *to retreat, withdraw, depart, retire*. v. 43.

rēcens, tis, adj., *recent, fresh, new, vigorous*. 9.

rēcenseo, ěre, ui, ĩtum or sum, *to reckon up, enumerate, review, count over*. vii. 76.

rēceptacūlum, i, n., *a shelter; a receptacle; a lurking place*. vii. 14.

rēceptus, a, um. See *rēcĭpio*.

rēceptus, ūs, m., *a retreat, shelter, refuge*. iv. 33, vi. 9, vii. 47.

rēcessus, ūs, m., *a retreat*. v. 43.

rēcĭdo, ěre, cĭdi, cāsum, (*re + cādo*), *to fall back, recoil; to occur, happen; to fall upon, light upon*. vii. 1.

rēcĭpio, ěre, cĕpi, ceptum, (*re + cāpio*), *to receive, take back; to recover, get again; to take, capture; to engage, undertake; se recipere, to withdraw, betake one's self*. 76.

rēcĭto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to read aloud*. v. 48.

rēcĭno, āre, āvi, ātum, *to lean backwards, recline*. vi. 27 (twice).

- recte, adv., *in a straight line; correctly, well.* vii. 6, 80.
- rectus, a, um, adj., *direct, exact, straight.* vi. 25, vii. 23, 46.
- rēcūpĕro, āre, āvi, ātum, (re + cāpio), *to recover, regain.* v. 27, vii. 1, 76.
- rēcūso, āre, āvi, ātum, (re + causa), *to object, refuse, decline, reject.* 9.
- rēda, ae, f., *a wagon.* i. 51, vi. 30.
- redactus, a, um. See rēdīgo.
- reddo, ěre, dīdi, dītum, *to give back, return, restore; to yield, give up, surrender; to grant; to cause!* 11.
- rēdemptus, a, um. See rēdīmo.
- rēdeo, ěre, ěvi or ii, ětum, *to return, come back; to be redaced; to descend.* 10.
- rēdīgo, ěre, ěgi, actum, (re + āgo), *to drive or bring back; to render; to reduce, diminish; to make, compel, force.* 10.
- rēdīmo, ěre, ěmi, emptum, (re + emo), *to buy back; to release, redeem, ransom; to hire, procure, farm, acquire, purchase.* i. 18, 37, 44.
- rēdintegro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to restore, renew, revive, recruit.* 9.
- rēdītio, ōnis, f., *a return.* i. 5.
- rēdītus, ūs, m., *a return.* iv. 30, vi. 29, 36.
- rēdūco, ěre, xi, ctum, *to bring or conduct back, remove, draw back, withdraw.* 28.
- rĕfĕro, ferre, tūli, lātum, *to carry, bring, draw, or give back; referre pedem, to retreat.* 16.
- rĕfcio, ěre, fĕci, fectum, *to make anew, repair, restore, rebuild; to refresh, reinvigorate, reassure, recruit.* 11.
- rĕfringo, ěre, frĕgi, fractum (re + frango), *to break, break open; to destroy; to repress.* ii. 33, vii. 56.
- rĕfūgio, ěre, fūgi, fūgītum, *to escape, flee away; to retreat, flee back.* v. 35, vii. 31.
- rĕgio, ōnis, f., (rego), *course, direction; territory, region; e regione, opposite.* 41.
- rĕgius, a, um, adj., (rex), *kingly, royal, regal.* vii. 32.
- regno, āre, āvi, ātum, *to rule, reign, govern.* v. 25.
- regnum, i, n., *dominion, sovereignty; kingdom; royal power.* 19.
- rĕgo, ěre, xi, ctum, *to govern, rule, direct, conduct.* iii. 13, vi. 17.
- rĕgrĕdior, i, gressus, dep., (re + grādior), *to return.* v. 44.
- reicio, ěre, iĕci, iectum, (re + iācio), *to hurl back, drive back, repel; to fling down, cast off, reject.* 6.
- rĕlinguesco, ěre, gui, —, *to grow weak, languid; to become enfeebled.* ii. 15.
- rĕlātus, a, um. See rĕfĕro.
- rĕlēgo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to remove, send away.* v. 30.
- rĕlictus, a, um. See rĕlinquo.
- rĕlīgio, ōnis, f., *piety, religion, plighted faith; religious rites; superstition.* 5.
- relinquo, ěre, liqui, licium, (re + linquo), *to leave behind, abandon, leave.* 78.
- rĕlīquus, a, um, adj., *remaining, the rest of; future, to come; rĕlīquum, i, n., the rest, remainder.* 173.
- rĕmāneo, ěre, mansi, mansum, *to continue, remain, last, endure.* 10.
- rĕmex, Igis, m., *a rower.* iii. 9.
- rĕmīgo, āre, āvi, ātum, (remus + āgo), *to row.* v. 8.
- rĕmīgro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to return, remove back.* iv. 4, 27.
- rĕmīniscor, i, —, dep., *to remember.* i. 13.
- rĕmissus, a, um, partic. adj., (remitto), *remiss, relaxed, loose, slack.* v. 12.
- remitto, ěre, misi, missum, *to hurl back, send back; to abate, slacken, relax, relieve.* 16.
- rĕmollesco, ěre, —, —, *to become enervated.* iv. 2.

**rēmōtus**, a, um, partic. adj., (rēmōveo), *distant, remote.* 4.  
**rēmōveo**, ěre, mōvi, mōtum, *to withdraw, remove, take away.* 8.  
**rēmūnĕror**, āri, ātus, dep., *to reward, remunerate.* i. 44.  
**rĕmus**, i, m., *an oar.* 8.  
**rĕno**, ōnis, m., *a reindeer.* vi. 21.  
**rĕnōvo**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to review, renew.* iii. 2, 20.  
**rĕnuntio**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to bring back word; to announce, report.* 9.  
**rĕpello**, ěre, pūli, pulsum, *to repel, repulse, drive back.* 10.  
**rĕpente**, adv., *suddenly.* 5.  
**repentīnō**, adv., *suddenly.* ii. 33.  
**rĕpentīnus**, a, um, adj., *unexpected, sudden.* 14.  
**rĕpĕrio**, ěre, pĕri, pertum, *to discover, ascertain, find; to devise, invent.* 27.  
**rĕpĕto**, ěre, ěvi, ětum, *to claim, demand.* i. 30, 31.  
**rĕpleo**, ěre, ěvi, ětum, *to furnish, refill, supply.* vii. 56.  
**rĕporto**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to carry or bring back, convey.* iv. 29, v. 23.  
**rĕposco**, ěre, —, —, *to exact, demand back.* v. 30.  
**rĕpraesento**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to perform immediately, do.* i. 40.  
**rĕprĕhendo**, ěre, di, sum, *to censure, rebuke, reprove.* 4.  
**rĕprĕmo**, ěre, pressi, pressum, (re + prĕmo), *to restrain, check, prevent.* iii. 14, vii. 8.  
**rĕpūdio**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to refuse, reject, decline.* i. 40.  
**rĕpugno**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to oppose, fight against, disagree with, be contrary to, be inconsistent; to stand opposed.* i. 19, iii. 4, vii. 42.  
**rĕpūli**. See rĕpello.  
**rĕpulsus**, a, um. See rĕpello.  
**rĕquĕro**, ěre, sivi, sĕtum, (re + quaero), *to seek again; to seek after, search for;*

*to demand, require; to miss, look in vain for.* vi. 34, vii. 63.  
**rĕs**, rĕi, f., *a thing, affair, business, purpose, circumstance, event, fact.* 394.  
**rĕsarcio**, ěre, si, sartum, *to restore, repair.* vi. 1.  
**rescindo**, ěre, scĕdi, scissum, *to destroy, tear down.* 7.  
**rescisco**, ěre, ěvi or ii, ětum, *to learn, ascertain.* i. 28.  
**rescribo**, ěre, psi, ptum, *to write again, transfer.* i. 42.  
**rĕsĕrvo**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to retain, reserve, preserve.* 4.  
**rĕsĕdeo**, ěre, sĕdi, sessum, (re + sĕdeo), *to rest, remain, abide; to be left.* vii. 77.  
**resĕdo**, ěre, sĕdi, sessum, (re + sĕdo), *to settle, sit down, subside, grow calm.* vii. 64.  
**rĕsĕstens**, tis, partic. adj., (rĕsisto), *resolute, firm.* 4.  
**rĕsisto**, ěre, stĕti, stĕtum, *to halt, stop, stand still; to withstand, oppose; to continue, remain.* 21.  
**respĕcio**, ěre, spĕxi, spectum, (re + spĕcio), *to look back; to have a care for, be mindful of.* 4.  
**respondeo**, ěre, di, sum, *to reply, answer.* 16.  
**responsus**, i, n., *a reply, answer.* 4.  
**respublĕca**, rĕrepublĕcae, f., *the republic, commonwealth, state; the public affairs.* 15.  
**respuo**, ěre, ui, ūtum, *to spit out; to repel, reject, refuse.* i. 42.  
**restinguo**, ěre, nxi, ctum, *to quench, extinguish, put out.* vii. 24, 25.  
**restĕti**. See rĕsisto.  
**restituo**, ěre, ui, ūtum, (re + stĕtuo), *to replace, restore, reinstate; to deliver up, give up; to renew.* 7.  
**rĕtĕneo**, ěre, tĕnuĕi, tentum, (re + tĕneo), *to keep back, detain, retain; to hinder, restrain, check, keep, hold fast, maintain.* 18.



retráho, ěre, traxi, tractum, *to draw or bring back; to recover.* v. 7.

rĕtŭli. See rĕfĕro.

rĕvello, ěre, velli, vulsum, *to tear away, pluck away.* i. 52, vii. 73.

rĕverto, ěre, ti, sum, and rĕvertor, i, sus, dep., *to turn back, return.* 34.

rĕvincio, ěre, vinxi, vinctum, *to tie, fasten, bind.* 5.

rĕvŏco, āre, āvi, ātum, *to recall, call back.* 5.

rex, rĕgis, m., *a king.* 14.

rhĕda, ae, f., *a carriage.* See reda.

rhĕno, ōnis, m., *a reindeer.* See reno.

Rhĕnus, i, m., *the Rhine.* 62.

Rhodānus, i, m., *the Rhone.* 13.

rĭpa, ae, f., *the bank of a river.* 18.

rĭvus, i, m., *a brook, stream.* v. 49, 50.

rŏbur, ōris, n., *hard oak; strength, power.* iii. 13.

rŏgo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to ask, question; to request, solicit, inquire; rogare milites sacramento, to bind soldiers by an oath.* 9.

Rŏma, ae, f., *Rome.* i. 31, vi. 12, vii. 90.

Rŏmānus, a, um, adj., *Roman.* 172.

Rŏmānus, i, m., *a Roman.*

rostrum, i, n., *the beak or bill of a bird; the beak of a ship.* iii. 13, 14.

rŏta, ae, f., *a wheel.* i. 26, iv. 33.

rŭbus, i, m., *a bramble-bush, bramble.* ii. 17.

rŭmor, ōris, m., *report, rumor, talk.* 6.

rŭpes, is, f., *a rock or cliff.* ii. 29.

rursus, adv., *again, anew; back, backwards.* 24.

## S.

sācerdos, ōtis, m. and f., *a priest or priestess.* vii. 33.

sācrāmentum, i, n., *an oath.* vi. 1.

sācrificium, i, n., *a sacrifice.* 5.

saepe, adv., *often, frequently.* 12.

saepĕnŭmĕro, adv., *often, frequently, time and again.* 5.

saevio, ěre, ĭvi or ii, ĭtum, *to be cruel or fierce.* iii. 13.

sagitta, ae, f., *an arrow.* iv. 25, vii. 41, 81.

sāgittārius, i, m., *a bowman, archer.* 7.

sāgŭlum, i, n., *a small military cloak.* v. 42.

saltus, ūs, m., *a woodland pasture; a forest; a mountain-pass.* vi. 43, vii. 19.

sālus, ūtis, f., *security, safety; welfare, deliverance, prosperity.* 48.

sancio, ěre, nxi, ctum, *to render sacred or inviolable; to appoint, establish, decree, ordain.* i. 30, vi. 20, vii. 2.

sanctus, a, um, adj., (sancio), *holy, sacred, inviolable.* iii. 9, vi. 23, vii. 66.

sanguis, ĭnis, m., *blood.* vii. 20, 50.

sanitās, ātis, f., *health, soundness; good sense, discretion.* i. 42, vii. 42.

sāno, āre, āvi, ātum, *to cure, restore, heal, repair, allay; to obviate.* vii. 29.

sānus, a, um, adj., *sensible, sound, sober, discreet.* v. 7.

sanxi. See sancio.

sāpio, ěre, ĭvi or ii, —, *to understand, know.* v. 30.

sarcĭna, ae, f., *a pack, bundle, load; baggage.* 4.

sarmentum, i, n., *brushwood, twigs.* iii. 18.

sātis, adv., *sufficiently, enough.* 24.

sātisfācio, ěre, fĕci, factum, *to give satisfaction, satisfy, content; to apologize, ask pardon for.* 6.

sātisfactio, ōnis, f., *reparation, satisfaction, excuse, apology.* i. 41, vi. 9

sātus, a, um. See sĕro.

saucius, a, um, adj., *wounded.* iii. 4, v. 36.

saxum, i, n., *a rock, stone.* 7.

scāla, ae, f., *a scaling-ladder.* v. 43, vii. 81.

scāpha, ae, f., *a boat, skiff.* iv. 26.

scĕlĕrātus, a, um, adj., *accursed, impious, wicked, vicious.* vi. 13, 34.

scĕlus, ěris, n., *an evil deed; crime, guilt, sin.* i. 14.

- scienter**, adv., *expertly, skilfully*. vii. 22.  
**scientia**, ae, f., *skill, knowledge, science, experience*. 6.  
**scindo**, ěre, scīdi, scissum, *to cut, tear, rend, split, divide; to destroy, demolish, break down*. iii. 5, v. 51.  
**scio**, Īre, Īvi or Īi, Ītum, *to know, understand, perceive*. 12.  
**scorpio**, ōnis, m., *a scorpion, a military engine for throwing darts, stones, etc.* vii. 25 (twice).  
**scrībo**, ěre, Īpsi, Īptum, *to write*. 5.  
**scrōbis**, is, m. and f., *a ditch, pit, trench*. vii. 73 (twice), 82.  
**scūtum**, i, n., *a buckler, shield*. 10.  
**sēcius**, adv., (comp. of sēcus), *differently, less, otherwise*. 4.  
**sēcō**, āre, cui, ctum, *to cut off, cut down; to mow*. vii. 14.  
**sēcērēto**, adv., *apart, separately, secretly*. i. 18, 31.  
**sectio**, ōnis, f., *division, lot; spoils, booty*. ii. 33.  
**sector**, āri, ātus, dep., *to follow, pursue, hunt after, pursue eagerly*. vi. 35.  
**sectūra**, ae, f., *a digging, cutting*. iii. 21.  
**sēcundum**, prep. with acc., *along, after, near; according to; close to, next*. 4.  
**sēcundus**, a, um, adj., (sēcquor), *next, following; successful, prosperous, favorable*. 18.  
**sēcūris**, is, f., (sēcō), *an axe*. vii. 77.  
**sēcus**, adv., *otherwise, differently*. See **secius**.  
**sēcūtus**, a, um. See **sēcquor**.  
**sed**, conj., *but, now*. 101.  
**sēdĕcim**, num. adj., *sixteen*. i. 18, 49.  
**sēdes**, is, f., *a scat; a home, dwelling-place, habitation*. 5.  
**sēdītio**, ōnis, f., *insurrection, sedition, dissension, civil discord*. vii. 28.  
**sēdītīōsus**, a, um, adj., *turbulent, seditious, factious*. i. 17.  
**sĕges**, Ītis, f., *a cornfield; a crop*. vi. 36.  
**sĕmel**, num. adv., *once*. i. 31.  
**sementis**, is, f., *a sowing*. i. 3.  
**sēmīta**, ae, f., *a footpath, path*. v. 19, vii. 8.  
**semper**, adv., *ever, always*. 10.  
**sĕnātor**, ōris, m., *a senator*. ii. 28.  
**sĕnātus consultum**, i, n., *a decree of the senate*. i. 43.  
**sĕnex**, sĕnis, adj., *old, aged*. sĕnex, sĕnis, m., *an old man*. i. 29.  
**sĕni**, ae, a, dist. num. adj., *six each, six in six*. i. 15, vii. 75.  
**sententia**, ae, f., (sentio), *a purpose, intention, design; a judgment, decision, sentence; a resolution*. 18.  
**sentio**, Īre, sensi, sensum, *to discern by the senses; to be sensible of, perceive, discover, observe; to imagine, suppose*. 12.  
**sentis**, is, m., *a bramble, briar*. ii. 17.  
**sĕpārātīm**, adv., *apart, separately*. i. 19, 29; vii. 36.  
**sĕpārātus**, a, um, partic. adj., (sĕpāro), *distinct, separate*. iv. 1.  
**sĕpāro**, āre, āvi, ātum, *separate, divide*. iv. 1, vii. 63.  
**sĕpes**, is, f., *a hedge, fence*. ii. 17, 22.  
**septem**, num. adj., *seven*. iv. 23, v. 49.  
**septemtriōnes**, um, m. pl., *the Great Bear, the Little Bear; Charles's Wain; the north; the North Pole*. 7.  
**septīmus**, a, um, num. adj., *the seventh*. 14.  
**septingenti**, ae, a, num. adj., *seven hundred*. v. 13, vii. 51.  
**septuaginta**, num. adj., *seventy*. iv. 12.  
**sepultūra**, ae, f., *the act of burying; a funeral, funeral rites, obseques, burial*. i. 26.  
**Sĕquāna**, ae, f., *the Seine*. 6.  
**Sĕquānus**, a, um, adj., *Sequanian*. 40.  
**sĕquor**, i, cūtus, dep., *to go or come after; to follow, attend, accompany; to follow after, pursue; to aim at, seek for*. 31.  
**sermo**, ōnis, m., *a discourse, talk, conversation*. v. 37, 41; vi. 13.  
**sĕro**, adv., *late, too late*. v. 29.

sĕro, ěre, sĕvi, sĕtum, to sow, plant.  
v. 14.

servilis, e, adj., servile, of slaves. i. 40,  
vi. 19.

servio, ěre, ěvi or ěi, ětum, to be a slave;  
to be subject to, devote one's self to, give  
heed to. iv. 5, vii. 34.

servitus, ūtis, f., servitude, slavery. 15.  
servo, āre, āvi, ātum, to keep, preserve,  
watch, guard; to observe. 11.

servus, i, m., a bondman, slave, ser-  
vant. 6.

sesquipedālis, e, adj., (sesqui, half as  
much + pes), a foot and a half in length,  
breadth, or diameter. iv. 17.

seu, conj., whether. 8.

sĕvĕritas, ātis, f., severity, harshness,  
rigor. vii. 4.

sĕvōco, āre, āvi, ātum, to call off or  
aside; to draw aside. v. 6.

sĕvum, i, n., tallow, fat. vii. 25.

sex, num. adj., six. 16.

sexaginta, num. adj., sixty. ii. 4.

sexcenti, ae, a, num. adj., six hun-  
dred. 8.

sexdĕcim, num. adj., sixteen. vii. 16.

sĕ, conj., whether; if. 172.

sĕc, adv., in this manner; thus. 29.

siccitas, ātis, f., dryness, drought. iv. 38,  
v. 24.

sĕcut or sĕcŭti, adv., as if, just as, as it  
were, like. sicut, 6; sicuti, 4.

sĭdus, ěris, n., star, constellation. vi.  
14.

signifer, ěri, m, (signum + fĕro),  
a standard-bearer. ii. 25.

significātio, ōnis, f., intimation, expres-  
sion, declaration; sense, import. 5.

significo, āre, āvi, ātum, (signum +  
fācio), to make a sign; to signify, indi-  
cate, show, intimate, declare. 7.

signum, i, n., a sign, mark; a watchword,  
signal; an ensign, a standard. 46.

sĭlentium, i, n., stillness, silence. 10.

silva, ae, f., forest, wood. 54.

silvestris, e, adj., wooded, woody. 6.

sĭmilis, e, adj., resembling, like, similar.  
11.

sĭmilitŭdo, ĩnis, f., likeness, resemblance,  
affinity, similarity. vii. 50, 53.

simul, adv., together, at once, at the same  
time; simul — simul, partly — partly;  
simul ac, as soon as. 22.

sĭmŭlācrum, i, n., a likeness or repre-  
sentation; a picture, image, effigy, figure.  
vi. 16, 17.

sĭmŭlātio, ōnis, f., pretence, disguise,  
counterfeiting, deceit, hypocrisy. 7.

sĭmŭlo, āre, āvi, ātum, to feign, pre-  
tend, counterfeit. i. 44, iv. 4.

sĭmultas, ātis, f., enmity, hatred, jealousy,  
rivalry. v. 44.

sin, conj., but if; if however. i. 13, v.  
35.

sincĕre, adv., frankly, sincerely, candidly.  
vii. 20.

sĭne, prep. with ablat, without. 41.

singillātim, adv., one by one, singly. iii. 2,  
v. 4, 52.

singŭlāris, e, adj., single, one only; ex-  
traordinary, excellent, remarkable, singu-  
lar. 8.

singuli, ae, a, dist. num. adj., separate,  
single, individual, each, every. 34.

sĭnister, tra, trum, adj., left, on the  
left; adverse, contrary; pernicious,  
bad. 7.

sĭnistrorsus, adv., towards the left hand;  
on the left. vi. 25.

sĭno, ěre, sĭvi, sĭtum, to permit, allow,  
suffer; to give one leave. iv. 2.

sĭquando, adv., if ever. iii. 12.

sĭquis, sĭqua. See quis.

sisto, ěre, stĭti, stĕtum, to set, place;  
to stand still, stop. See circumsisto.

sĭtus, ūs, m., position, situation, site. 5.

sĭve, conj., or, whether; if, either; sĭve  
— sĭve, whether — or. 9.

sĕcer, ěri, m., a father-in-law. i. 12.

sĕciĕtas, ātis, f., a company, union, con-  
junction, alliance, league, confederacy.  
vi. 12.

- socius, a, um, *comrade, partner, associate*. 11.
- sol, solis, m., *the sun*. 14.
- solātium, i, n., *comfort, consolation*. vii. 15.
- soldūrii, ōrum, m. pl., *retainers* (Celtic word). iii. 22.
- sōleo, ēre, itus, semi-dep., *to be wont; to be accustomed*. vi. 15, vii. 35.
- sōlertia, ae, f., *adroitness, shrewdness; expertness, skill*. vii. 22.
- sōlitūdo, inis, f., *wilderness, desert; solitude*. iv. 18, vi. 23.
- sollīcīto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to rouse, move, urge, induce, incite; to investigate*. 12.
- sollīcītūdo, inis, f., *anxiety, disquiet, trouble, uneasiness*. v. 53, vii. 40.
- solum, i, n., *the soil, ground; foundation, bottom*. 4.
- solum, adv., *alone, only*. 12.
- solus, a, um, adj., *alone, only, single, sole*. 9.
- solvo, ēre, solvi, solūtum, *to untie, unbind, loose*. 5.
- sōnītus, ūs, m., *a noise, sound*. vii. 60, 61.
- sōnus, i, m., *noise, sound*. vii. 47.
- sōror, ōris, f., *a sister*. i. 18, 53.
- sors, sortis, f., *chance, lot, fate, destiny*. i. 50, 53 (twice).
- spātium, i, n., *distance, space; an interval*. 43.
- spēcies, ēi, f., *a form, figure, fashion, shape, appearance; a spectacle, sight; pretence, semblance*. 12.
- specto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to see, observe; to endeavor: to tend; to examine, prove; to look, face, lie towards; to expect, wait for*. 6.
- spēcūlātor, ōris, m., *spy, scout*. ii. 11, v. 49.
- spēcūlātōrius, a, um, adj., *for scouting, of observation*. iv. 26.
- spēcūlor, āri, ātus, dep., *to watch, observe, reconnoitre, wait for*. i. 47.
- spēro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to trust, hope, expect*. 12.
- spēs, ēi, f., *expectation, hope*. 52.
- spīritus, ūs, m., *spirit, breath; haughtiness, arrogance*. i. 33, ii. 4.
- spōlio, āre, āvi, ātum, *to spoil, strip, plunder, deprive*. v. 6, vii. 66.
- sponte, ablat., *of one's own will, voluntarily*. 5.
- stābīlio, īre, īvi, itum, *to fix, settle; to make firm*. vii. 73.
- stābīlitas, ātis, f., *stability, firmness, steadiness*. iv. 33.
- stātīm, adv., *forthwith, immediately*. 9.
- stātio, ōnis, f., *a post, station; outpost, picket, guard, sentinel, sentry*. 11.
- stātuo, ēre, ui, ūtum, *to raise, erect, set up, place, station, establish; to decide, conclude*. 18.
- stātūra, ae, f., *stature*. ii. 30, vi. 21.
- stātus, ūs, m., *condition, state, posture*. vi. 12, vii. 54, 55.
- stīmulus, i, m., *spur, goad; pointed stake*. vii. 73, 82.
- stīpendiārius, a, um, adj., *tributary*. i. 30, 36, vii. 10.
- stīpendium, i, n., *tribute, tax*. 7.
- stīpes, itis, m., *post, log, stake*. vii. 73 (twice).
- stīrps, stīrpis, f., *stock, stem, stalk, lineage*. vi. 34 (twice).
- sto, āre, stēti, stātum, *to continue, stand; to persist, remain*. 4.
- strāmentum, i, n., (sterno), *straw, thatch; covering, coverlet*. v. 43, vii. 45.
- strēpītus, ūs, m., *a din, noise, uproar, tumult*. ii. 11, iv. 33, vi. 7.
- stūdeo, ēre, ui, —, *to pay attention to, cultivate, strive after, be eager for*. 16.
- stūdiōse, adv., *zealously, eagerly, attentively*. vi. 28 (twice).
- stūdium, i, n., *zeal, eagerness; attachment, devotion; vocation; exertion*. 15.
- stultitia, ae, f., *foolishness, folly*. vii. 77.
- sub, prep. with acc., *below, under, beneath; by, at the base of; about, towards, during, on, in; within*. 10.
- sūbactus, a, um. See sūbīgo.

- subdōlus, a, um, adj., *cunning, crafty*. vii. 31.
- subdūco, ēre, xi, ctum, *to withdraw, draw off, take away, remove*. 6.
- subductio, ōnis, f., *a hauling ashore, a drawing up*. v. 1.
- sūbeo, ire, īvi or ii, itum, *to come or go under; to advance, proceed; to endure, encounter, undergo*. 7.
- sūbesse. See subsum.
- subfōdio, ēre, fōdi, fossum, *to dig under, undermine, dig below*. iv. 12.
- subīcio, ēre, iēci, iectum, (sub + iacio), *to throw under, place under, subject*. 8.
- sūbigo, ēre, ēgi, actum, (sub + āgo), *to force, compel, constrain, oblige; to drive; to subdue, reduce*. vii. 77.
- sūbito, adv., *quickly, suddenly*. 30.
- sūbitus, a, um, adj., (sūbeo), *unexpected, sudden*. iii. 7, 8.
- sublātus, a, um, partic. adj., (tollo), *proud, elated*. 11.
- sublēvo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to lift, support, lessen, diminish; to relieve, ease*. 9.
- sublīca, ae, f., *a pile, stake*. iv. 17 (twice), vii. 35.
- subluo, ēre, ui, ūtum, *to wash beneath; to flow near*. vii. 69.
- subministro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to afford, furnish, supply*. i. 40, iii. 25, iv. 20.
- submitto, ēre, mīsi, missum, *to send after; to send, furnish, dispatch*. 9.
- submōveo, ēre, mōvi, mōtum, *to displace, remove, dislodge, drive back*. 5.
- subruo, ēre, ui, ūtum, *to dig under, undermine; to pull down, demolish, overturn*. ii. 6, iv. 27.
- subsequor, i, cūtus, dep., *to follow after, follow immediately*. 15.
- subsīdium, i, n., *a reinforcement; help, defence, remedy*. 27.
- subsīdo, ēre, sēdi, sessum, *to sink down, remain, stay behind*. vi. 36.
- subsisto, ēre, stīti, —, *to halt, stand still; to hold out, withstand*. i. 15, v. 10.
- subsum, esse, fui, —, *to be under; to be near*. 4.
- subtrāho, ēre, xi, ctum, *to remove, withdraw; to take away secretly*. i. 44, vii. 22.
- subvectio, ōnis, f., *transportation, conveyance*. vii. 10.
- subvēho, ēre, vexi, vectum, *to convey, carry or bring up*. i. 16.
- subvēnio, ire, vēni, ventum, *to come up; to help, assist, aid, succor*. 4.
- succēdo, ēre, cessi, cessum, (sub + cēdo), *to go under; to go towards, approach; to come behind, follow after, succeed; to be successful, to prosper*. 14.
- succendo, ēre, di, sum, *to kindle, set on fire, burn*. 5.
- succensus, ūs, m., *approach, advance, success*. ii. 20.
- succēdo, ēre, cīdi, cīsum, (sub + caedo), *to cut off, mow, cut down*. iv. 19, 38, v. 9.
- succumbo, ēre, cūbui, cūbitum, (sub + cumbo), *to sink under, yield, surrender, succumb, be overcome*. vii. 86.
- succurro, ēre, cūcurri or curri, cursum, (sub + curro), *to run to one's assistance; to help, aid, succor, assist*. v. 44, vii. 80.
- sūdes, is, f., *a pile, stake*. 4.
- sūdor, ōris, m., *toil, sweat*. vii. 8.
- sufficio, ēre, fēcī, fectum, (sub + fācio), *to give, supply; to be sufficient, supplied with; to hold out*. vii. 20.
- suffrāgium, i, n., (sub + frango), *a vote, voice, suffrage*. vi. 13, vii. 63.
- suggestus, ūs, m., (suggēro), *a raised place; a stage, platform, tribunal*. vi. 3.
- sui, sibi, se, refl. pron., *of himself, herself, itself, or themselves*. 639.

**sum, esse, fui, —**, to be, exist, remain, continue; to happen, take place. 999.

**summa, ae, f.**, the main thing, chief point; sum, amount, sum total, aggregate, whole. 18.

**summus, a, um, adj.**, (sup. of *sūpĕrus*), the highest, greatest, very great; most important, consummate; the summit of, surface of. 84.

**sūmo, ěre, sumpsi, sumptum**, to take up or away; to arrogate, assume, claim, appropriate; to undertake, begin. 8.

**sumptuosus, a, um, adj.**, costly, expensive. vi. 19.

**sumptus, ūs, m.**, (*sūmo*), cost, expense, charge. i. 18.

**sumptus, a, um.** See *sūmo*.

**sūperbe, adv.**, haughtily, proudly, insolently, arrogantly. i. 31.

**sūperful.** See *sūpersum*.

**sūpĕrior, us, adj.**, (comp. of *sūpĕrus*), higher, upper; superior, greater, stronger, more powerful; past, preceding. 64.

**sūpĕro, āre, āvi, ātum**, (*supero*), to excel, surpass, overcome, outstrip, subdue, conquer; to remain, survive. 26.

**sūpersĕdeo, ěre, sĕdi, sessum**, to abstain, forbear, restrain from; to omit, pass, desist from. ii. 8.

**sūpersum, esse, fui, —**, to be left, remain, exist still, survive. 7.

**sūpĕrus, a, um, adj.**, above, upper, over. See superior.

**suppĕto, ěre, Ivi or ii, itum**, (sub + *pĕto*), to be present, be in store, be at hand. 5.

**supplĕmentum, i, n.**, a filling up, supply, recruiting, reinforcements, supplies. vii. 7, 9, 57.

**supplex, icis, adj.**, (sub + *plĭco*), humble, submissive, suppliant, supplicant. ii. 28.

**supplicatio, ōnis, f.**, a prayer, supplication; a thanksgiving; a day set apart for prayer. ii. 35, iii. 38, vii. 90.

**suppliciter, adv.**, humbly, submissively, suppliantly. i. 27.

**supplicium, i, n.**, (*supplex*), penalty, punishment. 12.

**supporto, āre, āvi, ātum**, (sub + *por-to*), to carry, bring, convey up or to. 5.

**suprā, prep.** with acc., and adv., over, on the top, above; formerly, before, previously. 26.

**suscipio, ěre, cĕpi, ceptum**, (sub + *cāpio*), to take up, lift up; to undertake, assume, enter upon; to undergo, suffer; to engage in, begin. 11.

**suspectus, a, um, partic. adj.** (*suspicio*), mistrusted, suspected, suspicious. v. 54.

**suspiciātus, a, um.** See *suspīcor*.

**suspicio, ōnis, f.**, mistrust, distrust, suspicion. 11.

**suspīcor, āri, ātus, dep.**, to mistrust; to surmise, suppose, believe, apprehend. 6.

**sustento, āre, āvi, ātum**, (*sustīneo*), to hold up, support, sustain, maintain; to hold out, endure, suffer. 4.

**sustīneo, ěre, tīnui, tentum**, (sub + *tĕneo*), to hold up, keep up, support, sustain, restrain, check; to undergo, withstand, endure, make a stand, hold out. 38.

**suus, a, um, poss. adj. pron.**, one's own; belonging or relating to him, her, it, or them. 357.

## T.

**tābernāculum, i, n.**, a tent. i. 39, vi. 38, vii. 46.

**tābŭla, ae, f.**, a plank, board; a picture, painting; a tablet, register. i. 29 (twice).

**tābulātum, i, n.**, a story in a building; a boarded floor. vi. 29.

**tāceo, ěre, ui, —**, to be silent, say nothing; to keep secret, disregard. i. 17 (twice).

**tācītus, a, um, adj.**, silent. i. 32.

- tālea, ae, f., *staff, stick; rod, bar.* v. 12, vii. 73.
- tālis, e, adj., *such, of this or that kind, such like.* 5.
- tam, adv., *so much, so very, so.* 14.
- tāmen, conj., *nevertheless, yet, however, at least.* 76.
- tāmetsi, conj. (tamen + etsi), *though, although, notwithstanding.* 4.
- tandem, adv., *at last, at length, finally, however, yet, still.* 6.
- tango, ěre, tětīgi, tactum, *to border upon, touch.* v. 3.
- tantōpěre, adv., *so greatly, so much.* i. 31.
- tantūlus, a, um, adj. dim., (tantus), *so little, so small, so trifling.* 4.
- tantum, adv., *so far, so much; only, alone, merely; non tantum — sed etiam, not only — but also.* 5.
- tantummōdo, adv., *merely, only.* iii. 5
- tantundem, adv., *just as far, so far, just as much.* vii. 72.
- tantus, a, um, adj., *so great, so much, such; so little, so small; quanto — tanto, the — the.* 92.
- tarde, adv., *slowly, tardily.* iv. 23.
- tardo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to hinder, retard, impede, delay.* 9.
- tardus, a, um, adj., *tardy, slow.* ii. 25.
- taurus, i, m., *a bull.* vi. 28.
- taxus, i, f., *the yew-tree.* vi. 31.
- tectum, i, n., (těgo), *the covering or roof of a house; a house, dwelling.* i. 36, vii. 66.
- tectus, a, um. See těgo.
- těgmentum, i, n., *a covering.* ii. 21, vi. 21.
- těgo, ěre, texi, tectum, *to cover, conceal, disguise; to protect, defend.* 5.
- tělum, i, n., *a weapon; a javelin, dart, spear.* 40.
- těměrārius, a, um, adj., *inconsiderate, rash, imprudent.* i. 31, vi. 20.
- těměre, adv., *without reason, thoughtlessly, at random; readily, easily.* 4.
- těměrītas, ātis, f., *inconsiderateness, rashness, indiscretion.* 5.
- těmo, ōnis, m., *the beam, pole, or tongue of a carriage, etc.* iv. 33.
- tempěrantia, ae, f., *moderation, temperance, abstinence, self-control.* i. 19.
- tempěrātus, a, um, partic. adj., (tempěro), *temperate, moderate, sober, mild.* v. 12.
- tempěro, āre, āvi, ātum, (tempus), *to temper, moderate, restrain; to forbear, refrain from, abstain.* i. 7, 33.
- tempestat, ātis, f., (tempus), *time; a period, season; weather; storm, tempest.* 18.
- tempo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to handle, try.* 11.
- tempus, ōris, n., *season; time.* 111.
- tendo, ěre, tětendi, tensum or tentum, *to stretch, stretch out; to go, advance; to encamp, tent.* 4.
- těněbrae, ārum, f. pl., *darkness.* vii. 81
- těneo, ěre, ui, tum, *to hold, hold fast; to keep, have, occupy, possess; to continue, keep on; to defend; to keep back, detain.* 50.
- těner, ěra, ěrum, adj., *tender, soft; young.* ii. 17.
- tento, āre, āvi, ātum, *to feel, examine; to try, attempt, put to the test, prove, tamper with, sound; to incite, urge.* See tempto.
- těnuis, e, adj., *slender, thin; mean, low, poor; feeble, delicate.* v. 40, vi. 35.
- těnuitas, ātis, f., *fineness, thinness; poverty.* vii. 17.
- těnuiter, adv., *thinly, slightly.* iii. 13.
- ter, num. adv., *three times.* i. 53.
- těres, ětis, adj., (těro), *slender, smooth; rounded, long.* vii. 73.
- tergum, i, n., *the back of men or animals; the rear; ab tergo, in the rear; post tergum, in the rear.* 12.
- terni, ae, a, dist. num. adj., *thrice each, every three, three.* iii. 15, vii. 73, 75.

- terra, ae, f, *the earth; ground, land, district; a region; orbis terrarum, the earth, the world.* 14.
- terrēnus, a, um, adj., (terra), *earthy, of the earth.* i. 43.
- terreo, ěre, ui, ĭtum, *to frighten, alarm, terrify; to deter.* 4.
- terrĭto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to frighten, terrify, affright.* 4.
- terror, ōris, m., *fear, terror, affright.* 5.
- tertius, a, um, num adj., (ter), *third, the third.* 34.
- testāmentum, i, n., *a will.* i. 39.
- testĭmōnĭum, i, n., (testis), *testimony, proof, evidence.* 4.
- testis, is, m. and f., *a witness* 4.
- testūdo, ĭnis, *a tortoise; a wooden covering or shed, under which the besiegers stood and applied the battering-ram; a shelter of shields.* 6.
- texi. See tĕgo.
- tignum, i, n., *a log, stick, beam.* iv. 17 (twice).
- tĭmeo, ěre, ui, —, *to fear, be afraid of; to dread, fear for.* 16
- tĭmĭde, adv., *fearfully, timidly.* iii. 25, v. 33.
- tĭmĭdus, a, um, adj., *fearful, cowardly, afraid, timid.* i. 39, iii. 24, vi. 40.
- tĭmor, ōris, m., *dread, fear.* 34.
- tŏlĕro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to bear, bear patiently; to support, tolerate, endure; to nourish, maintain; to hold, keep.* 4.
- tollo, ěre, sustŭli, sublātum, *to raise, lift up, set up, send up; to carry off, remove; to kill, destroy, break off.* 20.
- tormentum, i, n., (torqueo), *a hurling-engine for throwing stones, darts, etc.; a cord, rope; torture, torment.* 8.
- torreo, ěre, ui, tostum, *to dry, roast, scorch, bake, burn, parch.* v. 43.
- tŏt, indecl. adj., *so many.* 7.
- tŏtĭdem, indecl. adj., *just as many, as many.* 7.
- tŏtus, a, um, gen. tŏtĭus, adj., *all, the whole, total, the entire.* 63.
- trabs, trābis, f., *rafter, beam.* 6.
- tractus, a, um. See trāho.
- trādo, ěre, dĭdi, dĭtum, (trans + do), *to give, consign, deliver; to pass from hand to hand; to surrender; to transmit; to commend, intrust.* 28.
- traduco. See transduco.
- trāgŭla, ae, f., *a dart, javelin.* 4.
- trāho, ěre, xi, ctum, *to drag along, drag away; to protract, put off, detain, spin out.* i. 53, vi. 38.
- traĭcio. See transĭcio.
- trāiectus, ūs, m., (traĭcio), *crossing over; a passage.* iv. 21, v. 2.
- trāno, āre, āvi, ātum, (trans + no), *to swim across or over.* i. 53.
- tranquillitas, ātis, f., *a calm; stillness, calmness; rest, quiet, tranquillity.* iii. 15, v. 23.
- trans, prep. with acc., *across, over, beyond.* 23.
- transalpĭnus, a, um, adj., *transalpine, beyond the Alps.* vii. 1, 6.
- transcendo, ěre, di, sum, (trans + scando), *to climb or mount over, pass, surmount, cross.* iii. 15, vii. 70.
- transdŭco, ěre, xi, ctum, *to carry or bring over, transport, transfer, lead, convey.* 32.
- transeo, ĭre, ĭvi or ii, ĭtum, *to go, cross, or pass over; to elapse, pass away.* 64.
- transĕro, ferre, tŭli, lātum, *to carry or bring over; to transport, transfer.* vi. 3, 13; vii. 8.
- transĭgo, ěre, xi, xum, *to pierce or thrust through; to pierce, transfix.* i. 25, v. 44, vii. 62.
- transfŏdio, ěre, fŏdi, fossum, *to thrust through, pierce; to transfix.* vii. 82.
- transgrĕdiŏr, i, gressus, dep., (trans + grādiŏr), *to go or pass over; to cross.* ii. 19, vii. 25, 46.
- transĭtus, ūs, m., (transeo), *a passing or going over; crossing, passage.* v. 55, vi. 7, vii. 57.



- transicio, ěre, iěci, iectum, (trans + iěcio), to throw or cast over; to transport across; to thrust or pierce through, transfix. 4.
- translĕtus, a, um. See transfĕro.
- transmĕrinus, a, um, adj., beyond the sea; foreign; transmarine. vi. 24.
- transmissus, ūs, m., a passage. v. 2, 13.
- transmitto, ěre, mĕsi, missum, to send over, transmit. vii. 61.
- transporto, ĕre, ĕvi, ĕtum, to carry over, convey, transport. 10.
- transrhĕnĕnus, a, um, adj., across the Rhine. iv. 16, v. 2, vi. 5. transrhĕnĕnĕni, ōrum, m. pl., those living beyond the Rhine.
- transtrum, i, n., a cross-beam. iii. 13.
- transversus, a, um, adj., (trans + ver- to), lying across, crosswise, athwart, oblique. ii. 8.
- trĕcenti, ae, a, num. adj., (tres + centum), three hundred. iv. 37, v. 9, vi. 36.
- trĕdĕcim, num. adj., thirteen. vii. 51.
- trĕpĭdo, ĕre, ĕvi, ĕtum, to hurry with alarm; to be in a state of trepidation and alarm; to run up and down in fear and confusion; to hasten about; to be alarmed, agitated. v. 33, vi. 37.
- tres, tria, num. adj., three. 36.
- Trĕvir, ĭri, m., a Trevirian. 38.
- tribŭnus, i, m., (tribus), a tribune. tribŭnus militum, a tribune of the soldiers, an officer of the army; each legion had six. 20.
- tribuo, ěre, ui, ūtum, to assign, distribute, give; to impute, attribute; to grant, allow. 7.
- tribŭtum, i, n., (tribuo), tribute, impost, tax. vi. 13, 14.
- trĭduum, i, n.; three days. 10.
- triennium, i, n., three years. iv. 4.
- trĭgĭnta, num. adj., thirty. vi. 35.
- trĭni, ae, a, dist. num. adj., three each, every three, three. 4.
- trĭpartĭto, adv., in three parts, in three divisions. 4.
- trĭplex, ĭcis, adj., (tres + plĭco), triple, three, threefold. 4.
- trĭquetrus, a, um, adj., triangular, three-cornered. v. 13.
- trĭstis, e, adj., sorrowful, sad. i. 32.
- trĭstĭtia, ae, f., sadness, sorrow. i. 32.
- truncus, i, m., the trunk or stock of a tree. iv. 17, vii. 73.
- tu, tui, pers. pron., m. and f., you, thou. v. 30 (twice).
- tŭba, ae, f., a trumpet. ii. 20, vii. 47, 81.
- tueor, ĕri, tuĭtus or tŭtus, to behold, look at, watch, guard, defend, protect; to support, keep, maintain. 8.
- tŭli. See fĕro.
- tum, adv., at that time, then. 48.
- tŭmultuor, ĕri, ĕtus, dep., to make a disturbance, raise a tumult; to be in confusion. vii. 61.
- tŭmultuŏse, adv., tumultuously. vii. 45.
- tŭmultus, ūs, m., a tumult, broil, disturbance, uproar; sedition, mutiny, insurrection. 7.
- tŭmŭlus, i, m., (tŭmeo), a hillock, hill, mound. 6.
- tunc, adv., at that time, then. v. 41.
- turma, ae, f., a squadron of thirty horsemen. 5.
- turpis, e, adj., ugly, deformed, unseemly; dishonorable, infamous, scandalous. 6.
- turpĭter, adv., disgracefully, basely, shamefully. vii. 20 (twice), 80.
- turpĭtŭdo, ĭnis, f., dishonor, shame, disgrace. ii. 27.
- turris, is, f., a tower. 29.
- tŭto, adv., safely, securely, without danger. iii. 13, 24; vii. 36.
- tŭtus, a, um, adj., (tueor), secure, safe, out of danger, protected. 9.
- tuus, a, um, poss. adj. pron., thy, thine, of thee; yours, your, of you. v. 44.

## U.

ŭbi, adv., *where, when.* 58.  
 ŭbicumque, adv. *wherever.* vii. 3.  
 ŭbique, adv., *everywhere; wherever; anywhere.* iii. 16.  
 ulciscor, i, ultus, dep., *to avenge, revenge.* 5.  
 ullus, a, um, gen. ullus, adj., *any, any one.* 25.  
 ultĕrior, us, gen. ōris, comp. adj., *farther, on the further side; more distant, more remote.* 8.  
 ultĭmus, a, um, adj., (sup. of ultĕrior), *the most distant, last, the most remote, farthest.* 5.  
 ultrā, prep. and adv., *beyond, past, farther.* i. 48, 49.  
 ultrō, adv., *beyond; on both sides, to and fro; moreover, besides, further; actually, voluntarily, spontaneously.* 11.  
 ultus, a, um. See ulciscor.  
 ŭlŭlātus, ŭs, m., *a yelling, howling, shout.* v. 37, vii. 80.  
 unquam. See unquam.  
 ŭnā, adv., *together; at the same time, along with.* 31.  
 unde, adv., *whence, from which, from whom.* 10.  
 undĕcim, num. adj., *eleven.* vii. 69, 87.  
 undĕcĭmus, a, um, num. adj., *the eleventh.* ii. 23, v. 46.  
 undique, adv., *from all parts, from every part; on all sides, everywhere.* 26.  
 ŭnĭversus, a, um, adj., *whole, entire; all together.* 9.  
 unquam, adv., *ever, at any time.* 4.  
 unus, a, um, gen. unŭs, num. adj., *one, single, one alone, one only; the same, one and the same.* 115.  
 urbānus, a, um, adj., *of a city; of the city (Rome).* vii. 1, 6.  
 urbs, urbis, f., *a city; the city (Rome).* 9.  
 urgeo, ĕre, ursi, —, *to press upon, urge, drive, impel; to press hard, weigh down, oppress.* ii. 25, 26.

ŭrus, i, m., *a kind of ox.* vi. 28.  
 ŭsĭtātus, a, um, adj., *usual, accustomed, ordinary, common, customary.* vii. 22.  
 usque, adv., *even, quite, as far as; with eo, to such a degree.* 10.  
 ŭsus, a, um. See utor.  
 ŭsus, ŭs, m., *use, practice, exercise; skill; advantage, benefit, profit; occasion; necessity, need; usu venire, to happen, occur.* 34.  
 ŭt or ŭti, conj. and adv., *that; so that, in order that; so as to, to; as; though, although; that not (after verbs of fearing).* ut, 380; uti, 56.  
 ŭter, tra, trum, gen. utrŭs, adj., *which, which of the two.* 4.  
 ŭterque, trāque, trumque, gen. utrŭsque, adj., *both, each.* 36.  
 ŭti. See ut.  
 ŭtilis, e, adj., (ŭtor), *useful, profitable, advantageous.* iv. 7, vii. 20, 76.  
 ŭtilĭtas, ātis, f., *usefulness, profit, advantage.* iv. 19, vii. 23.  
 ŭtor, i, usus, dep., *to use, make use of, enjoy; to exercise, practise; to employ; to show; to manage.* 52.  
 utrimque, adv., *on both sides.* 5.  
 utrum, conj., *whether, in indirect questions; in direct questions it is not translated.* i. 40, 50, 53.  
 uxor, ōris, f., *a wife.* 9.

## V.

vācātio, ōnis, f., (vāco), *exemption, respite, immunity, freedom.* vi. 14.  
 vāco, āre, āvi, ātum, *to be empty, free from, without, vacant, without a possessor.* 4.  
 vācuus, a, um, adj., *free from; empty; destitute; vacant.* 5.  
 vādum, i, n., *a ford, a shallow place.* 13.  
 vāgĭna, ae, f., *scabbard, sheath.* v. 44.  
 vāgor, āri, ātus, dep., *to wander about, roam, ramble.* 9.

- vāleo, ēre, ui, —, to enjoy health, to be powerful, strong; to have interest, right, or influence; to have force. 13.
- vālētūdo, inis, f., (vāleo), good health; ill health, disease. v. 40; vii. 78.
- vallis or valles, is, f., a valley. 9.
- vallum, i, n., (vallus), a rampart set with stakes or palisades; intrenchments, earthworks. 35.
- vallus, i, m., a stake, palisade. See vallum
- vāriētās, ātis, f, variety, in respect to colors; variety, diversity. vi. 27, vii. 23.
- vārius, a, um, adj., variegated, changing, changeable; different. ii. 22, vii. 77.
- vasto, āre, āvi, ātum, to lay waste, ravage, desolate, devastate. 10.
- vastus, a, um, adj., vast, huge, enormous, immense. iii. 9, 12.
- vātīcīnātio, ōnis, f., a foretelling, prophesy, divination. i. 50.
- vě, enclit. conj., = vel, or; either. See vel.
- vectīgal, ālis, n., a tax, impost, duty; revenue. i. 18, 36; v. 22
- vectīgālis, e, adj., tributary. iii. 8, iv. 3.
- vectōrius, a, um, adj., (vēho), for carrying or transportation. v. 8.
- věhēmenter, adv., exceedingly, eagerly, impetuously, ardently, vehemently, strongly. 9.
- věho, ěre, vexi, vectum, to bear, carry, convey. i. 43.
- vel, conj., or, even; vel — vel, either — or. 12.
- vělōcītas, ātis, f., fleetness, swiftness, velocity, speed, rapidity. vi. 28.
- vělōcīter, adv., swiftly, rapidly, quickly, speedily. v. 35.
- vělox, ōcis, adj., quick, swift, fleet, rapid, speedy. i. 48.
- vělum, i, n., a sail, iii. 13 (twice), 14.
- vělut, adv., as, like as, just as. i. 32.
- vēnātio, ōnis, f., the chase, hunting. iv. 1, vi. 21, 28.
- vēnātor, ōris, m., a hunter. vi. 27.
- vendo, ěre, didi, dītum, to sell. ii. 33, iii. 16, iv. 2.
- Vēnētīcus, a, um, adj., of the Venetian, Venetian. iii. 18, iv. 21.
- vēnia, ae, f., indulgence, favor, forgiveness, pardon, forbearance. vi. 4, vii. 15.
- vēnio, ěre, vēni, ventum, to come, arrive. 133.
- ventīto, āre, āvi, ātum, to resort; to come often. iv. 3, 32; v. 27.
- ventus, i, m., the wind. 11.
- vēr, vēris, n., the spring. vi. 3.
- verbum, i, n., a word, expression, remark, saying. 4.
- věreor, ěri, ětus, dep., to fear. 25.
- vergo, ěre, —, —, to lie; to face; to incline. 4.
- vergōbrētus, i, m., the title of the chief magistrate among the Haeduans. i. 16.
- vērīsīmīlis, e, adj., (vērus + sīmīlis), likely, probable. See verum.
- věritus, a, um. See věreor.
- věro, adv., (vērus), indeed, in truth, assuredly. 24.
- verso, āre, āvi, ātum, (verto), to turn often, twist, change; to agitate, exercise; to employ; to exert; to occupy; to be busy. v. 44.
- versor, āri, ātus, dep., to remain, dwell, stay; to be engaged in, busy one's self with; to be associated with; to occupy. 11.
- versus, adv. and prep., (verto), towards. 5.
- versus, ūs, m., (verto), a line, verse. vi. 14.
- verto, ěre, ti, sum, to turn, turn round; to alter, change, transform. 6.
- věrum, i, n, the truth. 4.
- verus, a, um, adj., real; true; reasonable; right. See verum.
- věrūtum, i, n., a javelin, dart. v. 44 (twice).

- vesper, ěris and ěri, m., *evening; the evening star.* 5.
- vester, tra, trum, poss. adj. pron., *yours, your; of you, of yours.* 5.
- vestigium, i, n., *the print of a footstep; a track, trace; a place, spot; an instant, a moment; e vestigio, immediately, on the spot.* 4.
- vestio, ěre, ěvi or ii, ětum, *to attire, clothe, cover, array.* v. 14, vii. 23, 31.
- vestis, is, f., *clothing, garment.* vii. 47.
- vestitus, ūs, m., *dress, clothing.* iv. 1, vii. 88.
- větĕrānus, a, um, adj., (vĕtus), *veteran, old.* i. 24.
- vĕto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to forbid, prevent, prohibit.* ii. 20, v. 9, vii. 33.
- vĕtus, ěris, adj., *old, former, ancient.* 12.
- vexillum, i, n., (vĕho), *a military ensign, standard, banner, flag.* A red flag displayed from the general's tent as a signal for marching or for battle ii. 20, vi. 36, 40.
- vexo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to harass, distress, annoy, molest, trouble, agitate.* 4.
- via, ae, f., *a road, way, passage.* 20.
- viātor, ōris, m., *a traveller* iv. 5.
- vīcĕsimus, a, um, num. adj., *the twentieth.* vi. 21.
- vīci. See vinco.
- vīcies, num. adj., *twenty times.* v. 13.
- vīcīnitas, ātis, f., *neighborhood, vicinity; the neighbors.* vi. 34.
- vīcis, (gen.), f., *succession, change, alternation; in vicem, by turns, alternately; mutually.* iv. 1, vii. 85.
- victīma, ae, f., *a victim, sacrifice.* vi. 16.
- victor, ōris, m., *a conqueror; adj., victorious.* 9.
- victōria, ae, f., *victory.* 9.
- victus, a, um. See vinco.
- victus, ūs, m., (vīvo), *sustenance, food, provisions; mode of living.* 4.
- vīcus, i, m., *a village, hamlet.* 18.
- vīdeo, ěre, vīdi, vīsum, *to see, behold, observe, perceive; vīdeor, ěri, vīsus, pass., to seem, appear; to seem good or fit.* 144.
- vīgilia, ae, f., *a watching, being awake; guard, watch; the watch, sentinels.* A watch among the Romans was equal to one fourth of the night. 19.
- vīginti, num. adj., *twenty.* i. 31, iv. 38.
- vīmen, ěnis, n., *a twig, osier.* ii. 33, vi. 16, vii. 73.
- vīncio, ěre, nxi, nctum, *to bind, fasten.* i. 53.
- vinco, ěre, vīci, victum, *to conquer, overcome, subdue, vanquish, prevail, succeed.* 18
- vinctus, a, um. See vīncio.
- vīncŭlum, i, n., (vīncio), *a fetter, chain, bond; in vincula, into prison.* 4.
- vīndīco, āre, āvi, ātum, (vīm + dīco), *to lay claim to, maintain, assert; to liberate, rescue, free; to revenge, punish, avenge.* iii. 16, vii. 1, 76.
- vīnea, ae, f. *A shed, built like an arbor, under which soldiers assailed the walls of towns.* 8.
- vīnum, i, n., *wine.* ii. 15.
- vīolo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to violate, injure, hurt; to lay waste.* vi. 23, 32.
- vir, vīri, m., *a man, husband.* 10.
- vīres. See vis.
- virgo, ěnis, f., *a maiden, maid, virgin.* v. 14.
- virgultum, i, n., *a copse, bush, shrub.* iii. 18.
- vīrītim, adv., *man by man, singly, individually.* vii. 71.
- virtus, ūtis, f., (vir), *manhood, manliness, bravery; firmness, constancy; excellence, worth; virtue.* 70.
- vis, vis, f., *power, strength, force, energy, vigor; influence; efficiency; number, multitude; pl. vīres.* 44.
- vīsus, a, um. See vīdeo or vīdeor.
- vīta, ae, f., *life.* 19.

- vīto**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to shun, seek to escape, avoid, beware of.* 9.
- vītrum**, ī, n., *woad, a plant used for dyeing blue.* v. 14.
- vīvo**, ěre, vixi, victum, *to live on, live.* iv. 1, 10; v. 14.
- vīvus**, a, um, adj., *living, alive.* 5.
- vix**, adv., *hardly, scarcely, with difficulty.* 12.
- vōco**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to invite, summon, call; to name.* 7.
- vōlgus**. See **vulgus**.
- vōlo**, velle, vōlui, —, *to be willing; to wish, desire; to intend, purpose; to ordain, appoint; to command.* 66.
- vōluntārius**, a, um, adj., *willing, voluntary, spontaneous; vōluntārius*, ī, m., *a volunteer.* v. 56.
- vōluntas**, ātis, f., *will, wish, choice, desire, inclination; favor, affection, goodwill; approbation; willingness, consent.* 18.
- vōluptas**, ātis, f., *enjoyment, pleasure, delight, joy.* i. 53 (twice), v. 12.
- vos**. See **ego**. 7.
- vōveo**, ěre, vōvi, vōtum, *to promise solemnly, vow.* vi. 16.
- vox**, vōcis, f., *word; voice; saying; speech.* 13.
- Vulcānus**, ī, m., *Vulcan, the god of fire.* vi. 21.
- vulgo**, adv., *commonly, generally; everywhere; here and there.* i. 39, ii. 1, v. 33.
- vulgus**, ī, n., *the multitude, people, public; the populace; a throng, crowd.* 8.
- vulnĕro**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to wound.* 12.
- vulnus**, ěris, n., *a wound.* 21.
- vultus**, ūs, m., *the countenance, looks, features, aspect, mien, expression, visage.* i. 39 (twice).

## VOCABULARY TO BOOK VIII.

The numerals indicate all the chapters where each word occurs, and not the number of occurrences as in the previous Vocabulary:  
 e. g. *advento* occurs in chapters 20 and 26.

### A LIST OF WORDS FOUND IN HIRTIUS WHICH ARE NOT CONTAINED IN CAESAR.

#### A.

*absolūtus*, a, um, (part. *ab-solvo*), *set free from, brought to a conclusion, ended.* 15.  
*ācer*, *cris*, *cre*, adj., *violent, severe, sharp, fierce.* 5, 28.  
*admirātiō*, *ōnis*, f., (*admiror*), *surprise, astonishment, admiration.* Pref. (twice).  
*advento*, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum*, (*advenio*), *to come nearer; to arrive at; to come to.* 20, 26.  
*Africānus*, a, um, adj., *pertaining to Africa; African.* Pref.  
*aggerātiō*, *ōnis*, f., *a heaping up, a mole, dike.* 9.  
*Alexandrīnus*, a, um, adj., *pertaining to Alexandria; Alexandrian.* Pref.  
*aquātor*, *ōris*, m., *a water-carrier.* 41.  
*aquor*, *āri*, *ātus*, dep., (*aqua*), *to bring water.* 41.  
*ascītus*, a, um, (part. *ascisco*), *taken, appropriated, received.* 30.  
*augur*, *ūris*, m. or f., *an augur, a diviner, seer.* 50.

#### B.

*brumālis*, e, adj., *pertaining to the winter solstice; wintry.* 4.

#### C.

*calcar*, *āris*, n., *a spur, stimulus, incitement.* 48.  
*calliditas*, *ātis*, f., *shrewdness, craft, cunning.* 16.  
*cantus*, *ūs*, m., *sound, tone.* 20.  
*cautus*, a, um, (part. *caveo*), *careful, wary, safe, cautious.* 23.  
*cogitātiō*, *ōnis*, f., *meditation, thought; design, plan.* 10.  
*cohaereō*, *ēre*, *si*, *sum*, *to be united with; to adhere to, cleave to.* Pref.  
*collātiō*, *ōnis*, f., *collection; union.* 8.  
*commendātiō*, *ōnis*, f., *a commendation, recommendation.* 52.  
*commentarius*, *ii*, m., *a note-book; memorandum; commentary.* Pref. (twice), 4, 15, 30, 38, 48 (twice).  
*compingo*, *ēre*, *pēgi*, *pactum*, *to unite together; to compose, frame.* 5.

comprīmo, ěre, essi, essum, *to press together, make more dense, compress; to hold back, repress; to suppress.* 23.  
 concitātor, ōris, m., *he who excites, an exciter.* 21.  
 conflo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to kindle, stir up; to accomplish, produce, effect.* 6.  
 consolātio, ōnis, f., *a consoling, comfort.* 38.  
 convello, ěre, velli; vulsum, *to tear. pull, destroy.* 26, 50.  
 crebro, adv., *oftentimes, frequently.* 10, 17, 44, 52.  
 crīmen, īnis, n., *judgment; accusation; reproach.* Pref. (twice).  
 cūpa, ae, f., *a tub, cask.* 42.

## D.

decursio, ōnis, f., *a running down, incursion.* 24.  
 deprecātio, ōnis, f., *prayer for pardon; an imprecation.* Pref.  
 deprīmo, ere, pressi, pressum, *to press down, depress; to suppress.* 9 (twice), 40.  
 derīvo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to lead off; to divert.* 40.  
 descensus, ūs, m., *descent.* 40 (twice).  
 diffūgio, ěre, fūgi, *to fly in different directions; to disperse.* 23, 24, 35.  
 discepto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to dispute, discuss: to decide.* 55.  
 discessio, ōnis, f., *a departure; separation.* 52, 53  
 discursus, ūs, m., *a running to and fro.* 29.  
 dominātio, ōnis, f., *rule; dominion; lordship.* 52.  
 duoĉni, ae, a, dist. num., *two hundred each.* 4.

## E.

elegantia, ae, f., *refinement, grace, elegance.* Pref. (twice).  
 emendāte, adv., *faultlessly, perfectly.* Pref.

evīto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to avoid, shun.* 20, 24, 48.  
 exaresco, ěre, rui, *to dry up, become dry.* 43.  
 expectātio, ōnis, f., *an awaiting, expectation.* 9, 40.  
 explīco, āre, āvi, ātum, *to unfold, display.* Pref., 4, 14.  
 extruo, ěre, xi, ctum, *to heap up, build.* 41.

## F.

fascis, is, m., *a bundle; the rods and axe carried before the highest magistrates.* 15.  
 ferio, ěre, to strike; to cut. 38.  
 feritas, ātis, f., *wildness, savageness.* 25.  
 fons, fontis, m., *a spring, fountain; source.* 41 (five times), 43 (twice).  
 fōris, is, f., *a door; pl. two leaves of a door, door.* 9.  
 frēno, āre, āvi, ātum, *to furnish with a bridle; to bridle.* 15.  
 frequentia, ae, f., *a multitude, crowd, concourse.* 50.

## G.

grādus, ūs, m., *a step, pace.* 9.

## H.

hiberno, āre, āvi, ātum, *to pass the winter; to spend the winter in quarters* 46, 48.  
 hostia, ae, f., *an animal sacrificed, a victim.*

## I.

impressio, ōnis, f., *an impressing; an assault, onset.* 6.  
 impūnitus, a, um, adj., *unpunished; unrestrained.* 48.  
 inaedifico, āre, āvi, ātum, *to build up, erect.* 5, 9.

indāgo, inis, f., *an inclosing, a surrounding.* 18.

inertia, ae, f., *inactivity, laziness.* Pref.  
infidelitas, ātis, f., *faithlessness.* 23.

inflo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to blow into; to puff up.* 12.

inservio, ĩre, ĩvi, ĩtum, *to be submissive to; to be devoted to.* 8.

insolens, tis, adj., *immoderate; unusual; haughty, arrogant.* 13. insolenter, 50.

intercĭdo, ěre, ĩdi, ĩsum, *to cut to pieces.* 14, 43.

intolerandus, a, um, adj., (*intolero*), *insupportable, intolerable.* 4.

invādo, ěre, si, sum, *to go into, enter, assail.* 27.

invōco, āre, āvi, ātum, *to call upon, invoke.* 48.

## L.

lancea, ae, f., *a spear, lance.* 48

latĭto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to lie hid.* 31.

lego, ěre, lĕgi, lectum, *to gather; to peruse, read.* Pref.

loricŭla, ae, f., *a small breastwork.* 9 (twice).

lustro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to purify; to review; exercitum lustravit.* 52.

## M.

magnificentia, ae, f., *grandeur, splendor, eminence.* 51.

metor, āri, ātus, dep., *to measure; to erect, pitch; metātis with passive sense.* 15.

moderāte, adj., *with moderation.* 12.

mortifĕrus, a, um, adj., *death-bringing, deadly.* 23.

municipium, ii, n., *a town; a free town.* 50 (twice), 51.

mutātio, ōnis, f., *a changing, alteration, change.* 52.

mutuor, āri, ātus, *to borrow.*

## N.

nimĭrum, adv., *without doubt, surely.*  
Pref.

## O.

obsĕure, adv., *darkly, obscurely.* 54.

obsĭdeo, ěre, ědi, essum, *to besiege, blockade; to beset.* 26, 37 (twice).

operōse, adv., *with great labor, laboriously.* Pref.

opto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to wish for, desire.* 9, 41.

opulentus, a, um, adj., *rich, wealthy.* 51.

## P.

patientia, ae, f., *patience; quality of enduring.* 4.

percello, ěre, culi, culsum, *to beat down; to strike; to destroy.* 19, 29, 48.

perennis, e, adj., *everlasting, perennial.* 43.

perniciōsus, a, um, adj., *ruinous, pernicious.* 11.

pernocto, āre, āvi, *to pass the night.* 15.

pertinacĭter, adv., *very firmly, tenaciously.* 13, 22, 41, 43, 48.

petĭtio, ōnis, f., *solicitation; candidate-ship.* 50 (twice), 52.

polleo, ěre, *to be strong; to prevail; to avail.* 22.

postulātio, ōnis, f., *a demand; request; desire.* 48.

praecido, ěre, ĩdi, ĩsum, *to cut off in front; to cut to pieces.* 44.

praefectŭra, ae, f., *the office of overseer; prefecture.* 12.

praerĭpio, ěre, rĭpui, reptum, *to snatch away.* Pref.

profecto, adv., *truly, indeed, certainly.* 21.

prorumpo, ěre, rūpi, ruptum, *to cast forth, burst forth.* 41.

protĕro, ěre, trĭvi, trĭtum, *to tread under foot, crush.* 48.



provolvo, ěre, volvi, volūtum, *to roll forth, roll away.* 42.

Q

quadrātus, a, um, *squared; square, in regular order of battle.* 8.

quamquam, conj., *although.* Pref, 42, 52, 55.

quia, conj., *because.* 23.

quondam, adv., *once, at a certain time; heretofore.* 32.

R.

recusātiō, ōnis, f., *refusal.* Pref.

rūs, rūris, n., *the country; lands; fields.* 3.

S

sacerdōtium, ii, n., *the priesthood.* 50.

salubrītas, ātis, f., *healthfulness, salubrity.* 52.

scandūla, ae, f., *a shingle.* 42.

scriptor, ōris, m., *writer.* Pref. (twice).

sedeo, ěre, sēdi, sessum, *to sit, remain.* 15.

sestertius, ii, m, *a sesterce.*

sollicitus, a, um, adj., *disturbed, stirred up.* 34.

spectātus, a, um, (part. specto), *tested; respected; excellent.* 51.

sterno, ěre, strāvi, strātum, *to spread out; to strew.* 51.

stultus, ā, um, adj., *foolish.* 10.

submōveo, ěre, mōvi, mōtum, *to remove; to withhold.* 10.

subsīdior, āri, ātus, *to stand in reserve.* 13.

summissus, a, um, (part. submitto), *let down; calm; humble.* 31.

suppressus, a, um, (part. subprimo), *held back.* 42.

suspensus, a, um, (part. suspendo), *raised; wavering, doubtful.* 43.

T.

tamquam, adv., *so as, just as, as it were, like as.* 54.

templum, i, n., *an open place for observation; a sacred place, a temple.* 51.

tentōrium, ii, n., *a tent.* 5.

testātus, a, um, (part. testor), *shown; proved; public.* 42, 44.

togātus, a, um, adj., *wearing a garb of peace.* 24, 52 (twice).

triclīnium, ii, n., *a table-couch.*

triumphus, i, m., *triumph.* 51.

turmātim, adv., *by troops.* 18.

V.

vēna, ae, f., *a vein.* 43.

verber, ěris, n., *a lash; scourging.* 38.

vetustas, ātis, f., *old age.* 8.

vicissim, adv., *in turn; again.* 10.

vīgīl, ilis, adj., *wakeful, active.* 35.

vimīneus, a, um, adj., *made of osiers, of wicker-work.* 9.

vulgo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to spread among the people; to publish.* 3.

vulnerātiō, ōnis, f., *a wounding.* 47.



## GEOGRAPHICAL INDEX.

---

- Admagetobrīga**, a town in Celtic Gaul. Situation unknown. i. 31.
- Aduatūca**, a stronghold in the territory of the Eburones, perhaps near the modern Limburg: vi. 32, 36-40.
- Aduatūci**, a tribe of Germanic origin on the left side of the river Maas. They were later called Tongri. ii. 4, 16, 29, 31; v. 27, 38 *seq.*, 56; vi. 2, 33.
- Aduatucōrum oppidum**, ii. 29, 2 (different from Adnatuca), situated (according to Göler) on the hill which bears now the name Falhize, opposite the modern town Huy, — according to Napoléon, at the modern Namur.
- Agedincum**, capital of the Senones in Celtic Gaul, the modern Sens in the Champagne. (The *modern* name of the *city* corresponds to the *old* name of the *tribe*. Cf. Ambiani, Avaricum, Bellovacī, Cadurci, Curiosolites, Durocortorum, Lemovices, Lexovii, Lingones, Lutetia, Namnetes, Noviodunum (1), Petrocorii, Redones, Remi, Ruteni, Samarobriva, Santones, Seduni, Segni, Senones, Suessiones, Turusates, Turones.) vi. 44; vii. 10, 57, 59, 62.
- Alesia**, a fortified town of the Mandubii, the modern St. Reine d'Alise, near Semur, between the two rivers Loze (Oze) and Ozerain. vii. 68, *seq.*; viii. 14, 34.
- Alexandria**, a city in northern Egypt. Under the Ptolemies capital of the land. viii. *praef.*
- Allobrōges** (sing. Allobrox), a strong Celtic tribe between Rhodanns (Rhône), Isara (Isère), and Lacus Lemanus (Lake Geneva) in the modern Dauphinée and Savoy. Subdued in 121 B.C. by Q. Fabius Maximus. i. 6, 10, 11, 14, 28; iii. 1, 6; vii. 64, 65. Capital: Vienua, *q. v.*
- Alpes**, the Alps. i. 10; iii. 1, 2, 7; iv. 10.
- Ambarri**, a Celtic tribe, on the banks of the Arar (Saône). i. 11 (necessarii et consanguinei Haedurum), 14.
- Ambiāni**, a Belgic tribe near the sea-coast, inhabiting the modern Département de Somme. Their capital. Samarobriva (the modern Amiens [cf. note to Agedincum]). ii. 4, 15; vii. 75; viii. 7.
- Ambibarii**, a Celtic tribe in the modern Normandie, where a town Ambières still exists; belonged to the civitates Aremoricae. vii. 75.
- Ambiliati**, a small Celtic tribe, on the banks of the Samara (Somme). iii. 9 (perhaps not different from the preceding).
- Ambivareti**, a Celtic tribe, Haedurum clientes. vii. 75, 90.
- Ambivariti**, a Belgic tribe, on the left side of the river Maas, near the modern Breda. iv. 9.
- Anartes**, a tribe in Dacia, at the banks of the Tibiscus (modern Theiss) in the modern Siebenbürgen. vi. 25.
- Analites**, a Britannic tribe, in the modern Oxford. v. 21.

- Andes** or **Andi**, a Celtic tribe in the modern Anjou, northward from the modern Loire. Capital. Juliomagus (modern Angers sur la Mayenne). Andes, ii. 35; iii. 7; viii. 26. Audi, vii. 3. Chieftain: Dunnacus.
- Aquilēia**, town in Gallia transpadana, bearing its old name to the present day. i. 10.
- Aquitānia**, one of the three main parts of Gaul between Garumna (Garonne) and the Pyrenees. i. 1; iii. 11, 20, 27; vii. 31; viii. 46. See Gallia (*b.* 1), Ausci, Bigerriones, Cocosates, Elusates, Garumni, Gates, Nitiobroges, Pitanii(?), Sibuzates, Sontiates, Tarbelli, Tarusates, Vocates.
- Aquitāni**, the inhabitants of Aquitania. i. 1; iii. 21.
- Arar** (later name Sauconua, modern name Saône), a river flowing through the land of the Sequani and Haedui. Empties into the Rhodanus (Rhône).
- Arduenna silva**, a ridge of mountains from the Rhenus (Rhine) to the Scaldis (Schelde), through the land of the Remi and Nervii. v. 3; vi. 29, 31, 33. Modern name: les Ardennes.
- Aremōici**, see Volcae.
- Aremōicae civitates**, the tribes which border on the sea-coast between Liger (Loire) and Sequana (Seine) in the modern Bretagne and Normandie. A Celtic word composed of *arc* = 'ad' and *mor* = 'mare.' v. 53; vii. 75; viii. 31. The nations which compose the Aremōicae civitates are given at ii. 34 without that name being added.
- Arverni**, a powerful Celtic tribe in the modern Auvergne; city. Gergovia. They claimed to have descended from the Trojans (Lucan., i. 427: Arvernique ausi Latio se fingere fratres, sanguine ab Iliaco populi). i. 31, 45. vii. 3, 4, 5 *seq.*, 34 *seq.*, 64 *seq.*, 75, 89 *seq.*; viii. 44, 46 (Arvernus sing.). See Vercassivellaunus, Vercingetorix, Cellillus, Gobannitio, Epasnaectus, Critognatus.
- Atrebātes**, a Belgian tribe. Capital: Nemetocenna (the modern Arras in the province of Artois); sing., Atrebas, iv. 35; vi. 6; viii. 6, 47. Nom. plur., Atrebates, ii. 4, 23; iv. 21; vii. 75. Dat. plur., Atrebat<sup>is</sup>, ii. 16. Acc. plur., Atrebatas, viii. 7. Chieftain. Commius.
- Aulerei**, a great Celtic tribe; vii. 57. Divided into four parts: (*a*) Auleri Brannovices between Saône and Loire; vii. 75. (*b*) Auleri Diablintes in the modern province la Maine; iii. 9. (*c*) Auleri Cenomani in the Département de Sarthe; vii. 4, 75; viii. 7. (*d*) Auleri Ebuovices in the modern Normandie; capital. Mediolanum (modern Evreux); ii. 34; iii. 17; vii. 75. Chieftain. Camulogenus.
- Ausci**, a powerful tribe in Aquitania in the modern Département des Gers. Capital. Climberrum or Augusta (the modern Auch.). iii. 27.
- Avaricum** (modern Bourges), a stronghold of the Biturigi on the banks of the Avara (modern Eure). vii. 13, 15, 18, 29, *ff.* 47, 52. [For the modern name Bourges = Biturigi cf. note to Agedincum.] — adj. **Avaricensis**. vii. 47.
- Axōna** (modern Aisne), a river in Belgic Gaul, which empties into the Isara (modern Oise) ii. 5, 9.
- Bacēnis silva**, the western part of the modern Thüringer Wald (forming a part of the Hercynia silva), divides the land of the Cherusci and Suebi. vi. 10.
- Baleāres**, inhabitants of the Balearic Islands in the Mediterranean sea, near the Spanish coast. Skilful slingers (funditores). ii. 7.

- Batavōrum insula**, "the island of the Batavi," formed by the Vacanus (the northern hill of the Rhine) and the North Sea, the modern Beturve or Betan in Geldern. iv. 10.
- Belgae**, the inhabitants of northern Gaul between Sequana (Seine), Matrona (Marne), and Rhenus (Rhine), of chiefly Germanic origin. i. 1; ii. 1 *seq.*, 14 *seq.*, 38; iii. 7, 11; iv. 38; v. 24; viii. 6, 38, 54. Cf. Ambiani, Ambivariti, Atrebatas, Bellovaci, Caeroesi, Caleti, Ceutrones, Condrusi, Eburones, Geidumni, Grudii, Levaci, Menapii, Morini, Nervii, Paemani, Pleumoxii, Remi, Segni, Suessiones, Viromandui. It seems as if Belgae was also the name of a *tribe* (v. 12. 1).
- Belgium**, the land of the Belgae. v. 12, 24, 25; viii. 46, 49, 54.
- Bellovāci**, a Belgic tribe between Sequana (Seine), Samara (Somme), and Isara (Oise). The modern city Beauvais derives its name from it. Their town Bratuspantium (ii. 13) is the ruin Bratuspante near the modern Breteuil. ii. 4, 5, 10, 13, 14; v. 56; vii. 59, 75; viii. 6, 7, 12, 14 *seq.*, 20, 38. Chieftain: Correus.
- Bibracte**, capital of the Haedui, situated between Arar (Aisne) and Liger (Loire), the modern Autun in Bourgogne. (Locative: Bibracti, vii. 55, Bibracte, vii. 90.) i. 23; vii. 55, 63, 90; viii. 2, 4. Later name: Augustodunum.
- Bibrax**, a town of the Remi, either the modern Beaurieux, or situated on the top of the modern hill Vieux Laon. ii. 6.
- Bibrōci**, a tribe in the southeastern part of Britain (modern Bray?). v. 21.
- Bigerriōnes**, a tribe in Aquitania. Modern Bigorre near the Pyrenees on the banks of the Adour. iii. 27.
- Bituriges**, a Celtic tribe. (1) Bituriges Vibisci on the banks of the Garumna (Garonne), in the modern Medoc. Capital: Burdigala (Bordeaux). (2) Bituriges Cubi in the modern Berry, Bourbonnais, and Touraine. Towns: Noviodunum (Nouan), and Avaricum (Bourges). i. 18; vii. 5, 8, 9, 15; viii. 2 *seq.*, 11.
- Boia**, the land of the Boii. vii. 14.
- Boii**, a Celtic tribe, which emigrated from Gaul into Germany (Bohemia). A part of them associated themselves with the Helvetii. i. 5, 25, 28, 29; vii. 9, 10, 17, 57. Capital: Gorgobina, vii. 9.
- Brannovīces**, see Aulerici.
- Brannovii**, a Celtic tribe, clients of the Haedui. vii. 75.
- Bratuspantium**, a town of the Bellovaci, *q. v.* ii. 13.
- Britanni**, the inhabitants of Britannia. iv. 21; v. 11, 14, 21.
- Britannia**, Britain (England and Scotland inhabited by Celts and an aboriginal tribe, Caledones). iii. 9; iv. 20 *seq.*; v. 8, 12; vi. 13. Cf. Ancalites, Bibroci, Cassi, Ceuimagni, Segontiaci, Trinobantes. River: Tamesis. Chieftains: Taximagulus, Segovax, Mandubracius, Cingetorix, Carvilius, Cassivelaunus. Cf. Lugotorix. Town: Cantium.
- Cabillōnum**, a town of the Haedui, modern Chalons-sur-Saône (Arar). vii. 42, 90.
- Cadurci**, a Celtic tribe in Aquitania (in the modern Quercy). The modern Cahors is very likely identical with their old town. Cf. Lucterius, Divōna. vii. 4, 64, 75; viii. 30, 32, 34. Town: Uxellodunum.
- Caeroesi**, a Belgic tribe, near the modern Luxembourg or Lüttich. ii. 4.
- Calēti** or **Calētes**, a Belgic tribe in the modern Normandie on both sides of the Sequana (Seine), which belonged to the civitates Aremoricae, *q. v.* Caleti, ii. 4; viii. 7. Caletes, vii. 75.

- Cantābri**, a tribe in Hispania Tarraconensis, in the modern Biscaya. Subdued by Augustus in a war from 25 to 19 B. C. iii. 26.
- Cantium**, the modern Kent in Britain. v. 13, 14, 22.
- Carnūtes**, a tribe on both sides of the Liger (Loire), in the modern Orléans and Chartrain. Capital: Cenabum (later civitas Aureliarum, hence modern name Orléans). ii. 35; v. 25, 29, 56; vi. 2 *seq.*, 13, 44; vii. 2, 3, 11, 75; viii. 4, 5, 31, 38, 46. Their chieftains: Tasgetius, Gutruatus, Conconnetodumnus.
- Cassi**, a tribe in the southeast of Britain (modern Caishon?).
- Caturīges**, a tribe in Gallia Provincia, in the modern Dauphine (now Département des Hautes Alpes). i. 10.
- Celtae**, the inhabitants of Gaul between Sequana (Seine) and Garumna (Garonne). See Introduction. i. 1.
- Cenabenses**, the inhabitants of Cenabum, *q. v.*; vii. 11.
- Cenābum**, capital of the Carnutes, *q. v.*, the modern Orléans (according to Napoléon, however, the modern Gien). vii. 3, 11, 17, 28; viii. 5, 6.
- Cenimagni**, a Britannie tribe in the modern Suffolk. v. 21.
- Cenomāni**, see Aulerci.
- Centrōnes**, see Ceutrones (2).
- Ceutrones**. (1) A Belgic tribe in the western part of Flandern, near the modern Courtray or Brügge. v. 39. (2) A tribe in Gallia Provincia. Their capital: Darantasia (modern Ceutron in Savoy). i. 10.
- Cevenna mons**, a mountain ridge in the southern part of Gaul, in the southwest connected with the Pyrenees, separating the lands of the Arverni and Helvii. Modern name: les Cévennes. vii. 8, 56.
- Cherusci**, a German tribe between We-
- ser, Elbe, Harz, and Aller, near the modern Hildesheim and Paderborn. vi. 10.
- Cimbri**, a Germanic tribe, emigrating from their original seats in Jutland and on the shore of the North Sea. They were about to invade Italy, but were conquered by Marius (101 B. C.), near Vercellae. i. 33, 40; ii. 4, 29; vii. 77.
- Cisalpinā Gallia**, vi. 1. See Gallia.
- Cisrhenāni Germani**, vi. 2.
- Cocōsātes**, a tribe in Aquitania in the modern Gascogne. iii. 27.
- Condrūsi**, a Belgic tribe on the right side of the Mosa (Maas), near Lüttich. ii. 4; iv. 6; vi. 32.
- Confluens Mosae et Rhēni**, see Mosa.
- Cretes**, (sing. Cres), inhabitants of the island Creta, skilful bowmen. (Accus., Cretas). ii. 7.
- Curiosilitēs**, a tribe in the modern Bretagne near Corseult (near St. Malo). vii. 75. Accus., Curiosilitas. ii. 34; iii. 7 (civitas Aremorica).
- Dāci**, a Thracian tribe in Dacia (modern Hungaria, Siebenbürgen, Bukovina, Galizien, southern part). Roman province since 105 B. C. vi. 25.
- Danūvius**, the Danube (Donau). vi. 25.
- Decetia**, a town of the Haedui on the Liger (Loire), the modern Decize. vii. 33.
- Diablintes**, see Aulerci.
- Dūbis** (modern Doubs), a river which empties into the Arar (Saône).
- Durocortōrum**, capital of the Remi in Belgic Gaul, the modern Rheims. vi. 44.
- Eburōnes**, a Belgic tribe on the right side of the Maas between the modern Lüttich and Aachen. ii. 4; iv. 6; v. 24, 28, 39; vi. 5, 31, 34, 35, 43. See Aduatuca. Chieftain: Catuvolcus, Ambiorix.
- Eburowīces**, see Aulerci.

- Elāver** (modern Allier), coming from the mons Cevenna (les Cévennes), and emptying into the Liger (Loire). vii. 34, 35, 53.
- Eleutēti**, a tribe in Celtic Gaul, subject to the Arverni. vii. 75.
- Elusātes**, a tribe in Aquitania, in the northwest of the modern Département des Gers. Capital: Elusa (near the modern Eauze).
- Esubii**, a Celtic tribe in the modern Normandia. ii. 34; iii. 7; v. 24.
- Gabāli**, a Celtic tribe in the modern Gandan. vii. 7, 64, 75.
- Galli**, inhabitants of Gaul.
- Gallia**, Gaul, divided into (a) Gallia citerior or cisalpina or togata (viii. 24, 52), (i. 24, 54; ii. 1; v. 1; viii. 23), the plain of the Po, in northern Italy. (b) Gallia ulterior or transalpina, being the greatest part of the modern France, Switzerland, the Netherlands, and the part of Germany on the left side of the Rhine. Subdivisions: (1) Aquitania, between Pyrenees, Garumna, the Ocean, and the Provincia, inhabited by Iberian tribes; only the Bituriges were Celtic. Visited *once* by Caesar (viii. 46). (2) Gallia Celtica (sometimes, i. 1, 30, 31; ii. 3, called simply Gallia) (= Gallia Lugdunensis, later), between Garumna and Sequana, between Oceanus, and Alpes, inhabited by Celts. (3) Gallia Belgica, chiefly inhabited by Germans, from the Sequana to the Rhine. (c) Gallia provincia (i. 19, 28, 35, 44), the modern Provence, including the land of the Allobroges; called also simply provincia (i. 1, 2, 6, 7, 33; ii. 29; vii. 55), or ulterior provincia, i. 10, (later) Gallia Narbonensis. See Volcae, Vocontii, Centrones, Catriges.
- Garumna**, modern Garonne. This river forms the boundary line between Aquitania and Celtic Gaul. i. 1.
- Garumni**, a tribe in Aquitania. iii. 27.
- Gates**, a tribe in Aquitania in the modern Gaure. iii. 27.
- Geidumni**, a Belgic tribe. v. 39.
- Genāva**, a town of the Allobroges on the shore of the lacus Lemannus, the modern Geneva. i. 6, 7.
- Gergovia**, a town (perhaps capital) of the Arverni, situated on a hill, not far from the river Elaver (Allier), with steep slopes towards the north and east, while it is gentle towards the south. Between this height and the modern brook Anzon there is a small hill on which the smaller camp of Caesar was pitched. vii. 36, 49. The larger camp was situated east-southeast from Gergovia, near the modern village Orcet.
- Germania**, means with Caesar, the land between Rhine, Danube, Weichsel, and Ocean. Description of inhabitants, iv. 1; vi. 21, ff. See Suebi, Chernsci, Ubii, Sugambri, Marcomanni, Usipetes, Tencteri, Harndes, Nemetes, Triboces, Vangiones, Latovici, Tulingi, Sedusii, Cimbri, Teutoni.
- Gorgobina**, a town of the Boii, who with Caesar's permission had settled in the land of the Haedui (according to Napoléon the modern St. Parize-le-Châtel, according to Göler the modern Gnerche). Also identified with the modern Charlien or Gergeau, near Orléans. vii. 7.
- Graiocēli**, a Gallic tribe somewhere around the Mons Cenis. i. 10. Town: Ocelum.
- Grudii**, a Belgic tribe in the east of Flandern. v. 39.
- Haedui**, a mighty Celtic tribe, between Liger (Loire) and Arar (Saône). They were allies of the Roman people. Their capital was Bibracte. Towns: Cabilonum, Decetia, Matisco, Noviodunum. i. 10, 11, 16, 31, 32, 33, 43, 48; ii. 5,

- 14; v. 54; vi. 4, 12; vii. 5, 17, 32, 33, 37, 40, 43, 54, 55, 63, 75, 89, 90; viii. 46. See also *Ambarri*. Chieftains: *Divitiacus*, *Cavarillus*. Persons: *Virdomarns*, *Valetiacus*, *Cotus*, *Liscus*, *Litaviceus*, *Dumnorix*, *Convictolitavis*.
- Harūdes**, a Germanic tribe, relic of the Cimbrian invasion, between the Rhine, Main, and Danube. i. 31, 37, 51.
- Helvetii**, a Celtic tribe between Jura, lacus Lemannus, Rhodanus, and Rhemus, divided into four clans (*pagi*), of which Caesar mentions two, (1) *pagus Verbigenus*. i. 27; (2) *pagus Tigurinus*. i. 12. Cf. *Verucloebius*, *Nammeins*, *Orgetorix*, *Divico*.
- Helvii**, a Celtic tribe in the modern Vivarez or Languedoc (*Cévennes*). vii. 8, 64.
- Hercynia silva**, collective name for the German mountain ridges from the sources of the Danube to the frontiers of Dacia, comprising the modern Schwarzwald, Odenwald, Böhmerwald, Mährische Berge, Karpathen. vi. 24, 25.
- Hibernia**, Ireland. v. 13.
- Hispania**, Spain, divided by the *Hiberus* (*Ebro*), into *Hispania citerior* (eastern part), and *ulterior* (western part). i. 1; iii. 23; v. 1, 13; vii. 55.
- Illyricum**, a land in the southeast of Italy bordering on the Adriatic Sea, belonging to Caesar's province. ii. 35; iii. 7; v. 1.
- Itius portus**, a Gallic port in the land of the *Morini* opposite the Brittanic coast, perhaps the port of the modern *Bonlogne* (*Gesoriacum*). If Caesar started from here also in his first expedition, we have to take *Amblecteus* near *Boulogne* as *portus ulterior*. iv. 23, 1; or *superior*. iv. 27, 1.
- Jura**, the modern *Jura*, mountain ridge from *Rhone* to *Rhine*, forming the boundary line between the *Sequani* and the *Helvetii*.
- Latovici**, a Germanic tribe in the south of the modern *Baden*. i. 5, 28, 29.
- Lemannus**, lacus L., the *Lake of Geneva*, lake *Leman*. i. 2, 8, iii. 1.
- Lemōnum**, a town of the *Pictones*, in Celtic Gaul, the modern *roitiers*. viii. 26.
- Lemovices**, a Celtic tribe in the modern *Département de la haute Vienne*. Their capital, *Angustoritum*, = the modern *Limoges*. vii. 4, 75, 88; viii. 46. Chieftain: *Sedulius*.
- Lepontii**, a Celtic tribe in the Alps, between *St. Gotthart* and *Lago Maggiore*. iv. 10.
- Leuci**, a Celtic tribe in the south of *Lauraine*. i. 40.
- Levāci**, a Belgic tribe near the modern *Ghent*. v. 39.
- Lexovii**, a tribe in the modern *Normandie*, near the mouth of the *Sequana* (*Seine*). They belonged to the *civitates Aremoricae*. Their capital, *Noviomagus*, = the modern *Lisieux*. iii. 9, 11, 17, 29; vii. 75.
- Liger**, the modern river *Loire*, forming the boundary line between the *Haedui* and *Bituriges*. vii. 55. Acc., *Ligerem*, vii. 11, 56; *Ligerim*, vii. 5. Abl., *Ligere*, iii. 9; *Ligeri*, vii. 59; viii. 27.
- Lingōnes**, a Celtic tribe near the sources of *Maas* and *Marne*; the *Arar* divides their land from that of the *Sequani*. Capital: *Andematunnun* = modern *Langres*. i. 40; iv. 10; vi. 44; vii. 9, 66; viii. 11. Acc., *Lingonas*. i. 26.
- Lutetia**, a town of the *Parisii*, on an island of the *Sequana* (*Seine*), the modern *Paris*. vi. 3; vii. 57, 58.
- Mandubii**, a Celtic tribe between the *Haedui* and *Lingones*, in the modern *Département Côte d'Or*. Capital: *Alesia*. vii. 68, 71, 78.
- Marcomanni**, a Germanic tribe on the upper *Main*. i. 51.
- Mare nostrum**, the *Mediterranean*. v. 1.



- Matisco**, a town of the Haedui, on the Arar; modern Mâcon. vii. 90.
- Matrōna**, modern Marne, has its source in the Land of the Lingones, and empties into the Sequana. i. 1.
- Mediomatrices**, iv. 10; or *Mediomatrici*, vii. 75. Celtic tribe on the upper Mosel. Capital: Divodurnm, later Metis, modern Metz.
- Meldi**, a Celtic tribe between the modern Meaux and Melun on both sides of the Matrona. v. 5.
- Melodūnum**, a town of the Sequani, on an island of the Sequana (Seine), modern Melun. vii. 58, 60, 61.
- Menapii**, a Belgic tribe between Maas and Schelde. The modern Cassel is the old Castellum Menapiorum. ii. 4; iii. 9, 28; iv. 4, 22, 38; vi. 2, 5, 6, 9, 33.
- Mōna**, the island Anglesey between England and Ireland. v. 13.
- Morini**, a Belgic tribe, near the shore between Schelde and Lys, in the modern Département Pas de Calais.
- Mōsa**, the modern river Maas, coming from the Vosges, it empties into the Vacalus (modern Waal), a kill of the Rhine, hence iv. 15, confluent Mosae et Rheni. iv. 9, 10, 12, 15; v. 24; vi. 33.
- Namnētes**, a Celtic tribe north of the Liger (Loire). Capital. Condivincum = modern Nantes. iii. 9.
- Nantuātes**, a Celtic tribe in the Alpes. iii. 1, 6; iv. 10.
- Narbo**, a town of the Volcae Arecomici in Gallia Provincia, the modern Narbonne. iii. 20; vii. 7; viii. 46.
- Nemētes**, a Germanic tribe on the left side of the Rhine, near the modern city Speier. i. 51; vi. 25.
- Nemetocenna**, capital of the Atrebatas, the modern Arras. viii. 46, 52.
- Nervii**, a Belgic tribe, between the (modern) Sambre and Schelde, in Namur and Hennegau. Capital: Bagacum (Bavay). ii. 4, 15 ff.; v. 24, 38 ff. Chieftain: Bodnognatus.
- Nitiobrōges**, a tribe in Aquitania, about the Garonne (Lat.: Garumna). Capital: Aginnum, modern Agen. vii. 7, 31, 46, 75. King: Teutomatus.
- Norēia**, a town of the Norici, where in 113 B. C. the Roman consul, C. Carbo, was defeated by the Cimbri; the modern Neumarkt in Steiermark. i. 5.
- Noricus ager**, the land of the Norici. (Norici, Latin. The Celtic name is Tanrisci.) At the time of Caesar a kingdom comprising the modern Kärnten, Steiermark, and Anstria. King: Voccio, *q. v.*
- Noviodūnum**, (1) a town of the Suessiones, on the Axona (Aisne), the modern Soissons. ii. 12. (2) a town of the Haedui, on the left side of the Liger (Loire), the modern Nevers. vii. 55. (3) a town of the Biturigi Cubi, west of the Liger (Loire), between Cenabum and Avaricum. It has been identified with the modern (a) Sancerre (Napoléon), (b) Nouan le Fuzelier (Göler).
- Numidae**, a tribe of North Africa. They served as auxiliaries in Caesar's army. ii. 7, 24.
- Oceānus**, the ocean; (1) the Atlantic. iii. 7, mare Oceannus. (2) North Sea, i. 1; iii. 9; iv. 10; vi. 33.
- Ocēlum**, a town of the Graioceli in the cisalpine Gaul, modern Oulx in Piedmont. i. 10.
- Octodūrus**, a town of the Veragri, modern Martigny, on the river Dranse, in Wallis. iii. 1.
- Oreynia silva**, Greek name for Hercynia silva. vi. 24.
- Osismi**, a tribe belonging to the civitates Aremoricae, in the northwest of Gaul, (modern Département Finistère). ii. 34; iii. 9; vii. 75.
- Pādus**, the river Po in upper Italy. v. 24.

- Paemāni**, a Belgic tribe east of the river Maas, near the modern Lüttich. ii. 4.
- Parisi**, a tribe in Celtic Gaul. Capital. Lutetia, modern Paris. vi. 3; vii. 4, 34, 57, 75.
- Parthicus**, adj. from Parthi, a Scythian tribe in Asia in the modern Khorassan.
- Petrocōrii**, a tribe in Celtic Gaul on the right side of the Garumna (Garonne). Capital: Vesunna, modern Périgueux. vii. 75.
- Pictōnes**, a Celtic tribe on the left side of the Liger (Loire) neighbors of the Santones, in the modern Poitou. iii. 11; vii. 4, 75; viii. 26. Town: Lemo-num. Chieftain Duratius.
- Prustae**, an Illyrian tribe. v. 1.
- Pleumoxii**, a Belgic tribe in the west of Flanders. v. 39.
- Provincia**. See Gallia.
- Pitanii**, (?) a tribe in Aquitania.
- Pyrenaei montes**, the Pyrenees between France and Spain. i. 1.
- Raurīci**, a Celtic tribe, neighbors of the Helvetii from the mouth of the Arar to Basel. i. 5, 29; vi. 25; vii. 75.
- Redōnes**, a Celtic tribe in the Bretagne, about the modern Rennes. ii. 34; vii. 75.
- Rēmi**, a Belgic tribe between Matrona (Marne) and Axona (Aisne). Cf. Iccius, Andecmborius. Capital Duro-cortorum, modern Rheims. ii. 3 ff., 6; iii. 11; v. 3, 24, 53 f., 56; vi. 4, 12, 44; vii. 63, 90; viii. 6, 11. Their chieftain: Vertiscus.
- Rhēnus**, Rhine, the boundary line between Gallia and Germania; Caesar crossed it twice; (a) iv. 17, near the modern Neuwied; (b) vi. 9 ff., near the modern Andernach. In the land of the Batavi it divides itself into *two* kills (multis capitibus, iv. 10, 5, is wrong; Vergil *Æn.*, viii. 727, calls the Rhenus bicornis) of which the Vacalus (modern Waal), receives the Maas near the modern Workum. i. 1, ii. 4; iii. 11; iv. 10, 15; v. 3; vi. 9; vii. 65; viii. 13.
- Rhodānus** (modern Rhone), the boundary line between Allobroges and Helvetii. i. 1, 2, 6, 8, 10 ff., 33, iii. 1; vii. 65.
- Rōma**, Rome. i. 31; vi. 12.
- Rutēni**, a tribe in Celtic Gaul. Capital: Segodunum (modern Rhodes). i. 45; vii. 5, 75, 90.
- Sabis**, modern Sambre, empties into the Moselle. ii. 16, 18.
- Samarobrīva**, capital of the Ambiani, *q. v.* modern Amiens. v. 24, 47, 53.
- Santōnes**, **Santōni**, a tribe in Celtic Gaul on the north side of the Garumna. Capital: Mediolanum = modern Saintes. i. 10, 11, iii. 11; vii. 75.
- Scaldis**, the modern Schelde. vi. 33. It is exceedingly probable that Caesar meant here the Sabis (modern Sambre), which empties into the Maas, near modern Namur.
- Sedūni**, a tribe in the Alps, in the modern Wallis, where the town Sitten preserves the name. iii. 1, 2, 7.
- Sedusii**, a Germanic tribe between Main and Neckar. i. 51.
- Segni**, a Belgic tribe between Eburones and Treveri. (Bourg-Sègne, a village near Givet, perhaps preserves the name.)
- Segontiāci**, a tribe in the south of Britain (modern Hampshire and Berkshire).
- Segusiāvi**, a Celtic tribe between Rhodanus (Rhone), Arar (Aisne), and Liger (Loire). Capital: Lingdunum (modern Lyon), founded 44 B. C. i. 10; vii. 64, 75.
- Senōnes**, a mighty and powerful tribe in Celtic Gaul between Loire and Marne. Town: Vellaunodunum. Capital: Agedincum = modern Sens. ii. 2; v. 54, 56; vi. 2, ff.; vii. 4, 11, 34, 56, 58, 75; viii. 30. Their chieftains: Moritasgus, Drappes, Cavarinus, Acco.

- Sequāna**, moderu Seine. i. 1, 7, 57, 58.
- Sequāni**, a tribe in Celtic Gaul, between the Saône, Rhone, and Jura. Towu: Melodunum. Capital: Vesontio = modern Besançon. i. 1 ff., 3, 6, 8 ff., 19, 31 ff., 38, 40, 44, 48, 54; iv. 10; vi. 12; vii. 66 f., 75, 90. Cp. Casticus. Chieftain: Catamantaloedes.
- Sibuzātes**, a tribe in Aquitania, near the Pyrenees (modern Saubusse, between Dax and Bayonne).
- Sontiātes**, a tribe in Aquitania (modern town. Sôs, in the Département Lot et Garonne). iii. 20, 21. Chieftain: Adiatunnus.
- Suēbi**, collective name for the Germanic tribes between Thüringerwald, Böhmerwald, and Schwarzwald, in the modern Sachsen-Meiningen, Coburg, Bavaria, and Württemberg (modern name. English, Suebia; and German, Schwaben). i. 37, 51, 53, 54; iv. 1 ff., 7, 8, 16, 19; vi. 9, 10, 29. Chieftains: Cimberius, Ariovistus.
- Suessiōnes**, a Belgic tribe between the modern Marne and Isère. Capital: Noviodunum = modern Soissons. ii. 3 f., 12 f.; viii. 6. Chieftains: Galba, Divitiacus.
- Sugambri**, a Germanic tribe from the river Sieg to the river Lippe. iv. 16, 18; vi. 35.
- Tamēsis**, the Thames in England. v. 11, 18.
- Tarbelli**, a tribe in Aquitania, between the Pyrenees and the river Aturis (Adour). iii. 27.
- Tarusātes**, a tribe in Aquitania, in the modern Département des Landes. Name preserved in modern town Tartas on the Adour. iii. 23, 29.
- Tectosāges**, see Volcae.
- Tenctēri**, a Germanic tribe near the mouth of the Rhine. iv. 1, 4, 16, 18; v. 55; vi. 35.
- Tergestīni**, the inhabitants of Tergeste (modern Trieste). viii. 24
- Teutōni**, a Germanic tribe on the shores of the East Sea (Ost See), who united with the Cimbri. They invaded Italy in 113 B. C., but were defeated by Marius in 102 B. C. near Aquae Sextiae. i. 33, 40; ii. 4, 29; gen. plur Teutonum, vii. 77.
- Tigurīni**, one of the four Helvetian clans in the modern cantons Freiburg and Waadt. i. 12; pagus Tigurinus, i. 12.
- Tolōsa**, capital of the Volcae Tectosages in Gallia Provincia, the modern Toulouse. iii. 20
- Tolosātes**, the inhabitants of Tolosa, *q. v.* i. 10, vii. 7.
- Transalpīna Gallia**, transalpine Gaul. vii. 1, 6
- Transrhenāni**, the tribes on the left side of the Rhine. iv. 16; vi. 5; transrhenani Germani, v. 2.
- Trevēri**, a tribe of Germanic origin in Celtic Gaul on both sides of the Mosel. Capital: Augusta Treverorum = modern Trier. Cp. Nasua. i. 37; iii. 11; iv. 6, 10; v. 2 ff., 24, 26, 47, 53; vi. 2 f., 5 ff., 29, 32, 44; vii. 63; viii. 25, 45, 52, equites Treveri, ii. 24. Their chieftains: Indutiomarus, Cingetorix.
- Tribōci** or **Tribōces**, a German tribe on both sides of the Rhine about the modern Strassburg. i. 51; iv. 10
- Trinobantes**, a tribe in the south of Britain. Capital: Camalodunum = modern Colchester. v. 20 ff.
- Tulingi**, a Germanic tribe in the southern part of the modern Baden. i. 5, 25, 28, 29.
- Turōnes** or **Turōni**, a Celtic tribe on both sides of the Liger (Loire). Capital: Caesarodunum = modern Tours.
- Ubi**, a German tribe on the right side of the Rhine; later under Augustus they emigrated to the left side. In 50 B. C.

- their capital received the name Colonia Agrippina = modern Cöln. i. 54; iv. 3, 8, 11, 16, 19; vi. 9*f.*, 29.
- Unelli**, see Venelli
- Usipētes**, a German tribe, driven out of their seats by the Suebi. They settled near the mouth of the Rhine. iv. 1, 4, 16, 18; vi. 35.
- Uxellodūnum**, a town of the Cadurci on an isolated steep rock near the river Oltis (modern Lot).
- Vacālus**, the western kill of the Rhenus, Rhine, *q. v.*, modern name Waal. iv. 10.
- Vangiōnes**, a German tribe on the left side of the Rhine near the modern Worms. i. 51.
- Vellaunodūnum**, a town of the Senones between Agedincum and Cenabum. vii. 11, 14.
- Vellāvi**, a Celtic tribe in the Cévennes. vii. 75.
- Veliocassi** or **Veliocasses**, a tribe on the right side of the Sequana (Seine). Capital: Rotomagus = modern Rouen (Normandie). ii. 4; vii. 75; viii. 7.
- Venelli**, a tribe in the northwest of the modern Normandie. ii. 34; iii. 11, 17; vii. 75. (Civitas Aremorica.) Their chieftain: Viriduvix, *q. v.*
- Venēti**, a Celtic tribe in the modern Bretagne. Capital: Venetae = modern Vannes. ii. 34; iii. 7*ff.*, 11, 16*ff.*; iv. 21; vii. 75. (Civitas Aremorica.)
- Venetia**, the land of the Veneti, *q. v.* iii. 9.
- Verāgri**, a Celtic tribe near the union of Dranse and Rhone. iii. 1, 2. Town: Octodurus.
- Verbigēnus pagus**, one of the four Helvetian clans, probably between the Rhine and Jura. i. 27.
- Vesontio**, capital of the Sequani, modern Besançon. i. 38, 39.
- Vienna**, capital of the Allobroges in Gallia Provincia, modern Vienne. vii. 9.
- Viromandui**, a Belgic tribe in the modern Vermandois (Picardie). ii. 4, 16, 23.
- Vocātes**, a tribe in Aquitania about the Garunna. iii. 23, 27.
- Vocontii**, a tribe in Gallia Provincia, between Isara (Isère) and Druentia (Durance). i. 10.
- Volcae**, a tribe in Gallia Provincia, between the Rhone and Garonne. (1) Volcae Tectosages, with capital, Tolosa (Toulouse). (2) Volcae Arecomici, with capital, Nemanus (Nismes). vii. 7, 64. See also Narbo.
- Vosēgus**, the Vosges, French, les Vosges, German, Wasgenwald. iv. 10.

## INDEX OF PROPER NAMES.

- Acco**, chieftain of the Senones, and head of their conspiracy vi. 4, 44; vii. 1.
- Adiatunnus**, chieftain of the Sontiates. iii. 22.
- L. Aemilius**, decurio equitum Gallorum. i. 23.
- Ambiōrix**, chieftain of the Eburones v. 24, 26, 27, 32-37, 38; vi. 2, 5, 9, 30, 31, 33, 43; viii. 24, 25.
- Andecumborius**, an ambassador of the Remi. ii. 3.
- C. Antistius Reginus**, one of Caesar's legates. vi. 1; vii. 83, 90.
- M. Antonius**, one of Caesar's legates. vii. 31; viii. 2, 24, 36, 48, 50.
- Ariovistus**, king of the Suebi. i. 31, 32, 34, 36, 38, 40, 41-47, 50, 52, 53; v. 29; vi. 12.
- M. Aristius**, one of Caesar's military tribunes. vii. 42.
- C. Arpinēius**, a Roman knight. v. 27, 28.
- Q. Atius Varius**, praefectus equitum. viii. 28.
- Q. Atrius**, navibus praefectus. v. 9.
- L. Aurunculēius Cotta**, one of Caesar's legates. ii. 11; iv. 22, 23-37.
- Bacūlus**, see Sextius (2).
- Balbus**, see Cornelius.
- T. Balventius**, centurio Caesaris v. 35.
- Basilus**, see Minucius.
- Boduognātus**, chieftain of the Nervii. ii. 23.
- C. Brutus**, commander of Caesar's fleet iii. 11, 14; vii. 9, 87.
- Cabūrus**, see Valerius.
- Caesar**. (1) C. Julius, the author of the *Commentarii*, cf. introduction. (2) L., relative of (1) and his legate. vii. 65.
- Calēnus**, see Fufius.
- Camulogēnus**, chieftain of the Aulerci. vii. 57, 59, 62.
- Caninius Rebilus**, one of Caesar's legates. vii. 83, 90, viii. 24, 27, 30, 33.
- Carvilius**, a king of the Britains. v. 22.
- L. Cassius Longinus**, Roman consul, defeated in 107 B. C. in an expedition against the Helvetii. i. 7, 12.
- Cassivelaunus**, a chieftain of the Britains. v. 11, 18-22.
- Casticus**, a noble Sequanan. i. 3.
- \*Catamantaloēdes**, a chieftain of the Sequani. i. 3.
- Catuvoleus**, chieftain of the Eburones. v. 24, 26; vi. 31.
- Cavarillus**, chieftain of the Haedui. vii. 67.
- Cavarinus**, chieftain of the Senones. v. 54; vi. 5.
- Celtillus**, father of Vercingetorix. vii. 4.
- Cicēro**, Q. Tullius, one of Caesar's legates, the brother of M. Tullius Cicero, the orator. v. 24, 38 *seq.*; vi. 36; vii. 90.
- Cimberius**, chieftain of the Suebi. i. 37.
- Cingetōrix**, (1) a chieftain of the Treveri. v. 3, 56; vi. 8. (2) a chieftain of the Britains v. 22.
- Cita**, see Fufius.
- Appius Claudius**, consul in 54 B. C. v. 1.

- P. Clodius Pulcher**, Cicero's enemy, assassinated by Milo in 52 B. C. vii. 1.
- Commius**, chieftain of the Atrebates. iv. 21, 27, 35; v. 22; vi. 6; vii. 75, 76; viii. 6, 7, 10, 24, 23, 47.
- Conconnetodumnus**, chieftain of the Carnutes. vii. 3.
- Considius P.**, a soldier in Caesar's army. i. 21, 22.
- Convictolitāvis**, a noble Haeduan. vii. 32, 33, 37, 42, 55, 67.
- Cornelius Balbus**, an intimate friend of Caesar. viii. praef.
- Correus**, chieftain of the Bellovaci. viii. 6, 7, 17, *seq.*
- Cotta**, see Anrunculeius.
- Cotus**, a noble Haednan. vii. 32, 33, 39, 67.
- Crassus**. (1) M. Licinius, triunvir, with Caesar and Pompeius, died 53 B. C. on expedition against the Parthae. i. 21; iv. 1; viii. 53. (2) P. Licinius, the son of (1), one of Caesar's legates. i. 52; ii. 34; iii. 7, 8, 20, *ff.*; viii. 46. (3) M. Licinius, son of (1) and brother of (2), Caesar's quaestor. v. 24, 46; vi. 6.
- Critognātus**, a noble Arvernian. vii. 77.
- Curio, C. Scribonius**, tribunus plebis. viii. 52.
- Dis**, god of the under-world. vi. 18.
- Divico**, a noble Helvetian. i. 13, 14.
- Divitiācus**, (1) chieftain of the Haedni. i. 3, 16, 18, 20, 31, 41, ii. 5, 10, 14, *seq.*; vi. 12; vii. 39 (2) Chieftain of the Suesiones. ii. 4.
- L. Domitius Ahenobarbus**, consul in 54 B. C., general of Pompey the Great. v. 1
- Donnotaurus**, see Valerius.
- Drappes**, chieftain of the Senones. viii. 30-37, 44
- Dumnācus**, chieftain of the Andes. viii. 26-31
- Dumnōrix**, brother of Divitiācus (1). i. 3, 9, 18, *seq.*, v. 6 7
- Duratius**, chieftain of the Pictones. viii. 26, 27.
- Durus**, see Laberius
- Epasnactus**, an Arvernian. viii. 44.
- Eratosthōnes**, famous geographer and astronomer, born in Cyrene, died in 194 B. C.; president of the library at Alexandria. vi. 24
- Q. Fabius Maximus Allobrogicus** conquered in 121 B. C. the united forces of the Allobroges, Arverni, and Ruteni. i. 45.
- C. Fabius**, one of Caesar's legates. v. 24; vii. 90; viii. 6-24, 27, 31, 37, 54
- L. Fabius**, centurio of the VIIIth Gallic legion. vii. 47, 50.
- Faustus**, see Sulla.
- (1) **Q. Fufius Calenus**, one of Caesar's legates. viii. 39. (2) **C. Fufius Cita**, Roman knight. vii. 3.
- A. Gabinius**, consul in 58 B. C.
- Galba**. (1) Servius Sulpicius, one of Caesar's legates in Gaul. iii. 1, 3, 5, 6; viii. 50. (2) A chieftain of the Suesiones. ii. 2, 13.
- Gallus**, see Trebius.
- Gobannitio**, Vercingetorix's uncle. vii. 4
- Gutruātus**, chieftain of the Carnutes. vii. 3; viii. 38.
- Iccius**, a Reman. ii. 3, 6 7.
- Indutiomārus**, chieftain of the Treveri. v. 3, 4, 26, 53, 55, 57, 58.
- Q. Junius**, a Spaniard. v. 27 *f.*
- Q. Laberius Durus**, a military tribune. v. 15.
- T. Attius Labiēnus**, most prominent of Caesar's legates (he joined in the Civil War the party of Pompey, and fell in the battle of Munda). i. 10, 21, 54, v. 57; vi. 7; vii. 34; viii. 6, 23 *ff.*, 45, 52.
- L. Cornelius Lentūlus**, consul in 49 B. C. Caesar's adversary, who after the battle of Pharsalus fled to Egypt, where he was assassinated. viii. 50
- Liscus**, a noble Haednan. i. 16, 17.

- Litaviccus, an Haeduan. vii. 37 ff., 54, 55, 67
- Longus, see Considius.
- Lucanius, a centurio. v. 35.
- Lucterius, a Cadurcan. vii. 5, 7, 8, viii. 30, 32, 34, 35, 39, 44.
- Lugotōrix, a Britain. v. 22.
- Mallius, proconsul of Gaul in 78 B. C. iii. 20.
- Mandubracius, chieftain of the Trinobantes in Britain. v. 20, 22.
- Marcellus. (1) M. Claudius, consul in 51 B. C. viii. 53. (2) C. Claudius, consul in 50 B. C. viii. 48. (3) C. Claudius, consul in 49 B. C. viii. 50. All three Caesar's adversaries
- Maximus, see Fabius.
- M. Valerius Messāla, consul in 61 B. C. i. 2, 35.
- Metius, a guest-friend of Ariovistus. i. 47, 53.
- L. Minucius Basilus, general of Caesar's cavalry. vi. 29; vii. 90.
- Moritasgus, chieftain of the Senones v. 54.
- Munatius, one of Caesar's legates. v. 24, 25.
- Nammeius, a noble Helvetian, i. 7.
- Nasua, a noble Treveran. i. 37.
- Orgetōrix, a noble Helvetian. i. 2 ff., 9, 26.
- L. Aemilius Paulus, consul in 50 B. C. viii. 48.
- Q. Pedius, Caesar's nephew (sister's son) and legate. ii. 2, 11.
- Petronius, a centurio. vii. 50.
- Petrosidius, an aquilifer. v. 37.
- Piso. (1) L. Calpurnius Piso Caesonius, Caesar's father-in-law, consul in 58 B. C. i. 6, 12. (2) L. Calpurnius Piso, legate of Cassius in 107 B. C. i. 12. (3) M. Pupius Piso Calpurnianus, consul 61 B. C. i. 2, 35. (4) An Aquitanian. iv. 12.
- Cn. Pompeius. (1) Pompey (the Great). vi. 1 (sec introd.). (2) An interpreter of Titurius. v. 36.
- Procillus, see Valerius.
- Pulho, a centurio. v. 44.
- Quadrātus, see Volusenus.
- Rebflus, see Caninius.
- Regīnus, see Antistius.
- L. Roscius, legate of Caesar, praetor urbanus in 49 B. C. v. 24, 50.
- Rufus, see Sulpicius.
- Rutilus, see Sempronius.
- Sabīnus, see Titurius.
- Sedulius, chieftain of the Lemovices. vii. 88.
- Segōvax, a king of the Britains. v. 22.
- M. Sempronius Rutilus, a general of Caesar's cavalry. vii. 90.
- Q. Sertorius, propractor in Spain in 82 B. C., assassinated 72 B. C. In the first Civil War he joined Marius' party. iii. 23.
- T. Sextius, one of Caesar's legates. vi. 1; vii. 49, 51, 90; viii. 11.
- P. Sextius Baculus, a centurio in Caesar's army. ii. 25; iii. 5; vi. 38.
- M. Silānus, a legate of Caesar. vi. 1.
- T. Silius, a military tribune. iii. 7, 8.
- L. Cornelius Sulla, Marius' adversary, Dictator, died 78 B. C. i. 21.
- P. Sulpicius Rufus, a legate of Caesar. iv. 22; vii. 90.
- S. Sulpicius Galba, see Galba (1).
- Tasgetius, chieftain of the Carnutes. v. 25, 29.
- Taximagūlus, chieftain of the Britains. v. 22.
- Terrasidius, a military tribune. iii. 7, 8.
- Teutomātus, king of the Nitiobroges. vii. 31, 46.
- Q. Titurius Sabinus, one of Caesar's legates. ii. 5, 9, 10; iii. 11, 17 ff.; iv. 22, 38; v. 24, 26 ff., 36 ff.; vi. 1, 32, 37.
- M. Trebius Gallus, military tribune. iii. 7, 8.
- C. Trebonius. (1) A Roman knight. vi. 40. (2) A legate of Caesar. v. 17, 24; vi. 33; vii. 11, 81; viii. 6, 11, 14, 46, 54.

Tullius, see Cicero.

Tullus, see Volcatius.

Valerius. (1) C. Flaccus, propraetor in Gaul in 83 B. C. i. 47. (2) L. Praeconius, legate in Gaul before the time of Caesar. iii. 20. (3) C. Caburus, a Celt honored with the rights of a Roman citizen. i. 47. vii. 65. His sons (4) C. Procillus. i. 19, 47, 53, and (5) C. Donotaurus. vii. 65.

Valetiacus, brother of the Haeduan Cotus. vii. 32.

Varus, see Atius.

T. Vatinius, legate of Caesar. viii. 46.

Q. Velanius, military tribune. iii. 7.

Vercassivellaunus, an Arvernian, cousin of Vercingetorix. vii. 76, 83, 85, 88.

Vercingetōrix, son of Celtillus, an Arvernian, chieftain of the Gauls. vii. 4, 8, 9, 12, 14.

Vertico, a Nervian. v. 45, 49.

Vertiscus, chieftain of the Remi. viii. 12.

Verucloetius, ambassador of the Helvetians. i. 7.

Vidomārus, an Haeduan. vii. 38 ff., 54, 55, 63, 76.

Viridōvix, chieftain of the Venelli. iii. 17, 18.

Voccio, king in Noricum. i. 53.

C. Volcatius Tullus, one of Caesar's party. vi. 29.

C. Volusēnus Quadratus, military tribune and general of Caesar's cavalry. iii. 5; iv. 21, 23, vi. 41; viii. 23, 48.

L. Vorēnus, a centurio. v. 44.

THE END.

















D00520844N

C.C. 878.1 C128Gh 3011A

Caesar

Eight Books of Caesar's

Gallic War

C.C. 878.1 C128Gh 3011A

